

**Advanced**

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

# Oxford Word Skills



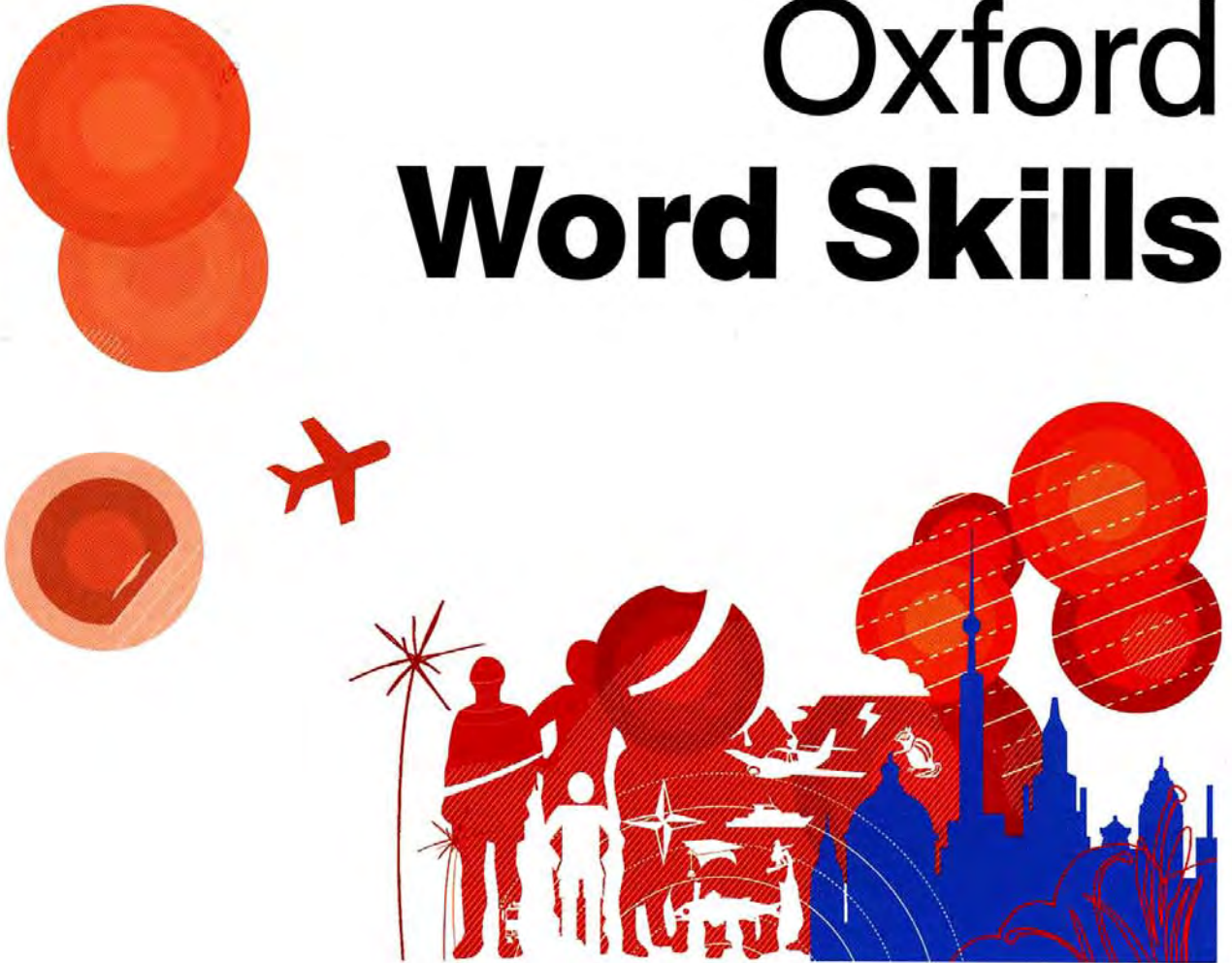
Learn and practise English vocabulary



**Advanced**

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

# Oxford Word Skills



**OXFORD**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS



Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi  
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi  
New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece  
Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore  
South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

OXFORD and OXFORD ENGLISH are registered trade marks of  
Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2009

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

First published 2009

2013 2012 2011 2010 2009

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

# No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility for the content

ISBN: 978 0 19 462008 6

Printed in China

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and adaptations of copyright material:

p 86 adapted from 'A Revolutionary Era in Medicine',

www.fiftyyears.healthcare.ucla.edu. Reproduced by permission.

p 98 from 'Organised Crime', www.soca.gov.uk © Copyright SOCA

Serious Organised Crime Agency. All rights reserved 2006. Reproduced under the terms specified on the website.

Sources: www.holisticonline.com, www.raisingkids.co.uk,

www.uk.tickle.com, www.acornhouserestaurant.com,

www.bbc.co.uk, www.npr.org, http://en.wikipedia.org

Illustrations by: Mark Duffin p 145; Andy Hammond pp 134, 138, 162, 166; Gavin Reece p 29; Willie Ryan pp 102, 125, 159

Cover illustration by Carol Verbyst

The authors and publisher would also like to thank the following for permission to reproduce the following photographs: Alamy pp 7 (leak/David Wasserman/Jupiterimages/Brand X), 7 (microscope/IS-200601/Image Source Black), 14 (drawing pins/Indigo Photo Agency), 14 (paper clips/Barrie Watts), 14 (barbed wire/colinspics), 14 (nail polish/Jupiterimages/Pixland), 17 (firefighters/John Powell Photographer), 30 (IS669/Image Source Black), 31 (clenched fist/Vincent Abbey), 31 (leaning towards/Mel Yates/Cultura), 31 (fiddling with hair/Radius Images), 31 (stroking earlobe/Dorota Szpil), 33 (stretching/paul postle), 33 (press-ups/paul postle), 35 (growl/Fionline digitale Bildagentur GmbH), 35 (buzz/CJPhotography), 35 (crow/Tony Fagan), 35 (hoot/Bob Elsdale/Eureka), 40 (leg showing muscle/Nucleus Medical Art, Inc/PHOTOTAKE Inc.), 45 (axel leschinski),

51 (Rafal Strzechowski/PhotoAlto), 61 (pomegranate/D. Hurst), 61 (passion fruit/Arco Images/imagebroker), 61 (papaya/blickwinkel/fotototo), 61 (beerroot/Nigel Cattlin), 61 (bean sprouts/Purestock), 61 (squash/Krys Bailey), 61 (fennel/Tim Hill), 61 (almonds/Geoffrey Kidd), 61 (cashews/Nikreates), 61 (lentils/foodfolio), 61 (cinnamon/Teubner Foodfoto/Bon Appetit), 61 (sage/foodfolio), 61 (sultanas/Wolfgang Heidach), 61 (raisins/William Nicklin), 62 (wok/Arras, Klaus/Bon Appetit), 62 (whisk/foodfolio), 62 (grater/Joe Tree), 62 (kitchen scales/foodfolio), 64 (Algarve/Alan Copson/Jon Arnold Images Ltd), 64 (Great Wall of China/Jon Arnold Images Ltd), 70 (plant/Cleuna (Medicinal Plants)), 71 (digging/David Noton Photography), 71 (mowing/aberystwyth), 82 (light bulb/Clynt Garnham), 82 (battery charger/Jeff Lam), 86 (stethoscope/Judith Collins), 113 (Alessandra Sarti/imagebroker), 131 (Tom Grill/Corbis Premium RF), 140 (Collection24/Glow Images), 144 (dilapidated house/Coston Stock), 144 (ruined tower/Brian Gibbs (Oxfordshire)/PBPA/PBPA Paul Beard Photo Agency), 145 (guidebook/Jon Bower), 145 (Egyptian ornament/Phink Sun Media), 145 (grandfather clock/Adrian Sherratt), 145 (exercise bike/IS326/Image Source Black), 178 (The Print Collector), 184 (winking/Dimitri Vervits), 193 (magnet/D. Hurst), 200 (Philip Wolmuth); Corbis pp 34 (house with lightning/Craig Aurness), 34 (woman screaming/John Springer Collection), 35 (howl/Daniel J. Cox), 38 (Goodshoot), 97 (Richard Bryant/Arcad), 193 (bullet-proof vest/Reuters); Dorling Kindersley pp 62 (deep fat fryer/David Murray and Jules Selmes), 71 (pruning/Peter Anderson); Getty Images pp 7 (flood/Daniel Berehulak), 12 (Marc Romanelli/The Image Bank), 28 (sister/Bambu Productions/Iconica), 28 (uncle/Leland Bobbe/Stone), 28 (Gran/Chris Windsor/Riser), 35 (bark/Dorling Kindersley), 35 (squeak/Konrad Wothe/Minden Pictures), 37 (Richard Packwood/Photolibary), 46 (William Edward King/Stone), 62 (food processor/Dave King/Dorling Kindersley), 62 (peeler/Lew Robertson/StockFood Creative), 62 (corkscrew/Steve Gorton/Dorling Kindersley), 64 (Prague/Peter Adams/Riser), 70 (butterfly/Pete Turner/The Image Bank), 71 (planting/Johner/Johner Images), 83 (Joerg Lehmann/StockFood Creative), 85 (Gerry Ellis/Minden Pictures), 86 (scanner/Dana Neely/Taxi), 102 (DON EMMETT/AFP), 182 (Mark Horn/Photonica), 183 (footings/Zubin Shroff/Stone+), 183 (crane/Johannes Kroemer/Photonica), 184 (mobile phone/Erik Von Weber/Taxi); PA Photos pp 17 (flames/Nikolas Giakoumidis/AP), 68 (Alvaro Barrientos/AP); Punchstock pp 10 (Dougal Waters/Digital Vision), 28 (Keira/PhotoAlto/Laurence Mouton), 28 (Tom/Image Source), 28 (Jessica/Plush Studios/Photodisc), 31 (folded arms/Marcy Maloy/Photodisc), 35 (roar/Tom Brakefield/Digital Vision), 40 (scratching head/George Doyle/Stockbyte), 50 (Nancy R Cohen/Photodisc), 56 (Foodcollection), 61 (ginger/Stockdisc/Photodisc), 61 (coriander/Brand X/Burke Triolo), 62 (casserole/Stockbyte), 62 (colander/Stockbyte), 62 (garlic crusher/Creativ Studio Heinemann/Westend61), 62 (lemon squeezer/Image Source), 91 (George Doyle & Ciaran Griffin/Stockbyte), 114 (Digital Vision), 145 (mobile phone/George Diebold/Digital Vision), 183 (glass building/Frederic Cirou/PhotoAlto Agency RF Collections), 198 (Peter Dazeley/Photographer's Choice RF); Royalty-free pp 61 (radishes), 61 (artichoke/Ingram), 62 (steamer/Photodisc), 62 (sieve/Stockbyte), 62 (ladle/simple stock shots); Courtesy of The Woman in Black. Adapted by Stephen Mallatrat from the novel by Susan Hill. Production photos/Pascal Molliere p 66

Images sourced by: Suzanne Williams/Pictureresearch.co.uk

The authors and publishers would like to thank teachers and students from the following schools who helped with the development of this book: International House, Business English Centre, Madrid, Spain; Shamrock School of English, Getxo, Bizkaia, Spain; English Language Institute, Macarena, Seville, Spain; English Centre, Valencia, Spain; Tti School of English, London, UK; Bell International, London, UK; Mark Appleton, Mark Lloyd, and the students at International House, Bath, UK; Małgorzata Salomądry, Dorota Brach, Anna Wnuk, and Iza Algemissen in Poland

They would also like to thank: Rachel Godfrey, Carol Tabor, Michael Terry, and Scott Thornbury for their valuable comments on early drafts of the text; the actors Nigel Greaves and Joanna Hall and The Soundhouse Ltd for the listening material; Suzanne Williams for picture research.

The authors would like to acknowledge their use of the following dictionaries: Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary, Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English, Macmillan English Dictionary for Advanced Learners.

# Contents

Introduction	5
Starter: vocabulary at advanced level	7
Abbreviations	9

## Expanding your vocabulary

1 I can talk about meaning and style	10
2 I can use familiar words in a new way	12
3 I can use compounds	14
4 I can use a range of collocations	17
5 I can use a dictionary productively	20
6 I can build word families	22

<b>Review</b>	<b>25</b>
---------------	-----------

## The body

7 I can describe the human body	28
8 I can talk about body language	30
9 I can describe physical movement	32
10 I can describe sounds	34
11 I can describe sight	36
12 I can describe touch, smell, and taste	38
13 I can describe illness and injuries	40

<b>Review</b>	<b>42</b>
---------------	-----------

## You and other people

14 I can discuss aspects of character	45
15 I can talk about feelings	48
16 I can talk about relationships	50
17 I can talk about people I admire and loathe	52
18 I can talk about behaviour	54
19 I can talk about manners	56

<b>Review</b>	<b>58</b>
---------------	-----------

## Leisure and lifestyle

20 I can talk about food	61
21 I can talk about holidays	64
22 I can talk about plays and films	66
23 I can talk about competitive sport	68
24 I can talk about gardens and nature	70
25 I can talk about shopping habits	72
26 I can talk about socializing	74

<b>Review</b>	<b>76</b>
---------------	-----------

## A changing world

27 I can talk about change	80
28 I can talk about energy conservation	82
29 I can discuss wildlife under threat	84
30 I can describe medical advances	86
31 I can talk about communication technology	88
32 I can talk about migration	90

<b>Review</b>	<b>92</b>
---------------	-----------

## Institutions

33 I can discuss health services	94
34 I can talk about local government	96
35 I can talk about crime and the police	98
36 I can discuss prisons	100
37 I can talk about the armed forces	102

<b>Review</b>	<b>105</b>
---------------	------------



## News and current affairs

38 I can understand news headlines	108
39 I can understand news journalism	110
40 I can read human interest stories	112
41 I can talk about celebrity	114
42 I can discuss political beliefs	116
43 I can talk about areas of conflict	118
<b>Review</b>	<b>119</b>

## Work and finance

44 I can explain job benefits	121
45 I can describe ways of working	122
46 I can talk about the business world	124
47 I can talk about money markets	126
48 I can talk about personal finance	128
49 I can discuss time management	130
50 I can discuss workplace disputes	132
51 I can talk about office problems	134
<b>Review</b>	<b>135</b>

## Concepts

52 I can describe cause and effect	138
53 I can talk about truth and lies	140
54 I can discuss problems and solutions	142
55 I can describe old and new	144
56 I can talk about success and failure	146
57 I can describe the past, present, and future	148
<b>Review</b>	<b>150</b>

## Spoken English

58 I can use everyday language	152
59 I can use idioms and set phrases (1)	154
60 I can use idioms and set phrases (2)	156
61 I can use set phrases with two key words	158
62 I can use similes	159
63 I can use a range of phrasal verbs	160
64 I can use discourse markers	162
65 I can use vague language	164
66 I can use sayings and proverbs	165
<b>Review</b>	<b>168</b>

## Written English

67 I can write a formal letter	172
68 I can use formal link words	175
69 I can use academic English	176
70 I can talk about literature	178
71 I can use scientific English	180
72 I can use technical English	182
73 I can use abbreviations	184
<b>Review</b>	<b>187</b>

## Aspects of language

74 I can use prefixes	190
75 I can use suffixes	192
76 I can use words with prepositions	194
77 I can use prepositional phrases	196
78 I can use a range of adjectives	198
79 I can use different types of adverb	200
80 I can use euphemisms	203
<b>Review</b>	<b>204</b>

Vocabulary building	207
Answer key	209
Answer key to review units	227
List of spotlight boxes	235
Word list / Index	236

# Introduction

## What is Oxford Word Skills?

*Oxford Word Skills* is a series of three books for students to learn, practise, and revise new vocabulary.

<b>Basic:</b>	elementary and pre-intermediate (CEF levels A1 and A2)
<b>Intermediate:</b>	intermediate and upper-intermediate (CEF levels B1 and B2)
<b>Advanced:</b>	advanced (CEF levels C1 and C2)

There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

## How are the books organized?

Each book contains 80 units of vocabulary presentation and practice. Units are between one and three pages long, depending on the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable quantities for learners, with practice exercises following immediately, usually on the same page. The units are grouped together thematically in modules of five to ten units. At the end of each module there are further practice exercises in the review units, so that learners can revise and test themselves on the vocabulary learned.

At the back of each book you will find:

- vocabulary building tables
- an answer key for all the exercises (other than personalized exercises)
- a list of all the vocabulary taught, with a phonetic pronunciation guide and a unit reference to where the item appears

There is a CD-ROM at each level with oral pronunciation models for all the vocabulary taught, and further practice exercises, including listening activities.

## What vocabulary is included?

At advanced level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of topics, e.g. behaviour, competitive sport, medical advances
- a range of concepts, e.g. problems and solutions, truth and lies, old and new
- different fields of academic English, e.g. literature, science, technical English
- an increased focus on different styles of English, e.g. informal English, newspaper journalism, formal letters
- a wide range of idiomatic expressions, with a particular focus on figurative uses of language
- various aspects of language, e.g. compounds, discourse markers, prepositional phrases

The series includes almost all of the words in the Oxford 3000™, which lists the 3,000 words teachers and students should prioritize in their teaching and learning. The list is based on frequency and usefulness to learners, and was developed by Oxford University Press using corpus evidence and information supplied by a panel of over 70 experts in the fields of teaching and language study. In addition, we have included a wide range of high frequency phrases, e.g. *at the last minute*, *for the time being*, as well as items which are extremely useful in a particular context, e.g. *in danger of extinction* when discussing wildlife conservation, or *remanded in custody* when discussing the law.



We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases as used in the particular contexts by supplying a clear illustration or glossary definition. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning, and they should refer to an appropriate learner's dictionary for information on other meanings.

## How can teachers use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary at this level is presented primarily through different types of text, but also through tables, and where appropriate, through visuals. The meaning of new vocabulary is explained in an accompanying glossary unless it is illustrated in visuals or diagrams. Important items, or those that require additional information, are highlighted by means of 'spotlight' boxes.

Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the presentation for 5–10 minutes (longer if necessary).
- You answer any queries the students may have about the items, and provide a pronunciation model of the items for your students where necessary.
- Students do the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class.
- When you are satisfied, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work individually or in pairs, and assist where necessary.
- When they have completed the written exercises, students can often test themselves on the new vocabulary using the cover card enclosed with the book. The material has been designed so that students can usually cover the glossary definitions while they look at the target items, and test themselves; or cover the items and look at the definitions. This is a simple, quick, and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises.
- After a period of time has elapsed, perhaps a couple of days or a week, you can use the review exercises for further consolidation and testing.
- You will often notice the headings 'About you' or 'About your country'. These indicate personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these, but they make ideal pair work activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up.

## How can students use the material on their own?

The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If working alone, learners should look at the Starter unit first. For self-study, we recommend that learners use the book alongside the CD-ROM, as it gives them a pronunciation model for every item of vocabulary, as well as further practice exercises. They can check their own answers and use the cover card to test themselves. One advantage of self-study learning is that students can select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their knowledge.



# Starter: vocabulary at advanced level

## Six steps to a wider vocabulary

Here are six ways to help you achieve a wider vocabulary, and become a more effective learner. Each one illustrates a feature of vocabulary learning which is given particular emphasis at the advanced level of *Oxford Word Skills*.

### 1 Adding new meanings to familiar words

An important part of vocabulary expansion is learning new meanings for familiar words.

What are the different meanings of **still** in these sentences?

(Go to Units 11, 28, and 64 to find or check the answers.)

Come over here and stand **still**. \_\_\_\_\_

These apples are very nice, but the others are better **still**. \_\_\_\_\_

My arm's very sore after the accident. **Still**, it feels better than it did yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Understanding the figurative meaning of vocabulary items

Many words have a literal meaning and a figurative meaning. For example, the literal meaning of *crawl* is to move forwards on your hands and knees, but we can also describe traffic as *crawling along the road*, which means that it is moving very slowly.

What is the figurative meaning of the words in bold in these sentences?

(Go to Units 39 and 42 to find or check the answers.)



The contents of the report have already been **leaked** to the press.



Thousands of refugees are now **flooding** across the border.



The Trade Secretary could find herself under the **microscope**.

### 3 Expanding your knowledge of collocation

These are common examples of collocation.

She's an **old friend**. (= a friend I have known a long time)

I **missed the bus**. (= I wasn't able to catch the bus)

It's **highly unlikely** he'll come. (= it's very unlikely he'll come)

In English, we choose to combine certain words in order to express particular meanings. Other languages might choose different words to express the same ideas; for example, many languages would say *I lost the bus* where we say *I missed the bus*. Common collocations appear in all three levels of *Oxford Word Skills*, but in the Advanced there is an even greater emphasis on this aspect of vocabulary learning.

Can you complete the collocations in these sentences?

(Go to Units 4, 9, 45, and 50 to find or check the answers.)

Last night we had **torrential** \_\_\_\_\_.

His mother is very elderly and needs **constant** \_\_\_\_\_.

If we work together on this, we'll be able to \_\_\_\_\_ our **resources**.

Do you think they'll be able to \_\_\_\_\_ the **deadlock**?



#### 4 Using a wider range of idiomatic expressions

At an advanced level you should be able to use a wider range of idiomatic expressions.

Can you complete these idioms? (Go to Units 39, 59, and 61 to find or check the answers.)

*It may seem a lot of money, but really it's just  
a drop in the \_\_\_\_\_.*

*They're bound to win; it's a foregone  
\_\_\_\_\_.*

*She might as well apply for the job; she's got  
nothing to \_\_\_\_\_.*

*First and \_\_\_\_\_ we must decide what  
to do.*

#### 5 Vocabulary building

At the end of a glossary entry for a particular word, we often include related word forms. Here is an example from Unit 53.

##### Glossary

<b>deteriorate</b>	become worse. <b>deterioration</b> N.
<b>interrogation</b>	the process of asking sb a lot of questions, especially in an aggressive way. <b>interrogate sb</b> V.
<b>catch sb out</b>	make sb make a mistake which shows they have been lying.
<b>humiliated</b>	feeling ashamed because you have lost the respect of other people. <b>humiliate sb</b> V. <b>humiliation</b> N.
<b>needless to say</b>	obviously.

We also provide vocabulary building tables at the back of the book. Building word families is an easy way to expand your vocabulary and increase your range of expression.

Can you complete these sentences with the correct form of the word in capital letters? (Go to Units 36 and 71, and the vocabulary building tables on pages 207–8, to find or check the answers.)

*Most people find the treatment very  
\_\_\_\_\_. THERAPY*

*His behaviour was very \_\_\_\_\_.  
PROVOKE*

*They are sure to \_\_\_\_\_ the results  
carefully. SCRUTINY*

*Some people prefer to maintain their  
\_\_\_\_\_. ANONYMOUS*

#### 6 Vocabulary expansion beyond the book

At this level, we have introduced a new feature called **more words**. After you have completed a unit and the review section for that unit, **more words** gives you an opportunity to expand your vocabulary further within the same topic or linguistic area. Here is an example, from Unit 9.

7 On a long walk, why might you alternate between walking and running?

8 What should you do if you feel stiff?

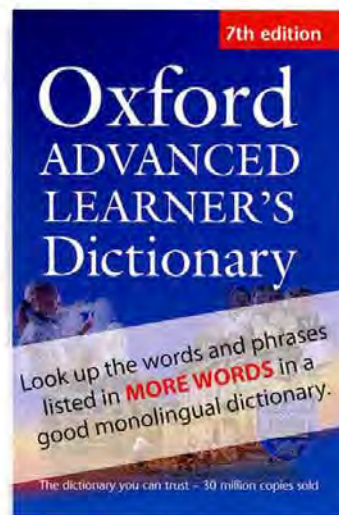
**A Z** more words: *stumble, trudge, shuffle, meander, get a move on, stampede*

Unit 10

**Suggested procedure with more words**

- Look up the words and phrases listed in **more words** in a good monolingual dictionary. In the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary*, you will find that the meanings of the phrases are explained at the entry for the word in **bold**, although it may be different in some other dictionaries.
- Write the word or phrase in your notebook, then leave a small gap before adding the meaning of the item. Below the meaning, write an example sentence using the target word or phrase; take one from the dictionary, or write your own. For example:

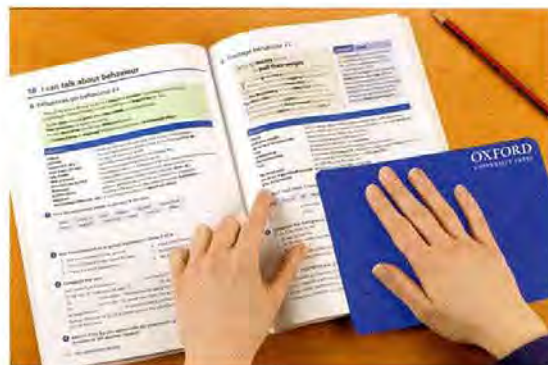
*predicament* a difficult or unpleasant situation, especially one where it is difficult to know what to do:  
Without any money, he was in quite a predicament.

**The CD-ROM and cover card****A Walking and running**

Word	Example
------	---------

- You can use the **CD-ROM** to listen to the texts and dialogues, or to hear the words, and then practise the pronunciation. Or you can look at the **word list** (pages 236–56) to find out how to say the words.

**Remember to test yourself**



Use the **cover card** to test yourself when you have completed the exercises.

**Abbreviations**

N	noun	C	countable
V	verb	U	uncountable
ADJ	adjective	PP	past participle
ADV	adverb	AmE	American English
OPP	opposite	BrE	British English
SYN	synonym	sth	something (used in glossaries and tables)
INF	informal	sb	somebody (used in glossaries and tables)
FML	formal	etc.	You use 'etc.' at the end of a list to show there are other things, but you aren't going to say them all.
PL	plural	i.e.	that is
SING	singular	e.g.	for example
USU	usually		



# 1 I can talk about meaning and style

## A Asking about meaning



- A Are the words **phase** and **stage** synonymous?
- B In one **sense**, they're **interchangeable**. They both mean a particular point in a process.
- A It's a bit **ambiguous** to say 'She's a good student', isn't it?
- B Yes, you can **interpret** it in different ways. *Good* can mean well behaved or hard-working.
- A The meaning of **wrapping paper** is **transparent**, isn't it?
- B Yes, it's **self-explanatory** – just paper for wrapping presents and stuff.
- A Can you give me a more **precise** definition of **soul**?
- B Well, it's **virtually** the same as **spirit** – the part of you that is believed to exist after you die. But it can also mean your inner character.

### Glossary

<b>synonymous</b>	having the same, or nearly the same, meaning. <b>synonym</b> N.
<b>sense</b>	the meaning of a word or phrase.
<b>interchangeable</b>	if two things are <b>interchangeable</b> you can use one instead of the other and the effect will be the same.
<b>ambiguous</b>	not clear; able to be explained in different ways. <b>ambiguity</b> N.
<b>interpret sth</b>	decide that sth has a particular meaning. <b>interpretation</b> N.
<b>transparent</b>	(of language) easy to understand. <b>opp</b> <b>opaque</b> .
<b>self-explanatory</b>	easy to understand and not needing more explanation.
<b>precise</b>	clear and accurate. <b>syn</b> <b>exact</b> . <b>precision</b> N.
<b>virtually</b>	almost; very nearly ( <b>virtually the same/impossible/certain</b> ).

## 1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

1	The meaning's virtually the same.	The meaning's opaque.	
2	This is the final phase of the project.	This is the final stage of the project.	
3	These two words are synonymous.	These two words mean the same.	
4	These phrases are self-explanatory.	These phrases are interchangeable.	
5	The meaning is ambiguous.	The meaning is exactly the same.	
6	What she said was quite transparent.	What she said was quite precise.	
7	The soul lives on after the body dies.	The spirit lives on after the body dies.	
8	The word <i>leg</i> has several senses.	The word <i>leg</i> has several meanings.	

## 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in capitals at the end.

- 1 If you want to make something clear, it's better to avoid \_\_\_\_\_. **AMBIGUOUS**
- 2 She always expresses herself with accuracy and \_\_\_\_\_. **PRECISE**
- 3 *Hide* and *conceal* are very similar, but not completely \_\_\_\_\_. **SYNONYM**
- 4 In most contexts, *get better* and *improve* are \_\_\_\_\_. **CHANGE**
- 5 I think this sentence is open to \_\_\_\_\_. **INTERPRET**
- 6 The instructions were \_\_\_\_\_; a child could understand them. **EXPLAIN**



## B Explaining meaning and style 🎧

Word	Example	Meaning
<b>irony</b> <small>N</small> <b>ironic</b> <small>ADJ</small>	'Thank you, Sam,' she said, with <b>heavy irony</b> . In fact, Sam had hardly helped at all.	the use of words to say the opposite of what you mean, often humorously ( <b>a trace/hint of irony</b> = a little irony).
<b>sarcasm</b> <small>N</small> <b>sarcastic</b> <small>ADJ</small>	'I've broken your CD.' 'Oh, that's just great,' was her <b>sarcastic</b> reply.	the use of words to say the opposite of what you mean in order to be unpleasant to sb or <b>make fun of</b> sb.
<b>figurative</b>	Slim is used <b>figuratively</b> in the sentence <i>Many firms are slimmer than they were.</i>	(of words) not used with their <b>literal</b> (= usual) meaning.
<b>literary</b>	Heart can be used in a <b>literary</b> way, e.g. <i>She put her hand on her heart.</i>	used of the kind of language you find in stories and poems.
<b>disapproving</b>	The dictionary marks <i>stupid</i> as ' <b>disapproving</b> '.	(often used in dictionaries) showing that sth is bad or wrong.
<b>old-fashioned</b>	<i>Spiffing</i> means 'great', but it's very <b>old-fashioned</b> .	no longer modern or fashionable. <small>SYN <b>dated</b>. OPP <b>in current use</b>.</small>
<b>slang</b>	In <b>slang</b> , <i>wicked</i> means 'very good'.	very informal words which are not suitable in formal situations.
<b>pejorative</b>	His <b>pejorative</b> comments about my essay upset me.	<small>FML</small> expressing disapproval or criticism. <small>SYN <b>derogatory</b>.</small>
<b>insulting</b> <b>insult sb</b> <small>V</small>	He called Mark an 'old woman': how <b>insulting</b> !	rude or offensive ( <b>deliberately/highly insulting</b> ).

### spotlight **make fun of someone**

If you **make fun of** or **poke fun at** someone or something, you make jokes about them in an unkind way. To **mock** someone means to make fun of them, often by copying what they say or do.  
Stop **making fun of** her! He's always **mocking** her country accent.

### 3 Circle the correct word(s). Sometimes both words are correct.

- The literal / literary meaning of curtain is 'a piece of cloth which covers a window'.
- The curtain fell on her career is figurative / dated, meaning 'her career ended'.
- I hate people making / poking fun of my pronunciation.
- She told him his acting was brilliant without a hint / trace of irony.
- He uses sarcasm / old-fashioned language as a way of insulting people.
- I got upset when my teacher mocked / insulted the way I pronounced 'castle'.
- He was being ironic / sarcastic – he didn't mean any harm.
- Telling me I was a second-rate journalist was highly / deliberately insulting.

### 4 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- The word *racist* has a negative meaning and is marked '\_\_\_\_\_ ' in the dictionary.
- Her written work is very \_\_\_\_\_: it's a bit like reading a novel by Charles Dickens!
- The children \_\_\_\_\_ fun of Josie because of her red hair; it was very cruel of them.
- My brother's lived abroad for years. He tends to use a lot of informal language and \_\_\_\_\_ which is not in \_\_\_\_\_ use, so some of his speech sounds rather \_\_\_\_\_.
- Does this phrase have a positive meaning, or is it \_\_\_\_\_?
- I know the literal meaning of *flood*, but what does it mean when it's used \_\_\_\_\_?





## 2 I can use familiar words in a new way

### A Phrases and figurative meaning

Familiar words may appear with an unfamiliar meaning (often a figurative meaning), or surrounded by other words that form an idiom or set phrase.

**A**s I **crawled** along the motorway, I was **having second thoughts** about staying with Marcus. I'd **been in two minds about** going in the first place, but it was **sweet of** him to invite me, and I **wasn't tied up**, so I said, 'Yes'. But now it **dawned on** me that he may have had an **ulterior motive**: he wanted to go out with me! How could I be so **thick**? Marcus was very nice, but a romantic relationship **was the last thing on my mind**. How can I **get out of** this, I wondered? Just as the traffic started to speed up, something went into the back of me and **sent** the car **flying** off the road. Dazed but OK, I pulled my mobile out of my bag. 'Is that you, Marcus? Listen, **you're not gonna believe this**, but ...'



#### Glossary

<b>crawl</b>	(of a vehicle) move very slowly.
<b>have second thoughts</b>	start having doubts about a decision you have made.
<b>be in two minds about sth</b>	be unable to decide what to do about sth.
<b>sweet (of sb)</b>	kind (of sb).
<b>be tied up</b>	be busy and unable to do other things.
<b>dawn on sb</b>	If sth <b>dawns on</b> you, you begin to realize it for the first time.
<b>ulterior motive</b>	a reason for doing sth that you keep hidden.
<b>thick</b>	INF stupid.
<b>be the last thing on sb's mind</b>	be the thing that sb is least likely to be thinking about.
<b>get out of sth</b>	avoid doing sth.
<b>send sth/sb flying</b>	make sth/sb move quickly and without control.
<b>you're not gonna believe this</b>	used to introduce surprising and often unwelcome news (gonna INF = going to).

#### 1 Complete the dialogues with a word or phrase.

- Do you still want to go? ~ Actually, I'm having \_\_\_\_\_.
- Are you thinking of getting married? ~ That's the last thing \_\_\_\_\_!
- Do you want to go to the wedding? ~ No, but I can't \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- You're not gonna \_\_\_\_\_, but ... ~ You've lost my keys again! How could you?
- Did he bump into you? ~ Yes, he sent me \_\_\_\_\_ across the room.
- Are you going or not? ~ I'm afraid I'm still in \_\_\_\_\_ about it.
- I'm sure it's just an innocent request. ~ Mm. I think he has an \_\_\_\_\_ motive.
- Could we talk about it this morning? ~ I'm afraid I'm \_\_\_\_\_ this morning.

#### 2 Complete the sentences using words from the glossary with their more common meanings.

- She's only eight months old, so she's still \_\_\_\_\_ across the living room floor.
- It's a very \_\_\_\_\_ book: almost 1,000 pages.
- These oranges are lovely; they're very \_\_\_\_\_.
- The men were \_\_\_\_\_, with both hands behind their backs.
- The morning \_\_\_\_\_ with a clear blue sky after the storm.



## B Common verbs with less familiar meanings

Verb	Example	Meaning
<b>get sth/sb to do sth</b>	<i>I finally <b>got</b> the car to start. I couldn't <b>get</b> him to leave the party.</i>	make or persuade sb/sth to do sth.
<b>keep keep sb going</b>	<i>We must eat the grapes – they won't <b>keep</b>. I'll have a sandwich. That will <b>keep me going</b> until lunchtime.</i>	remain fresh. be enough for sb until a later time.
<b>put sth</b>	<i>It's hard to <b>put</b> your feelings <b>into words</b>. I think he <b>put</b> it very well in his essay.</i>	say or write sth in a particular way.
<b>push sb</b>	<i>Some parents <b>push</b> their kids really hard. I need to <b>push myself</b> more at work.</i>	make sb work harder.
<b>leave sth to/ with sb</b>	<i>We need to book a table. <b>I'll leave that to you</b>. <b>Leave it to/with me</b> – I'll do it.</i>	allow sb to take care of sth.
<b>make sth sth</b>	<i>My watch says 10.20. What time do you <b>make it</b>? He bought ten more; I <b>make that</b> 25 now.</i>	think or calculate sth to be a particular time or number.
<b>bring sb somewhere</b>	<i>It was the war that <b>brought</b> him to power. What <b>brings</b> you here? ~ I've got a meeting.</i>	cause sb to reach a particular condition or place.
<b>come with come in</b>	<i>I'm sure the radio <b>comes with</b> batteries. The chairs <b>come in</b> four different colours.</i>	be sold or produced with a particular feature.
<b>do (for sb/ sth)</b>	<i>I peeled six potatoes. Will that <b>do</b>? Will these shoes <b>do for</b> the wedding?</i>	be enough or be acceptable in a particular situation.

### 3 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

- How did you him to do it? ~ I offered him money. \_\_\_\_\_
- Take this apple to keep you until lunchtime. \_\_\_\_\_
- If we can find another ten chairs, that will it 90 altogether. \_\_\_\_\_
- It was the fishing that people to this part of the coast. \_\_\_\_\_
- We'd better finish the cream – it won't after tomorrow. \_\_\_\_\_
- He has great ideas but finds it difficult to them into words. \_\_\_\_\_
- I've got a packet of noodles – do you think that will for six people? \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 Complete the dialogues with suitable verbs.

- A Hello. What (1) \_\_\_\_\_ you to this part of the building?
- B I can't (2) \_\_\_\_\_ this new clock to work, and it didn't (3) \_\_\_\_\_ with instructions.
- A OK, (4) \_\_\_\_\_ it with me.
- B Thanks. Oh, one other thing, we've run out of paper for the photocopier.
- A Er, there's some over there. Will that (5) \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- B Yeah, that'll (6) \_\_\_\_\_ us going for now.
- C What are the bookings like for this evening?
- D We had two more this morning, so I (7) \_\_\_\_\_ that 36 now.
- C OK. We'll need more tables, then. Can I (8) \_\_\_\_\_ that with you?
- D I'll see how things go, but I may have to (9) \_\_\_\_\_ Mario to do it.
- C OK, but don't (10) \_\_\_\_\_ him too hard; he's had a very tough week.

### 5 ABOUT YOUR LANGUAGE Translate the meanings in the table into your own language.





### 3 I can use compounds

#### A Nouns



drawing pins



paper clips



barbed wire



nail polish

Cover the compounds below and read the meanings. Do you know the compounds, or can you guess them?

Meaning	Compound noun
an official document that shows you are qualified to drive	<b>driving licence</b>
an official document showing when and where you were born	<b>birth certificate</b>
a part for a car or machine to replace an old or broken part	<b>spare part</b>
a person walking past a place by chance	<b>passer-by</b>
a short holiday from Friday to Sunday, or Saturday to Monday	<b>long weekend</b>
the number of years that a person is likely to live	<b>life expectancy</b>
a path or route that is quicker than the normal way	<b>short cut / shortcut</b>
clothes that you wear to a party to make you appear a different character	<b>fancy dress</b>
a short and usually very old song or poem for young children	<b>nursery rhyme</b>
a machine into which you put money in the hope of winning more back	<b>fruit/slot machine</b>
your closest living relative (often used on official documents)	<b>next of kin</b>

#### 1 Replace the crossed-out word with a more appropriate word that forms a compound.

- Do you know a short ~~way~~ to the school from here? \_\_\_\_\_
- I ripped my shirt on the ~~twisted~~ wire around the field. \_\_\_\_\_
- What's the average life ~~length~~ for men in your country? \_\_\_\_\_
- I stepped on a drawing ~~nail~~; it really hurt. \_\_\_\_\_
- I need some paper ~~staples~~ to put these notes together. \_\_\_\_\_
- Have you got any nail ~~paint~~? \_\_\_\_\_
- Is it easy to get ~~new~~ parts for your car? \_\_\_\_\_
- I stopped and asked a ~~walker~~-by where the park was. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 Complete the compound in each sentence.

##### ABOUT YOU

- Have you got a driving \_\_\_\_\_? How long have you had it? \_\_\_\_\_
- Have you written your next of \_\_\_\_\_ in your passport? Who is yours? \_\_\_\_\_
- Have you been to a \_\_\_\_\_ dress party? If so, who did you go as? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you remember any nursery \_\_\_\_\_? If so, which ones? \_\_\_\_\_
- When did you last go away for a long \_\_\_\_\_? Where did you go? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you know where your birth \_\_\_\_\_ is? If so, where is it? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you ever play on \_\_\_\_\_ machines? If so, do you often win? \_\_\_\_\_

#### 3 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.

## B Adjectives

It was a **last-minute** decision, but we managed to get a cheap holiday in Spain. The area's quite **built-up**, but the beach is lovely.

My cousin is very **absent-minded**. He leaves things lying around and then gets **panic-stricken** when he can't find them.

My brother's pretty **thick-skinned**, whereas I'm more sensitive. He often criticizes me in front of other people; I find this very **off-putting** and it makes me a bit **tongue-tied**.

Most compound adjectives are hyphenated.

These boots are **worn out** now, but they've been incredibly **hard-wearing**.

My uncle's very **narrow-minded**: whenever I visit him, the rows seem to be **never-ending**. It makes me very **bad-tempered**.

### Glossary

<b>last-minute</b>	happening at the last possible moment.
<b>built-up</b>	A <b>built-up</b> area has a lot of houses and not many open spaces.
<b>panic-stricken</b>	extremely anxious about sth.
<b>thick-skinned</b>	not easily upset by unkind or critical comments.
<b>off-putting</b>	(of behaviour) irritating or unattractive.
<b>tongue-tied</b>	unable to speak easily because of nerves or shyness.
<b>worn out</b>	1 (of a thing) no longer useful because it has been used so much. 2 (of a person) exhausted from work or exercise.
<b>hard-wearing</b>	(of a product) remaining in good condition for a long time.
<b>never-ending</b>	(especially of sth unpleasant) seeming to last for ever.
<b>bad-tempered</b>	often angry and easily annoyed.

### spotlight

#### Adjectives with -minded

**narrow-minded** = not willing to listen to the ideas and opinions of others, **syn** **bigoted**.  
**OPPS** **broad-minded**, **open-minded**.

**absent-minded** = forgetful.

**single-minded** = thinking in a concentrated way about sth and determined to achieve it.

### 4 Find six compound adjectives using words from the box.

built   worn   thick   panic   narrow   bad   minded  
tempered   up   skinned   stricken   out

### 5 Complete the sentences with a suitable compound adjective.

- He's very bigoted, isn't he? ~ Yes, he's very \_\_\_\_\_.
- Had you planned to go? ~ No, it was a \_\_\_\_\_ decision.
- Were you unable to speak? ~ Yes, I got completely \_\_\_\_\_.
- He's very determined, isn't he? ~ Yes, he's extremely \_\_\_\_\_.
- It's rather irritating behaviour. ~ Yes, very \_\_\_\_\_.
- They aren't bigoted, are they? ~ Quite the opposite. They're very \_\_\_\_\_.





## C Phrasal verb to compound noun 🎧

A number of compound nouns are created from one particular meaning of a related phrasal verb. This gives you an opportunity to learn two words instead of one.

The course has been a real **let-down**. Some people have **dropped out** already, and last night the **turnout** was awful. There could be quite a **shake-up** at the end of the year.

A car **broke down** on the side of the road and a lorry crashed into it; we were **held up** in the ensuing **tailback**. Fortunately no one was injured, but the car was a **write-off**.

The **break-up** of their marriage was a real **setback** for Paula...

### Glossary

<b>let-down</b>	a disappointment. <b>let sb down</b> v.
<b>drop out (of sth)</b>	leave school, college, a course, etc. without finishing your studies. <b>dropout</b> n.
<b>turnout</b>	the number of people who attend an event. <b>turn out</b> v.
<b>shake-up</b>	large changes made in an organization to improve it. <b>shake sth up</b> v.
<b>break down</b>	(of a vehicle or machine) stop working. <b>breakdown</b> n.
<b>hold sth/sb up</b>	delay sth/sb. <b>hold-up</b> n.
<b>tailback</b>	a long line of traffic, moving very slowly. <b>tail back</b> v.
<b>write-off</b>	a vehicle that is so badly damaged that it is not worth repairing. <b>write sth off</b> v.
<b>break-up</b>	the ending of a relationship or association. <b>break up</b> v.
<b>setback</b>	a problem that delays or prevents progress, or makes a situation worse for sb. <b>set sth/sb back</b> v.

### spotlight

**outbreak, outlay, etc.**

A few compounds based on phrasal verbs change the position of the particle.

*When did war **break out**?*  
(= start)

*The **outbreak** of war followed.*

*Did he **lay out** much money?*  
(INF = spend)

*What was the initial **outlay**?*

### 6 Rewrite the sentences using the phrasal verbs as compound nouns.

- How much did they lay out for the wedding? What was the outlay for the wedding?
- Did many people drop out? \_\_\_\_\_
  - The traffic tailed back for five miles. \_\_\_\_\_
  - It set him back when he failed the exam. \_\_\_\_\_
  - We were held up for two hours. \_\_\_\_\_
  - A car broke down on the motorway. \_\_\_\_\_
  - It was awful after they broke up. \_\_\_\_\_
  - How many people turned out? \_\_\_\_\_
  - It was inevitable that war broke out. \_\_\_\_\_

### 7 Complete the sentences with a compound.

- There was a really good \_\_\_\_\_ at the annual food festival: over 3,000 people.
- My brother had an accident last week. He's all right, but the car is a \_\_\_\_\_.
- I thought the concert was a real \_\_\_\_\_. I was very disappointed.
- It wasn't a happy marriage, but I don't know exactly what caused the \_\_\_\_\_.
- Long \_\_\_\_\_ are expected on the motorway after the violent storms.
- I spent over £50,000 in the end, but the initial \_\_\_\_\_ was about £10,000.





## 4 I can use a range of collocations

### A Collocations relating to fire 🔊

**Collocation** is the common combination of particular words with each other. These are some common collocations with **fire** and **flames**.

Two boys <b>set fire to</b> the school.	= made it start burning.
These buildings <b>catch fire</b> easily.	= start to burn.
The <b>fire broke out</b> in the kitchen.	= the fire started.
The building is <b>on fire</b> .	= burning.
The <b>fire spread</b> to the first floor.	= the fire moved and covered a larger area.
The plane <b>burst into flames</b> .	= suddenly began burning strongly.
The cottage <b>went up in flames</b> .	= was destroyed by fire.
The <b>fire/flames</b> soon <b>died down</b> .	= the fire/flames became weak.
They managed to <b>put out the fire</b> .	= stop the fire burning. SYN <b>extinguish the fire</b> FML.
We get a lot of <b>forest fires</b> here.	= fires that occur in forests during hot summer months.
I <b>lit a fire</b> this morning.	= started a fire for a purpose (e.g. in a fireplace or garden).
The <b>fire went out</b> last night.	= the fire stopped burning.



#### 1 Complete the sentences in different ways.

- A fire can ► break out / \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_.
- A person can \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_ a fire.
- A building can \_\_\_\_\_ fire / be on \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_ into flames / \_\_\_\_\_ in flames.

#### 2 Complete the text.

A large warehouse near the river (1) \_\_\_\_\_ fire early this morning. The fire brigade was called when a fire (2) \_\_\_\_\_ out on the ground floor, but the fire quickly (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to the upper floors, and the timber roof just (4) \_\_\_\_\_ into flames. Within minutes, the whole building was (5) \_\_\_\_\_ fire. By this afternoon firemen had managed to (6) \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_, but the damage has been considerable. The exact cause has not been established, but several boys were seen (7) \_\_\_\_\_ fire to some wooden boxes near the warehouse entrance.

#### 3 Complete the sentences.

- We lit the fire last night but unfortunately it had \_\_\_\_\_ by this morning.
- I shall wait for the noise to \_\_\_\_\_ before I start speaking.
- There was a loud bang and all the lights \_\_\_\_\_.
- How can you ask a smoker to \_\_\_\_\_ their cigarette \_\_\_\_\_ without being rude?
- The fight \_\_\_\_\_ after the football match.
- She \_\_\_\_\_ tears when I told her about the accident.
- They get awful \_\_\_\_\_ fires in the south of France during the summer.
- The government has taken measures to stop the disease from \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 4 ABOUT YOUR LANGUAGE Translate the sentences about fire into your own language. How similar are they?



Remember to test yourself

#### spotlight Collocation

Notice how the verbs above collocate with other nouns.

*Suddenly the **lights went out**.*

***Put that cigarette out**, please.*

*A **fight broke out** between the gangs.*

*The little girl **burst into tears**.*

*This **disease** could **spread** easily.*

*The **noise** soon **died down**.*



## B Adjective + noun

Example	Meaning
We had <b>torrential rain</b> last night.	very heavy rain.
They are predicting <b>gale-force winds</b> tonight.	very strong winds.
I had <b>considerable difficulty</b> getting here.	a lot of difficulty. SYN <b>great difficulty</b> .
The storms caused <b>extensive damage</b> .	a lot of damage. SYN <b>widespread damage</b> .
He speaks with a <b>strong accent</b> .	a very noticeable accent. OPP <b>slight accent</b> .
It was a <b>great honour</b> to meet the president.	an action or occasion that creates a feeling of pride.
We made a <b>real effort</b> to finish it on time.	a big effort. SYNS <b>special/concerted effort</b> .
My <b>main concern</b> is the effect of the drugs.	biggest worry. SYN <b>principal concern</b> (also <b>growing concern</b> = an increasing concern).
It's nice to see a <b>familiar face</b> .	a person who you recognize and know.
Could you give us a <b>brief summary</b> ?	a short statement giving the main points of sth.
It was a <b>classic example</b> of his stupidity.	a very typical example of sth. SYN <b>perfect example</b> .
I had to face <b>strong criticism</b> over this issue.	a lot of disapproval from others. SYN <b>fierce criticism</b> (also <b>widespread criticism</b> ).
The place was in <b>utter chaos</b> when I arrived.	a state of complete confusion. SYN <b>total chaos</b> .
The children had a <b>narrow escape</b> .	= they were lucky to get away safely.

### 5 Replace the underlined adjective with a different adjective which keeps the same meaning.

- I had great difficulty with it. \_\_\_\_\_
- What's your main concern? \_\_\_\_\_
- Was there extensive damage? \_\_\_\_\_
- Why is there strong criticism? \_\_\_\_\_
- It'll be total chaos. \_\_\_\_\_
- It's a perfect example of his writing. \_\_\_\_\_

### 6 Complete the dialogues.

- Were you proud to meet her? ~ Yes, it was a great \_\_\_\_\_.
- Did you know anyone at the event? ~ Yes, there were one or two familiar \_\_\_\_\_.
- Can you give us the details? ~ No, but I'll give you a brief \_\_\_\_\_.
- Did you try hard enough? ~ Yes, everyone made a real \_\_\_\_\_.
- Many people disapprove of it. ~ Yes, there's been widespread \_\_\_\_\_.
- Did they know what to do? ~ No, it was utter \_\_\_\_\_.
- Does she still sound very foreign? ~ Yes, she has quite a strong \_\_\_\_\_.
- The car missed me by inches. ~ So, you had a very narrow \_\_\_\_\_.

### 7 Complete the text.

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ rain and (2) \_\_\_\_\_ winds have caused (3) \_\_\_\_\_ chaos on many roads. The emergency services have had (4) \_\_\_\_\_ difficulty clearing some of the roads, and have been out all night in a (5) \_\_\_\_\_ effort to help stranded motorists. The Highways Agency has said their (6) \_\_\_\_\_ concern now is to clear the roads of abandoned cars. It is feared that local villages will also have suffered (7) \_\_\_\_\_ damage, and there is already (8) \_\_\_\_\_ criticism of the authorities.



## C Collocation in text

Notice how collocation (verb + noun, verb + adjective, adjective + noun, etc.) forms such an important part of a typical passage of English.

### Neighbours refuse to mend fences

WHEN BARRY HUNT put a three-metre wire fence round his garden, neighbour Adam Clark thought it was **a real eyesore**, and asked him to remove it. Mr Hunt **took offence** and **made it clear that** he would **do no such thing**. One year on, the two men still haven't **reached agreement**, and now **face the prospect** of having to **settle their dispute** in court. 'It's absurd,' said Mr Clark. 'He **holds me entirely responsible** and refuses to **take any of the blame**. The sad truth is, we've **reached the point** where neither of us will **back down**.'

#### spotlight *entirely*

**Entirely** means 'completely' and is often used with these words: **entirely different; entirely responsible; agree entirely**. **Not entirely** is used to soften what you are saying and is often used with these words: **I'm not entirely sure/happy/satisfied**.

#### Glossary

<b>a real eyesore</b>	a building or object that is very unpleasant to look at.
<b>take offence (at sth)</b>	show you are angry or upset about sth, or feeling insulted by it.
<b>make it clear (that)</b>	say sth to make sb understand a situation.
<b>do no such thing</b>	refuse to do the thing you have been asked to do.
<b>reach (an) agreement</b>	successfully arrive at an agreement ( <b>reach a conclusion/compromise/verdict</b> ).
<b>face the prospect (of/that...)</b>	recognize the possibility that sth may happen.
<b>settle a dispute</b>	end an argument between people ( <b>settle an argument</b> ).
<b>hold sb responsible (for sth)</b>	think that sb should be blamed for sth.
<b>take the blame (for sth)</b>	accept responsibility for sth.
<b>reach the point (where/when)</b>	arrive at a time or stage at which sth happens.
<b>back down</b>	stop asking for sth, or stop saying you will do sth.

#### 8 Cross out the word that doesn't follow the underlined word.

- 1 You can reach: a) an agreement b) a compromise c) a conversation
- 2 You can settle: a) a discussion b) an argument c) a dispute
- 3 You can take: a) offence b) the blame c) enjoyment
- 4 Entirely: a) different b) similar c) responsible
- 5 Not entirely: a) sad b) satisfied c) sure

#### 9 Complete the sentences with a suitable word in each space.

- 1 Stella thinks the new cinema is a real \_\_\_\_\_ and I \_\_\_\_\_ agree; it's very ugly.
- 2 He \_\_\_\_\_ me completely responsible, but I refuse to \_\_\_\_\_ all the blame.
- 3 It wasn't my fault and I \_\_\_\_\_ that very clear to my boss.
- 4 How are you going to \_\_\_\_\_ this dispute if no one is prepared to \_\_\_\_\_ down?
- 5 We've tried to get him to agree to it, but he'll do no \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 He feels we've \_\_\_\_\_ the point where we must decide, but I'm not \_\_\_\_\_ sure.
- 7 If we lose our first few opening games, we face the \_\_\_\_\_ of a difficult season.
- 8 I'm afraid he took \_\_\_\_\_ at something I said, so now we'll never \_\_\_\_\_ agreement.





# 5 I can use a dictionary productively 🎧

Dictionaries include a wide range of information that will help you to expand your vocabulary, and use words more effectively when you speak and write.

Dictionary entries*	Important information																						
<p><b>reflect</b> 0→ /rɪ'flekt/ verb</p> <p>1 [VN] [usually passive] ~ <b>sb/sth (in sth)</b> to show the image of sb/sth on the surface of sth such as a mirror, water or glass: <i>His face was reflected in the mirror.</i></p> <p>4 ~ <b>(on/upon sth)</b> to think carefully and deeply about sth: [V] <i>Before I decide I need time to reflect.</i> ◇ <i>She was left to reflect on the implications of her decision.</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The key (0→) tells you that <b>reflect</b> is in the Oxford 3000 and is an important word.</li><li>The numbers tell you that <b>reflect</b> has different meanings.</li><li>The information in bold tells you that <b>reflect</b> can be followed by different prepositions.</li></ul>																						
<p><b>count</b> 0→ /kaʊnt/ verb</p> <p>▶ <b>SAY NUMBERS</b> 1 [V] ~ <b>(from sth) (to/up to sth)</b> to say numbers in the correct order: <i>Billy can't count yet.</i> ◇ <i>She can count up to 10 in Italian.</i></p> <p>▶ <b>FIND TOTAL</b> 2 ~ <b>(sth)(up)</b> to calculate the total number of people, things, etc. in a particular group: [VN] <i>The diet is based on counting calories.</i> ◇ [V wh-] <i>She began to count up how many guests they had to invite.</i></p> <p>▶ <b>INCLUDE</b> 3 [VN] to include sb/sth when you calculate a total: <i>We have invited 50 people, <b>not counting</b> the children.</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The words in blue give a general idea of the different meanings of <b>count</b>.</li></ul>																						
<p><b>absorb</b> 0→ /əb'sɔ:b/ verb [VN]</p> <p>▶ <b>LIQUID/GAS</b> 1 to take in a liquid, gas or other substance from the surface or space around: <i>Plants absorb oxygen.</i> ◇ <i>This cream is easily <b>absorbed into</b> the skin.</i></p> <p>▶ <b>INFORMATION</b> 3 to take sth into the mind and learn or understand it</p> <p><b>SYN TAKEIN:</b> <i>It's a lot of information to absorb all at once.</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Dictionaries often provide synonyms (<b>take in</b> is a synonym for one meaning of <b>absorb</b>) and opposites: these help you expand your vocabulary.</li></ul>																						
<p><b>favour</b> 0→ /'feɪvə(r)/ noun</p> <p>▶ <b>HELP</b> 1 [C] a thing that you do to help sb: <i>Could you <b>do me a favour</b> and pick up Sam from school today?</i> ◇ <i>Can I <b>ask a favour</b>?</i> ◇ <i>I'm going <b>as a favour</b> to Ann, not because I want to.</i> ◇ <i>I'll ask Steve to take it. <b>He owes me a favour.</b></i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The phrases in bold show common phrasal structures and/or collocations; they will help you to use <b>favour</b> naturally in different contexts.</li></ul>																						
<p><b>propose</b> 0→ /prə'pəʊz/ verb</p> <p>▶ <b>SUGGEST PLAN</b> 1 (<b>formal</b>) to suggest a plan, an idea, etc. for people to think about and decide on: [VN] <i>The government proposed changes to the voting system.</i> ◇ [VN that] <i><b>It was proposed that</b> the president be elected for a period of two years.</i> ◇ [V -ing] <i>He proposed changing the name of the company.</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>propose</b> is a <b>formal</b> word and more common in written English.</li><li>It is followed by a noun, a <b>that</b> clause, or an <b>-ing</b> form, so you cannot say: <i>He proposed us to go.</i></li></ul>																						
<p><b>circumstance</b> 0→ /'sɜ:kəmstəns/ noun</p> <p>1 [C, usually pl.] the conditions and facts that are connected with and affect a situation, an event or an action: <i>The company reserves the right to cancel this agreement in certain circumstances.</i> ◇ <i>changing social and political circumstances</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>circumstance</b> is usually used in the plural (<b>circumstances</b>).</li></ul>																						
<p><b>VOCABULARY BUILDING</b></p> <p><b>actions expressing emotions</b></p> <table><tr><td><b>action</b></td><td><b>part of the body</b></td><td><b>you are . . .</b></td></tr><tr><td>hang</td><td>head</td><td>ashamed</td></tr><tr><td>lick</td><td>lips</td><td>anticipating sth good, nervous</td></tr><tr><td>nod</td><td>head</td><td>agreeing</td></tr><tr><td>raise</td><td>eyebrows</td><td>inquiring, surprised</td></tr><tr><td>shrug</td><td>shoulders</td><td>doubtful, indifferent</td></tr><tr><td>stamp</td><td>foot</td><td>angry</td></tr></table>		<b>action</b>	<b>part of the body</b>	<b>you are . . .</b>	hang	head	ashamed	lick	lips	anticipating sth good, nervous	nod	head	agreeing	raise	eyebrows	inquiring, surprised	shrug	shoulders	doubtful, indifferent	stamp	foot	angry	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The <i>Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary</i> has a number of features to increase your vocabulary or help you choose the right word in different situations. This list of actions is included beside the entry for <b>body</b>.</li></ul>
<b>action</b>	<b>part of the body</b>	<b>you are . . .</b>																					
hang	head	ashamed																					
lick	lips	anticipating sth good, nervous																					
nod	head	agreeing																					
raise	eyebrows	inquiring, surprised																					
shrug	shoulders	doubtful, indifferent																					
stamp	foot	angry																					

\* These are adapted extracts from the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary*.





**1 Complete the sentences with the correct verb, and use the numbers in the dictionary entries to say which meaning is being used.**

- ▶ There were about twelve on the bus, not counting (3) the teachers.
- I think she'll have to go away and \_\_\_\_\_ on what we've said to her.
  - There's no liquid at the bottom because the sponge \_\_\_\_\_ all the juice.
  - From the list, I \_\_\_\_\_ fifteen who still haven't replied to the invitation.
  - There was too much information to \_\_\_\_\_ in one session; I couldn't take it all in.
  - In this game, you close your eyes and \_\_\_\_\_ up to 50, while we all hide.
  - He was standing behind me, but I could see his face \_\_\_\_\_ in the water.

**2 Complete the collocations.**

- She just looked at me and \_\_\_\_\_ her shoulders.
- I'm sure Bob will do it. He \_\_\_\_\_ me a favour.
- When I told him, he just \_\_\_\_\_ an eyebrow in mild surprise.
- I only went to the party as a \_\_\_\_\_ to Anne.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ his head, so I assume he agreed.
- You can change the date in certain \_\_\_\_\_.
- The little boy \_\_\_\_\_ his foot in anger.

**3 Cross out the grammar mistake in each sentence and write the correction at the end.**

- We could see our faces reflected on the water. \_\_\_\_\_
- She proposed to leave the children behind. \_\_\_\_\_
- You can take dogs into shops in certain circumstance. \_\_\_\_\_
- There were ten people there, no counting the two of us. \_\_\_\_\_
- He proposed us to take the car. \_\_\_\_\_
- I'll need to reflect in what he said. \_\_\_\_\_

**4 Use the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary* to complete these sentences. You will find the answers in the full dictionary entries for the words shown on page 20.**

- Complete the collocation in this sentence with a word that can also mean 'consider':

I \_\_\_\_\_ **myself** lucky to have a job that I really enjoy.

- Complete the idiom in this sentence with the correct prepositions:

I'm \_\_\_\_\_ **favour** \_\_\_\_\_ equal pay.

- Complete the idiom in this sentence:

**Under the** \_\_\_\_\_, I would prefer not to say anything.

- Complete the idiom in this sentence:

The whole incident \_\_\_\_\_ **badly on everyone** involved.

**5 ABOUT YOUR DICTIONARY Look up the meaning of these adjectives and the preposition which normally follows each one. Then, write a sentence example for each.**

- |                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| conductive _____ | example: _____ |
| fraught _____    | example: _____ |
| devoid _____     | example: _____ |
| immune _____     | example: _____ |





## 6 I can build word families

### A Making one word from another 🎧

By learning words that are part of the same word family, you can often increase your vocabulary quickly and easily. For example, you will already know the words in the left-hand column below, but do you know the related forms with similar meanings?

Word	Example of related word	Meaning of related word
<b>mistake</b> N	<i>I <b>mistook</b> her for a friend.</i>	<b>mistake sb/sth for sb/sth</b> wrongly think that sb/sth is sb/sth else.
<b>excellent</b> ADJ	<i>The university <b>excels at/in</b> sciences.</i>	be very good at sth.
<b>final</b> ADJ	<i>I haven't <b>finalized</b> my plans.</i>	complete the last part of a plan/an arrangement.
<b>point</b> N	<i>The exercise was completely <b>pointless</b>.</i>	having no purpose.
<b>follow</b> V	<i>Chelsea have a large <b>following</b> in Asia.</i>	a group of supporters.
<b>house</b> N	<i>We need more family <b>housing</b>.</i>	buildings for people to live in.
<b>heart</b> N	<i>It was a <b>heartless</b> thing to say.</i>	showing no kindness or consideration. SYN <b>cruel</b> .
<b>handle</b> V	<i>The situation needs careful <b>handling</b>.</i>	the way sb deals with sth/sb.
<b>emotion</b> N	<i>Cancer is a very <b>emotive</b> subject.</i>	causing people to have strong emotions.
<b>apologize</b> V	<i>It's his fault and he's very <b>apologetic</b>.</i>	showing you are sorry.
<b>forgive</b> V	<i>His behaviour was <b>unforgivable</b>.</i>	so bad it cannot be forgiven. SYN <b>inexcusable</b> .
<b>describe</b> V	<i>The pain in my arm was <b>indescribable</b>.</i>	so extreme it is impossible to describe.
<b>notice</b> V	<i>The scar on his face is quite <b>noticeable</b>.</i>	easily noticed.
<b>include</b> V	<i>Bed and breakfast is £80, <b>fully inclusive</b>.</i>	(of a price or cost) including everything.
<b>compare</b> V	<i>This year's figures look good. Are there <b>comparable</b> figures for last year?</i>	similar; able to be compared.
<b>reputation</b> N	<i>It's a very <b>reputable</b> company, so you should be OK.</i>	having a good reputation; known to be good.
<b>furniture</b> N	<i>Are they going to <b>furnish</b> the flats? ~ One is <b>fully furnished</b> already; the other will be <b>unfurnished</b>.</i>	<b>furnish sth</b> put furniture in a place. <b>furnished</b> containing furniture. OPP <b>unfurnished</b> .
<b>event</b> N	<i>I hear you had a very <b>eventful</b> trip in China.</i>	full of interesting or important things that happen. OPP <b>uneventful</b> .
<b>explain</b> V	<i>His behaviour was <b>inexplicable</b>.</i>	that cannot be explained.
<b>recognize</b> V	<i>There is a growing <b>recognition</b> that we can't go on polluting the atmosphere.</i>	acceptance that sth is true or legal.

#### spotlight Different related forms

There may be several related forms with different meanings.

*I thought the meeting was very **worthwhile** (= important, interesting, etc.)*

*The necklace is **worthless**. (= without value)      He's a **worthy** champion. (= one who deserved to win)*



# 1 Circle the correct word.

- 1 The company is very *reputative* / *reputable*, so I'm sure you can rely on it.
- 2 You get flights, accommodation, and food; it's fully *included* / *inclusive*.
- 3 I don't know why the brakes failed; it's *unexplainable* / *inexplicable*.
- 4 We're amateurs and they're professionals, so we're not *comparable* / *comparative*.
- 5 The way he treated Jan was *inexcusable* / *unexcusable*.
- 6 Nothing much happened; it was rather an *eventless* / *uneventful* evening.
- 7 The delay was his fault, but he wasn't very *apologizing* / *apologetic* about it.
- 8 The whole thing was *undescrivable* / *indescribable*.

# 2 Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of the word in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

- 1 They have a great reputation for sport. EXCEL \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I think he deserved to win. WORTHY \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Nothing much happened at the party. EVENT \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The flat hasn't got any furniture. FURNISH \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The trip was a waste of time. POINT \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 It's an interesting vase but it has no value. WORTH \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 A lot of people support the movement. FOLLOWING \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 People are increasingly aware of its value. RECOGNIZE \_\_\_\_\_

# 3 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.

- |                                       |                                |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 Are there enough homes?             | ~ No, we need more _____.      |
| 2 Can you still see the marks?        | ~ Yes, they're quite _____.    |
| 3 Was she sorry?                      | ~ Yes, she was very _____.     |
| 4 Is that £65 for everything?         | ~ Yes, it's fully _____.       |
| 5 Her behaviour was dreadful.         | ~ Yes, absolutely _____.       |
| 6 Was there any reason to do that?    | ~ No, it was completely _____. |
| 7 Do they have a lot of support here? | ~ Oh yes, a massive _____.     |
| 8 Do you need to buy furniture?       | ~ No, it's fully _____.        |

# 4 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- 1 Jan and Brad still have to \_\_\_\_\_ the arrangements for the wedding reception.
- 2 It's a very good school and they \_\_\_\_\_ at languages.
- 3 Capital punishment is a very \_\_\_\_\_ issue; people have strong feelings about it.
- 4 I was impressed with the police; their \_\_\_\_\_ of the situation was just right.
- 5 He never listens to anyone, so it's \_\_\_\_\_ giving him advice.
- 6 I walked off with someone else's coat; I \_\_\_\_\_ it for my own.
- 7 Flats in big cities are expensive in England. A \_\_\_\_\_ flat in Spain would cost less.
- 8 Stephen's remarks were very cruel. How could he be so \_\_\_\_\_?

# 5 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY. Write answers to the questions or ask another student.

- 1 If you rent a flat, is it usually furnished or unfurnished? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Which football team has the largest following? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Do hotels usually give a fully inclusive price for a room and breakfast? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Is housing a particular problem in any part of the country? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Are prices generally comparable with other countries nearby, or are they very different?  
\_\_\_\_\_





## B Saying things another way

If you know different parts of a word family, you can express ideas in different ways. Notice the words in bold which go together, e.g. **keep yourself occupied**.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| How does she <b>occupy</b> her time?      | ~ She <b>keeps herself occupied</b> with work.              |
| Did he <b>confess to</b> the robbery?     | ~ Yes, he eventually <b>made a confession</b> .             |
| He won't <b>commit himself</b> , will he? | ~ No, he just can't <b>make a commitment</b> .              |
| What's the <b>origin of</b> the disease?  | ~ Nobody knows where it <b>originated</b> .                 |
| Did he <b>assure</b> you it would be OK?  | ~ Yes, he <b>gave</b> us his full <b>assurance</b> .        |
| Should we try to <b>simplify</b> things?  | ~ Yes, we need a <b>simplification of</b> the rules.        |
| Was he <b>abused</b> when he was young?   | ~ Yes, he <b>suffered</b> physical <b>abuse</b> as a child. |
| Couldn't you <b>defend yourself</b> ?     | ~ No, I was completely <b>defenceless</b> .                 |
| Are the injuries <b>severe</b> ?          | ~ We don't know the <b>severity of</b> them yet.            |
| What does the report <b>indicate</b> ?    | ~ Well, it <b>gives</b> some <b>indication of</b> progress. |

### Glossary

<b>occupy sth</b>	fill or use a space, area, or amount of time. <b>occupied</b> ADJ.
<b>confess (to sth)</b>	admit formally that you have done sth wrong or illegal. <b>confession</b> N.
<b>commit yourself</b>	promise to do sth that requires time and loyalty. <b>commitment</b> N.
<b>origin</b>	the cause of sth, or the place where it starts to exist. <b>originate</b> V.
<b>assure sb (that / of sth)</b>	tell sb that sth is definitely true or definitely going to happen. <b>assurance</b> N.
<b>simplify sth</b>	make sth easier to do or understand. <b>simplification</b> N.
<b>abuse sb</b>	treat sb in a cruel or violent way, often sexually. <b>abuse</b> N.
<b>defend sb/yourself</b>	protect sb or yourself. <b>defenceless</b> ADJ.
<b>severe</b>	extremely bad or serious. <b>severity</b> N.
<b>indicate sth</b>	show that sth exists or is likely to be true. <b>indication</b> N.

### 6 Find the missing word in each sentence and show where it goes.

- It was a simplification of the facts. of
- He needs something to himself occupied. \_\_\_\_\_
  - When he attacked me, I couldn't defend. \_\_\_\_\_
  - What's the origin this idea? \_\_\_\_\_
  - When did he the confession? \_\_\_\_\_
  - She assured it would be fine. \_\_\_\_\_
  - He just wasn't able to commit. \_\_\_\_\_

### 7 Rewrite the sentences using a related form of the underlined word.

- What's the origin of this? \_\_\_\_\_
- I want a simplification of the procedure. \_\_\_\_\_
- A lot of people abuse alcohol. \_\_\_\_\_
- Does the research indicate a link? \_\_\_\_\_
- He's got to commit himself. \_\_\_\_\_
- Did she confess? \_\_\_\_\_
- The boy was racially abused. \_\_\_\_\_
- I was surprised at how severe the conditions were. \_\_\_\_\_

### 8 Test yourself. Cover the answers at the top of the page and look at the questions. Can you ask the questions using a related word form?

# Review: Expanding your vocabulary

## Unit 1

1 Complete the dialogues using a suitable word that isn't used in the question.

- 1 You can explain this in different ways, can't you? ~ Yes, it's a bit \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Is the meaning obvious? ~ Yes, it's completely \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Is this word rather dated now? ~ Yes, it's quite \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 She gets upset when he mocks her. ~ I know; he shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ at her.
- 5 Is this word quite negative? ~ Yes, dictionaries mark it as \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Is that the exact meaning? ~ To be honest, I can't give you a \_\_\_\_\_ definition.
- 7 Can I use 'miserable' instead of 'sad'? ~ Yes. In this context, they're \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 Do they mean the same? ~ Not exactly, but \_\_\_\_\_ the same. (Don't use *almost* or *nearly*!)

**A Z** more words: *derivative, taboo, dialect, satirical, pun, archaic, overtones*

## Unit 2

1 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. Make any necessary changes, but the meaning must remain the same.

- 1 I suddenly realized who had stolen my mobile. DAWN \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I can't decide what to do about the job. TWO MINDS \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 In his haste, he knocked the vase over. FLYING \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 She ate some chocolate, which was enough until she was rescued. KEEP \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The laptop's a bargain and includes free software. COME \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Do many people try to avoid paying tax? GET \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 You were so kind to do that for me. SWEET \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Changing his job is his least likely option. MIND \_\_\_\_\_

**A Z** more words: look up these words in a dictionary and see if you can find at least one new meaning for each one, or a new idiom containing the word: *break, settle, pull, stick, hold*

## Unit 3

1 Tick the word(s) in *italics* that are possible. One or two may be possible.

- 1 He had a panic-stricken *look* ☐ *occasion* ☐.
- 2 Look at his worn out *shoes* ☐ *equipment* ☐.
- 3 It was an *off-putting* ☐ *single-minded* ☐ remark.
- 4 We had a long *hold-up* ☐ *dropout* ☐.
- 5 The police spoke to the *passer-by* ☐ *next of kin* ☐.
- 6 The *car* ☐ *exercise* ☐ was a write-off.
- 7 It was a terrible *setback* ☐ *break-up* ☐.
- 8 Use that *drawing pin* ☐ *paper clip* ☐ in the wall.



## 2 Make compounds using a word on the left with a word on the right. Then use them to complete the sentences below.

barbed break last  
nursery open shake  
turn short absent spare

part out down  
cut minded minded  
minute wire rhymes up

- 1 You need to be more \_\_\_\_\_ and listen to new ideas.
- 2 We made a \_\_\_\_\_ booking on the internet and flew out the following day.
- 3 She thinks she's too old to listen to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 We were a bit late, so I decided to take a \_\_\_\_\_. What a silly idea that was!
- 5 There was an impressive \_\_\_\_\_ for the meeting – over 100, in fact.
- 6 I'm a bit worried about my grandmother – she's getting rather \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 We need a \_\_\_\_\_ for the coffee machine – I'll order one on the internet.
- 8 There's been a management \_\_\_\_\_ so I think things will start looking up soon.
- 9 If you have car \_\_\_\_\_ insurance, you can get help very quickly on the road.
- 10 The \_\_\_\_\_ is designed to keep the animals in and people out.

**AZ** more words: use your dictionary to find more compound nouns and adjectives starting with these items: *birth* (e.g. *birthplace*), *paper*, *public*, *life*, *short*, and *nail*

## Unit 4

### 1 One word is missing in each line. What is it, and where does it go?

TAUNTON HOTEL GOES ~~IN~~ IN FLAMES

UP

- |  |          |
|--|----------|
| Firefighters were called out last night to a Taunton hotel which fire      | 1 _____  |
| at around midnight. It appeared that the fire had broken on the first      | 2 _____  |
| floor and rapidly throughout the building. Unfortunately it coincided      | 3 _____  |
| with gale winds which fuelled the flames. Although they had no             | 4 _____  |
| advance, the guests were able to get out and the hotel manager felt        | 5 _____  |
| they had had a escape. Firefighters fought the blaze for several           | 6 _____  |
| hours but eventually put it. This fire comes at a time when                | 7 _____  |
| there is growing about the health and safety regulations in holiday        | 8 _____  |
| accommodation; the hotel owners now face the of an enquiry into            | 9 _____  |
| the causes of the fire, and if they are held, they could face prosecution. | 10 _____ |

### 2 Complete the speech with a suitable word.

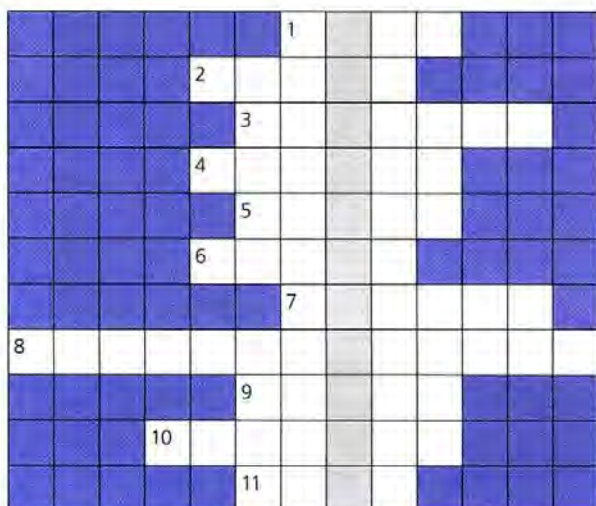
'Over the years, our city has had (1) \_\_\_\_\_ difficulty in raising the finance to pull down the ugly bus station which is a (2) \_\_\_\_\_ eyesore, and replace it with something far more attractive and practical. At last, it seems, we have managed to (3) \_\_\_\_\_ an agreement with the banks, and we are now reaching the (4) \_\_\_\_\_ where we can start to work on the design in more detail. We know there has been (5) \_\_\_\_\_ criticism of the initial plans, but I would like to (6) \_\_\_\_\_ it absolutely clear that our main (7) \_\_\_\_\_ has always been to find a design which will be acceptable to everyone; to that end we hope we can reach a (8) \_\_\_\_\_ with all parties involved. It is therefore an (9) \_\_\_\_\_ that the distinguished architect, A. C. Rally, who

also happens to be a (10) \_\_\_\_\_ face in the city, has agreed to give us a (11) \_\_\_\_\_ summary of his proposed plans. Mr Rally, over to you.'

**A Z** more collocations: **extensive** research, sounds **familiar**, **widespread** support, **settle** the bill, face the **consequences**, **catch** sb by surprise

## Unit 5

Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell a word. What is it?



- 1 You \_\_\_\_\_ your lips when you are nervous or expect something good to happen.
- 2 There are fifteen of us, though I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ the babies as they travel free.
- 3 I need time to \_\_\_\_\_ on this before I make a decision.
- 4 There was far too much information for me to \_\_\_\_\_ on the spot.
- 5 You don't seem to care – don't just \_\_\_\_\_ your shoulders and walk away!
- 6 Children sometimes \_\_\_\_\_ their feet when they're angry or frustrated.
- 7 I'll ask Sue to give me a lift home; she owes me a \_\_\_\_\_ anyway.
- 8 You are only allowed to take dictionaries into the exam under certain \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9 If you \_\_\_\_\_ your eyebrows like that, you look surprised.
- 10 We \_\_\_\_\_ these changes in the belief that they will be beneficial to everyone.
- 11 She \_\_\_\_\_ her head in shame.

**A Z** more words: look at the dictionary entry for a very common word such as *face*, *head*, or *take*.

Note down five or six new collocations, phrases, or phrasal verbs that include your target word.

## Unit 6

1 Complete the tables.

Verb	Adjective
apologize	
occupy	
forgive	
defend	
	final
	excellent

Adjective	Noun
	point
	emotion
	heart
severe	

**A Z** more words: you will know the following words in bold, but do you know the related forms in brackets? **authority** (*authoritarian*, *authoritative*, *unauthorized*); **escape** (*escapism*, *inescapable*); **man** (*manly*, *mankind*, *unmanned*); **standard** (*substandard*, *standardize*)



## 7 I can describe the human body

### A Physical features



My niece Keira's so **cute**. She's got **chubby cheeks**<sup>1</sup> and huge blue eyes.  
 My nephew Tom's got **ginger**<sup>2</sup> hair and **freckles**<sup>3</sup>.  
 My cousin Jessica's wearing a **brace**<sup>4</sup> to **straighten** her teeth.  
 My sister has a **gorgeous** figure – and she **shows it off** at every opportunity.  
 My uncle's got a **paunch**<sup>5</sup> which really **sticks out**. He needs to lose weight.  
 Gran's **getting on for** 80. She's got lots of **wrinkles**<sup>6</sup> and looks a bit **frail**.

#### Glossary

<b>cute</b>	(of babies, puppies, etc.) pretty and attractive.
<b>chubby</b>	slightly fat, but in an attractive way ( <b>chubby cheeks/fingers</b> ).
<b>gorgeous</b>	INF very beautiful and attractive. SYN <b>lovely</b> .
<b>show sth off</b>	show sth you are proud of.
<b>paunch</b>	a fat stomach on a man.
<b>stick out</b>	1 be or push out further than sth else. 2 be noticeable.
<b>be getting on for sth</b>	be nearly a particular age, time, or number.
<b>frail</b>	(especially of an old person) physically weak and thin. <b>frailty</b> N. (A person who is <b>dodderly</b> walks slowly and shakily because they are frail.)

#### spotlight

#### Suffix -en

We add **-en** to some adjectives to form verbs: **straighten**, **loosen**, **tighten**, **weaken**; and occasionally to some nouns: **lengthen**, **strengthen**.

#### 1 Find six more pairs of words in the box and explain the connection.

babies✓   frail   paunch   dodderly   freckles   stomach   hair  
 chubby   brace   cute✓   skin   ginger   teeth   fat

► **Babies** are often described as **cute**.

---



---



---

#### 2 Complete the sentences.

- My daughter wants to go out and \_\_\_\_\_ her new clothes to her friends.
- My mum's \_\_\_\_\_ 50, but still has a \_\_\_\_\_ figure.
- Most babies seem to have a round face and chubby \_\_\_\_\_.
- I don't like my hair curly: I want to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- He's got big ears that \_\_\_\_\_ and make him look rather funny.
- There's a picture of the two kittens asleep on a chair. They look very \_\_\_\_\_.



## B The body and clothes

### Dress FOR YOUR shape

The key to dressing for your body shape is to **enhance** your best features and **discreetly conceal** the not-so-good ones.

Here are a few **guidelines**.

- Wearing dark colours or vertical **stripes**<sup>1</sup> will **create the illusion** of being slimmer.
- For women, high heels are **flattering** because they **exaggerate** the length of the legs.
- If you are pear-shaped (narrow shoulders and broad **hips**<sup>2</sup>), jeans that sit below the waist are flattering, as they **draw attention to** the waistline and make the bottom look smaller.
- For women with broad shoulders and narrow hips, a V-neck dress **draws attention** down and in, and away from the shoulders and arms.



#### Glossary

the key to sth	the thing that makes you able to understand or achieve sth. <b>syn</b> the secret of sth.
enhance sth	increase or improve the quality, value, or status of sth.
feature	a part of sb's face or body.
discreetly	in a way that others will not notice. <b>discreet</b> ADJ. <b>opp</b> indiscreet.
conceal sth	<b>FML</b> hide sth.
guidelines	information that can help you, e.g. to make a decision.
create an illusion	make sth which is false appear true.
flattering	making sb look more attractive. <b>opp</b> unflattering.
exaggerate sth	make sth seem bigger, better, worse, or more important than it really is. <b>exaggeration</b> N.

#### spotlight

#### Expressions with attention

*He **drew** my **attention** to the mistakes.* = He made me see the mistakes.

***Attract** the waiter's **attention**.* = Do sth to make the waiter notice you.

*He never **pays attention** to me.* = He never listens to or considers what I say.

### 3 Circle the correct word(s).

- If you create an illusion, you make something appear true / false.
- Guidelines usually stop you doing something / help you.
- If you enhance something, it's positive / negative.
- If you attract someone's attention, they like / notice you.
- If you exaggerate something, you make it seem more / less important than it really is.
- If you do things in a discreet way, people usually notice / don't notice.
- If you wear something that is flattering, it makes you look worse / better.
- If you conceal something, others can / can't see it.

### 4 Complete the sentences with a suitable word from above.

- If you don't \_\_\_\_\_ attention, you won't learn anything.
- Those trousers are very \_\_\_\_\_: they make her look fat.
- The right clothes can show off your best \_\_\_\_\_, e.g. long legs or a slim waist.
- I don't look good in jeans: my waist is quite small but I've got broad \_\_\_\_\_.
- Clothes with vertical \_\_\_\_\_ tend to make you look slimmer.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ to her success is good looks, not talent!
- He wears a hat because he doesn't want to \_\_\_\_\_ attention to the fact he's bald.
- To say he's the best-looking man in the world is a bit of an \_\_\_\_\_!










## 8 I can talk about body language

### A Reading the signs



**B**ODY LANGUAGE can be very informative, but if you **jump to conclusions** when you interpret a particular **gesture**, you may **misinterpret** what it means. For example, people who look away to avoid **eye contact** may **not necessarily** be lying: they could just be very shy. To understand body language, therefore, we need to

**observe** a **combination** of behaviour that a person **displays**. With lying, for example, **look out** for any or all of these:

-  avoidance of eye contact
-  **going red**
-  **biting fingernails**<sup>1</sup>
-  **sweating** a lot
-  **excessive** hand gestures.

### Glossary

<b>jump to conclusions</b>	make a decision about sth too quickly, before you have thought about all the facts. SYN <b>leap to conclusions</b> .
<b>gesture</b>	a body movement you make to show a particular meaning.
<b>misinterpret sth</b>	If you <b>misinterpret sth</b> , you understand it wrongly.
<b>eye contact</b>	the action or moment of looking into another person's eyes.
<b>not necessarily</b>	used to say that sth is possibly true but is not always true.
<b>observe sth</b>	FML see or notice sth; an <b>observant</b> person is good at noticing things. <b>observation</b> N.
<b>combination</b>	a mix of two or more things. <b>combine</b> V.
<b>display sth</b>	show signs of sth, often a quality or a feeling. <b>display</b> N.
<b>look out for sth/sb</b>	look and try to see or find sth/sb.
<b>go red</b>	become red in the face, often when you're angry or embarrassed.
<b>sweat</b>	If you <b>sweat</b> , water appears on the surface of your skin because you are hot. SYN <b>perspire</b> FML. (The related nouns are <b>sweat</b> and <b>perspiration</b> .)
<b>excessive</b>	more than is reasonable or necessary. <b>excess</b> N. <b>exceed</b> V.

### 1 Good or bad? Write G or B.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 He sweats a great deal. _____               | 5 She's covered in perspiration. _____             |
| 2 She goes red all the time. _____            | 6 He always leaps to conclusions. _____            |
| 3 She has strong powers of observation. _____ | 7 He can't make eye contact with me. _____         |
| 4 She never bites her fingernails. _____      | 8 The cost didn't exceed his ability to pay. _____ |

### 2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- You should stop and think before \_\_\_\_\_ to conclusions.
- The teacher said she'd \_\_\_\_\_ for more articles on body language.
- My brother is very \_\_\_\_\_: he always notices people's body language.
- Even when he's very angry, he doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ any sign of emotion.
- It's easy to \_\_\_\_\_ someone's body language if you don't know them very well.
- If you *go red*, does it mean you're angry? ~ No, \_\_\_\_\_.
- I use hand \_\_\_\_\_ a lot, but I hope they're not \_\_\_\_\_.
- The increase in the number of students is the result of a \_\_\_\_\_ of different factors.

## B Interpreting gestures

Here are some common interpretations of gestures, although **bear in mind** the danger of **making generalizations about** body language (as stated on the previous page).



A **clenched fist**<sup>1</sup> shows anger; **folded arms**<sup>2</sup> may **imply stubbornness**.



People who **lean towards**<sup>3</sup> each other are displaying an interest in each other.



Women who **fancy** someone often **fiddle with** their hair; men **stroke** an earlobe. Women lift their heads to show more of their neck when they're **flirting**.

### Glossary

<b>bear sth in mind</b>	remember to consider sth.
<b>make generalizations about sth</b>	make general statements about sth that may only be based on a few examples. <b>generalize</b> v.
<b>imply sth</b>	suggest that you feel or think sth without saying so directly. <b>implication</b> n.
<b>stubbornness</b>	a determination not to change your opinion or attitude. <b>syn</b> <b>obstinacy</b> . (The related adjectives are <b>stubborn</b> and <b>obstinate</b> .)
<b>fancy sb</b>	<b>inf</b> be attracted to sb.
<b>fiddle with sth</b>	keep moving or touching sth with your hands.
<b>stroke sth</b>	move your hand or fingers gently over the surface of sth.
<b>flirt (with sb)</b>	behave towards sb as if you find them sexually attractive, but not in a serious way.

### 3 Cross out the wrong word.

- |                                |                                  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 make / do generalizations    | 4 fold your arms / legs          |
| 2 a clenched hand / fist       | 5 fiddle with / on something     |
| 3 stroke / fancy someone's arm | 6 flirt with someone / something |

### 4 Complete the words in each sentence.

- He didn't actually say I was being rude, but that was the i \_\_\_\_\_.
- Both girls like Conrad, and they're always f \_\_\_\_\_ with him.
- She l \_\_\_\_\_ towards him and whispered in his ear. I think she f \_\_\_\_\_ him.
- If my dad decides something, he won't change his mind; he's very s \_\_\_\_\_ / o \_\_\_\_\_.
- When a man talks to a woman and strokes his ear, it i \_\_\_\_\_ that he fancies her. But bear in m \_\_\_\_\_ that it is very dangerous to g \_\_\_\_\_ about body language.
- Girls often f \_\_\_\_\_ with their hair when they fancy someone, or they're bored.

### 5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

Do you do any of these things? If so, what do you think they often mean?

- stroke your ear, chin, or the back of your head? \_\_\_\_\_
- fiddle with your hair, jewellery, or watch strap? \_\_\_\_\_
- fold your arms or cross your legs? \_\_\_\_\_
- clench your fist or bite your nails? \_\_\_\_\_



Remember to test yourself



## 9 I can describe physical movement

### A Walking and running

Word	Example	Meaning
<b>creep</b>	I <b>crept</b> up the stairs, so that I wouldn't wake anyone.	move slowly and quietly so you are not seen or heard (also <b>tiptoe</b> = walk on your toes so you are not heard).
<b>stroll</b>	We <b>strolled</b> along the beach.	walk casually for pleasure.
<b>limp</b>	He <b>limped</b> quite badly after his accident.	walk slowly and with difficulty because one leg or foot is injured.
<b>stagger</b>	Despite his injury, he <b>staggered</b> to the nearest house and phoned for help.	walk with difficulty, being almost unable to stand up.
<b>hike</b>	They <b>hiked</b> across the countryside.	walk long distances in the country.
<b>march</b>	The soldiers <b>marched</b> for over 20 kms.	walk with stiff regular steps.
<b>chase sb/sth</b>	Police <b>chased</b> the man for miles.	run, drive, etc. after sb/sth to catch them.
<b>dash</b>	I <b>dashed</b> across the road for the bus.	run quickly and suddenly.
<b>gallop</b>	The horse <b>galloped</b> across the field.	(of a horse or rider) run quickly.
<b>charge</b>	An angry section of the crowd <b>charged</b> towards the security men.	move quickly in a particular direction, often to attack sb/sth.

#### 1 Correct the underlined verb in the sentences.

- He obviously had a bad leg; he was hiking.
- The man was clearly drunk, but managed to gallop home after the party.
- The car appeared suddenly, so I had to stroll across the road.
- I got nervous as the horse crept towards me.
- My dog loves to charge rabbits.
- The victorious army tiptoed into town.
- I limped to the door when the alarm went off.
- I marched upstairs, so he wouldn't know I was there.

#### spotlight Verbs and nouns

Many of the verbs above are also used as nouns. The words in bold below are often used with them.

We decided to **go for a stroll**.

He had a **pronounced limp**.

I **went for a ten-mile hike**.

He **made a dash for** the door.

The horse **broke into a gallop**.

Who **led the charge**?

The film has a high-speed **car chase**.

#### 2 Rewrite the sentences using the underlined verbs as nouns. Make any other changes that are necessary.

- We hiked across the valley. / We went for a hike across the valley.
- He limped badly. / He \_\_\_\_\_.
  - It was raining, so we dashed for cover. / It was raining, so we \_\_\_\_\_.
  - They strolled along the beach. / They \_\_\_\_\_.
  - The horses soon started galloping. / The horses soon \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Who was at the front when they charged? / Who \_\_\_\_\_?
  - Did you see the car chasing the other one? / Did you see \_\_\_\_\_?



## B Physical exercise 🎧

### My 20-minute workout

I'm not as **supple** or **agile** as I used to be, and I was beginning to feel quite **stiff** and **sluggish** first thing in the morning, so I asked a friend to **devise** a workout routine for me. First I **loosen up** with some **stretching** and **bending**, then I go on to something more **strenuous**. I don't like **press-ups** – I find them **relentless**, and I also have a **recurrent** elbow problem. I prefer to **alternate between** jogging and **sprinting** because I enjoy the **constant** change of activity.



### Glossary

**workout**

**supple**

**agile**

**stiff**

**sluggish**

**devise sth**

**loosen up**

**bend**

**strenuous**

**relentless**

**recurrent**

**alternate between A and B**

**sprint**

a period of physical exercise you do to keep fit. **work out** v.

able to bend and move parts of your body easily.

able to move quickly and easily. **agility** n.

feeling some pain and unable to move easily. **stiffness** n.

moving slowly, below your normal activity level. **sluggishness** n.

invent a method or plan of doing sth. **SYN think sth up.**

do physical activities to prepare the muscles for exercise. **SYN warm up.**

lean over at the waist (also **bend** your knee, elbow, etc.).

needing effort and energy. **SYN arduous.**

A thing that is **relentless** never seems to stop or get any easier.

happening or appearing again and again. **recur** v.

do A, then B, then do A again, and so on.

run a short distance very fast.

### 3 Circle the correct word(s). Sometimes both are correct.

- 1 I slept badly, so I feel a bit stiff / sluggish today.
- 2 Stretch / Bend your knees and touch your toes.
- 3 Gymnasts always look so supple / agile.
- 4 I recur / alternate between swimming and cycling.
- 5 My brother thought up / devised this new training method last year.
- 6 The garage is in relentless / constant use.
- 7 Lifting weights is quite strenuous / arduous.
- 8 I have this recurrent / constant back problem, but I'm fine at the moment.

### spotlight Expressions with constant

**Constant** means happening all the time or a lot of the time. It is commonly used with particular nouns.

*There were **constant** interruptions.*

*The phone is in **constant** use.*

*His wife needs **constant** attention.*

*They live in **constant** fear.*

### 4 Complete the sentences with a suitable word or phrase.

- 1 I couldn't do any work because of the \_\_\_\_\_ interruptions.
- 2 For breakfast I usually \_\_\_\_\_ between cereal and toast.
- 3 It's important to \_\_\_\_\_ first before you do any strenuous exercise.
- 4 My brother used to do 50 \_\_\_\_\_ every day.
- 5 I could \_\_\_\_\_ when I was younger but I can't run very fast now.
- 6 They've been burgled three times and now live in constant \_\_\_\_\_.





# 10 I can describe sounds



## A A sound story 🎧

It was a dark and stormy night; I shut my eyes ...

The windows **rattled** in the wind and there was a distant **rumble** of thunder. Trees **rustled** and big raindrops **splashed onto** the windows.

Then someone **beeped** their horn and a car stopped with a **screech** of brakes. Someone **slammed** the car door **shut** ... footsteps **squelched** through the mud ... a floorboard on the stairs **creaked** ... and there was a **high-pitched** scream – from me!

### Glossary

<b>rattle</b>	make or cause sth to make short, loud sounds. <b>rattle</b> N.
<b>rumble</b>	a long, deep sound or series of sounds. <b>rumble</b> v.
<b>rustle</b>	make or cause sth to make a noise like paper, leaves, etc. rubbing together. <b>rustle</b> N.
<b>splash on/onto sth</b>	(of a liquid) fall onto sth in large drops and make it wet. <b>splash</b> N.
<b>beep</b>	If a car horn <b>beeps</b> it makes a short high or loud sound. <b>beep</b> N.
<b>screech</b>	a loud, high, unpleasant sound. <b>screech</b> v.
<b>slam sth (shut)</b>	shut sth with a lot of force so that it makes a loud noise.
<b>squelch</b>	make a wet, sucking sound, e.g. when you walk through mud.
<b>creak</b>	make the sound that an old door or floor makes. <b>creak</b> N.
<b>high-pitched</b>	(of sounds) very high in the register of sound. <b>OPP low-pitched.</b>

### spotlight Ergative verbs

Ergative verbs, e.g. *slam*, *splash*, *rattle*, *rustle*, *beep*, can be used in a transitive and intransitive way, with the object in the transitive structure (e.g. *the door*) being the subject in the intransitive structure.

Marta **slammed** the door.  
The door **slammed**.

### 1 Complete the sentences with a word describing the sound you might hear.

- ▶ A badly played violin, tyres, and brakes can all make a screeching noise.
- 1 Computers, reversing lorries, and cameras all make a \_\_\_\_\_ sound.
- 2 Bottles in a bag, stones in a box, and old cars can make a \_\_\_\_\_ noise.
- 3 Feet walking through muddy fields make a \_\_\_\_\_ noise.
- 4 You can \_\_\_\_\_ the lid of a box, a fridge door, or a gate.
- 5 An old staircase and a bedroom door may \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 A mobile phone ring tone, a whistle, and a child screaming make a high-\_\_\_\_\_ sound.
- 7 Newspapers or autumn leaves make a \_\_\_\_\_ noise.
- 8 Distant traffic, gunfire, or thunder can make a \_\_\_\_\_ noise.

### 2 Complete the text with a suitable word.








I share an office with two colleagues and it's really hard to work with the constant noise. One of them sits on a wooden chair that (1) \_\_\_\_\_ every time he moves; the other is constantly (2) \_\_\_\_\_ bits of paper as he works. Plus he has a mobile phone which is always (3) \_\_\_\_\_. Across the corridor, there's a man who has a very (4) \_\_\_\_\_-pitched voice and he always seems to be (5) \_\_\_\_\_ at his secretary, poor woman. He's extremely bad-tempered and can't even leave his office without (6) \_\_\_\_\_ the door. It drives me mad. To make matters worse, there's a constant low (7) \_\_\_\_\_ of traffic outside, and as our windows don't fit properly, they (8) \_\_\_\_\_ when it's windy. I think I'm in the wrong job.





## B Animal sounds, human behaviour

Words describing animal sounds are often used figuratively to describe human behaviour.

Animal + sound	Meaning	Human behaviour
dogs  <b>bark</b>	make a short loud sound.	<i>My boss's <b>bark</b> is worse than his bite.</i> <small>INF</small> = He's not really as angry or aggressive as he sounds.
wolves  <b>howl</b>	make a long loud cry.	<i>He was <b>howling in pain</b>.</i> = crying loudly with pain. <i>The audience <b>howled with laughter</b>.</i> = laughed loudly.
dogs  <b>growl</b>	make a deep, angry sound.	<i>'What are you doing here?' he <b>growled</b>.</i> = said in a low, angry voice. <small>SYN</small> <b>snarl</b> .
bees  <b>buzz</b>	make a continuous low sound.	<i>After the meeting, my head was <b>buzzing</b> for hours.</i> = I was thinking about it continuously. <i>I was <b>buzzing about</b> all day.</i> = moving around continuously from place to place.
lions  <b>roar</b>	make a very loud deep sound.	<i>There was <b>a huge roar</b> when Drogba scored.</i> = a huge noise from the crowd. <i>We <b>roared with laughter</b>.</i> = laughed loudly.
mice  <b>squeak</b>	make a short high but not loud sound.	<i>'I've won the cup!' she <b>squeaked</b> down the phone.</i> = spoke in a high-pitched, excited voice. <b>squeaky</b> <small>ADJ</small> .
cocks  <b>crow</b>	make repeated loud sounds especially in the morning.	<i>He was <b>crowing about</b> his victory all night.</i> = talking too proudly about. <small>SYN</small> <b>boast (about sth)</b> .
owls  <b>hoot</b>	make a long 'oo' sound.	<i>She <b>hooted</b> at me.</i> = sounded her car horn. <i>There were <b>hoots of derision</b> from the audience.</i> = loud cries suggesting sb is stupid.

### 3 Write the correct animal for each noise.

- dogs roar lions roar      3 mice bark \_\_\_\_\_      6 dogs crow \_\_\_\_\_  
 1 cats squeak \_\_\_\_\_      4 bees howl \_\_\_\_\_      7 wolves buzz \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 lions hoot \_\_\_\_\_      5 owls growl \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 Positive or negative? Write P or N.

- 1 We were howling with laughter. \_\_\_\_\_      5 She roared with laughter. \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 There were hoots of derision. \_\_\_\_\_      6 She growled at me. \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 He boasts a lot. \_\_\_\_\_      7 His head's buzzing with ideas. \_\_\_\_\_  
 4 She was crowing about her results. \_\_\_\_\_      8 He snarled at me. \_\_\_\_\_

### 5 Complete the sentences.

- 1 We were a long way away, but we could hear the \_\_\_\_\_ from the stadium.  
 2 The tiger was lying there, \_\_\_\_\_ in pain, but we couldn't get nearer to help.  
 3 Don't worry about Mrs Clarkson – her \_\_\_\_\_ is worse than her \_\_\_\_\_.  
 4 The speaker had a high-pitched, \_\_\_\_\_ voice which was a bit annoying to listen to.  
 5 The driver behind \_\_\_\_\_ at me but I just sat waiting for the children to cross the road.  
 6 Ella was \_\_\_\_\_ about, passing drinks and handing out snacks to the party guests.





# 11 I can describe sight

## A Are computers bad for your eyesight? 🎧

### 👁️ eyesIGHT

Many of us spend hours every day working at a computer. As a result, **eye strain**, **discomfort**, and **blurred vision** are common complaints. Most people also **blink** less frequently when they are concentrating, resulting in poor **tear** production and dry, **irritated** eyes. Here's how you can change your computer use and **ease** your discomfort:

- ▶ **adjust** your computer screen so that it is 50–65 cm from your eyes, just below eye level
- ▶ adjust lighting to **eliminate glare**
- ▶ take frequent breaks, blink often to keep your eyes **moist**, and let your eye muscles relax by looking into the distance every 15 minutes.

### Glossary

		spotlight	-sighted
<b>eyesight</b>	the ability to see. <i>syn sight.</i> (You may have good/poor eyesight.)		
<b>eye strain</b>	a slight pain in your eyes, e.g. from reading a lot.		
<b>discomfort</b>	a feeling of slight pain.		
<b>blurred vision</b>	If your vision is <b>blurred</b> you cannot see clearly.		
<b>blink</b>	shut and open your eyes quickly.		
<b>tear</b>	a drop of liquid that comes out of your eye when you cry.		
<b>irritated</b>	painful, red, or swollen. <i>irritation n.</i>		
<b>ease sth</b>	make sth less unpleasant or painful. <i>syn alleviate sth.</i>		
<b>adjust sth</b>	change sth slightly to make it more suitable. <i>adjustment n.</i>		
<b>eliminate sth</b>	remove or get rid of sth. <i>elimination n.</i>		
<b>glare</b>	a bright, unpleasant light. (To <b>glare at sb</b> is to look at sb in an angry way.)		
<b>moist</b>	slightly wet, often in a way that is useful or pleasant. ( <b>Damp</b> means slightly wet, often in a way that is unpleasant.)		

### spotlight -sighted

If you are **short-sighted**, you are only able to see things if they are near you. *opp long-sighted.* A **partially sighted** person can see very little.

### 1 Circle the correct word(s). Sometimes both words are correct.

- 1 Did you know that pigs often have really poor sight / eyesight?
- 2 If you suffer from discomfort / irritation, try to get a better office chair.
- 3 His eyes are irritated so he keeps blinking / glaring.
- 4 We are currently trying to eliminate / adjust theft from our offices.
- 5 These sunglasses are great because they reduce glare / tears.
- 6 I'm seeing my optician tomorrow because I'm suffering from moist / blurred vision.

### 2 One word is missing in each line. What is it, and where does it go?

- ▶ The wood feels    so you won't be able to burn it. damp
- 1 Sore, tired, or burning eyes are classic symptoms of eye.
- 2 If your eyes are dry and try using eye drops.
- 3 He must be very            because he can't read the dictionary definitions.
- 4 You should get up and walk about to the problem of back pain.
- 5 Make a conscious effort to more often to prevent dry eyes.
- 6 Whenever I make too much noise in the office, my colleague glares me.





## B A peaceful sight

We stood at the top of the hill for ages, **gazing at the breathtaking** view below. In the distance, the port was **barely visible** through the early morning **haze**, but we could just **make out** the island. As we drove back down, I **caught a glimpse of** a waterfall and asked Marcello to stop. Suddenly, a deer **came into view**, and then we **spotted** two of her young. They **stood** completely **still**, **eyeing** us **warily**, then ran off and **vanished into thin air**.



### Glossary

<b>gaze at sth</b>	look at sth for a long time because you are interested in it or are thinking about sth else. <b>gaze</b> N.
<b>breathtaking</b>	very impressive. <b>SYN</b> <i>spectacular</i> .
<b>barely</b>	only with great difficulty or effort. <b>SYN</b> <i>only just</i> .
<b>visible</b>	A thing that is <b>visible</b> can be seen. <b>OPP</b> <i>invisible</i> .
<b>haze</b>	smoke, dust, or mist in the air which is hard to see through. <b>hazy</b> ADJ.
<b>make sth/sb out</b>	see, hear, or understand sth/sb with difficulty.
<b>come into view/sight</b>	appear. <b>OPP</b> <i>disappear from view/sight</i> .
<b>stand still</b>	stand without moving (also <i>keep/stay/sit still</i> ).
<b>eye sb/sth</b>	look at sb/sth carefully or because you are suspicious of them/it.
<b>warily</b>	carefully, because you think there may be danger or a problem.
<b>vanish into thin air</b>	disappear suddenly or in a way you cannot explain.

### spotlight Ways of seeing

To **catch a glimpse of sth/sb** or **glimpse sth** means to see them for a very short time and not clearly or completely. To **catch sight of sb/sth** means to see them suddenly, often when you have been hoping to see them. To **spot sb/sth** means to see them suddenly, especially when they are hard to see.  
*We caught a glimpse of the actress as she left the theatre.*  
*She caught sight of her cousin in the crowd.*  
*I spotted several mistakes in my work before I handed it in.*

### 3 Tick the words which are possible. More than one word may be possible.

- 1 She spotted him through the haze ☐ hazy ☐ gaze ☐ of cigarette smoke.
- 2 The scenery was absolutely visible ☐ spectacular ☐ breathtaking ☐.
- 3 After an hour's wait, we finally caught sight of ☐ spotted ☐ eyed ☐ the rare bird.
- 4 Could you please stand ☐ wait ☐ keep ☐ still?
- 5 We could warily ☐ only just ☐ barely ☐ see the church in the distance.
- 6 The Grand Palace finally came into ☐ disappeared from ☐ caught ☐ sight.

### 4 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

- He sat without moving while I drew him. **STILL** He sat still while I drew him.
- 1 I was only just able to see the boat on the horizon. **MAKE** \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 As I turned the corner, I suddenly saw the house. **CAME** \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 Those stars can't be seen without a telescope. **INVISIBLE** \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 We could barely see the trees through the fog. **ONLY** \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 She looked at me very suspiciously. **EYE** \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 The thief left the building and disappeared from view. **AIR** \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7 I saw the thief as he ran out of the building. **GLIMPSE** \_\_\_\_\_
  - 8 We watched the boat until eventually it vanished. **SIGHT** \_\_\_\_\_





# 12 I can describe touch, smell, and taste

## A Touching

### A Simple Face Massage

- 1 Start by **gently stroking** the whole face. With both hands, work up the neck, across the cheeks, **sliding steadily** up and over the forehead. **Apply gentle pressure** to the temples.
- 2 **Stimulate** the skin by gently **patting** the cheeks, neck, and under the chin.
- 3 Use your **fingertips**<sup>1</sup> to **lightly pinch** the skin along the line of the **jaw**<sup>2</sup> and under the chin.
- 4 To **release tension** around the eyes, **firmly squeeze** the eyebrows with your fingertips.
- 5 Massage the scalp **vigorously** as if shampooing the hair. This involves no risk of harm.



### Glossary

<b>massage</b>	<i>see picture. have a massage, massage sb v.</i>
<b>stroke sth</b>	move your hand over the skin, hair, etc. gently and slowly.
<b>slide</b>	move or make sth move easily over a smooth or wet surface.
<b>apply pressure to sth</b>	press on sth hard with your hand, foot, etc.
<b>stimulate sth</b>	make a part of the body or skin more active.
<b>pat sth</b>	touch sth lightly several times with your hand flat.
<b>pinch sth</b>	hold sth tightly between the thumb and finger.
<b>tension</b>	the feeling you have if your muscles are tight and not relaxed ( <b>release the tension</b> = allow or cause the muscles to relax).
<b>squeeze sth</b>	press sth firmly with your fingers.

### spotlight

### Adverbs of manner

**Gently** and **lightly** describe soft, relaxed movements; **firmly** is much stronger. If you move your hands **steadily** you make regular, controlled movements. **Vigorously** means in a very energetic and active way. **SYN energetically.**

### 1 Are these movements pleasant or unpleasant? Write P or U.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 She stroked the child's face. _____           | 5 She pinched my skin vigorously. _____         |
| 2 She rubbed my nose energetically. _____       | 6 She released the tension in my back. _____    |
| 3 She massaged my scalp gently. _____           | 7 She patted my face lightly. _____             |
| 4 She applied pressure firmly to my neck. _____ | 8 She slid her fingertips across my back. _____ |

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Don't \_\_\_\_\_ that tube too firmly – the toothpaste will come out all over you.
- 2 You can use certain products when showering to \_\_\_\_\_ your skin.
- 3 She sat staring into the distance, gently \_\_\_\_\_ the cat.
- 4 He \_\_\_\_\_ his hand over the magnificent marble statue.
- 5 He was nervous, but he concentrated on breathing \_\_\_\_\_, which calmed him down.
- 6 My horrible brother used to \_\_\_\_\_ my arms and legs when our mum wasn't looking.
- 7 The doctor \_\_\_\_\_ pressure to the wound to stop the bleeding.
- 8 Don't use the whole of your fingers for massage, just the \_\_\_\_\_.





## B Smelling and tasting

Pleasant smells/flavours	Meaning
What a <b>delicate</b> flavour/ <b>fragrance</b> .	<b>delicate</b> light and pleasant. SYN <b>subtle</b> . <b>fragrance</b> 1 a pleasant smell. <b>fragrant</b> ADJ. 2 a perfume.
It has a <b>faint</b> smell of pear.	<b>faint</b> just possible to smell, see, or hear.
The book has lots of <b>appetizing</b> recipes.	<b>appetizing</b> making you feel hungry. OPP <b>unappetizing</b> . (Lose your <b>appetite</b> = lose your desire for food.)
The smells from the kitchen were <b>making my mouth water</b> .	<b>water</b> If your mouth <b>waters</b> , you produce <b>saliva</b> (= the liquid produced in the mouth) and you want to eat. <b>mouth-watering</b> ADJ.
The <b>aroma</b> of fresh coffee.	<b>aroma</b> a pleasant, distinctive smell.
Less pleasant smells/flavours	
This soup is <b>insipid</b> .	<b>insipid</b> not having much taste. SYN <b>bland</b> .
Garlic has a <b>pungent</b> smell.	<b>pungent</b> very strong smelling.
The house has a <b>musty odour</b> .	<b>musty</b> smelling unpleasant or damp; without freshness. SYN <b>dank</b> . <b>odour</b> a smell, especially an unpleasant one.
This fish smells <b>revolting</b> . I think it's <b>gone off</b> .	<b>revolting</b> very unpleasant. SYN <b>disgusting</b> . <b>go off</b> (of food and drink) go bad and be unfit to eat or drink.
There was a <b>nauseating stench</b> in the basement.	<b>nauseating</b> making you feel you want to vomit. <b>stench</b> a strong, very unpleasant smell.

### 3 Circle the correct word.

- 1 a nutty fragrance / flavour
- 2 an appetizing / unappetizing odour
- 3 a pungent / bland smell of burning rubber
- 4 the musty / salty smell of old books
- 5 a delicate aroma / stench
- 6 it makes your mouth saliva / water
- 7 a fragrant / nauseating smell of old fish
- 8 meat without salt is revolting / insipid

#### spotlight Adjectives ending in -y

**Lemony, fishy, woody, nutty, peppery, salty, fruity** are often used to describe smells and flavours. The **-y** suffix can mean 'full of something', e.g. *This soup's very **salty***; or it means 'having a flavour/smell similar to sth', e.g. *a **lemony** perfume; cheese with a **nutty** flavour*.

### 4 Complete the text.

We found a table by the window and looked at the menu. It all looked very (1) a \_\_\_\_\_ and the smells coming from the kitchen were (2) m \_\_\_\_\_. I chose the steamed fish with herbs, which I expected to have quite a (3) d \_\_\_\_\_ flavour, but when it arrived, it had an unpleasant, almost (4) p \_\_\_\_\_ smell. I took a mouthful and realized that the fish had actually (5) g \_\_\_\_\_; it tasted absolutely (6) d \_\_\_\_\_. The waiter was extremely apologetic, but by this time I had lost my (7) a \_\_\_\_\_. I couldn't get the (8) s \_\_\_\_\_ of that horrid fish out of my mind. My brother's meal, however, was more successful: he had a chicken soup which was delicious, with delicate, (9) s \_\_\_\_\_ flavours.

### 5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.



- What makes your mouth water? \_\_\_\_\_
- What's your favourite smell? \_\_\_\_\_
- What food do you find bland or insipid? \_\_\_\_\_
- What odour do you find nauseating or revolting? \_\_\_\_\_
- Is there a dank or musty smell in any buildings you know? \_\_\_\_\_





# 13 I can describe illness and injuries

## A Problems from head to toe

Example	Meaning
I had an <b>itchy scalp</b> until I started using this special shampoo. 	<b>scalp</b> the skin covering the part of the head where your hair is. If it <b>itches</b> (or is <b>itchy</b> ), you want to <b>scratch</b> it (see picture).
I've got a <b>splitting headache</b> .	a very bad headache.
I suffer from <b>hay fever</b> in the summer.	an allergy affecting the nose, eyes, and throat, caused by pollen from plants.
Why does he get <b>mouth ulcers</b> ?	small sore areas inside the mouth, usually lasting a few days.
He <b>dislocated</b> his shoulder.	put a bone out of its normal position.
That's a <b>nasty rash</b> on your arm.	<b>rash</b> an area of red spots on the skin, caused by an illness or a reaction to sth; <b>nasty</b> = unpleasant (also a <b>nasty accident</b> ).
I had an <b>upset stomach</b> this morning. (or I had a <b>stomach upset</b> . . .)	a stomach problem causing sickness or <b>diarrhoea</b> (= passing waste from the body too often and in liquid form).
I often get <b>constipated</b> on holiday.	unable to move waste material from the body. <b>constipation</b> N.
My mother's got <b>high blood pressure</b> .	<b>blood pressure</b> the pressure of the blood as it moves round the body. ( <b>High</b> and <b>low blood pressure</b> are problem conditions.)
I <b>sprained</b> my <b>ankle</b> <sup>1</sup> running.  He <b>pulled a muscle</b> <sup>2</sup> in training.	<b>sprain sth</b> injure a part of the body (usually the wrist or ankle) by turning it suddenly. SYN <b>twist sth</b> . <b>pull a muscle</b> injure a muscle by stretching it too much.
I've got a <b>blister</b> on my <b>heel</b> from wearing those new shoes.	a sore swelling on the surface of the skin (here on the back of the foot) often caused by rubbing or burning.

### 1 Combine words in the box to form nine common illnesses or injuries.

sprain   high   hay   upset   nasty   dislocated   splitting   itchy  
 stomach   scalp   blood pressure   mouth   shoulder   fever   headache  
 your ankle   rash   ulcer

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Complete the sentences with a single word.

- I've got \_\_\_\_\_ on my hands from working so hard in the garden.
- I sometimes get a \_\_\_\_\_ on my face if I eat seafood.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ was caused by something I ate last night.
- I've got a few mosquito bites and they really \_\_\_\_\_.
- I took tablets for diarrhoea, then I had the opposite problem. I was \_\_\_\_\_.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ a muscle in training yesterday.

### 3 ABOUT YOU Which problems do you think are serious, and how many of them would require a visit to the doctor? Write your answers or ask another student.



## B Medicine labels

Tablets must be **dissolved** in water.

This product can cause **lethargy** or **drowsiness**.

For **short-term** use only.

**WARNING**  
DO NOT **EXCEED**  
THE STATED **DOSE**

Please read the **enclosed leaflet** before taking these tablets.

Possible **side effects** may include stomach **disorders**.

**Discard** any remaining solution 60 days after opening the bottle.

If symptoms **persist**, consult your doctor.

Do not use after **expiry date**.

### spotlight **exceed and related forms**

- do more of sth than is stated in an order or a law.  
*Do not **exceed** the **stated dose**.*  
*You shouldn't **exceed** the **speed limit**.*
- be greater than a number, amount, or quality.  
*The cost won't **exceed** \$5,000. OR The cost won't be **in excess of** \$5,000.*  
*The film **exceeded my expectations**. (= it was better than I had expected)*

### Glossary

<b>dissolve sth</b> (in sth)	mix a solid with a liquid until it becomes part of it. (If sth is <b>soluble</b> it can be dissolved, e.g. <b>soluble aspirin</b> .)
<b>lethargy</b>	the state of not having any energy to do things. <b>lethargic</b> ADJ.
<b>drowsiness</b>	the state of feeling tired and almost asleep. <b>drowsy</b> ADJ.
<b>short-term</b>	lasting only a short period, e.g. a <b>short-term solution</b> . <b>OPP</b> long-term, e.g. a <b>long-term contract</b> .
<b>dose (or dosage)</b>	the amount of a medicine that you take at any one time.
<b>enclosed</b>	included inside sth else, usually inside a letter or packet.
<b>leaflet</b>	one or several pages of information about sth.
<b>side effect</b>	an extra and usually bad effect that a drug has on you.
<b>disorder</b>	an illness in a part of the body.
<b>discard sth</b>	get rid of sth you no longer want or need.
<b>persist</b>	continue to exist (used especially about sth unpleasant). <b>persistent</b> ADJ.
<b>expiry date</b>	the date after which sth should not be used. <b>expire</b> V.

#### 4 True or false? Write T or F.

- Drugs can have side effects. \_\_\_\_\_
- Drowsiness means dying under water. \_\_\_\_\_
- You can read a leaflet. \_\_\_\_\_
- Lethargy means a lack of energy. \_\_\_\_\_
- If something persists, it stops. \_\_\_\_\_
- 'In excess of 50' is more than 50. \_\_\_\_\_
- You can dissolve sugar in water. \_\_\_\_\_
- If you feel drowsy, you want to sleep. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 5 Add a word to complete a common phrase.

- Don't exceed the stated \_\_\_\_\_
- a long-\_\_\_\_\_ solution
- the expiry \_\_\_\_\_
- soluble \_\_\_\_\_
- exceed the speed \_\_\_\_\_
- common side \_\_\_\_\_

#### 6 Rewrite the sentences but keep the meaning the same. You only need one word.

- I don't have any energy.  
I feel \_\_\_\_\_.
- He's got something wrong with his stomach.  
He's got a stomach \_\_\_\_\_.
- The information is included with this letter.  
The information is \_\_\_\_\_.
- It was better than I thought it would be.  
It exceeded my \_\_\_\_\_.
- I keep getting headaches.  
I've had \_\_\_\_\_ headaches.
- They threw away the old newspapers.  
They \_\_\_\_\_ the old newspapers.





# Review: The body

## Unit 7

### 1 Match the sentence halves.

- |                                    |               |
|------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1 The baby had chubby              | a attention.  |
| 2 His stomach sticks               | b hips.       |
| 3 He wouldn't pay                  | c paunch.     |
| 4 When she walks she swings her    | d beard.      |
| 5 He's got freckles all over his   | e guidelines. |
| 6 He eats far too much; he's got a | f out.        |
| 7 I followed the                   | g face.       |
| 8 He's got a ginger                | h cheeks.     |

### 2 One word is incorrect in each sentence. Cross it out and write the correct word at the end.

- Fashion experts always recommend that you ~~pull~~ off your best features. show
- 1 The teacher attracted my attention to several errors in my essay. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Light-coloured walls in a room make an illusion of space. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 As a child, I had to wear a brace for a year to loosen my teeth. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Unfortunately, tight shirts only enhance the size of his paunch. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I'm not sure of her exact age but she must be going on for ninety. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Vertical stripes can be unflattering, making you look slimmer. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 I wish I knew the key for success in life. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Vertical stripes on sleeves can cover the fact that you have plump arms. \_\_\_\_\_

**A Z** more words: *stocky, lanky, gaunt, stooped, rugged features, ruddy cheeks*

## Unit 8

### 1 Complete the dialogue.

- A I had an embarrassing time last night; I was in a bar and this guy thought I was (1) f\_\_\_\_\_ with him.
- B And why was that?
- A Well, he must have thought I (2) f\_\_\_\_\_ him for some reason.
- B Why? Were you staring at him or (3) f\_\_\_\_\_ with your hair, or something?
- A Well I was actually looking at the people behind him, but I guess he thought I was trying to make eye (4) c\_\_\_\_\_ with him. Basically he just jumped to the wrong (5) c\_\_\_\_\_. Anyway, he came over and started chatting, and he was (6) l\_\_\_\_\_ towards me, a bit too close, actually. And I realized I was being quite defensive because I noticed that my arms were (7) f\_\_\_\_\_ across my chest, and I was just (8) g\_\_\_\_\_ redder and redder with embarrassment.
- B Well, maybe he just (9) m\_\_\_\_\_ the signals you were giving off. Did you get rid of him?
- A Well, no ... in the end we got talking and I realized he was really nice, so I think I might see him again.

**A Z** more words: *wink, frown, twitch, pout, grimace, wriggle*

## Unit 9

### 1 Write a logical answer.

- 1 Why might someone have a pronounced limp? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 What would make a horse gallop? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Why might you go for a stroll? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Why might you creep downstairs? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Is it good to have constant interruptions at work? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 If work is relentless, is it enjoyable? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 On a long walk, why might you alternate between walking and running? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 What should you do if you feel stiff? \_\_\_\_\_

**A Z** more words: *stumble, trudge, shuffle, meander, get a move on, stampede*

## Unit 10

### 1 Complete the sound story from the unit.

It was a dark and stormy night; I shut my eyes . . .

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 the wind r _____ the windows               | 6 there was a s _____ of brakes               |
| 2 thunder r _____ in the distance            | 7 a car door was s _____ shut                 |
| 3 the trees r _____ in the wind              | 8 footsteps s _____ through the mud           |
| 4 I heard the rain s _____ on to the windows | 9 there was a c _____ noise on the stairs     |
| 5 a horn b _____                             | 10 there was a high-p _____ scream – from me! |

### 2 Match the things/animals with the correct noise in the box.

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1 lions _____       | 5 car brakes _____ |
| 2 floorboards _____ | 6 dogs _____       |
| 3 wolves _____      | 7 bees _____       |
| 4 windows _____     | 8 doors _____      |

slam	howl
rattle	buzz
roar	bark
creak	screech

**A Z** more words: *hiss, grunt, whine, squeal, shriek, yap, purr*

## Unit 11

### 1 There is one spelling mistake in each sentence. Find the mistake and correct it.

- 1 It was so dark when we left that I could barely see. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 You get breathmaking views from the top of the hill. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I think she's been suffering from blurred vision. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 They were eyeing us wearily, so they obviously didn't trust us. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 There were teals running down her cheeks. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I noticed that she was blinting a lot; perhaps she was nervous. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 We stood and gazed at the view; it was spectacular. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 I've got some drops to alleriate the pain. \_\_\_\_\_

**A Z** more words: *squint, peer, scan, conspicuous, bleary-eyed, distinct*



## Unit 12

1 Put these words into the correct columns below.

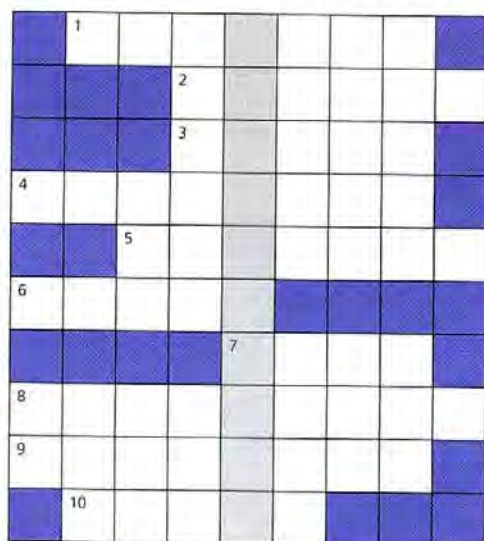
tap    stench    fragrance    vigorous    bland    squeeze    aroma    insipid  
musty    stroke    slide    pungent    pinch    peppery

TOUCH	SMELL	TASTE

**A Z** more words: *slap, nudge, feel around for sth, poke, tickle, flick, scrape*

## Unit 13

1 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out a phrase. What is it?



- Some drugs can give you side \_\_\_\_\_ you don't expect.
- We guarantee that the rise will not be in \_\_\_\_\_ of 3 per cent.
- I had a terrible headache and an \_\_\_\_\_ stomach yesterday.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ his ankle walking in the mountains.
- Go and see your doctor if the symptoms \_\_\_\_\_ for more than two days.
- If your skin feels \_\_\_\_\_, avoid scratching it if possible.
- Take care not to exceed the \_\_\_\_\_ stated on the packet.
- Some medicine can make you feel drowsy or \_\_\_\_\_.
- Her skin is very soft, so she easily gets \_\_\_\_\_ on her fingers when playing tennis.
- I have a mouth \_\_\_\_\_ – it's really sore.

2 Cross out any words which are not possible.

- The *long-term* / *short-term* / *soluble* answer to this problem is to have an operation.
- I had a *persistent* / *twisted* / *splitting* headache this morning.
- What is the correct *dose* / *dosage* / *side effect* for this medicine?
- She exceeded the *speed limit* / *the expiry date* / *all my expectations*.
- I have *constipated* / *an itchy scalp* / *a nasty rash*.
- A *rash* / *Drowsiness* / *Lethargy* indicates a lack of energy.

**A Z** more words: *dandruff, bowels, gums, runny nose, lump, cramp*

# 14 I can discuss aspects of character

## A Personal qualities

### Online dating: find your dream partner

Katarina's profile:

I'm a **spontaneous, happy-go-lucky** sort of person, but I'm pretty **down-to-earth** too. My friends say I'm a real **chatterbox** but maybe that's because I'm truly **passionate** about people, ideas, life, etc. I'll **give** anything a **go, within reason**!

Katarina describes her ideal match:

I'm **drawn to** men who are **considerate** and happy to show **affection**. A guy with **integrity**, and NOT **pretentious**. As you can imagine, I think **spontaneity** is a positive **attribute** – I love things to be a bit unpredictable.



### Glossary

<b>spontaneous</b>	acting in an open and natural way, without worrying about what you say or do. <b>spontaneity</b> N.
<b>happy-go-lucky</b>	not caring or worrying about the future.
<b>down-to-earth</b>	sensible and realistic in things you say or think.
<b>chatterbox</b>	INF a person who talks a lot. <b>chatty</b> ADJ.
<b>passionate</b>	very enthusiastic or interested in sth. <b>passion (for sth)</b> N.
<b>give sth a go</b>	be prepared to try sth. <b>SYN have a go, give sth a try.</b>
<b>within reason</b>	according to what is practical, possible, or sensible.
<b>be drawn to sth/sb</b>	be attracted to sb/sth.
<b>considerate</b>	always thinking about other people's wishes and feelings. <b>SYN thoughtful.</b> <b>OPP inconsiderate.</b>
<b>affection</b>	the feeling of liking or caring about sth/sb. <b>affectionate</b> ADJ.
<b>integrity</b>	the quality of being honest and having strong moral principles.
<b>pretentious</b>	trying to appear important, intelligent, etc. to impress others.
<b>attribute</b>	a quality or feature of sb/sth.

### 1 Correct the mistakes.

- I've never been drawn by people just because they're affectionate. to \_\_\_\_\_
- My cousin's a very lucky-go-happy person. \_\_\_\_\_
  - You can wear what you like to school, with reason. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I'd love to have a go for skydiving. \_\_\_\_\_
  - She's very kind and inconsiderate; she's always helping people. \_\_\_\_\_
  - My father had a lifelong passionate for classical music. \_\_\_\_\_
  - She's good fun but she's a real chatty! \_\_\_\_\_
  - He's a great boss – really down-the-earth. \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- Integrity is usually considered to be a positive \_\_\_\_\_.
- Marisa was very cold and strict with her children and showed them little \_\_\_\_\_.
- If you want to try skiing, why don't you just give it a \_\_\_\_\_?
- She's always using foreign words when she speaks – I just find that very \_\_\_\_\_.
- He loves to do things without any planning – he's very \_\_\_\_\_.
- I've never trusted Morgan; he's got no principles. He lacks \_\_\_\_\_.





## B Character in a work context

- A **What did you make of** the two candidates for the job?
- B I thought Joe Pascoe was **a real character** – **quick-witted**, and **shrewd**.
- A Shrewd, yes, and I'd say pretty **ruthless** too. But I didn't **take to** him personally. I thought he **came across as** rather **pushy** and a bit **conceited**. Catherine actually **struck me as** being more suitable for this job.
- B She certainly seemed very **conscientious** and **trustworthy**, but I wonder whether she's got the necessary **charisma**, or whether she's **assertive** enough for this role.
- A Maybe not. But she's not the kind of person who'd **get up people's noses**, which Joe might.



### Glossary

<b>What do you make of sb/sth?</b>	= What's your impression of sb/sth?	<b>conceited</b>	DISAPPROVING thinking you are very important, clever, etc.
<b>character</b>	INF An interesting or unusual person can be called <b>a character</b> (or <b>a real character</b> ).	<b>strike sb (as sth)</b>	give sb a particular impression.
<b>quick-witted</b>	able to think quickly; intelligent.	<b>conscientious</b>	taking care to do things carefully and correctly.
<b>shrewd</b>	good at judging people and situations. SYN <b>astute</b> .	<b>trustworthy</b>	able to be relied on as good, honest, etc.
<b>ruthless</b>	determined to get what you want and not caring about others.	<b>charisma</b>	a quality that makes other people like you and be attracted to you.
<b>take to sb/sth</b>	start liking sb/sth.	<b>assertive</b>	<b>charismatic</b> ADJ. behaving confidently so that people take notice of what you say.
<b>come across (as)</b>	make a particular impression.	<b>get up sb's nose</b>	INF annoy sb very much.
<b>pushy</b>	INF trying hard to get what you want, especially in a rude manner.		

### 3 Positive or negative? Write P or N.

- 1 She gets up my nose. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 He's pretty trustworthy. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 She strikes me as shrewd. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 He's very quick-witted. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 He comes across as quite pushy. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 She's pretty ruthless. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 He's a real character. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 He's not very astute. \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 I'd say she was conscientious. \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 She's very charismatic. \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 Complete the text.

There's a new guy living next door to us and I didn't know what to (1) m\_\_\_\_\_ of him at first. He wasn't very friendly and he walked about as if he was 'Mr-Know-It-All', so he (2) s\_\_\_\_\_ me as rather (3) c\_\_\_\_\_. I just didn't (4) t\_\_\_\_\_ to him at all. He took my parking space several times, which really got up my (5) n\_\_\_\_\_. So, last night, I decided to be (6) a\_\_\_\_\_ and challenge him about it. He was fine and apologized! I was really quite surprised.

### 5 ABOUT YOU Complete the questions, then write your answers or ask another student.

- 1 Do you consider yourself to be c\_\_\_\_\_ nsc\_\_\_\_\_ nt\_\_\_\_\_ s?
- 2 How \_\_\_\_\_ ss \_\_\_\_\_ rt \_\_\_\_\_ v\_\_\_\_\_ are you if things don't go your way?
- 3 Do you think you're shr \_\_\_\_\_ d with money?
- 4 Do you have the capacity to be r \_\_\_\_\_ thl \_\_\_\_\_ ss if necessary?
- 5 How tr \_\_\_\_\_ stw \_\_\_\_\_ rthy do you consider yourself to be?



## C Judging character

**H**OW SOMEONE appears **on the surface** may not be a true picture of what they're really like. A person who seems **aloof** and **stand-offish** may just be shy and **diffident**. As they say: **Don't judge a book by its cover**. Other personality **traits** can be **misleading**; a bad quality in one context may be a **virtue** in another, e.g. being **cunning**, or **impulsive**, or **naive**. Then there are qualities considered to be negative, but is it always wrong to be cruel or **cynical**? Remember the saying: sometimes you have to **be cruel to be kind**.

### Glossary

<b>on the surface</b>	when not looked at or thought about carefully.	<b>virtue</b>	a good or desirable quality. OPP <b>vice</b> . <b>virtuous</b> ADJ.
<b>aloof</b>	not friendly towards others. SYNS <b>distant</b> , <b>stand-offish</b> INF.	<b>cunning</b>	able to do things by being clever, but not always honest. SYN <b>crafty</b> .
<b>diffident</b>	not confident; not wanting to talk about yourself. SYN <b>shy</b> .	<b>impulsive</b>	doing things quickly, without thinking about the results. SYNS <b>impetuous</b> , <b>rash</b> .
<b>don't judge a book by its cover</b>	SAYING don't form an opinion of sth/sb by their appearance only.	<b>naive</b>	lacking experience of life, and trusting others too easily. <b>naivety</b> N.
<b>trait</b>	a feature of sb's character.	<b>be cruel to be kind</b>	SAYING make sb suffer because it will be good for them later.
<b>misleading</b>	giving the wrong idea or impression. SYN <b>deceptive</b> . <b>mislead sb</b> V. SYN <b>deceive sb</b> .		

### spotlight *cynical, sceptical*

If you are **cynical**, you believe people do things for themselves rather than for unselfish reasons. **cynicism** N.

If you are **sceptical about sth**, you are not confident that it is true or will happen. **scepticism** N.

*My brother is very **cynical** about politicians and their motives. I'm very **sceptical about** the results of this survey.*

### 6 Replace the underlined word with another word that has a similar meaning.

- Don't be deceived by her sweet smile; she's really tough. \_\_\_\_\_
- I don't know why he's so aloof, but he certainly isn't very friendly. \_\_\_\_\_
- Simon is usually rather shy in company. \_\_\_\_\_
- Jumping off that wall was such an impetuous thing to do. \_\_\_\_\_
- You have to keep an eye on Will because he's very crafty. \_\_\_\_\_
- His charm is misleading because he can be ruthless if necessary. \_\_\_\_\_

### 7 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- Most people believe that honesty is a \_\_\_\_\_ and jealousy is a \_\_\_\_\_.
- He told me he'd win the race but I'm a bit \_\_\_\_\_. I don't think he's good enough.
- He says he loves her. I'm a bit \_\_\_\_\_; I think he just wants her money.
- I felt bad not giving my dog any food when he was ill, but you have to be \_\_\_\_\_ to be kind.
- On the \_\_\_\_\_ she seemed quite cold, but you can't judge a book by its \_\_\_\_\_.
- Cynicism is one of his less appealing character \_\_\_\_\_.
- Ella's problem is \_\_\_\_\_; she trusts people too easily and then gets hurt.





# 15 I can talk about feelings

## A Strong feelings and reactions

Word/Phrase	Example	Meaning
<b>ecstatic</b>	I was <b>ecstatic</b> about my new job.	very happy. SYNS <b>euphoric</b> , <b>elated</b> , <b>over the moon</b> INF.
<b>jubilant</b>	The <b>jubilant</b> fans were cheering as they left the stadium.	feeling extremely happy because of a success.
<b>in tears</b>	She was <b>in tears</b> by the time we got to the hospital.	crying ( <b>close to tears</b> = nearly crying).
<b>devastated</b>	I was <b>devastated</b> when she left me.	very upset. SYN <b>heartbroken</b> .
<b>lose your temper</b> <b>hit the roof</b> INF	He completely <b>lost his temper</b> . He'll <b>hit the roof</b> when he sees it.	become very angry. SYN <b>go mad</b> INF.
<b>gutted</b> INF	I was <b>gutted</b> when we lost the match.	very disappointed.
<b>hysterical</b>	When the little girl collapsed, her mother became <b>hysterical</b> . The kids at the party were <b>hysterical</b> .	being in a state of extreme distress or excitement and crying, laughing, or shouting, etc.
<b>stunned</b>	I was <b>stunned</b> when they gave me the prize.	shocked and surprised. SYN <b>gobsmacked</b> INF.
<b>appalled</b>	I was <b>appalled</b> by the conditions they had to live in.	shocked because sth is very unpleasant. SYN <b>horrified</b> .

### 1 Are these positive or negative? Write P or N.

- |                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1 ecstatic _____  | 5 euphoric _____  |
| 2 gutted _____    | 6 appalled _____  |
| 3 horrified _____ | 7 elated _____    |
| 4 jubilant _____  | 8 desperate _____ |

### spotlight **desperate and related forms**

**Desperate** means extremely anxious.  
Without food or money, Karen was **desperate**.  
Jumping into the freezing water was an act of **sheer** (= absolute) **desperation** N.  
He was **desperately unhappy** ADV (= extremely unhappy).

### 2 Find six phrases in the box.

lose over desperately close unhappy hit your temper mad  
go to tears the roof the moon

### 3 Complete the dialogues by repeating what the speaker says in a different way.

- I should think she was gobsmacked.~ She was – absolutely \_\_\_\_\_.
- Did he get very angry?~ Yes, I'm afraid he lost \_\_\_\_\_.
- Had he given up hope of being rescued?~ Yes. It was an act of \_\_\_\_\_.
- Was he terribly upset?~ Yes, he was absolutely \_\_\_\_\_.
- He must've gone mad.~ He did. He hit \_\_\_\_\_.
- I bet they were over the moon.~ Yes, they were absolutely \_\_\_\_\_.
- She was really emotional, wasn't she?~ Yes, she was in \_\_\_\_\_.
- Were the children overexcited?~ Yes, they were \_\_\_\_\_.



## B Expressing your emotions

**A**RE YOU the kind of person who **bottles up their emotions**? Or do you **wear your heart on your sleeve**? As a journalist, I'm aware that if you **disclose** too much about yourself, you could make yourself rather **vulnerable**. And if I'm honest, as a man I feel a bit **uneasy** when people **pour out** their **innermost thoughts** to me. My own **instinct** is to be quite **guarded** and not **give away** too much about how I feel. On the other hand, psychologists say it's unhealthy to **suppress your feelings**. It can lead to severe anxiety and depression if you don't learn how to release your **pent-up** emotions. •

### spotlight

### Other expressions with heart

*I started a business degree, but **my heart wasn't really in it**. (= I wasn't interested in or enthusiastic about it.)*  
***I didn't have the heart to** tell her she'd failed. (= I was unable to tell her that she'd failed, because I knew she'd be upset.)*

***My heart told me** to help him. (= Emotionally, I felt I should help him.)*

### Glossary

<b>bottle sth up</b>	stop yourself showing negative emotions or feelings, especially over a long time ( <b>bottle up your emotions</b> ).
<b>wear your heart on your sleeve</b>	make your feelings obvious to others.
<b>disclose sth (to sb)</b>	give sb information about sth, especially sth that has been secret. SYN <b>reveal sth</b> . (Related nouns are <b>disclosure</b> and <b>revelation</b> .)
<b>vulnerable</b>	weak and easily hurt, physically or emotionally.
<b>uneasy</b>	slightly nervous, embarrassed, or worried. SYN <b>uncomfortable</b> .
<b>pour sth out</b>	express all your feelings, often because you are unhappy.
<b>innermost thoughts</b>	the thoughts which are most personal and private.
<b>instinct</b>	a way of behaving that results from responses you were born with rather than responses you have learned. <b>instinctive</b> ADJ.
<b>guarded</b>	careful not to give too much information. SYN <b>cautious</b> .
<b>give sth away</b>	tell people secret information.
<b>suppress your feelings</b>	stop yourself from having or expressing feelings.
<b>pent-up</b>	(of emotions, energy, etc.) held back; not shown or expressed.

#### 4 Replace the underlined word(s) with a word that has a similar meaning.

- I felt uncomfortable when he talked about his marriage problems. \_\_\_\_\_
- He wouldn't disclose information if he thought it was secret. \_\_\_\_\_
- I think it's dangerous to bottle up your feelings. \_\_\_\_\_
- It's a difficult time for him and he's very weak and easily hurt. \_\_\_\_\_
- She's a bit cautious if you ask about her private life. \_\_\_\_\_
- He's happy to tell anyone his most personal and private thoughts. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 5 Complete the sentences.

- I knew he would be upset and I'm afraid I didn't have the \_\_\_\_\_ to tell him.
- She took part in the dancing competition, but you could tell her heart \_\_\_\_\_.
- The wedding date was meant to be a secret, but I'm afraid he \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
- Maxine's problem is that she wears her heart \_\_\_\_\_, whereas Gavin's the opposite: he has all these \_\_\_\_\_ emotions which he can't express.
- I should consider this more carefully, but my \_\_\_\_\_ says it's the right thing to do.





# 16 I can talk about relationships

## A Difficult relationships



When I married Vince, he already had two daughters from his first marriage, and they **took an instant dislike to** me. They **resented** me being in their home, and either ignored me or were openly **hostile**.

The neighbours didn't help either – nice enough **to my face** but not so **complimentary behind my back**. It was a **tough** time, and **inevitably** it **put a strain on** my relationship with Vince. Fortunately, he **stuck up for me** when the kids were difficult, and **as time went by**, things **settled down** a bit. Now, two years on...

### Glossary

**take an instant dislike to sb** dislike sb as soon as you meet them.

**resent sth** feel anger about sth, often when it seems unfair. **resentment** N.

**hostile** unfriendly and aggressive. **hostility** N.  
**to sb's face** If you say sth **to sb's face**, you say it to them directly.

**complimentary (about sb)** saying nice things about sb. (You can also **compliment sb on sth** or **pay sb a compliment**.)

**behind sb's back** If you say or do sth **behind sb's back**, you say or do it without their knowledge, and usually it is bad or unkind.

**inevitably** used for saying that sth is certain to happen. **inevitable** ADJ.

**put a strain on sb/sth** create pressure and anxiety for sb; create tension in a relationship.

**stick up for sb** support and defend sb if they are criticized.

**as time went by** over a period of time.

**settle down** become calmer and more relaxed.

### 1 Positive or negative? Write P or N.

- 1 She was full of resentment. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 He was very complimentary. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 She did it behind my back. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 She can stick up for herself. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 He was hostile. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Things have settled down. \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Complete the words in the text.

Martin had been a top designer, and his boss had always been very (1) c\_\_\_\_\_ about his work. It was, therefore, a nasty shock when he was made redundant. Martin (2) r\_\_\_\_\_ the fact that he was chosen because he was the youngest, but he was even more shocked by his wife's (3) h\_\_\_\_\_. She blamed Martin for not (4) s\_\_\_\_\_ up for himself, and this fact, on top of the loss of his income, (5) i\_\_\_\_\_ put a big (6) s\_\_\_\_\_ on their relationship. They would need to make some (7) t\_\_\_\_\_ decisions about the future.

### spotlight **tough**

*Tough* has different meanings.

- 1 difficult: *It's a **tough** decision. He had a **tough** childhood.*
- 2 strict: ***tough** new driving laws.*
- 3 able to deal with difficult situations: *She'll be OK – she's **tough**.*

### 3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Have you ever taken an \_\_\_\_\_ dislike to someone? Why? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 When did you last have to stick \_\_\_\_\_ for yourself? Why? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 When did you last pay someone a \_\_\_\_\_? What for? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Do you find it difficult to criticize people to their \_\_\_\_\_? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Do you think your life is getting better as time \_\_\_\_\_ by? \_\_\_\_\_

### ABOUT YOU

### 4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.





## B Successful relationships

Now, two years on, **things** are **looking up**. **Initially** the kids were **reluctant** to **accept** me and **made things difficult**, but I gave up work to spend more time with them, and that's helped to create a closer **bond**. I've **gained** their **respect** in other ways, too – they're prepared to **confide in** me now, especially the younger one. Vince and I still have our **ups and downs** – who doesn't? – but I know he **appreciates** the **sacrifices** I've **made**, and **the way things are** now, I'm feeling optimistic.



### spotlight accept

**Accept** has other meanings apart from saying 'yes' to an offer.

- allow sb to be part of a group:  
*They **accepted me** as one of the family.*
- agree to sth:  
*The council has **accepted** the latest proposal.*
- believe that sth is true:  
*He won't **accept that** nothing can be changed.*
- admit you did sth wrong:  
*He **accepts responsibility** for the accident.*

### Glossary

**things** USU, PL used to talk about a situation or life in general (e.g. **the way things are**; **make things difficult**; **how are things?**).

**look up** INF (used about sb's situation or business) start to become better.

**initially** in the beginning. **initial** ADJ.

**reluctant** not wanting to do sth.

SYN **unwilling**. **reluctance** N.

**bond** a connection between people based on shared feelings or experiences.

**respect (for sb)** a feeling of admiration for sb because of their qualities. (You can **gain**, **earn**, or **win sb's respect**.)

**respect** V.

**confide in sb** tell sb personal information because you trust them.

**ups and downs** a mixture of good and bad things in life or a relationship.

**appreciate sth** recognize sth and welcome it. **appreciation** N.

**make a sacrifice** give up sth important or valuable in order to do sth that seems more important. **sacrifice** sth V.

### 5 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- He's fully accepted to our decision. \_\_\_\_\_
- She feels she can confide with me. \_\_\_\_\_
- I think they all respect for him. \_\_\_\_\_
- The initially problem was money. \_\_\_\_\_
- I regret his reluctant to go. \_\_\_\_\_
- It took time to hold their respect. \_\_\_\_\_

### 6 Replace the underlined word/phrase with another word/phrase that has the same meaning.

- How's life? \_\_\_\_\_
- They were very unwilling to leave. \_\_\_\_\_
- She recognizes and is grateful for everything you've done. \_\_\_\_\_
- In the beginning it was a difficult relationship. \_\_\_\_\_
- He is prepared to take responsibility for what happened. \_\_\_\_\_
- There is widespread admiration for what he has achieved. \_\_\_\_\_
- We've had good times and bad times in our relationship. \_\_\_\_\_
- I had a tough time last year but things are improving now. \_\_\_\_\_
- I like the situation as it is. \_\_\_\_\_
- Because of the special connection parents have with their children, they often give up many important things for them. \_\_\_\_\_





# 17 I can talk about people I admire and loathe

## A Qualities of personal heroes

My **heroine** was Mother Theresa. I admired her **courage**, her **dignity**, and her **humility**. More than anyone, she **inspired** me to devote my life to looking after people.

I used to **idolize** David Beckham. I admired him for his **dedication**, and the fact that when the press **had a go at** him, he never reacted in a negative way.

I really **looked up to** my grandfather. He was a lifeboat captain for 20 years, and showed remarkable **bravery** on many occasions. One day I hope to **follow in his footsteps**.

### Glossary

<b>heroine</b>	Your <b>heroine</b> is a woman you admire for her ability or personal qualities ( <b>hero</b> for a man). <b>SYN</b> <b>idol</b> .
<b>courage</b>	the ability to do sth, even though it is dangerous, frightening, or very difficult. <b>courageous</b> ADJ. <b>SYNS</b> <b>bravery</b> N, <b>brave</b> ADJ.
<b>dignity</b>	a calm, controlled manner in a difficult situation. <b>dignified</b> ADJ.
<b>humility</b>	the quality of not believing you are better or more important than others. <b>humble</b> ADJ.
<b>inspire sb</b>	give sb the enthusiasm and desire to do sth. <b>inspiration</b> N. <b>inspirational</b> ADJ.
<b>idolize sb</b>	admire or love sb very much. <b>SYN</b> <b>worship sb</b> .
<b>dedication</b>	the hard work and effort that sb puts into an activity because they care about it. <b>dedicate sth/yourself to sth/sb</b> V. <b>dedicated</b> ADJ.
<b>have a go at sb</b>	<b>INF</b> say unkind things or complain about sb. <b>SYN</b> <b>criticize sb</b> .
<b>look up to sb</b>	admire and respect sb, often sb who is older or in a higher position.
<b>follow in sb's footsteps</b>	do the same work or be as successful as sb before you.

### 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in CAPITALS.

- He was so ..... **COURAGE**
- He's a very ..... man. **HUMILITY**
- She showed great ..... **BRAVE**
- He's an ..... leader. **INSPIRATION**
- She has such ..... **DIGNIFIED**
- I ..... him. **IDOL**

### 2 Rewrite the sentences starting with the words given. The meaning must stay the same.

- |   |                         |
|---|-------------------------|
| 1 I admired my father.                  | I looked .....          |
| 2 I want to do the same work as him.    | I want to follow .....  |
| 3 Why did she criticize him?            | Why did she have .....? |
| 4 He was dedicated to helping the poor. | He dedicated .....      |
| 5 She inspired me.                      | She was .....           |
| 6 Paula worshipped him.                 | He was .....            |

### 3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

- Who do you idolize or look up to? Why? .....
- Would you like to follow in anyone's footsteps? .....
- Do you know anyone who you would describe as:  
courageous or dignified or humble or dedicated? .....

## B People we loathe and why we hate them 🎧

Pop stars who start off as **rebels** or **idealists** with strong moral **principles**. Then, as soon as they become rich and famous, their **values** change completely. What **hypocrites**!

**Snobs.** You know, people who **look down on** others, and think they're **vulgar**.

I **was bullied** at school, and since then I've always **despised bullies**.

People who spread **malicious gossip** are just **despicable** in my opinion.

### spotlight principles and values

**Principles** (usu. pl.) are strong beliefs that influence how you behave; **values** are beliefs about what is right and important in life. The words are almost synonymous but are used in different expressions. *Eating meat is **against my principles**. I won't go there **on principle**. She has a different **set of values**.*

### Glossary

<b>rebel</b>	a person who opposes people in authority. <b>rebel</b> v. <b>rebellious</b> ADJ.
<b>idealist</b>	a person who believes the world can be perfect. <b>idealistic</b> ADJ.
<b>hypocrite</b>	a person who says they have strong principles but does not act according to these principles. <b>hypocrisy</b> N. <b>hypocritical</b> ADJ.
<b>snob</b>	a person who thinks they are better than people in lower social classes.
<b>look down on sb</b>	think that you are better than sb.
<b>vulgar</b>	not polite, elegant, or having good taste. <b>SYNS</b> <b>coarse</b> , <b>crude</b> .
<b>be bullied</b>	be hurt or frightened by sb who is bigger and stronger (the person who does the <b>bullying</b> is a <b>bully</b> ).
<b>despise sb/sth</b>	hate and have no respect for sb/sth. <b>despicable</b> ADJ.
<b>malicious</b>	showing hatred and the desire to hurt people's feelings. <b>malice</b> N. <b>SYNS</b> <b>spiteful</b> ADJ. <b>spite</b> N (e.g. <i>He did it out of <b>malice/spite</b>.</i> ).
<b>gossip</b>	stories about other people's private lives, which may be unkind or untrue. <b>gossip</b> v (also <b>spread gossip</b> ; the person who does this is a <b>gossip</b> ).

#### 4 Write the related adjective.

- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1 hypocrite _____ | 4 malice _____  |
| 2 rebel _____     | 5 spite _____   |
| 3 idealist _____  | 6 despise _____ |

#### 5 Write a word at the end of the line to describe each of these people.

- He looks down on other people. He's a \_\_\_\_\_.
- She's always talking about others behind their back. She's a \_\_\_\_\_.
- She's against anyone in a position of power or authority. She's a \_\_\_\_\_.
- He's horrible to anyone he sees as smaller or weaker. He's a \_\_\_\_\_.
- She believes everything in the world can be perfect. She's an \_\_\_\_\_.
- He tells us it's wrong to swear, then he uses bad language. He's a \_\_\_\_\_.
- I'm afraid he's got bad manners and he's very rude. He's \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

Being a snob or being a hypocrite – which is worse? \_\_\_\_\_  
 Is bullying worse than either of the above? Why/why not? \_\_\_\_\_  
 How do you feel about people who spread gossip? \_\_\_\_\_  
 Is there anything or anyone that you despise? Why? \_\_\_\_\_





# 18 I can talk about behaviour

## A Influences on behaviour

Why do we behave the way we do? Is it **nature** or **nurture**? According to behavioural psychologist Michael Woods, various factors have an **impact on** our lives.

Parents **play** a crucial **part**; other **role models** are less influential.

**Peer pressure** is a significant factor.

Positive **incentives** are effective; **deterrents** aren't.

A **broken home** or **deprived** childhood needn't have a **detrimental effect**.

### Glossary

<b>nature</b>	the basic character of a person: <i>Violence isn't in his nature.</i>
<b>nurture</b>	the care and attention given to help sb develop. <b>nurture sb</b> v.
<b>impact (on sth)</b>	an effect or influence on sth.
<b>play a part (in sth)</b>	be involved and influential in developing sth.
<b>role model</b>	a person you admire and learn from.
<b>peer pressure</b>	the influence on your behaviour of people around you of the same age.
<b>incentive (to do sth)</b>	a thing that encourages you to work harder, do sth, etc.
<b>deterrent</b>	a thing that makes you less likely to do sth. <b>deter sb</b> v.
<b>broken home</b>	a family in which the parents are divorced or separated.
<b>deprived</b>	without sufficient food, education, or money. <b>deprivation</b> n.
<b>detrimental effect (on sth)</b>	a very negative effect. <b>opp</b> <b>beneficial effect</b> .

### 1 Find six compound words or phrases in the box.

peer   nature or   play   broken   deprived   a beneficial  
home   pressure   childhood   a part   nurture?   effect

### 2 Are these positive or negative statements? Write P or N.

- 1 She was nurtured by her parents. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 He's considered a role model for boys. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 There is a lot of deprivation. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 It had a detrimental effect on me. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 It proved to be a real incentive. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 It was a deterrent to helping others. \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Complete the text.

Dan came from a broken (1) \_\_\_\_\_, had a fairly (2) \_\_\_\_\_ childhood, and was stealing by the age of 13 because of peer (3) \_\_\_\_\_. He also got into fights, although it wasn't in his (4) \_\_\_\_\_ to be violent. Then he joined a boxing club, which had a real (5) \_\_\_\_\_ on his life. The owner was Dan's first positive role (6) \_\_\_\_\_, and he played an important (7) \_\_\_\_\_ in changing Dan's attitude to life. Dan is now dedicated to boxing. He could be in the England team at the next Olympics, and that is a real (8) \_\_\_\_\_ for him to train hard.

### 4 ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the statements at the top of the page? Write your answers or ask another student.

## B Teenage behaviour

### Getting messy teens to pull their weight

**Y**OU CAN **go on and on** about the state of your teenager's bedroom, but **nagging** doesn't work. Their room may be untidy and **unappealing**, but it's not **life-threatening**, so why **make a fuss**? Instead, **lay down rules** for the rest of the home which you all share. Explain what you **expect** your teenagers to do, and get them to agree to it. **Set an example** by being tidy yourself, but don't **give in** and clear up their **mess**.

#### spotlight expect

To **expect sth** can mean to think it is right that sth should happen.

*It's not fair to **expect** parents to do everything in the home.*

*Most parents **expect** high standards.*

**What do/can you expect?** is an idiom used for saying you are not surprised by something, even though it is unpleasant or disappointing.

*Teenagers are often lazy around the home, but **what do you expect?***

#### Glossary

**messy**

dirty or untidy. **mess** N (sb can **make a mess**; sth can **be in a mess**).

**pull your weight**

work as hard as everyone else in a job or activity. **SYN** **do your fair share**.

**go on and on (about sth, at sb)**

keep talking (about sth or to sb) in a boring way.

**nag**

keep complaining about sb's behaviour.

**unappealing**

not pleasant or attractive. **OPP** **appealing**.

**life-threatening**

likely to cause death (here it is being used humorously).

**fuss**

If you **make a fuss about sth**, you become angry and complain about sth which probably isn't important. **SYN** **kick up a fuss** **INF**.

**lay down rules**

say officially what the rules are.

**set an (or a good/bad) example**

behave in a way that others may copy.

**give in (to sb/sth)**

agree to do sth that you don't want to do. **SYN** **capitulate (to sb/sth)** **FML**.

#### 5 Use each verb once to complete the expressions.

pull   kick up   set   lay down   do   make

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ an example      3 \_\_\_\_\_ a mess      5 \_\_\_\_\_ your fair share  
2 \_\_\_\_\_ a fuss      4 \_\_\_\_\_ your weight      6 \_\_\_\_\_ rules

#### 6 Complete the dialogues in a suitable way.

- 1 A Is he likely to die?  
B No, it's not life-\_\_\_\_\_.  
2 A Do they make a fuss about things?  
B Yes, they go \_\_\_\_\_.  
3 A Did you tidy up your room?  
B Yes, because Mum kept \_\_\_\_\_.  
4 A Is the room untidy?  
B Yes, it's in \_\_\_\_\_.  
5 A Did you agree to do it?  
B Not at first, then I \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_.  
6 A It's not an attractive colour.  
B No, it's very \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

- What do/did your parents expect you to do around the home? \_\_\_\_\_  
Do/Did they set a good example around the home? \_\_\_\_\_  
Do you think you do/did your fair share of the work? \_\_\_\_\_  
Is/Was your bedroom in a mess most of the time? \_\_\_\_\_





# 19 I can talk about manners

## A Table manners 🎧

### Dining **etiquette**



In the Philippines, it's **considered good manners** to eat all the food on your plate.

In Afghanistan, wasting food is **frowned upon**, and talking with your mouth full is **viewed as** being **discourteous**.

In China, it's **customary** and **respectful** to pass food to the elderly first. You should never stab **chopsticks**<sup>1</sup> into a bowl of rice and leave them pointing **upwards**: this is **regarded as** extremely **disrespectful**. It can also be **offensive** to remove rice from a bowl with a spoon.

### Glossary

**etiquette**

**manners**

**frown on/upon sth/sb**

**discourteous**

**customary**

**respectful**

**upwards**

**offensive**

the formal rules of correct or polite behaviour in society.

(PL) behaviour that is considered polite in a particular society or culture.

(often passive) disapprove of sth/sb.

FML having bad manners and not showing respect. *OPP* courteous. *courtesy* N.

usually done in a particular place or situation. *custom* N.

showing polite behaviour towards sb/sth. *OPP* disrespectful.

moving or pointing towards a higher position. *OPP* downwards.

rude in a way that makes sb upset or annoyed. *OPP* inoffensive.

### spotlight **consider, regard, view, perceive** FML

These verbs all mean to think about something in a particular way.

They are commonly used in passive constructions like this:

It is **considered** (to be) the correct thing to do.

It is **regarded/viewed/perceived as** the correct thing to do.

### 1 Correct the spelling mistakes.

- |                     |                  |                   |
|---------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| 1 inoffensive _____ | 3 etikette _____ | 5 downwords _____ |
| 2 curteous _____    | 4 percieve _____ | 6 chopstiks _____ |

### 2 Complete the sentences.

#### ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY

- It is c \_\_\_\_\_ to eat chicken with your fingers when you're at the table. \_\_\_\_\_
- Talking with your mouth full is usually f \_\_\_\_\_ upon. \_\_\_\_\_
- Parents think it's important for children to have good table m \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_
- Not eating food you are given is generally v \_\_\_\_\_ as discourteous. \_\_\_\_\_
- It is c \_\_\_\_\_ very bad manners to eat everything you are given. \_\_\_\_\_
- C \_\_\_\_\_ related to the serving of food are the same all over the country. \_\_\_\_\_
- It is r \_\_\_\_\_ as r \_\_\_\_\_ to offer food to the elderly first. \_\_\_\_\_
- As a guest, it would be o \_\_\_\_\_ to say the host's food was badly cooked. \_\_\_\_\_
- It is d \_\_\_\_\_ to start eating before others have been served. \_\_\_\_\_
- It is normal e \_\_\_\_\_ to put your knife and fork / chopsticks by the side of your plate/bowl when you have finished eating. \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Are the sentences in Exercise 2 true or false, or does it depend on different factors? Write your answers, or ask another student.



## B Polite or impolite?

- DAN Felicity's manners are **impeccable**, aren't they?  
 BETH Yes, **exemplary**, but that brother of hers is a bit **cheeky**.  
 DAN I'd call him **insolent**, actually, or even **downright** rude.  
 JO I don't think Julian will **be put out** if you leave the party early.  
 JIM I just don't want to **put my foot in it**, you know. His family are very **upper class**.  
 JO Well, you'll just have to **be on your best behaviour**, then!  
 KAZ I really **took exception to** Arnold's **remarks**; I thought they were **disgraceful**.  
 BEN Yes, I couldn't agree more. They really were **in poor taste**.

### Glossary

impeccable	perfect ( <b>impeccable manners/behaviour/service</b> ).
exemplary	FML excellent, and done in a way that others should copy.
cheeky	INF rude, often in an amusing way (often used by adults about children). <b>cheek</b> N (What a cheek! = How rude!).
insolent	extremely rude and disrespectful. <b>insolence</b> N.
downright	used to emphasize sth negative ( <b>downright rude/offensive</b> ).
be put out	be upset or offended. SYN <b>take offence</b> .
put your foot in it	INF say sth that offends or upsets sb.
upper class	considered to have the highest social status (also <b>middle class</b> , <b>lower class</b> , <b>working class</b> ).
be on your best behaviour	behave in the most polite way you can.
take exception to sth	object strongly to sth and be angry about it.
remark	a few words that give your opinion about sth. SYN <b>comment</b> .
disgraceful	very bad or unacceptable. <b>disgrace</b> N (What a disgrace!).
be in poor/bad taste	be offensive and not at all appropriate.

#### 4 Cross out any words in *italics* which are not possible. All three may be possible.

- He was *put out* / *put his foot in it* / *on his best behaviour*.
- She made a *rude* / *an insolent* / *a cheeky* remark.
- What she said was in *poor* / *bad* / *cheek* taste.
- Unfortunately she took *exception* / *offence* / *her foot in it*.
- His behaviour is *impeccable* / *disgraceful* / *exemplary*.
- I thought they were *downright rude* / *comments* / *disgrace*.
- Is he *upper* / *working* / *middle class*?
- What a *cheek* / *a disgrace* / *an insolence*!

#### 5 Complete the texts.

I have a very unusual friend called Erwin who considers himself to be very upper (1) \_\_\_\_\_. He is incredibly polite and has exemplary (2) \_\_\_\_\_, and I always feel rather uncomfortable with him, because I feel I have to be on my best (3) \_\_\_\_\_ all the time. I'm very nervous about putting my (4) \_\_\_\_\_ in it, especially if I go to his place for dinner. If I get there even five minutes late, he seems to be quite (5) \_\_\_\_\_ out.

I've taken a strong dislike to one of the guys who work for me. He's quite insolent; in fact, I'd say he's (6) \_\_\_\_\_ rude, actually. The other day he made an offensive (7) \_\_\_\_\_ about my appearance, which frankly is none of his business, and I really took (8) \_\_\_\_\_ to it. Calling me 'carrot top' because of my red hair was in very poor (9) \_\_\_\_\_, I felt.





# Review: You and other people

## Unit 14

1 Complete the table.

NOUN	ADJECTIVE	NOUN	ADJECTIVE
	cynical		naive
	sceptical		spontaneous
affection		passion	
	charismatic	virtue	

2 Rewrite the sentences using the word or a form of the word in capitals. Keep the meaning the same.

- What was your impression of him? MAKE \_\_\_\_\_
- I think you ought to have a try. GIVE \_\_\_\_\_
- I'll do anything if it's practical and sensible. REASON \_\_\_\_\_
- He doesn't believe the figures. SCEPTICAL \_\_\_\_\_
- I started liking him after a while. TAKE \_\_\_\_\_
- I think he's very bright. STRIKE \_\_\_\_\_
- He really annoyed me. NOSE \_\_\_\_\_
- He's interesting and rather unusual. CHARACTER \_\_\_\_\_
- I haven't thought about it much but it seemed sensible. SURFACE \_\_\_\_\_
- Don't base your opinion only on appearance. BOOK \_\_\_\_\_

**AZ** more words: *bubbly, gullible, taciturn, gregarious, sly, two-faced*

## Unit 15

1 Complete each sentence with two words or phrases from the word pool with a similar meaning.

devastated    stunned ✓    suppress    ecstatic    hit the roof    uneasy  
cautious    gobsmacked ✓    disclose    went mad    over the moon    guarded  
uncomfortable    reveal    bottle up    heartbroken

- We were stunned / gobsmacked when he suddenly appeared after ten years.
- The police refused to \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_ the identity of the man arrested.
  - I always feel \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_ in his company; he's just a bit strange.
  - I was \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_ when my boyfriend left me for another woman. It took me months to get over it.
  - Marisa was \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_ about becoming a mother; in fact we were all delighted.
  - Andrea was late for work again and her boss just \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_. She'd better watch out or she might get the sack.
  - It's never a good idea to \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_ your feelings for too long.

- 7 The sales figures looked promising, but the boss's response was quite \_\_\_\_\_. / \_\_\_\_\_ He never wants to appear too positive.

**A Z** more words: *distraught, grief-stricken, beside yourself (with sth), go bananas, dumbfounded, on top of the world*

## Unit 16

### 1 One word is missing in each line. Where does it go? Write it at the end of the line.

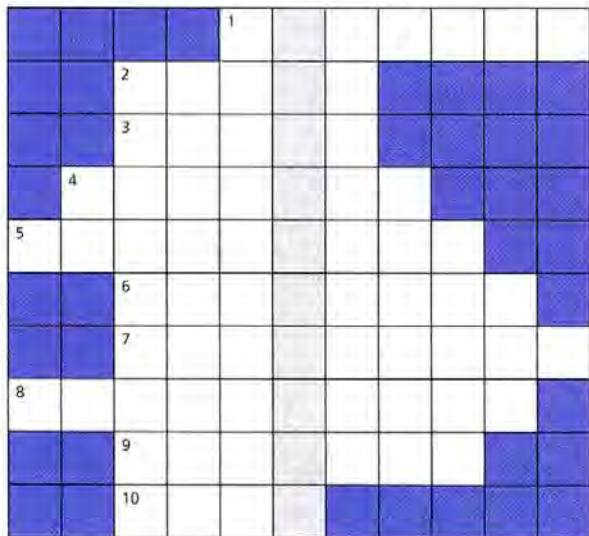
Starting a new job isn't easy, and you're always going to have some **ups** and downs. Unfortunately one colleague took an instant to me, which made me very upset. I was sure he was talking about me my back, and even though I did everything to his respect, nevertheless it was a stressful period, and it really put a strain me. After a while, I thought the best thing was to try and in my boss, who explained that the colleague was hostile because he the fact that I had got the position that he had wanted. I had a really decision – whether to talk to him about it directly or not – and in the end I decided to stick for myself and talk to him. Initially he was a bit surprised, but as time has gone, our relationship has improved a lot, and I definitely feel that are looking up. I feel happy to carry on now.

- ups \_\_\_\_\_  
1 \_\_\_\_\_  
2 \_\_\_\_\_  
3 \_\_\_\_\_  
4 \_\_\_\_\_  
5 \_\_\_\_\_  
6 \_\_\_\_\_  
7 \_\_\_\_\_  
8 \_\_\_\_\_  
9 \_\_\_\_\_  
10 \_\_\_\_\_

**A Z** more words: *love-hate relationship, inseparable, animosity, incompatible, irreconcilable (differences), cut (all ties with sb)*

## Unit 17

### 1 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell another word. What is it?



- 1 admire someone very much.
- 2 fight against or refuse to obey an authority.
- 3 vulgar; coarse.
- 4 give someone the enthusiasm and desire to do something.
- 5 have a go at someone.
- 6 a person who believes that the world can be perfect.
- 7 If you follow in someone's \_\_\_\_\_, you want to be as successful as they are.
- 8 If something is against your \_\_\_\_\_, it is against your very strong beliefs.
- 9 a woman you admire very much for her qualities or ability.
- 10 If you look \_\_\_\_\_ on someone, you think you are better than they are.

**A Z** more words: *think the world of sb / think highly of sb, sycophantic, repulsive, creepy, foul-mouthed*



## Unit 18

1 Tick the words that are possible. More than one word may be correct.

- 1 The children often make a *mess* ☐ a *fuss* ☐ an *example* ☐.
- 2 He was from a *broken* ☐ *detrimental* ☐ *deprived* ☐ home.
- 3 Does money have a *messy* ☐ *beneficial* ☐ *detrimental* ☐ effect on people?
- 4 She's great, and she always *pulls her weight* ☐ *sets a good example* ☐ *does her fair share* ☐.
- 5 Nagging is an *unappealing* ☐ *appealing* ☐ *life-threatening* ☐ habit.
- 6 He goes on and on at ☐ gives in to ☐ nags ☐ the children about doing their homework.

**A Z** more words: *anti-social behaviour, truancy, reckless (behaviour), reprimand sb, ringleader, lead sb astray*

## Unit 19

1 Are these positive or negative remarks? Write P or N.

- 1 His manners were exemplary. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I took exception to his comments. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 She was very insolent. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The service was impeccable. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Taking photos is frowned upon. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 What a cheek! \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 She put her foot in it. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 They're always courteous. \_\_\_\_\_

2 Complete the sentences in a suitable way.

### ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY

- 1 If you invited someone to your house for a meal at 7 o'clock, and they arrived at 8 o'clock, would you be \_\_\_\_\_ out? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Do you often say the wrong thing and put your \_\_\_\_\_ in it? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 If someone made a cheeky remark which you took \_\_\_\_\_ to, would you normally say something or keep quiet? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Is it \_\_\_\_\_ in your country for most people to \_\_\_\_\_ themselves to be \_\_\_\_\_ class or \_\_\_\_\_ class, or working class? Do you \_\_\_\_\_ yourself as coming from a particular class? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Do people \_\_\_\_\_ upon people, especially women, who smoke in the street? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 If you are invited to someone's house for a meal, what is the normal \_\_\_\_\_? Do you take flowers or chocolates, or something like that? \_\_\_\_\_

3 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.

**A Z** more words: (*invade sb's*) **personal space**, **uncivil** behaviour, *churlish*, *protocol*, (*have the*) **decency** to do sth, *indiscretion*

## 20 I can talk about food

### A Fruit, vegetables, nuts, herbs, and spices 🎧



pomegranate



passion fruit



papaya (tropical fruits)



radishes



beetroot



bean sprouts



squash



fennel



artichoke (vegetables)



almonds



cashews (types of nut)



lentils (type of pulse)



ginger



cinnamon (types of spice)



sage



coriander (types of herb)



sultanas and raisins (types of dried fruit)



#### 1 Complete the foods. The last four are plural.

- |              |              |             |               |
|--------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1 arti _____ | 4 cinn _____ | 7 gin _____ | 10 rad _____  |
| 2 pom _____  | 5 pap _____  | 8 squ _____ | 11 len _____  |
| 3 beet _____ | 6 fen _____  | 9 alm _____ | 12 bean _____ |

#### 2 Complete the sentences in a logical way.

► Artichoke and fennel are vegetables.
















- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1 Raisins and _____ are types of _____. | 4 Papaya and _____ are _____ fruits. |
| 2 Sage and _____ are _____.             | 5 Ginger and _____ are _____.        |
| 3 Almonds and _____ are types of _____. |                                      |

#### 3 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Study the words and pictures for two minutes. Then shut your book and write down the items that you grow in your own country, and a list of the ones you have eaten.





## B Kitchen equipment

Equipment	used to ...	what? e.g.:	Equipment	used to ...	what? e.g.:
<b>wok</b> 	<b>stir-fry</b>	vegetables, meat, fish	<b>garlic crusher</b> 	<b>crush</b>	garlic
<b>steamer</b> 	<b>steam</b>	fish, rice, vegetables	<b>sieve</b> 	<b>sieve</b> (separate solids from liquid or larger solids from smaller ones)	flour, tomatoes
<b>deep fat fryer</b> 	<b>deep-fry</b>	fish, potatoes	<b>peeler</b> 	<b>peel</b>	vegetables
<b>casserole</b> 	<b>braise/stew</b> (cook meat slowly in liquid in a closed container)	meat, vegetables	<b>lemon squeezer</b> 	<b>squeeze</b>	lemons, limes
<b>food processor</b> 	<b>chop, slice, and mix</b>	meat, vegetables, etc.	<b>corkscrew</b> 	<b>open</b>	wine bottles
<b>whisk</b> 	<b>beat</b>	eggs, cream	<b>ladle</b> 	<b>serve</b>	soup
<b>colander</b> 	<b>drain</b>	vegetables that have been washed or cooked in water	<b>kitchen scales</b> 	<b>weigh</b>	all types of food
<b>grater</b> 	<b>grate</b>	cheese, e.g. parmesan			

4 Find six compound words or word combinations in the box.

cheese    lemon    kitchen    food    garlic    deep fat  
processor    fryer    grater    crusher    squeezer    scales

\_\_\_\_\_

5 Write down the equipment you would need to:

- |  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1 drain vegetables cooked in water _____ | 4 serve soup _____            |
| 2 stir-fry vegetables _____              | 5 remove lumps in flour _____ |
| 3 open a bottle of wine _____            | 6 beat eggs _____             |

6 Write down a type of food you can:

- |                 |               |                |
|-----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1 squeeze _____ | 3 sieve _____ | 5 slice _____  |
| 2 grate _____   | 4 steam _____ | 6 braise _____ |

## C Food words, different meanings

Many food words form part of an idiomatic expression, or are used informally in spoken English with a different meaning.

I said the plan would work, but it all **went pear-shaped**, so I had to **eat my words**.

The trouble with Tanya is she always wants to **have her cake and eat it**.

Since Jamie lost his job, Marcia has been the main **breadwinner**.

Eric was very angry when he didn't get the job, but it was just **sour grapes**. To be honest, if he had worked here, he would've been **a fish out of water**.

He managed to fix the door, but he really **made a meal of it**.

You should get the job, but **don't count your chickens**.

The whole thing sounded a bit **fishy** to me.

Ali's calm and sensible; his brother's a complete **nutcase**. They're **like chalk and cheese**.

### Glossary

**go pear-shaped**

**eat your words**

**sour grapes**

**a fish out of water**

**have your cake and eat it**

**make a meal of sth**

**fishy**

**breadwinner**

**don't count your chickens**  
(before they're hatched)

**nutcase**

**like chalk and cheese**

INF go badly wrong and be very unsuccessful.

admit that sth you said was wrong.

a negative response to sth because you're angry you can't have it.

a person who feels uneasy and out of place in their surroundings.

have the advantages of sth without the disadvantages.

INF spend more time doing sth than is necessary.

INF suspicious, and probably involving dishonesty.

a person who supports their family with money they earn.

SAYING don't be too confident that sth will be successful, because it may go wrong.

INF a crazy person.

used for saying that two people are very different.

### 7 Complete the missing food word in each expression.

1 sour \_\_\_\_\_

2 don't count your \_\_\_\_\_

3 a \_\_\_\_\_ out of water

4 \_\_\_\_\_ winner

5 like chalk and \_\_\_\_\_

6 go \_\_\_\_\_ -shaped

7 want to have your \_\_\_\_\_ and eat it

8 a \_\_\_\_\_ case

### 8 Finish the sentences with an expression which summarizes the situation.

► He was only rude about the party because he wasn't invited. It was just sour grapes.

1 It took two men three days to build that little wall. They really \_\_\_\_\_.

2 Axel wants to use his father's car all the time, but still expects his father to pay all the bills. His problem is that he wants \_\_\_\_\_.

3 Maggie spends all her time working; her sister doesn't do a thing and is out with her friends every night. They're like \_\_\_\_\_.

4 I told Freddie he wasn't good enough to get in the football team. Then, last week, they picked him, so I had to \_\_\_\_\_.

5 Everyone at the party except me had a good job, a big house, and a wife and two children. Frankly, I felt like \_\_\_\_\_.

6 A man knocked on the door and said that if I gave him £100, he could invest it and make me £1,000 in less than two years. It sounded \_\_\_\_\_.





## 21 I can talk about holidays 🎧



### City breaks in **PRAGUE**

Prague is a **stunning** city, and this **thriving** capital of the Czech Republic makes a romantic and **vibrant** city-break destination. A stroll through Prague's **cobbled streets** is wonderfully exciting: its architecture is **remarkably diverse**, and amazingly untouched by the Second World War, although Charles Bridge and the Astronomical Clock have recently been **undergoing restoration**.

### Unwind on the **ALGARVE**

If you need to **unwind**, try the Algarve in southern Portugal. **Laze around** on the golden, sandy beaches, **soak up** the atmosphere of traditional fishing villages like Alvor, or just **go for a wander around** Albufeira's old town, which still **retains** its wonderful **charm**.



### Off the beaten track on the great wall of **CHINA**

Our China **trek** offers a **unique** experience for the adventurous traveller who wants to **get away from it all**. Apart from the spectacular scenery, you will have the rare opportunity to camp in a **remote** part of rural China and experience local life in its most **unspoilt** state.

## Glossary

<b>stunning</b>	extremely attractive or impressive. <b>syn</b> beautiful.
<b>thriving</b>	growing and developing, and very successful. <b>syn</b> flourishing.
<b>vibrant</b>	full of life and energy.
<b>cobbled streets</b>	streets with a surface of old round stones.
<b>remarkably</b>	in an unusual or surprising way. <b>remarkable</b> <b>adj.</b>
<b>diverse</b>	of many different kinds.
<b>undergo sth</b>	experience a process of change.
<b>restoration</b>	the work of repairing old buildings, paintings, etc. <b>restore</b> <b>v.</b>
<b>laze around</b>	relax and do very little.
<b>soak sth up</b>	absorb or take sth into your senses, body, or mind.
<b>go for a wander (around/in)</b>	walk slowly without a real purpose or direction. <b>wander (around/in)</b> <b>v.</b>
<b>retain sth</b>	<b>FM</b> keep sth. <b>retention</b> <b>n.</b>
<b>charm</b>	a pleasant or attractive quality or feature. <b>charming</b> <b>adj.</b>
<b>off the beaten track</b>	far away from other people and houses.
<b>trek</b>	a long hard walk, often in the mountains. <b>trek</b> <b>v.</b>
<b>unique</b>	being the only one of its kind.
<b>get away from it all</b>	go somewhere different to have a rest or holiday.
<b>remote</b>	far from places where other people live. <b>syn</b> isolated.
<b>unspoilt</b>	(of a place) beautiful because it has not been changed or built on.

### spotlight **relax**

There are different ways of saying **relax**. You can **unwind**, **take it easy** **inf.**, or **chill out** **inf.** And if you take a break or holiday to get your energy back, you **recharge your batteries** (**idiom**).



# 1 Complete the phrases with words from the box.

track    easy    wander    atmosphere    batteries    it all    around    streets

- |                  |                        |                       |
|------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 cobbled _____  | 4 get away from _____  | 7 laze _____          |
| 2 go for a _____ | 5 off the beaten _____ | 8 recharge your _____ |
| 3 take it _____  | 6 soak up the _____    |                       |

# 2 Complete the words in the dialogues.

- Is the town centre different now? ~ Yes, it has u \_\_\_\_\_ major changes.
- Is it still a thriving holiday resort? ~ Yes, it's really f \_\_\_\_\_.
- Is the restaurant cheap? ~ Yes, it's r \_\_\_\_\_ good value.
- There's nowhere like Cuenca. ~ Absolutely true. It's completely u \_\_\_\_\_.
- The village hasn't changed at all. ~ No, it's completely u \_\_\_\_\_.
- The villa's miles from anywhere. ~ Yes, it's very r \_\_\_\_\_.

# 3 Replace the underlined word(s) with a word or phrase with a similar meaning.

- The village has many pleasant and attractive qualities.    charms
- He's running a flourishing new business. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Just look at that beautiful view of the mountains. \_\_\_\_\_
  - My son's interests are very varied. \_\_\_\_\_
  - The villa was quite remote. \_\_\_\_\_
  - We're going on a long walk across the desert. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Our preference is to keep the original design for the garden. \_\_\_\_\_
  - We just want to relax and do very little. \_\_\_\_\_
  - The old buildings in the centre need to be repaired. \_\_\_\_\_

# 4 Complete the text.

Great Expectations ...

I'd been having a terrible time at work, so I was really looking forward to taking it

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ for a couple of weeks on a Greek island, staying miles from anywhere in a  
(2) \_\_\_\_\_ villa by the sea. At least, that's what I had hoped. The reality was somewhat  
different. The villa was undergoing (3) \_\_\_\_\_, so I had to stay in a nearby beach  
resort, where most people were trying to do the same as me: (4) \_\_\_\_\_ around on the  
beach during the day, and then (5) \_\_\_\_\_ around the pretty (6) \_\_\_\_\_ streets in  
the evening. Unfortunately, the place turned out to be very noisy and unpleasant, so my idea of  
getting (7) \_\_\_\_\_ all just didn't happen.

# 5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

What do you want from a holiday? Do you want to ...

Yes, usually / Occasionally / No, never

... go somewhere vibrant and exciting?

... laze around on a beach and unwind?

... go somewhere remote and get away from it all?

... go on an adventurous holiday?

... wander around interesting towns and villages?

---



---



---



---



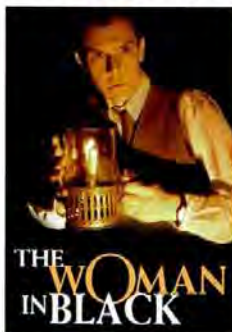
---





## 22 I can talk about plays and films

### A A fabulous play



'The Woman in Black' is a **spine-tingling ghost story** that will have you **on the edge of your seat** throughout the production. With just a minimal **set** and few **sound effects**, this drama will **scare you out of your wits**!

A **nail-biting adaptation** of Susan Hill's novel. The plot **twists** are brilliant, and the **cast** of two are **sensational**! The **applause** went on and on.

**Phenomenally** successful, and **unanimously acclaimed** by the critics. A must-see thriller!



#### Glossary

<b>spine-tingling ghost story</b>	very frightening or exciting in a way that you enjoy.
<b>on the edge of your seat</b>	a story about the spirit of a dead person that sb hears or sees.
<b>set</b>	very excited and interested in sth.
<b>sound effects</b>	the scenery and furniture used in a play, film, etc.
<b>scare sb out of their wits</b>	sounds that are made artificially in a play, film, etc. to make it more realistic, e.g. wind, thunder.
<b>nail-biting adaptation</b>	frighten sb very much.
<b>twist</b>	making you very excited or worried. <b>SYN gripping.</b>
<b>cast</b>	a book or play that has been made into a film, TV programme, etc.
<b>sensational</b>	an unexpected change or development in a story or situation.
<b>applause</b>	(+ SING OR PL V) all the people who act in a play or film.
<b>phenomenally</b>	<b>INF</b> extremely good; wonderful. <b>SYNS fabulous, brilliant.</b>
<b>unanimously</b>	the sound of an <b>audience</b> (people watching a play, etc.) showing approval by hitting their hands together. <b>applaud</b> v. <b>SYN clap.</b>
<b>acclaimed</b>	in a very great or impressive way. <b>SYN extraordinarily.</b>
	in a way that is agreed by everyone. <b>unanimous</b> ADJ.
	publicly talked or written about in an admiring way. <b>acclaim</b> N.

#### 1 Cover the texts and glossary. Circle the correct word.

- I was on the end / edge of my seat.
- There were great sound affects / effects.
- The race had a nail-eating / -biting finish.
- We were scared out / out of our wits.
- There's a great twist / cast in the story.
- We agreed phenomenally / unanimously.
- It's an adaption / adaptation of a book.
- The music was spine-tingling / -tingly.
- Are you keen on ghost / spirit stories?
- Did they applause / applaud at the end?

#### 2 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase with a similar meaning.

- The people watching the play loved it. \_\_\_\_\_
- The play was absolutely fabulous. \_\_\_\_\_
- There has been considerable public praise for the play. \_\_\_\_\_
- The actors in the play were very good indeed. \_\_\_\_\_
- What did you think of the scenery and furniture? \_\_\_\_\_
- The musical was extraordinarily good. \_\_\_\_\_
- It was a really tense and exciting story. \_\_\_\_\_
- Someone started applauding and then everyone joined in. \_\_\_\_\_



## B A terrible movie 🎧

- A I had to sit through some **atrocious**, **sentimental** movie that Frankie wanted to see on TV last night, called 'Love in Summer'.
- B Oh, I saw that – yes, it was **tedious**, wasn't it? Full of **clichés** – you know, all men are **shallow**, dishonesty is bad . . .
- A Yes, it was all terrible – **feeble** jokes, **wooden** dialogue, and the acting was very **mediocre**. And Jack Burns was totally **miscast** as the romantic lead, wasn't he?
- B Yeah, he was **dire**, and Maggie Lovett was pretty **unconvincing** too. I don't know why I watched it all the way through – it was **utter rubbish**.

### spotlight Boredom

**Tedious** is a synonym for **boring**, and **deadly dull** is 'very boring'. These idioms mean 'very bored': **bored to tears**, **bored to death**, **bored stiff**, or **bored out of your mind**.

### Glossary

<b>atrocious</b>	very bad and unpleasant. SYN <b>dire</b> INF.
<b>sentimental</b>	OFTEN DISAPPROVING making people experience feelings of sadness, sympathy, etc. in a deliberate and obvious way.
<b>cliché</b>	a phrase or idea that has been used so often it no longer has much meaning and is not interesting. <b>clichéd</b> ADJ.
<b>shallow</b>	not showing serious thought, feelings, etc. SYN <b>superficial</b> .
<b>feeble</b>	very weak.
<b>wooden</b>	not showing enough natural expression, emotion, or movement.
<b>mediocre</b>	of only average quality.
<b>miscast</b>	(of an actor) not suitable for the role they have been given.
<b>unconvincing</b>	not seeming true or real. OPP <b>convincing</b> .
<b>utter</b>	complete (used to emphasize sth, usually sth bad) ( <b>an utter waste of time</b> , <b>utter rubbish/nonsense</b> ).
<b>rubbish</b>	INF We say sth is <b>rubbish</b> if we think it is of poor quality.

### 3 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

1 It's a very romantic film.	It's a very sentimental film.	
2 The acting was quite wooden.	The acting didn't seem natural.	
3 I was bored to tears.	I found it very tedious.	
4 The female characters were shallow.	The female characters were superficial.	
5 The leading actor was miscast.	The leading actor was convincing.	
6 We were bored stiff.	We were bored out of our minds.	
7 The movie was dire.	The movie was atrocious.	
8 The film was mediocre.	The film was utter rubbish.	

### 4 Complete the words in the sentences.

- If a film is d\_\_\_\_\_ dull, or you are bored s\_\_\_\_\_, you should leave before the end.
- Many movies are c\_\_\_\_\_: they're just boring and lacking in original themes.
- If the director is poor, the actors may give a w\_\_\_\_\_ performance as well.
- There's nothing worse than a comedy film with f\_\_\_\_\_ jokes.
- If the plot of a film is hard to believe, the acting may be u\_\_\_\_\_ too.
- Most films made in Hollywood are utter r\_\_\_\_\_.
- People are bored to d\_\_\_\_\_ by all the m\_\_\_\_\_ romantic comedies around.
- I hate musicals. Every single one I've seen has been absolutely d\_\_\_\_\_.

### 5 ABOUT YOU Think of some atrocious films you've seen. Why were they dire? Write your answer, or ask a partner.





## 23 I can talk about competitive sport

### A A cup competition 🎧



#### The Heineken Cup

- In the top European cup competition in rugby, 24 teams are divided into six groups. Each team plays the others in their group **at home** and **away**, and the six group winners **qualify for** the **knockout** stage of the competition, along with the two best **runners-up** from the six groups. **The rest are eliminated.**
- In the **draw** for the quarter-final **round**, the top four teams play at home and can't **be drawn against** each other.
- The two teams that **get through** their semi-final then play the final at a **neutral venue**, and **victory** for the winners gives them automatic **qualification** the following year.

#### Glossary

<b>at home</b>	If a team plays <b>at home</b> , they play in their own stadium. <b>OPP away.</b>
<b>qualify for sth</b>	be good enough to enter a competition. <b>qualification N.</b>
<b>knockout</b>	In a <b>knockout competition</b> , the winner at each stage continues in the competition, but the loser is no longer in it.
<b>runner(s)-up</b>	a person or team who comes second in a competition.
<b>the rest (of sth)</b>	the remaining people or things; the others.
<b>eliminate sb from sth</b>	<b>USUALLY PASSIVE</b> If a team is <b>eliminated</b> from a competition, it has been beaten and can no longer take part in it. <b>SYN knock sb out of sth.</b>
<b>draw</b>	an act of deciding sth by pulling names out of a bag. <b>be drawn (against sb) v.</b>
<b>round</b>	a stage in a sports competition.
<b>get through (to sth)</b>	reach the next stage in a competition.
<b>neutral</b>	not belonging to either of the teams who are playing.
<b>venue</b>	a place where an organized event happens.
<b>victory</b>	success in a game, war, etc. <b>victorious ADJ.</b>

#### 1 True or false? Write T or F.

- If you qualify for a competition, you will win it. \_\_\_\_\_
- A venue is the last game in a competition. \_\_\_\_\_
- The runner-up comes second in a competition. \_\_\_\_\_
- In the knockout stage of a competition, every team plays more than one game. \_\_\_\_\_
- If you are eliminated, that is the end of your competition. \_\_\_\_\_
- If you are victorious, it is a good result. \_\_\_\_\_
- If you play away, you're at a neutral venue. \_\_\_\_\_
- The draw is a way of deciding which teams play against each other. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 Complete the words in the text.

We did well in the cup this year. We played ► away in the first (1) r\_\_\_\_\_ but managed to win, then we were (2) d\_\_\_\_\_ at home in the next two rounds and had fairly easy (3) v\_\_\_\_\_. In the (4) d\_\_\_\_\_ for the quarter-final, we had to play the (5) r\_\_\_\_\_ - \_\_\_\_\_ from last year, but we played really well and (6) g\_\_\_\_\_ t\_\_\_\_\_ to the semi-final. Unfortunately, we then lost because one or two of our best players were injured in training, and that seemed to affect (7) t\_\_\_\_\_ r\_\_\_\_\_ of the team. However, at least we were (8) k\_\_\_\_\_ o\_\_\_\_\_ by the team that went on to win the competition.





## B Playing well and playing badly

At the beginning of the season our **form** in the **league** was poor, but we've had a **good run** lately, and we're **unbeaten** now in five games.

Carter was **in great form** for us last season, but recently he's **let us down**.

When the opposition put us **under pressure**, we just **went to pieces**.

We had an **outside chance of promotion** before Christmas, but now we've got **no chance**.

We **dominated** the game and were **on the verge of winning**, then we **gave away** a silly penalty.

### spotlight chance

**Chance** is used in many phrases as it can mean a *possibility* (a fact that sth might happen) or an *opportunity* (a situation which makes sth possible):  
We've got an **outside chance of promotion**. (= a small chance) **OPP** a **great chance**.

This season could be my **big chance**. (= opportunity for success)

He's retiring soon, so this is his **last chance**. (= final opportunity)

### Glossary

<b>form</b>	the way in which sb is performing (sb <b>in</b> or <b>on good/great form</b> is performing well; sb who is <b>off form</b> is performing badly).
<b>league</b>	a set of teams who play each other over a season to find the best team.
<b>a (good/bad) run</b>	a period of performing well or badly.
<b>unbeaten</b>	not having lost.
<b>promotion</b>	the action of moving a team up to a higher league. <b>be promoted</b> v. <b>OPP</b> <b>relegation</b> n, <b>be relegated</b> v.
<b>let sb down</b>	fail to give sb the help and support they need.
<b>under pressure</b>	in a stressful situation, often because sb is forcing you to do sth in a certain way.
<b>go to pieces</b>	<b>INF</b> become very nervous or upset and unable to perform.
<b>dominate</b>	(in sport) play better than sb and be in control of the game. <b>SYN</b> <b>be on top</b> , <b>dominant</b> adj.
<b>on the verge of sth</b>	near to the moment of doing or achieving sth.
<b>give sth away</b>	lose a game, point, or competition through a bad mistake.

### 3 One word is missing in each line of the text. What is it and where does it go?

We've been    good form recently, and last Saturday we started the match really well, and we the first half. Then, at the start of the second half, they put us a lot of pressure, and we gave a silly goal. After that, I'm afraid, we completely went pieces. I thought our goalkeeper, in particular, really let us. And after losing that game, we have no of promotion this year. In fact, if we go on playing badly, we could be at the end of the season.

- in
- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7 \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 Rewrite the sentences on the left without changing the meaning.

- 1 They've done well recently. They've had a good \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 She could win at the Olympics. The Olympics could be her big \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 We could go up to the next league. We could be \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 We're close to victory. We're on the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 We haven't lost this season. We are \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Recently he's been playing badly. Recently he's been off \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 We dominated most of the game. For most of the game we were \_\_\_\_\_.





## 24 I can talk about gardens and nature

### A A natural garden

I've always been excited by the idea of a garden which **imitates** the best of **nature**, so, having **acquired** a **cottage** in the country, I'm now **in the process of** creating my own **wildlife** garden. The **site** is ideal – a gentle **slope** going down to a pond, plus there's a **shed** – and there are already **plants** to **attract** wildlife such as bees and **butterflies**<sup>1</sup>. I've **scattered seeds** to create a wild-flower **meadow**, and I hope birds will soon build **nests**.



#### Glossary

<b>imitate sth/sb</b>	SYN <b>copy sth/sb</b> . <b>imitation</b> N. <b>copy</b> N.
<b>acquire sth</b>	obtain sth by buying it or being given it.
<b>cottage</b>	a small house, especially in the country.
<b>in the process of doing sth</b>	doing things that are necessary to achieve sth.
<b>wildlife</b>	animals, birds, and insects that live in a natural state.
<b>site</b>	an area of land that is used for sth ( <b>camping site/building site</b> ).
<b>slope</b>	an area of land that is higher at one end than the other. <b>slope</b> V.
<b>shed</b>	a small simple building, made of wood, and often found in gardens.
<b>attract sth/sb</b>	make sth/sb come towards you.
<b>scatter sth</b>	throw or drop things in different directions over a wide area.
<b>seed</b>	the small hard part of a plant from which new plants grow.
<b>meadow</b>	a field covered in grass, and often wild flowers.
<b>nest</b>	a place where birds lay their eggs and live with their young. <b>nest</b> V.

#### spotlight nature

We can say someone is interested in **nature** (= the physical world and everything that lives in it). We don't talk about being *in the nature*. We say *I like being in the countryside*, or *I looked at the beautiful scenery*.

#### 1 Circle the correct word(s). Both words may be correct.

- We grow potatoes in that field / meadow.
- He works on a building land / site.
- This plant will attract / scatter butterflies.
- I copied / imitated my neighbour's garden.
- How did you obtain / acquire that land?
- There's a camping / camping site nearby.
- We need to protect wildlife / wildliving.
- Look at the scenery / nature!

#### 2 Complete the sentences.

- I'm in the \_\_\_\_\_ of building a new wall round the garden.
- There are two blackbirds building a \_\_\_\_\_ under the roof of the garden \_\_\_\_\_.
- For the \_\_\_\_\_ to grow, the water has to go up the \_\_\_\_\_ from the \_\_\_\_\_.
- I love being in the \_\_\_\_\_ surrounded by the beauties of nature.
- I've bought lots of packets of \_\_\_\_\_ to grow different flowers and vegetables.
- From the kitchen of our \_\_\_\_\_, the garden \_\_\_\_\_ down quite steeply to the river.





## B Gardening chores 🎧

**SPRING:** Add **compost** to **enrich** the soil.

**Prune** certain **bushes**<sup>1</sup> and plants.

**Dig**<sup>2</sup> the ground if it's not too **muddy**.

**SUMMER:** **Mow** the **lawn**<sup>3</sup> once a week.

**Do** regular **weeding**.

**Put your feet up** and enjoy the garden.

**AUTUMN:** Tidy **hedges** and fallen leaves.

**Plant** **bulbs**<sup>4</sup> for the following spring.



### Glossary

<b>chore</b>	a small job that you have to do regularly, often around the home.
<b>compost</b>	a mixture of decaying plants and food that is added to soil to help things grow ( <b>compost</b> makes soil more <b>fertile</b> ; <b>fertility</b> N).
<b>enrich sth</b>	improve the quality of sth by adding sth to it.
<b>soil</b>	the top part of the earth in which trees and plants grow.
<b>prune sth</b>	remove some of a plant's stems or branches to improve future growth. <b>syn</b> <b>cut sth back</b> .
<b>muddy</b>	(of the earth) wet from too much rain. <b>mud</b> N.
<b>do the weeding</b>	remove the <b>weeds</b> (= wild plants growing where they are not wanted in a garden).
<b>put your feet up</b>	<b>idiom</b> sit down and relax.
<b>hedge</b>	a line of bushes growing close together around a garden or field.
<b>plant sth</b>	put flowers and other plants into the soil.

### 3 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.

- |                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1 The ground is muddy. _____       | 4 The lawn is full of weeds. _____      |
| 2 We've got lots of compost. _____ | 5 There's loads of digging to do. _____ |
| 3 I've got lots of chores. _____   | 6 The bulbs are coming up. _____        |

### 4 Rewrite the sentences without using the underlined words. Keep the meaning the same.

- Have you got something I can use for digging? Have you got a \_\_\_\_\_?
- I'm going to sit down and relax. I'm going to put \_\_\_\_\_.
- He's going to cut the grass. He's going to \_\_\_\_\_.
- You'll need to prune this bush. You'll need to \_\_\_\_\_.
- I'm going to improve the soil. I'm going to add \_\_\_\_\_.
- I want to put some roses in the ground. I want to \_\_\_\_\_.
- There's a line of bushes round the field. There's a \_\_\_\_\_.
- I need to take out the weeds. I need to do \_\_\_\_\_.
- We need to enrich the soil. We need to make the soil \_\_\_\_\_.





## 25 I can talk about shopping habits

### A Different kinds of shopper

What kind of  
shopper are you?

**Impulse shopper:** You might go to the shops **in search of** sandals and come back with a winter coat. You may also have things in your wardrobe with the **price tag** still on them.

**Situational shopper:** Shop till you drop? Not you. You're not there for **browsing** – you're **after** a particular buy. And **the minute** you've got it, you're **off**.

**Bargain buyer:** You **have an eye for** a bargain, and you'll **shop around** until you find it.

**Serious shopper:** You're incredibly **focused** and won't be **distracted by** cheap offers.

#### Glossary

<b>impulse (to do sth)</b>	a sudden desire to do sth without thinking about the results ( <b>buy sth on impulse</b> ).
<b>in search of sth</b>	looking for sth.
<b>price tag</b>	a label on sth which shows how much you must pay.
<b>shop till you drop</b>	MODERN IDIOM spend a long time shopping because you don't want to stop ( <b>till</b> = until).
<b>browse</b>	casually look at things in a shop, or look through the pages of a book.
<b>after sth</b>	looking for and trying to obtain sth ( <b>after a jacket / after a job</b> ).
<b>the minute</b>	as soon as. SYN <b>the moment</b> .
<b>be off</b>	go; leave.
<b>have an eye for sth</b>	have a natural ability to see or find sth (to <b>have your eye on sth</b> is to have seen sth and want to have it or buy it).
<b>shop around</b>	go to different shops until you find what you want.
<b>focused</b>	having a very clear aim; knowing what you want to do.
<b>be distracted by sth</b>	be looking at or thinking about sth so that you are unable to pay attention to other things. <b>distract sb from sth</b> v.

#### 1 Circle the correct word.

- If I don't find something immediately, I'm happy to shop **around / away**.
- He's got **an / his** eye on a small vase, which he might buy.
- He's very **distracted / focused** at work and just keeps going till the job's finished.
- She really has **an / her** eye for detail.
- You're distracting me **from / by** my work. Go away!
- I just stopped to **page / browse** through this magazine.

#### 2 Complete the text with suitable words and phrases.

I went into town with Patsy. I was in (1) \_\_\_\_\_ some shoes, Patsy was (2) \_\_\_\_\_ a top and a skirt. I saw some lovely shoes in 'Shoon', but then I looked at the price (3) \_\_\_\_\_ and decided I'd (4) \_\_\_\_\_ for something a bit cheaper. Patsy then pointed out some boots in the shop opposite. The (5) \_\_\_\_\_ I saw them I knew I had to have them. I just bought them (6) \_\_\_\_\_ – I couldn't stop myself. The trouble is, after that I was bored and wanted to go home. I'm not the kind of person who shops till they (7) \_\_\_\_\_, so I told Patsy that I had to be (8) \_\_\_\_\_ in order to get home and finish an essay. She didn't mind. I left her (9) \_\_\_\_\_ in a very expensive boutique that opened last month.



## B Shopping habits

SHOPPING is the UK's fourth favourite leisure **pursuit**. Whether it's a **spending spree**, **bargain hunting**, or just browsing, millions of us **head for** the shops every weekend. And it's not just women who **indulge in** this popular **pastime**. Men over 50 now **outspend** women of the same age, because of their love of **gadgets**, and it's estimated that two to eight per cent of all UK adults are **shopaholics**. A small number, though, may become **compulsive** shoppers: they become **addicted to** it and end up with **crippling** financial debts.

### Glossary

<b>pursuit</b>	SYNS <b>hobby, pastime</b> (leisure/outdoor pursuits).
<b>spree</b>	a short period of time doing one activity, often in an uncontrolled way ( <b>spending/shopping spree</b> ).
<b>bargain hunting</b>	looking for sth at a good price and cheaper than usual.
<b>head for/towards</b>	go in the direction of.
<b>indulge in sth</b>	do sth you like, especially sth that is bad for you.
<b>gadget</b>	a small tool or piece of equipment that does sth useful.
<b>shopaholic</b>	INF sb who enjoys shopping and spends a lot of time doing it (also <b>workaholic/chocoholic</b> ; see <b>alcoholic</b> below).
<b>compulsive</b>	a <b>compulsive</b> person finds it difficult to control their actions (a <b>compulsive shopper/gambler/liar</b> ).
<b>addicted to sth</b>	unable to stop doing sth which is usually harmful ( <b>addicted to drugs/alcohol</b> ; a person is a <b>drug addict</b> or an <b>alcoholic</b> ).
<b>crippling</b>	very serious ( <b>crippling debts/disease</b> ).

### spotlight Prefix out-

Used as a prefix with verbs, **out-** means more/greater/longer, etc.  
*Men over 50 **outspend** women.*  
*He **outlived** his wife by five years.*  
*The women **outnumbered** the men 3 to 1.*  
*The advantages **outweigh** the disadvantages. (= are greater than)*

### 3 Find six compound words or common phrases in the box.

bargain drug compulsive crippling shopping leisure  
 debts gambler spree hunting pursuit addict

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

### 4 Complete the sentences.

- When I saw Sue she was \_\_\_\_\_ for the supermarket.
- I don't have time to \_\_\_\_\_ in too many leisure pursuits. I'm too busy at work.
- Steve loves any kind of \_\_\_\_\_, so I gave him an alarm clock which changes colour.
- It's not perfect, but the advantages \_\_\_\_\_ the disadvantages.
- The men \_\_\_\_\_ the women 5 to 1 in that company.
- It's easy to get \_\_\_\_\_ things such as drugs or alcohol.

### 5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

How often do you go on a spending spree? \_\_\_\_\_

What's your attitude to bargain hunting? \_\_\_\_\_

What kind of gadgets do you buy, if any? \_\_\_\_\_

Would you describe yourself as a shopaholic? \_\_\_\_\_





## 26 I can talk about socializing

### A Parties

#### Organizing a party

- The **host** is expected to **lay on** food and drink, which can be expensive and **time-consuming**. Consider asking others to **make a contribution** and bring something.
- A lot of food means a lot of **clearing up**. Think about **disposable** plates and cutlery.
- Don't advertise it on the internet **beforehand**. You don't want **gatecrashers**.
- Parties take a while to **warm up**. Consider music (not so **deafening** that it **drowns out** the conversation) or party games to **liven things up**.
- Finally, don't **get carried away**. You're planning a party, not a theme park.



#### Glossary

socialize	spend time with other people in a friendly way. <b>sociable</b> ADJ.
host	a person who is giving a meal or a party ( <b>hostess</b> can be used for a woman).
lay sth on	INF provide sth for sb, especially food, drink, or transport.
time-consuming	needing a lot of time (a <b>time-consuming process</b> ).
contribution	a thing that you give or do to help sth be successful ( <b>make a valuable/significant contribution</b> ). <b>contribute</b> V.
clear (sth) up	leave everything clean and tidy.
disposable	intended to be used once or twice then thrown away.
beforehand	before sth else happens or is done.
gatecrasher	a person who tries to get into a party without an invitation.
warm up	(of a party or event) start to become interesting and enjoyable.
deafening	very loud.
drown sth out	be louder than other sounds, so they can't be heard.
liven sth up	make sth more exciting ( <b>liven up</b> = become more exciting).
get/be carried away	become very excited or lose control of your feelings.

#### 1 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.

- Whose party is it? ~ Paula and Simon are the \_\_\_\_\_.
- Can we throw these plates away? ~ Yes, they're \_\_\_\_\_.
- Can we do anything we like? ~ Yes, but don't get carried \_\_\_\_\_!
- Did this take long? ~ Yes, it was very \_\_\_\_\_.
- She's always out with people. ~ Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_ a lot.
- Why did you turn up the music? ~ To \_\_\_\_\_ the noise from next door.
- Did people help out at the party? ~ Yes, everyone made a \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 2 Complete the words in the text.

... and the party was great! Carol (1) l\_\_\_\_\_ o\_\_\_\_\_ a lot of hot food, but I think she prepared most of it (2) b\_\_\_\_\_. And most of the people who were invited (3) c\_\_\_\_\_ by bringing a bottle. She also put a couple of big guys near the door to stop (4) g\_\_\_\_\_, which was sensible. It (5) w\_\_\_\_\_ u\_\_\_\_\_ after a while, and by 11 o'clock things had really (6) l\_\_\_\_\_ u\_\_\_\_\_, and it was great. A neighbour complained that the music was (7) d\_\_\_\_\_ but that's all. I bet Carol had a lot of (8) c\_\_\_\_\_ u\_\_\_\_\_ the next day, but it was worth it.



## B In other people's company 🎧

- A Shall we **pop round** and see Glynnis?  
 B Yes – she may **fancy** a bit of **company**.
- A They'll have fun tonight, **no doubt**.  
 B Yes, but I'm sure they won't **get drunk**.
- A Jim's quite **awkward** when he's **in company**.  
 B Yeah. I think he's a bit of a **loner**.
- A We're having a **get-together** tonight.  
 B Oh, can I **join in**?
- A You never get a **warm welcome** at Laura's.  
 B No. And her friends are all a bit **cliquey** as well.

### spotlight company

*I like **company**.*  
 (= being with other people)  
*She's **good company**.*  
 (= enjoyable to be with)  
*He enjoys his **own company**.*  
 (= being by himself)  
*He's not very good **in company**.*  
 (= with other people)  
*I'll **accompany** you.*  
 (FML = go with you)

### Glossary

<b>pop round/over/in</b>	INF go somewhere quickly or for a fairly short time.
<b>fancy sth</b>	INF want sth or want to do sth.
<b>no doubt</b>	used to say you expect sth will happen.
<b>drunk</b>	having drunk too much alcohol ( <b>get/be drunk</b> ).
<b>awkward</b>	not relaxed or comfortable with other people.
<b>loner</b>	a person who is often alone and usually prefers to be alone.
<b>get-together</b>	a friendly informal meeting or party. SYN <b>do</b> N, INF.
<b>join in</b>	take part in an activity with other people.
<b>warm welcome</b>	If sb gives you a <b>warm welcome</b> you feel relaxed in their home. <b>welcome</b> ADJ (make sb feel welcome).
<b>cliquey</b>	INF, DISAPPROVING forming a small group and not letting others join in. <b>clique</b> N.

### 3 Rewrite the sentences without using the underlined words. Keep the meaning the same.

- She's not very good with other people.  
She's not very good \_\_\_\_\_.
- He had too much to drink.  
He \_\_\_\_\_.
- He prefers his own company.  
He's a \_\_\_\_\_.
- Come to the get-together tonight.  
Come to the \_\_\_\_\_.
- He's very uncomfortable with people.  
He's very \_\_\_\_\_.
- She made me feel relaxed in her home.  
She gave me a very \_\_\_\_\_.
- They're unfriendly to outsiders.  
They're a bit \_\_\_\_\_.
- Someone will go with you.  
Someone will \_\_\_\_\_.

### 4 Complete the dialogues in a suitable way.

- Did you go with them?  
Yes, I asked if I could \_\_\_\_\_.
- Do we know when she's arriving?  
No, but no \_\_\_\_\_ she'll ring us.
- Are you staying in?  
Yes. Do you want to \_\_\_\_\_ round?
- He's a bit of a loner, isn't he?  
Yes, he prefers his \_\_\_\_\_.
- Are you going out?  
No, we're having a big family \_\_\_\_\_.
- Are they having a \_\_\_\_\_ at the club?  
Yeah. Do you \_\_\_\_\_ going?
- She's great to be with.  
Yeah, she's good \_\_\_\_\_.
- They're not very nice to other classmates.  
No, they're a very tight little \_\_\_\_\_.





# Review: Leisure and lifestyle

## Unit 20

### 1 Match the sentence halves.

- |  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| 1 My brother and I are like                    | a meal of it.        |
| 2 You can't have your                          | b chickens.          |
| 3 It was a small repair, but he made a         | c fish out of water. |
| 4 That deal sounds a bit                       | d chalk and cheese.  |
| 5 You might get the money but don't count your | e cake and eat it.   |
| 6 Bad news: the plans have gone                | f fishy to me.       |
| 7 I felt like a                                | g words.             |
| 8 I was wrong and in the end I had to eat my   | h pear-shaped.       |

### 2 Use a word from the left and a word from the right, and write a sentence explaining the connection between them.

cinnamon ✓	braise
corkscrew	herb
whisk	pulse
raisin	beat
colander	nut
lentils	soup
casserole	spice ✓
ladle	wine
cashew	dried fruit
wok	drain
sage	stir-fry

► Cinnamon is a type of spice.

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

**A Z** more words: **butter** sb up, **egg** sb on, have **egg** on your face, be full of **beans**, **rub** salt into the wound, sell like **hot** cakes

## Unit 21

### 1 Replace words in the text with words from the box so that the meaning stays the same. You may have to change the form of the verbs in the box.

unwind   thriving   diverse   vibrant   recharge your batteries   stunning ✓  
 restore   remarkable   wander   retain   soak up

Lisbon is surrounded by seven hills, and from most of them you have ► ~~beautiful~~ stunning views of this unusual city, which has managed to keep so much of its varied architecture and cultural heritage. But it is also a modern, flourishing European capital, and in recent years many of the old buildings have been repaired. For tourists, one of the most popular parts is the Alfama, where you can casually walk around and absorb the charms of the old town. The Chiado district is famous for shops and restaurants, but for really exciting night life, head for the Bairro Alto. Then after all that, you can relax on the nearby beaches of Cascais and Estoril: wonderful places to get your energy back.

## 2 Complete the definitions with a suitable word.

- 1 *unique*: the \_\_\_\_\_ one of its kind.
- 2 *off the beaten track*: \_\_\_\_\_ away from other people and houses.
- 3 *unspoilt*: beautiful because it hasn't \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 *cobbled streets*: streets with a surface of old round \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 *take it easy*: \_\_\_\_\_ and do very little.
- 6 *trek*: a long hard \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 *undergo something*: experience a process of \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 *charms*: very \_\_\_\_\_ qualities or features.

**AZ** more words: *heritage, exotic, renowned, long-haul (flight/destination), tranquil*

## Unit 22

### 1 Complete the review with suitable words.

*The Last Servant* is advertised as a (1) nail-\_\_\_\_\_ ghost story that will have theatre (2) \_\_\_\_\_ on the (3) \_\_\_\_\_ of their seats. Well, not me, I'm afraid. Giles Harrison (looking all of his 25 years) was completely (4) \_\_\_\_\_ as the 14-year-old son of the mad doctor, and the plot borrowed all the same old (5) \_\_\_\_\_ that we've seen a hundred times before; even the sound (6) \_\_\_\_\_ were pathetic. After the first twenty minutes I was, frankly, bored to (7) \_\_\_\_\_, and while it may please some people, I thought it was utter (8) \_\_\_\_\_.

### 2 Put the words in the correct column below.

sensational    dire    tedious    fabulous    mediocre    phenomenal    brilliant  
feeble    unconvincing    extraordinary    atrocious    sentimental

Negative	Positive

**AZ** more words: *witty, rave about sth, bitter-sweet, tear jerker, grim, harrowing*

## Unit 23

### 1 Tick the words in *italics* which are possible. More than one word may be correct.

- 1 I think the team will be *promoted* ☐ *relegated* ☐ *qualified* ☐ next season.
- 2 They're playing badly because they're *on top* ☐ *under pressure* ☐ *off form* ☐.
- 3 They now have *a last* ☐ *a great* ☐ *an outside* ☐ chance of victory.
- 4 The team are playing at *home* ☐ *away* ☐ *a neutral venue* ☐ this weekend.
- 5 There's a chance they'll get *through* ☐ *knocked out* ☐ *drawn* ☐.
- 6 They didn't win, but at least they were *victorious* ☐ *eliminated* ☐ *runners-up* ☐.



## 2 Complete the words in the dialogues.

- 1 A Do you know who we've been d\_\_\_\_\_ against in the next round of the cup?  
B Well, it can't be Oxford because they've already been e\_\_\_\_\_: they lost in the last round.
- 2 A Federer really deserved his v\_\_\_\_\_ in the final.  
B Yes, he did. And I think it was probably his l\_\_\_\_\_ chance, because he'll be retiring soon.
- 3 A How are Leeds doing this season?  
B Really well. They've had a very good r\_\_\_\_\_ since the beginning of the year; in fact, they're u\_\_\_\_\_ in six matches.  
A So they're on really good f\_\_\_\_\_, then.
- 4 A What on earth happened to us in the second half?  
B I don't know. We were well on t\_\_\_\_\_, then we g\_\_\_\_\_ a \_\_\_\_\_ a penalty. It was a disaster.

**A Z** more words: *fixture, sign a player, thrash sb, transfer sb, seed, make your debut*

## Unit 24

### 1 Find 15 more words related to gardening in the word square.

M	C	O	M	P	O	S	T	S	T
E	L	R	Y	R	M	I	S	P	O
A	A	B	B	U	S	H	H	A	W
D	W	U	S	N	I	E	E	D	I
O	N	L	Y	E	G	S	D	E	L
W	M	B	H	E	D	G	E	S	D
W	O	F	E	R	T	I	L	E	L
E	W	A	F	F	E	D	I	E	I
E	E	N	R	I	C	H	N	D	F
D	R	O	O	T	S	A	G	S	E

### 2 Use the words from the word square in the sentences.

- I added compost to improve the soil.
- 1 The \_\_\_\_\_ take up the water into the plant.
  - 2 All gardeners want to attract \_\_\_\_\_ such as bees and butterflies into their gardens.
  - 3 You just scatter the \_\_\_\_\_ over the soil and then cover them.
  - 4 I want a more informal garden, with wild flowers and grass – a \_\_\_\_\_, in fact.
  - 5 Some flowers grow from a \_\_\_\_\_ which you plant in the soil.
  - 6 Look – there's a big \_\_\_\_\_ growing next to the door. Take it out.
  - 7 It's important to \_\_\_\_\_ the soil with compost before planting.
  - 8 Compost makes the soil more \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 9 You can plant a row of bushes to make a beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ along your garden.
  - 10 If the bushes get too big, you'll have to \_\_\_\_\_ them a bit.
  - 11 The grass needs cutting – you'll find the \_\_\_\_\_ in the garden \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 12 I need to do some digging but I can't find the \_\_\_\_\_.

**A Z** more words: *rake, saw, stake, slug, sow, germinate, cultivate, pests*

## Unit 25

### 1 Complete the phrases with words from the box.

spree tag around pursuit gambler impulse hunting debts addict

- |                          |                      |
|--------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 buy something on _____ | 6 bargain _____      |
| 2 an outdoor _____       | 7 a compulsive _____ |
| 3 a drug _____           | 8 crippling _____    |
| 4 shop _____             | 9 a price _____      |
| 5 a spending _____       |                      |

### 2 Correct the error in each sentence.

- Something ~~destructured~~ me from what I was saying. distracted
- I'm just off to the shops – I'm before a new sweater. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I knew she would be a difficult customer the minutes I saw her. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I've had my eye for that coat for ages. \_\_\_\_\_
  - When she's feeling low she tends to induct in a bit of bargain hunting. \_\_\_\_\_
  - What time are you out to Paris in the morning? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Do you know anyone who's addict to internet shopping? \_\_\_\_\_
  - He left the bank and headed to the railway station. \_\_\_\_\_
  - We went to Crete this summer in searching of the sun. \_\_\_\_\_

**AZ** more words: **retail** therapy, **charity** shop, *haggle*, merchandise, designer **label**, get a **buzz** / *rush from / out of sth*

## Unit 26

### 1 Complete the text with words from the box.

drowns get-together make lay awkward away pop  
host join socialize loner liven company

#### Do you want to make new friends? Yes?

Well, follow our suggestions; they will help you to (1) \_\_\_\_\_ more effectively!

- ★ If you're a bit of a (2) \_\_\_\_\_ and prefer your own (3) \_\_\_\_\_, make a special effort to (4) \_\_\_\_\_ in with any social events at work. At least you'll know a few people so you should feel less (5) \_\_\_\_\_.
- ★ Start by inviting one or two people to (6) \_\_\_\_\_ round and have a drink one evening. Try to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ on a bit of food and drink that you think they will enjoy. Put some music on to help (8) \_\_\_\_\_ things up a bit, but don't have it so loud that it (9) \_\_\_\_\_ out the conversation. It's important to (10) \_\_\_\_\_ your guests feel welcome.
- ★ When you have a little experience of being the (11) \_\_\_\_\_, have a small (12) \_\_\_\_\_ for a few neighbours – not more than about half a dozen. Don't get carried (13) \_\_\_\_\_ and start inviting loads of people – take things step-by-step, and in no time you'll start to feel more confident.

**AZ** more words: *break the ice*, throw a **party**, **housewarming** party, **hen** party, **stag** night/party, *cater/catering*



## 27 I can talk about change

### A Words describing change

Word	Example	Meaning
<b>transform sth</b>	<i>Computers have <b>transformed</b> our lives.</i>	completely change the appearance or character of sth, often to make it better. <b>transformation</b> N.
<b>amend sth</b>	<i>Civil servants are now <b>amending</b> the document.</i>	make changes to correct a mistake or improve a law, statement, document, etc. <b>amendment</b> N.
<b>adapt to sth</b>	<i>We must <b>adapt to</b> a changing world.</i>	change your behaviour in order to be more successful in a new situation. SYN <b>adjust (to sth)</b> .
<b>assimilate sth</b>	<i>It takes time to <b>assimilate</b> new ideas.</i>	learn and get used to sth which is new and different. <b>assimilation</b> N.
<b>evolve</b>	<i>Democracy has <b>evolved</b> over hundreds of years.</i>	change gradually, often from something simple to something more complicated. <b>evolution</b> N.
<b>transition</b> FML	<i>We hope for a smooth <b>transition</b>.</i>	a process or period of change from one state to another (a society <b>in transition</b> is changing).
<b>revert (back) to sth</b>	<i>After weeks of unrest, life has <b>reverted to normal</b>.</i>	change back to a state or situation that existed in the past. SYN <b>go back</b> .
<b>restore sth</b>	<i>Some people want to <b>restore</b> the monarchy.</i>	return sth to its former state or condition. <b>restoration</b> N.
<b>reverse sth</b>	<i>They were going to let him go, but they <b>reversed</b> their decision.</i>	change sth so it is the opposite of what it was before ( <b>reverse a decision/trend/policy</b> , etc.). <b>reversal</b> N. <b>reversible</b> ADJ. OPP <b>irreversible</b> .
<b>reform sth</b>	<i>There are new proposals to <b>reform</b> the prison system.</i>	improve a system, an organization, a law, etc. by making changes to it. <b>reform</b> N.

#### 1 Organize these words into the categories below.

evolve   restore   amend   assimilate   adapt  
transition   revert   reform   reverse   transform

- 1 a word that describes complete change: \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 words that describe a change to improve something: \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 words that describe changing back: \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 words that describe a gradual change: \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- 1 There will be a period of \_\_\_\_\_ when the new government takes over.
- 2 The building was badly damaged, but they are planning to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 3 As a company we believe in \_\_\_\_\_, not revolution.
- 4 They've changed their minds completely: this is a \_\_\_\_\_ of the previous policy.
- 5 After years of civil war, the country will find it difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ back to normal.
- 6 We will all have to \_\_\_\_\_ to climate change, or it will be a disaster for the planet.
- 7 Once the ice caps melt at the poles, the change is completely \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 We'll need time to \_\_\_\_\_ all the new ideas in their proposed plan.



## B Change management

### Managing change

Most employees **resist** change that is **enforced** and **imposed upon** them. So, if a company wants to **pursue** a policy that aims to **bring about sweeping**, or even **subtle**, changes, managers need to remember that their role is

to **facilitate** change and not impose it. This requires an **ongoing consultation** process with the staff, so that any changes have their support before they are **implemented**.

### Glossary

<b>resist sth</b>	refuse to accept sth and try to stop it happening. <b>resistance</b> N.
<b>enforce sth</b>	make people obey sth ( <b>enforce the law</b> ). <b>enforcement</b> N.
<b>impose sth on/upon sb</b>	make sb accept sth against their wishes.
<b>pursue sth</b>	follow or try to achieve sth over a period of time ( <b>pursue a policy/goal</b> ).
<b>bring sth about</b>	make sth happen. <b>SYNS create sth, cause sth.</b>
<b>sweeping change</b>	a big change that will have an important effect.
<b>subtle</b>	not easy to notice or understand ( <b>subtle difference</b> ). <b>OPP obvious.</b>
<b>facilitate sth</b>	make an act or process easier to achieve.
<b>ongoing</b>	continuing to develop (an <b>ongoing process/investigation</b> ).
<b>consultation</b>	the act of discussing sth with sb before making a decision. <b>consult sb</b> V.
<b>implement sth</b>	<b>consultative</b> ADJ. make sth that has been decided start to happen. <b>SYNS carry out sth, put sth into practice. implementation</b> N.

### 3 Positive or negative? Write P or N.

- 1 They've enforced the change. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 They've resisted any change. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 They've been very consultative. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 They've imposed change. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 They've introduced refreshing changes. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 They want to facilitate change. \_\_\_\_\_

#### spotlight Adjective + change

A number of adjectives are commonly used with the noun **change**:  
**sweeping/radical/major/wholesale** changes (= big changes)  
 a **refreshing/welcome** change (= a change that is pleasantly new or different)

### 4 Replace the underlined words with different words that give a similar meaning.

- 1 It's only a small difference but we believe it will have an effect. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 He wants to introduce radical changes. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 The new furniture is a welcome change. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 They have the power to make people obey the law. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 They plan to carry out a number of changes. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 The new measures will create further change. \_\_\_\_\_

### 5 Complete the words in the text.

When the new head teacher arrived, it was rumoured that she planned to (1) p \_\_\_\_\_ a policy of (2) s \_\_\_\_\_ changes to the way the school was organized, and that she wouldn't be very sympathetic to staff who showed any real (3) r \_\_\_\_\_. However, unlike the former head who never talked to anyone, Mrs Palmer has (4) c \_\_\_\_\_ members of staff, and that has been a (5) w \_\_\_\_\_ change. She set up a staff committee, and we have been involved in an (6) o \_\_\_\_\_ process of (7) c \_\_\_\_\_ for about two months. We have also (8) i \_\_\_\_\_ a few changes which have already made an (9) o \_\_\_\_\_ difference.



## 28 I can talk about energy conservation

### A Saving energy in the home

#### Three easy ways to **conserve** energy in the home

- Switch to **energy-saving eco** light bulbs<sup>1</sup>. They **emit** less heat and last far longer. They may be more expensive, but you can greatly reduce your energy **consumption**.
- Never leave electrical **appliances** such as TVs **on standby**, or leave your mobile phone **charging** unnecessarily. Get rid of your **tumble dryer**: they **consume** masses of energy.
- Every year we throw away thousands of batteries, making **landfill** sites even more toxic. Use **rechargeable batteries**<sup>2</sup>, or **better still**, solar **chargers**.



#### Glossary

<b>conserve sth</b>	avoid wasting sth. <b>conservation</b> N.
<b>switch to sth</b>	change from using one thing to using another.
<b>energy-saving</b>	not wasting much energy ( <b>water-saving</b> , <b>labour-saving</b> ).
<b>eco(-)</b>	(short for <b>ecology</b> ) relating to the environment ( <b>eco-home</b> , <b>eco-disaster</b> ).
<b>emit sth</b>	send out sth such as light, heat, sounds, gas, etc. <b>emission</b> N.
<b>consumption</b>	the act of using energy, food, or materials. <b>consume</b> V (a person is a <b>consumer</b> ).
<b>appliance</b>	a machine you use at home e.g. fridge, washing machine.
<b>on standby</b>	If a TV is <b>on standby</b> , it is connected to the power supply but is not in use.
<b>charge sth (up)</b>	pass electricity through sth to store it there, using a <b>charger</b> (N).
<b>tumble dryer</b>	a machine that uses hot air to dry clothes.
<b>landfill (site)</b>	an area of land where large amounts of rubbish are buried.
<b>toxic</b>	poisonous ( <b>toxic chemicals/gases/substances</b> ).
<b>better still</b>	even better ( <b>still</b> is used to make a comparison stronger).

#### 1 Good or bad, in terms of energy-saving? Write G or B.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 I left the TV on standby overnight. _____   | 6 We took energy conservation measures. _____ |
| 2 We don't use eco light bulbs. _____         | 7 He left the phone charger on all day. _____ |
| 3 I switched to rechargeable batteries. _____ | 8 Our energy emissions are high. _____        |
| 4 Our energy consumption increased. _____     | 9 We avoided sending it to landfill. _____    |
| 5 The machine emits toxic substances. _____   | 10 I threw away a water-saving device. _____  |

#### 2 Complete the sentences.

#### ABOUT YOU

- |  |       |
|--|-------|
| 1 Have you got a tumble - _____ ? If so, could you manage without it?      | _____ |
| 2 When you _____ your mobile phone, do you leave it plugged in overnight?  | _____ |
| 3 Do you know how much electricity you _____ in an average week?           | _____ |
| 4 How many electrical _____ in your kitchen do you use regularly?          | _____ |
| 5 Do you always turn off lights in rooms you aren't using to _____ energy? | _____ |
| 6 Do you use rechargeable _____, or better _____, a solar _____ ?          | _____ |
| 7 Which energy-_____ steps in the article above do you actually take?      | _____ |
| 8 Are you an above-average or below-average _____ of electricity?          | _____ |

#### 3 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.





## B Saving energy in a restaurant

ACORN HOUSE RESTAURANT is London's first truly **environmentally-friendly** restaurant. It's a training restaurant which aims to turn out **green** chefs, making it a **groundbreaking enterprise**. The principles are clear: use local produce which is **in season** to reduce **food miles**; avoid **disposable** products; and **recycle** at least 80 per cent of all waste. Even the building itself has been designed to **maximize** natural light and to **minimize** energy use. In the most **sustainable** restaurant in the capital, everything is done to reduce each customer's **carbon footprint**. Is this the restaurant of the future?

### Glossary

<b>green</b>	concerned with or supporting the protection of the environment.
<b>groundbreaking enterprise</b>	using new methods or making new discoveries. a large, new project. <b>SYN venture</b> .
<b>in season</b>	(of fruit and vegetables) ready for eating now and available in large numbers. <b>OPP out of season</b> .
<b>food miles</b>	the distance food travels from where it is grown or produced to where it is consumed.
<b>disposable</b>	made to be thrown away after use. <b>dispose of sth</b> v.
<b>recycle sth</b>	treat sth so that it can be used again. <b>recycling</b> n.
<b>maximize sth</b>	1 make the best use of sth. 2 increase sth as much as possible. <b>OPP minimize sth</b> .
<b>sustainable</b>	using methods which do not harm the environment ( <b>sustainable agriculture/energy</b> ). <b>sustainability</b> n.
<b>carbon footprint</b>	Your <b>carbon footprint</b> shows how much CO <sub>2</sub> is emitted from your personal energy use ( <b>reduce your carbon footprint</b> ).

### spotlight -friendly

**-friendly** is often used with nouns, adjectives, and adverbs to mean 'helping a person or thing; not harming them'.

**an eco-friendly light bulb**  
**environmentally-friendly cleaning products**  
**user-friendly instructions**  
 (= easy to use or understand)

### 4 Tick the word(s) which are possible. One, two, or three may be possible.

- Using natural materials such as cotton or wool is more *environmentally-friendly* ☐ *eco-friendly* ☐ *user-friendly* ☐ than using man-made fabrics.
- We should try to eat food which is *in season* ☐ *out of season* ☐ *disposable* ☐.
- We should try to reduce *food miles* ☐ *our carbon footprint* ☐ *sustainability* ☐.
- In new buildings, it's important to *minimize* ☐ *maximize* ☐ *dispose of* ☐ natural light.
- The restaurant is an exciting new *enterprise* ☐ *carbon footprint* ☐ *venture* ☐.
- We are interested in *groundbreaking* ☐ *sustainable* ☐ *green* ☐ projects.

### 5 Complete the texts.

Two university scientists have been given an award for their (1) g\_\_\_\_\_ research into ways of (2) r\_\_\_\_\_ used computers. Their unusual (3) v\_\_\_\_\_ aims to (4) r\_\_\_\_\_ 95 per cent of all computer parts, and ensure that the remaining 5 per cent will be (5) d\_\_\_\_\_ of in a way which (6) m\_\_\_\_\_ the impact on the environment.

Food (7) m\_\_\_\_\_ (or food kilometres) are the distance food travels from the farm to your plate. Here at The Good Food Forum we aim to educate communities on this issue, and to encourage consumers to buy locally produced food which is in (8) s\_\_\_\_\_.





## 29 I can discuss wildlife under threat

### A Threats to wildlife in general

Word	Example	Meaning
<b>habitat</b>	<i>Some birds are in danger of losing their <b>habitat</b>.</i>	the place where a plant or animal is usually found ( <b>natural habitat</b> ).
<b>deforestation</b>	<i><b>Deforestation</b> is a real threat.</i>	the act of <b>clearing</b> forests (= removing trees).
<b>endangered species</b>	<i>The African elephant is an <b>endangered species</b>.</i>	<b>endangered</b> in danger because numbers are falling. <b>species</b> a group of animals, plants, etc. whose members are similar and can breed with each other.
<b>under threat (of sth)</b>	<i>Many wild animals are <b>under threat</b>.</i>	likely to be harmed or damaged; also <b>threatened with sth</b> .
<b>reserve</b>	<i>We can protect certain species by creating <b>reserves</b>.</i>	a protected area for plants, animals, etc. (a <b>wildlife/nature reserve</b> ).
<b>in the wild</b>	<i><b>In the wild</b>, giant pandas eat bamboo exclusively.</i>	in a natural environment not controlled by people.
<b>in captivity</b>	<i>The bear was born <b>in captivity</b>.</i>	kept in a zoo or park, etc.
<b>in decline</b>	<i>Snow leopard populations are <b>in decline</b>.</i>	continuously decreasing in number, quantity, etc. ( <b>gradual/steady decline</b> ).
<b>breed v</b>	<i>Eagles <b>breed</b><sup>1</sup> in spring. We <b>breed</b><sup>2</sup> eagles in captivity.</i>	1 (of animals) have sex and produce young. 2 keep animals in order for them to produce young.
<b>wipe sb/sth out</b>	<i>Deforestation is <b>wiping out</b> certain species.</i>	destroy or get rid of sth completely.
<b>die out</b>	<i>This species of cat is <b>dying out</b>.</i>	become less common and eventually disappear.

#### spotlight **extinct, extinction**

If a plant or animal is **extinct**, it no longer exists. *Are sharks **becoming extinct**?*

The species is **in danger of extinction**. *It is **on the verge of extinction**.* (= very close to extinction)

#### 1 Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

1 The tiger population is in decline.	There are fewer tigers than there were.	
2 We are destroying their natural habitat.	We are destroying the nature reserves.	
3 It is on the verge of extinction.	It is almost extinct.	
4 They breed better in the wild.	They feed better in the wild.	
5 This species is endangered.	This species is under threat.	
6 I've seen widespread deforestation.	I've seen many forests cleared.	
7 In time, it will die out.	In time it will gradually disappear.	

#### 2 Complete the dialogues with a single word in each space.

- Has the dodo been wiped \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Yes, it's \_\_\_\_\_.
- They're in steady \_\_\_\_\_, aren't they? ~ Yes, it's just a \_\_\_\_\_ process.
- These birds are in \_\_\_\_\_ of extinction. ~ That's awful. Can they \_\_\_\_\_ more?
- Did you see them \_\_\_\_\_ captivity? ~ No, I was lucky – I saw them in the \_\_\_\_\_.
- I went to a nature \_\_\_\_\_ last year. ~ It's great to see animals in their natural \_\_\_\_\_.
- There's far too much fishing of cod. ~ Yes, many \_\_\_\_\_ of fish are \_\_\_\_\_ extinct.





## B Threats to an endangered species 🎧

### Under threat: the rhino<sup>1</sup>

- **Poaching:** This **poses** the greatest **threat to** this species, despite the ban on trade in **rhino horn**<sup>2</sup>, which is particularly **sought after** for medical or decorative use.
- **Civil disturbance:** War **diverts funds** from conservation, and the high levels of **poverty** in affected areas increase the **likelihood** that people will turn to poaching. In some African countries, civil disturbance has **taken a heavy toll** on rhino populations.
- **Habitat loss:** If people **encroach on** the rhinos' **territory** through deforestation, the consequences are a lack of food and a limited **gene pool** for breeding.



### Glossary

**poaching**

the illegal hunting of animals, birds, etc. (the person is a **poacher**).

**pose a threat to sb/sth**

create a threat (also **pose a risk/danger to sb/sth**).

**sought after**

wanted by many people but not easy to get.

**divert sth (from sth)**

use sth for a purpose that is different from its original purpose.

**funds**

pl. money available to be spent (**raise funds** = collect money).

**poverty**

the state of being poor.

**likelihood**

syn **probability**.

**take a heavy toll on sth/sb**

have a bad effect on sth.

**encroach on/upon sth**

FML gradually cover more and more of an area.

**territory**

an area an animal regards as its own and defends against others. **territorial** ADJ.

**gene**

a unit of information inside a cell which controls what the living thing will be like (the **gene pool** is the total of all the genes in a species).

### 3 Cross out the error in each sentence. Write the correct word(s) at the end.

- 1 Cash will need to be divested from one project to another. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Pollution is putting a heavy toll on the seabird population. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 The factory puts a substantial danger to wildlife in the area. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 You hear people talk about the genes pool all the time. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I'm worried that the new developments are encroaching in the countryside. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 The horn of the animal is sought over by poachers. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 It's important to raise fund to support conservation. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 This poses a threaten to both humans and wildlife. \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 Write a word at the end of the sentence with the same meaning as the underlined words.

- 1 There is little probability of things improving soon. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 You should avoid going into the animals' land. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 He was sent to prison for illegal hunting of birds' eggs. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I saw a large heavy animal with a horn on its nose at the zoo. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The animal is extremely protective of its land. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Living in a situation with very little money is common in Africa. \_\_\_\_\_





## 30 I can describe medical advances

### A revolutionary era in medical advances

In recent **decades**, we have witnessed radical changes in **conventional** medicine:

- Fifty years ago, **scanners**<sup>1</sup> did not exist. **Diagnostic** tools were **restricted** to **stethoscopes**<sup>2</sup> and basic x-ray machines.
- Until recent years, children were **prone to** certain infectious diseases, for which there was no effective **cure**. **Vaccines** have almost **eradicated** some of these **conditions**.
- In the past, if you needed a major operation, you would be **confined to bed** for weeks. Today many operations use less **invasive procedures**, requiring day surgery only.
- In the past, the **mortality rate** for patients with **organ** failure, such as heart, lung, or kidney failure, was 100 per cent. Today, **transplants** can allow patients to **resume** a normal life.
- The **survival rate** for many cancers has improved considerably over recent decades, due to the development of **chemotherapy** to treat the condition.



### Glossary

<b>era</b>	a period of time that has a particular quality or character.
<b>advance(s) (in sth)</b>	progress made in science, medicine, technology, etc.
<b>decade</b>	a period of ten years.
<b>conventional</b>	usual or traditional; not new or different. <b>convention</b> N.
<b>diagnostic</b>	used for finding out what physical or mental problem sb has. <b>diagnose</b> v. <b>diagnosis</b> N.
<b>restrict sth (to sth)</b>	limit the size, number, or amount of sth. <b>restriction</b> N.
<b>prone to sth</b>	likely to suffer from sth (also <b>accident-prone</b> ).
<b>cure</b>	a medical treatment that makes a sick person well again. <b>cure</b> v. <b>curable</b> ADJ. OPP <b>incurable</b> .
<b>vaccine</b>	a substance which is put into the blood and protects the body from disease (the process of giving <b>vaccine</b> is <b>vaccination</b> N). <b>vaccinate</b> v.
<b>eradicate sth</b>	destroy or get rid of sth (bad) completely. SYN <b>wipe sth out</b> .
<b>condition</b>	a long-term illness or medical problem.
<b>be confined to bed / a wheelchair</b>	have to stay in bed / a wheelchair.
<b>invasive</b>	(of medical treatment) involving cutting of the body. <b>invasion</b> N. <b>invade</b> v.
<b>procedure</b>	a medical operation or investigation ( <b>carry out</b> / <b>perform a procedure</b> ).
<b>organ</b>	a part of the body that has a particular purpose, such as the heart or brain.
<b>transplant</b>	an operation in which a damaged organ is replaced with one from a <b>donor</b> (= sb who gives part of their body, blood, etc.). <b>transplant</b> v.
<b>resume sth</b>	FML begin sth again after an interruption. <b>resumption</b> N.
<b>chemotherapy</b>	the treatment of diseases, especially cancer, by drugs.

### spotlight **rate**

A **rate** is a measurement of the number of times something happens within a period, e.g. the **mortality/death rate** is the number of people dying; the **survival rate** is the number of people continuing to live despite a serious illness.  
*The **birth rate** rocketed.* = The number of babies born rose sharply.  
*The **accident rate** plummeted.* = The number of accidents fell sharply.



### 1 Complete the table.

Noun	Verb	Adjective
	invade	
	cure	
	resume	xxxxxx
convention	xxxxxx	

Noun	Verb	Adjective
vaccine,		xxxxxx
diagnosis		
	transplant	xxxxxx

### 2 Write yes or no.

- 1 If a disease is wiped out, does it mean it has been restricted? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Does an organ donor receive an organ from someone else? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 If you're prone to injury, are you more likely to be injured than most people? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 If you have a disease which is diagnosed, does it mean you are better? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Is flu usually described as a medical condition? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Are we living in a technological era? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 If your dentist takes your tooth out, is it usually an invasive procedure? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Has heart disease been eradicated in the world? \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 If something plummets, does it go down? \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 If the accident rate rockets, is that a good thing? \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Match 1–10 with a–j.

- |   |                  |
|---|------------------|
| 1 They have been doing research on the disease for a    | a chemotherapy.  |
| 2 There's a prize for the most important technological  | b decade.        |
| 3 After the operation, she was confined                 | c transplant.    |
| 4 My sister is prone                                    | d incurable.     |
| 5 I needed to know the current survival                 | e to depression. |
| 6 The surgeons had to perform a delicate medical        | f prone.         |
| 7 His life was saved thanks to an organ                 | g rate.          |
| 8 Cancer treatment is often in the form of              | h to bed.        |
| 9 It's her third cycling injury; she's really accident- | i advance.       |
| 10 Sadly, this disease is thought to be                 | j procedure.     |

### 4 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A The brain disease meningitis C has been \_\_\_\_\_, I believe.  
B Yes, it's been almost completely \_\_\_\_\_. That's brilliant news.
- 2 A In some areas, lung cancer treatment is \_\_\_\_\_ to non-smoking patients only.  
B Yes, I think that may be true for patients needing an organ \_\_\_\_\_ as well.
- 3 A The government has a policy to \_\_\_\_\_ the elderly against flu.  
B I know, but there's often a shortage of the appropriate \_\_\_\_\_ when it's needed.
- 4 A I'm not in favour of drug treatments; I just don't trust \_\_\_\_\_ medicine.  
B Really? But there have been some fantastic \_\_\_\_\_ in drugs in the last few years.
- 5 A The mortality \_\_\_\_\_ in the UK has been falling since the 19th century.  
B That's true. \_\_\_\_\_ rates have improved particularly among the very young.
- 6 A The surgeons had to \_\_\_\_\_ a highly invasive procedure on Jason.  
B Yes, he was \_\_\_\_\_ to bed for ages, but he's recovering well, thank goodness.





# 31 I can talk about communication technology

## A Computer jargon 🎧

Word	Example	Meaning
<b>jargon</b>	She used a lot of technical <b>jargon</b> in her explanation.	OFTEN DISAPPROVING special words and phrases used by people who do the same kind of work.
<b>password</b>	Never tell anyone your <b>password</b> .	the secret numbers or letters you have to put into a computer in order to use it.
<b>username</b>	My <b>username</b> is LuluG.	the name you use to operate a computer or program.
<b>log on/in</b> OPP <b>log off/out</b>	When you <b>log on</b> , <b>enter</b> a username or password.	perform the actions that let you start to use a computer system.
<b>scroll (up/down)</b>	<b>Scroll up and down</b> the page using the <b>scroll bar</b> .	move text on a screen up or down so that you can read different parts.
<b>google sb/sth</b> SYN <b>do a search (on sth/sb)</b>	I found him by <b>googling</b> him / <b>doing a web search on</b> him.	type words into a search engine to find information about sb/sth.
<b>link</b>	Click on the <b>link</b> at the bottom of this page.	a connection between one file or document and another on the web.
<b>spam</b> <b>spamming</b>	I hate <b>spam</b> ; I spend ages deleting it from my inbox.	unwanted email advertisements; you <b>block spam</b> (= prevent it) with <b>anti-spam filters</b> .
<b>virus</b> N.	Have you got <b>anti-virus protection</b> ?	a program that enters your computer and destroys or damages your data.
<b>hack into sth</b>	They <b>hacked into</b> the bank and stole thousands.	use a computer to connect secretly to sb else's computer and find or change information on it.

### 1 Correct the errors.

- 1 stroll up a document \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 enter your passport \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 use computer jargot \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 hack onto someone's computer \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 anti-viro protection \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 cyber-learning \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 make a web search \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 black spam from your inbox \_\_\_\_\_

### spotlight e- and cyber-

**e-** and **cyber-** are used with nouns to mean 'related to the internet':  
 an **e-business** (a web-based company)  
**e-learning** (learning that takes place on computers or the internet)  
 a **cyber-café** (a café where people pay to use the internet, SYN **internet café**)  
**cyberspace** (the imaginary place where emails exist when being sent between computers).

### 2 Complete the text.

I spend a lot of time on the internet for my work (I'm a TV researcher), but I have to say I'm not very good at it. For a start, when I go to a website, I often forget my (1) p \_\_\_\_\_ or (2) u \_\_\_\_\_, and of course, I can't (3) l \_\_\_\_\_ in until I find it. I spend a lot of time trying to find information about TV personalities; I (4) g \_\_\_\_\_ their names and go to various websites, and sometimes I find (5) l \_\_\_\_\_ to other sites with more information. I often forget to save these sites, which means each time I have to start again and do another (6) s \_\_\_\_\_. Still, my brother is brilliant with computers, so he looks after various things like protecting me against computer (7) v \_\_\_\_\_ or providing anti-spam (8) f \_\_\_\_\_. One of these days, I'll do a course and learn how to use my computer properly.



## B Video sharing

YouTube, the **phenomenally** successful video-sharing website, was **dreamt up** over dinner by three Americans in 2004. They produced a simple routine for taking videos in any **format** and making them play in any **web browser** on any computer. They built a **virtual** video village where **registered users** could **upload** their own **videoblogs** and **clips**, and watch and **rate** other people's. The rise of such websites **coincided** with the availability of cheap **camcorders**, and **alongside** that, the development of easy-to-use **software**.

### Glossary

<b>phenomenally</b>	in a very great or impressive way. <b>phenomenal</b> ADJ.
<b>dream sth up</b>	INF have an idea, especially an unusual one. SYN <b>think sth up</b> .
<b>format</b>	(in computing) the way data is organized in a computer file or program.
<b>(web) browser</b>	a program that lets you look at files on the internet.
<b>virtual</b>	(in computing) created by computers or appearing on computers or the internet (a <b>virtual community</b> , a <b>virtual office</b> , <b>virtual reality</b> ).
<b>registered user</b>	a person whose username and password are recorded on a website, so they can enter it.
<b>upload sth</b>	send a file, video, etc. from your computer to a larger system using the internet. OPP <b>download sth</b> .
<b>videoblog</b>	a personal video made by sb on sth they are interested in.
<b>(video) clip</b>	a short part of a video or film.
<b>rate sth</b>	say how good you think sth is, e.g. good, acceptable, or bad.
<b>coincide with sth</b>	happen at the same time as sth else. <b>coincidence</b> N.
<b>camcorder</b>	a video camera that can be carried around.
<b>alongside sth/sb</b>	together or at the same time as sth/sb.
<b>software</b>	the programs used to operate a computer ( <b>install/run</b> a piece of <b>software</b> ).

### 3 True or false? Write T or F.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 You make a videoblog on a camcorder. ____                                 | 4 You need a browser to look at documents. ____                              |
| 2 If you rate a clip as phenomenal, you think it's terrible. ____           | 5 If two events coincide, one happens before the other. ____                 |
| 3 If you are a registered user of a website, the site knows your name. ____ | 6 If one event happens alongside another, they happen at the same time. ____ |

### 4 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

Have you ever ...

- \_\_\_\_\_ a piece of software onto your computer and had problems?
- become a \_\_\_\_\_ user of a website and then received a lot of spam?
- watched a \_\_\_\_\_ on YouTube, and \_\_\_\_\_ it as good?
- \_\_\_\_\_ a video clip onto a website yourself?
- been part of a \_\_\_\_\_ community on the internet?
- \_\_\_\_\_ up a brilliant idea for a website?
- \_\_\_\_\_ free software from the internet onto your computer?
- converted a video file from any \_\_\_\_\_ to any other one?

ABOUT YOU

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

### 5 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions in Exercise 4, or ask another student.





## 32 I can talk about migration

### A People on the move

Word	Example	Meaning
<b>flee (from) sth/sb</b>	<i>We saw long queues of people <b>fleeing</b> the war.</i>	escape from a dangerous situation, place, or person very quickly.
<b>refugee</b>	<i>Many <b>refugees</b> have crossed the border to escape the war.</i>	a person who is forced to leave their country for political/religious reasons.
<b>seek/take refuge (from sth/sb)</b>	<i>The men had to <b>take refuge</b> in the French embassy.</i>	find shelter or protection from trouble or danger.
<b>(political) asylum</b>	<i>The numbers seeking <b>asylum</b> have increased recently.</i>	the protection a country gives to a refugee ( <b>seek asylum, apply for asylum</b> ).
<b>ethnic minority ethnic group</b>	<i><b>Ethnic minorities</b> make up almost 10 per cent of the town's population.</i>	a group of people with the same culture or race living in a place where most people are of a different culture/race.
<b>be uprooted</b>	<i>Following the flooding, many villagers <b>were uprooted</b>.</i>	be made to leave the place where you live and go somewhere else.
<b>discrimination discriminate v</b>	<i>He had become a victim of racial <b>discrimination</b>.</i>	the practice of treating a person or group in society less fairly than others.
<b>deport sb deportation n</b>	<i>Foreigners may be <b>deported</b> if they enter the country illegally.</i>	force sb to leave a country, often because they have no right to be there.
<b>prejudice (against sb/sth) prejudiced adj</b>	<i>There is no <b>prejudice against</b> people from the ethnic community.</i>	an opinion about sb/sth that is not based on reason or experience, especially a dislike based on race, religion, etc.

#### 1 Circle the correct word(s). Both words may be correct.

- In 2001, over 250,000 people deported / emigrated to Canada.
- Most refugees who seek / apply asylum do so in a country neighbouring their own.
- The villagers took refugee / refuge in the nearby towns.
- The council are seeking the opinions of members of the economic / ethnic minority.
- People fled / flew in terror to escape the flood.
- Ignorance is often behind the prejudice / prejudiced against the incoming economic migrants / emigration.
- Women and children were forced to seek / take refuge in the local church.

#### spotlight migration

**Migration** is the movement of people or animals from one place to another. More specifically, **immigration** is the process of coming to live in a country that is not your own (people are **immigrants**). The opposite process of going to live in another country is **emigration** (**emigrate** v; people are **emigrants**). People who move abroad to find a better job are often called **economic migrants**.

#### 2 One word is missing in each line. What is it, and where does it go?

- There's no limit on the number of people granted political in this country. \_\_\_\_\_
- Racial and sexual is against the law in matters of employment. \_\_\_\_\_
- Economic to richer countries has existed for centuries. \_\_\_\_\_
- There's been a rise in the of illegal workers back to their home countries. \_\_\_\_\_
- Nearly half a million people were forced to their homes during the civil war, \_\_\_\_\_ and many of them refuge in the mountains, away from the fighting. \_\_\_\_\_
- Many families uprooted against their will to make way for the new road. \_\_\_\_\_





## B Migration: a personal experience

Moving from my **native** country was a huge **culture shock**. There was a lot I had to **get accustomed** to – not least the food! But I didn't suffer the prejudice or **animosity** that some migrants complain of. People have accepted me for what I am, including my religious **faith**; they've seen beyond the **stereotype**. And for my part, I recognize the need for **integration** in order to be able to **live at peace with** my neighbours. I still have feelings of **nostalgia** for the place where I grew up, but this is home now, and I have no **desire** to go back.



### Glossary

native	connected with the place where you were born and lived for the first years of your life ( <b>native country/land/city</b> ).
culture shock	a feeling of confusion and anxiety often felt by people staying in another country.
animosity (towards sb)	a feeling of anger or hatred. <b>syn</b> hostility.
faith	a strong belief in sth (this is often a <b>religious faith</b> ).
stereotype	a fixed idea of what a particular type of person or thing is like, but which is often not true in reality. <b>stereotypical</b> <b>adj</b> .
integration	the process of becoming a full member of a group or society. <b>integrate (into sth)</b> .
live at peace with sb	live without quarrelling with others.
nostalgia	a feeling of sadness mixed with pleasure when you think of happy times in the past. <b>nostalgic</b> <b>adj</b> .
desire	a strong wish ( <b>have no desire to do sth</b> ).

### spotlight Getting used to things

If you **get accustomed to (doing) sth**, or **get used to (doing)** it, you become familiar with it and accept it as normal. If you **get acclimatized (to sth)**, you become familiar with a new climate or situation. If you **get the hang of sth** **inf**, you learn how to do, use, or understand something.

### 3 Cross out the word which is wrong. Write the correct word at the end.

- Why is there so much animosity for politicians here? \_\_\_\_\_
- I couldn't stop sweating at first, but now I'm starting to get acclimated. \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you have feelings of nostalgic about your childhood? \_\_\_\_\_
- He doesn't fit the stereoscope of a typical 30-year-old businessman. \_\_\_\_\_
- The government policy is to aid newcomers' integrity into society. \_\_\_\_\_
- I'm a natural New Yorker; in fact, I've never lived anywhere else. \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 Complete the dialogue.

- A Amy, when you first emigrated, what kinds of things did you have to get (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to?
- B The main thing was the climate! But seriously, in my (2) \_\_\_\_\_ country, many people no longer have a strong religious (3) \_\_\_\_\_, whereas here, religion is at the heart of people's lives, so that added to my sense of culture (4) \_\_\_\_\_. I discovered that people had a (5) \_\_\_\_\_ view of how Western women behave, as they seemed surprised when they got to know me. I dressed appropriately and behaved sensitively, as I had no (6) \_\_\_\_\_ to alienate people. Ultimately I was keen to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ into society as best I could. And to be truthful, I've never felt any (8) \_\_\_\_\_ towards me. People here just want to live at (9) \_\_\_\_\_ with each other, as I do. Actually, the worst thing was the transport system – it took me ages to get the (10) \_\_\_\_\_ of it!





# Review: A changing world

## Unit 27

### 1 Complete the words in the dialogues.

- 1 Can we stop the decline? ~ No, it's i \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Were the changes obvious? ~ No, they were quite s \_\_\_\_\_, actually.
- 3 Has the consultation stage ended? ~ No, it's o \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Were the changes very noticeable? ~ Oh, yes, they were s \_\_\_\_\_ changes.
- 5 Has the firm reverted to its old name? ~ Yes, it's g \_\_\_\_\_ b \_\_\_\_\_ to calling itself AGD.
- 6 Will the plan be carried out? ~ Yes, he's putting it into p \_\_\_\_\_ at once.

**AZ** more words: **change** hands, instigate, revoke, turn the **corner**, tweak, **change** of heart, go back on sth

## Unit 28

### 1 Complete the chart with one word in each space.

How to be \_\_\_\_\_ : dos and don'ts

- 😊 Eat locally produced fruit and vegetables to reduce food \_\_\_\_\_.
- 😊 Try to eat fruit and vegetables that are in \_\_\_\_\_.
- 😊 \_\_\_\_\_ most of your waste rather than throwing it away.
- 😊 Use energy-\_\_\_\_\_ light bulbs, which \_\_\_\_\_ less CO<sub>2</sub>.
- 😊 Use \_\_\_\_\_ batteries.
- 😞 Don't use a tumble \_\_\_\_\_ : it \_\_\_\_\_ masses of energy.
- 😊 Maximize natural light in order to \_\_\_\_\_ the use of electric lights.
- 😞 Don't leave electrical appliances such as TVs on \_\_\_\_\_.
- 😞 Avoid things which are \_\_\_\_\_ and designed to be thrown away after use.

**AZ** more words: carbon emission, **renewable** energy source, thermostat, insulation, **draught** excluder, **solar** panel

## Unit 29

### 1 Complete the sentences on the right with a single word that keeps the same meaning.

- |  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1 It is because they're cutting down trees.  | It is because of _____.           |
| 2 Some species no longer exist.              | Some species have been _____ out. |
| 3 Rhinos could disappear altogether.         | Rhinos are in danger of _____.    |
| 4 It's where the animals normally live.      | It's the animals' natural _____.  |
| 5 Can they breed them in zoos?               | Can they breed them in _____?     |
| 6 You see them in their natural environment. | You see them in the _____.        |
| 7 They are mostly in protected areas.        | They are mostly in nature _____.  |
| 8 It's having a very bad effect.             | It's taking a very heavy _____.   |

**AZ** more words: put in **jeopardy**, **adverse** effect, biodiversity, deplete, **indigenous** species

## Unit 30

### 1 Circle the words that are possible. One, two, or three may be possible.

- 1 Modern medicine has transplanted / eradicated / wiped out many diseases.
- 2 The doctors had to perform a very evasive / invasive / persuasive procedure.
- 3 He was confined to bed / a sofa / a wheelchair.
- 4 It was a significant era / decade / period in medical science.
- 5 The doctors have managed to limit / restrain / restrict the spread of the disease.
- 6 It's a serious medical condition / illness / situation.
- 7 After an operation it can take time to presume / perform / resume a normal life.
- 8 The heart is one of the vital aspects / parts / organs of the body.

**AZ** more words: heart **bypass**, radiotherapy, **alternative** medicine, hip/knee/shoulder **replacement**, general/local **anaesthetic**, **administer** drugs/medicine

## Unit 31

### 1 Finish each word or phrase in two different ways.

- |                                |                                  |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 log _____ OR log _____       | 4 e- _____ OR e- _____           |
| 2 cyber _____ OR cyber _____   | 5 virtual _____ OR virtual _____ |
| 3 scroll _____ OR scroll _____ | 6 _____ OR _____ load something  |

### 2 Complete the words in each sentence.

#### ABOUT YOU

- 1 Have you ever made your own personal **video** \_\_\_\_\_ ? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Do you ever forget your **pass** \_\_\_\_\_ ? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Do you ever use a **cam** \_\_\_\_\_ ? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Do you **up** \_\_\_\_\_ many files or videos? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Do you find it easy to **in** \_\_\_\_\_ software on your computer? \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.

**AZ** more words: screensaver, computer **geek**, firewall, netiquette, **zip/compress** a file, bug

## Unit 32

### 1 Complete the text with suitable words.

Kamil was forced to (1) \_\_\_\_\_ from his (2) \_\_\_\_\_ Somalia after three members of his family were killed, and his life was also endangered. He took (3) \_\_\_\_\_ in Uganda for several months before seeking political (4) \_\_\_\_\_ in Britain. When he arrived, he obviously experienced a huge culture (5) \_\_\_\_\_, although he did not suffer any racial (6) \_\_\_\_\_. He says his religious (7) \_\_\_\_\_ is still strong despite what he has been through, and he is just happy to be able to live at (8) \_\_\_\_\_ with his neighbours, despite his obvious feelings of (9) \_\_\_\_\_ for his own country.

**AZ** more words: **brain** drain, feel alienated, outsider, displacement, hardship, **dual** nationality



## 33 I can discuss health services

### A Healthcare services

#### Healthcare services: frequently asked questions

- ▶ How do I **register with** a GP?
- ▶ How do I get a **referral** to a specialist?
- ▶ Can I request a **second opinion**?
- ▶ Are medical records strictly **confidential**?
- ▶ What if I suspect medical **negligence**?
- ▶ How do I **access out of hours** care in my area?
- ▶ Can I get **cosmetic surgery free of charge**?
- ▶ How can I **get hold of** data about **clinical trials**?
- ▶ Is **complementary medicine** freely available?

#### Glossary

<b>register (at/for/with sth)</b>	put your name on an official list ( <b>enrol</b> = register to join a course, school, etc.).
<b>referral</b>	the act of sending sb to get professional help ( <b>be referred to sb</b> ).
<b>second opinion</b>	advice from another person (i.e. not the original doctor).
<b>confidential</b>	meant to be kept secret ( <b>strictly confidential</b> ). <b>confidentiality</b> N ( <b>protect patient/client confidentiality</b> ).
<b>negligence</b>	fm1 failure to give proper care or attention. <b>negligent</b> ADJ.
<b>access sth</b>	fm1 reach, enter, or use sth ( <b>gain/have access to sth</b> ).
<b>out of hours</b>	when a surgery, office, etc. is closed.
<b>cosmetic surgery</b>	medical treatment intended to improve sb's appearance (surgical repair after accidents, burns, etc. is called <b>plastic surgery</b> ).
<b>free of charge</b>	If sth is <b>free of charge</b> it costs you nothing.
<b>get hold of sth</b>	find or obtain sth ( <b>get hold of sb</b> = find or contact sb).
<b>clinical trial</b>	a piece or period of research on the effectiveness or safety of drugs or treatment.
<b>complementary medicine</b>	treatments that are not part of traditional Western medicine, e.g. acupuncture.

#### 1 Make six phrases from the box.

protect someone's    get hold    clinical    enrol    strictly    cosmetic  
on a course    surgery    of something    confidential    confidentiality    trial

\_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 Complete the text.

When you move to a new area, you need to (1) \_\_\_\_\_ with a doctor. With most surgeries, if you need out of (2) \_\_\_\_\_ care and your doctor is not available, there will be an answerphone message, and you will be (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to another doctor. If you have a serious problem which involves seeing a specialist, you can get a (4) \_\_\_\_\_ by asking your GP to write to the hospital. If you aren't happy with the specialist's diagnosis, ask for a second (5) \_\_\_\_\_. You can gain (6) \_\_\_\_\_ to your medical records at your GP's surgery. All health care is free of (7) \_\_\_\_\_, even plastic (8) \_\_\_\_\_ if it is for medical reasons, and some surgeries also make use of complementary (9) \_\_\_\_\_. If you are unhappy with your treatment and suspect medical (10) \_\_\_\_\_, you should speak to the medical staff first before taking any further action.

#### 3 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions at the top of the page about your health service.



## B In hospital: patients' experiences

The nursing staff immediately **put me at my ease** and I was **kept informed** at all times.

Sister Ann's ward was **spotless**, and everything was done with **meticulous** care. **Nothing was too much trouble**.

I had **keyhole surgery** on my knee; apart from a **mix-up** over my notes, the treatment was **second to none**.

I know staff were **rushed off their feet**, but no one **took any notice of** my calls for help.

I was **admitted** to the ward, seen by a **junior** doctor, then nothing happened for two days!

### spotlight A stay in hospital

If you need medical care, you may be **admitted to hospital** (= taken there and treated). After treatment, you are **discharged** (= given permission to leave). Then you may go home to **convalesce** (= spend time recovering). **convalescence** N. SYN **recuperate**. **recuperation** N.

### Glossary

**put sb at (their) ease**

**keep sb informed**

**spotless**

**meticulous**

**nothing is too much trouble**

**keyhole surgery**

**mix-up**

**second to none**

**rushed off your feet**

**take (no) notice of sb/sth**

**junior**

make sb feel relaxed and not nervous.

continue to give sb information about sth.

perfectly clean (also **spotlessly clean**). SYN **immaculate**.

paying careful attention to every detail. SYN **fastidious**.

= sb is always ready to help.

a medical operation in which only a very small cut is made in the body.

INF a situation full of confusion due to a mistake. SYN **muddle**.

If a treatment is **second to none**, it is the best.

extremely busy, with too many things to do.

pay (no) attention to sth/sb.

having a low rank in an organization or profession. OPP **senior**.

### 4 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

1 There was a bit of a mix-up.	There was a bit of a muddle.	
2 The doctor ignored me.	The doctor took no notice of me.	
3 The treatment was second to none.	The treatment was inferior.	
4 She convalesced at home.	She recuperated at home.	
5 Nothing was too much trouble.	The care was too much trouble.	
6 The rooms were spotless.	The rooms were immaculate.	
7 When were you discharged?	When were you admitted?	
8 Did they put you at your ease?	Did they make it look easy?	
9 She's meticulous about cleaning.	She's fastidious about cleaning.	

### 5 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

#### ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY

- In hospital, patients are always \_\_\_\_\_ informed about their treatment. \_\_\_\_\_
- Keyhole \_\_\_\_\_ is increasingly common these days. \_\_\_\_\_
- Staff in hospitals are \_\_\_\_\_ off their feet all the time. \_\_\_\_\_
- There are more senior doctors than \_\_\_\_\_ doctors. \_\_\_\_\_
- All the wards in our local hospital are \_\_\_\_\_ clean. \_\_\_\_\_
- Recuperation (or \_\_\_\_\_) always takes place at home. \_\_\_\_\_

### 6 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Are the statements in Exercise 5 true about your country? Write your answers or ask another student.





## 34 I can talk about local government

### A Local election manifesto

Independent Party **manifesto** for the local **council** elections. We will:

- **Stand up for** the community and speak **on behalf of residents** on green issues.
- **Take** complaints **seriously**, and **give** neighbourhoods **a say** in local decisions.
- **Allocate** better funding for youth projects and **ensure** they are properly managed.
- Provide **grants** for **voluntary** organizations helping with the elderly and disabled.

#### Glossary

<b>manifesto</b>	a written statement by a political party saying what they believe in and what they intend to do.
<b>council</b>	the organization that provides local government in a city or area. A <b>councillor</b> is an elected member of the council.
<b>stand up for sth/sb</b>	support or defend sth/sb. <b>SYN stick up for sb</b> INF.
<b>on behalf of sb / on sb's behalf</b>	as the representative of sb.
<b>resident</b>	a person who lives in a particular place. (This is also a meaning of <b>citizen</b> , although <b>citizen</b> can also mean a person with legal rights in a country.)
<b>take sth/sb seriously</b>	think that sth/sb is important and deserves respect.
<b>say</b>	the right to take part in deciding sth ( <b>give sb a say / have a say in sth</b> ).
<b>allocate sth</b>	give sth officially to sb/sth for a particular purpose.
<b>ensure sth</b>	make sure that sth happens or is definite.
<b>grant</b>	a sum of money given, often by the government, for a purpose.
<b>voluntary</b>	(of work) done by people ( <b>volunteers</b> ) who choose to do it without being paid (the <b>voluntary sector</b> includes organizations called <b>charities</b> / <b>charity organizations</b> , which help people in need).

#### 1 Complete the words.

- |                  |                   |                 |                    |
|------------------|-------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1 r _ s _ d _ nt | 3 v _ l _ nt _ ry | 5 ch _ r _ ty   | 7 m _ n _ f _ st _ |
| 2 _ ns _ re      | 4 co _ n _ ll _   | 6 _ ll _ c _ te | 8 co _ n _ ll _ r  |

#### 2 One word is incorrect in each sentence. Cross it out and write the correct word at the end.

- I've read the manifests and they all say the same thing. \_\_\_\_\_
- They should give us a say to what happens in our city. \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you think the councillors will make our ideas seriously? \_\_\_\_\_
- My sister's done a lot of work for the volunteer sector. \_\_\_\_\_
- She spoke movingly on behalf for all of us. \_\_\_\_\_
- They should stand out for people who don't have a say. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 3 Complete the sentences.

- There are no local \_\_\_\_\_ in my town who speak on my \_\_\_\_\_.
- How much do local \_\_\_\_\_ help \_\_\_\_\_ organizations such as 'Help the Aged'?
- I don't really feel I \_\_\_\_\_ a say in local politics.
- Local politicians should \_\_\_\_\_ up for people and \_\_\_\_\_ their ideas seriously.
- Do you think you can get a \_\_\_\_\_ from the council to improve your home?
- There are thousands of British \_\_\_\_\_ living in other parts of Europe.



## B The role of the mayor

The **Mayor** of London is elected by any Londoners **eligible** to vote, and has quite a **high profile**. The mayor is the capital's **spokesperson**; he has a range of powers and duties, such as **promoting** economic development. He **sets** the annual **budget** for the Greater London Authority (the **strategic city-wide** government for London). He heads the Metropolitan Police Authority (which provides **policing** in the capital), the Fire Service, the London Development **Agency**, and finally, Transport for London (which controls the transport **network**). He also **chairs** meetings of the board of Transport for London.



### Glossary

<b>mayor</b>	the most important chosen or elected official in a town or city.	<b>city-wide</b>	happening or existing across the whole of a city (also <b>nationwide</b> , <b>worldwide</b> )
<b>eligible</b>	allowed by rules or laws to do or receive sth. <b>OPP ineligible</b> .	<b>policing</b>	the activity of keeping order in a place, using the police. <b>police v.</b>
<b>high profile</b>	A person or thing with a <b>high profile</b> gets attention and is easily noticed ( <i>a high-profile job</i> ).	<b>agency</b>	a business or government department that provides a particular service ( <b>employment/advertising/travel agency</b> ).
<b>spokesperson</b>	a person who speaks on behalf of a group or an organization.	<b>network</b>	a system of roads, lines, wires, etc. that are connected to each other ( <b>rail/road/underground/network</b> ).
<b>promote sth</b>	help sth to happen or develop. <b>promotion N.</b>	<b>chair (a meeting)</b>	be in charge of (a meeting) ( <i>see spotlight</i> ).
<b>budget</b>	the amount of money a person or organization has to spend on sth ( <b>set a budget</b> = decide a budget).		
<b>strategic</b>	carefully planned in order to achieve a particular goal. <b>strategy N.</b>		

### spotlight Gender

Some people are offended by job titles which refer only to men.

Neutral: **spokesperson chair/chairperson mayor** Men only: **spokesman chairman**

Women only: **spokeswoman chairwoman mayoress** (= female mayor or mayor's wife)

#### 4 Tick the words which are possible. One, two, or three words may be possible.

- The robbery has produced a *nationwide* ☐ *city-wide* ☐ *worldwide* ☐ police investigation.
- Our department is responsible for the *transport* ☐ *budget* ☐ *road* ☐ network.
- The job has a *high profile* ☐ *policing* ☐ *promotion* ☐.
- My uncle is the *chairman* ☐ *chairperson* ☐ *chairwoman* ☐ of the transport committee.
- We heard the *chair* ☐ *spokesperson* ☐ *spokesman* ☐ making a statement to the press.
- People under 21 may be *eligible* ☐ *ineligible* ☐ *strategic* ☐ to vote in the election.

#### 5 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- We need a large force to \_\_\_\_\_ the city.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ the city around the world.
- Mrs Bryant will \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting.
- He runs an employment \_\_\_\_\_.
- She sets the annual \_\_\_\_\_.
- The rail \_\_\_\_\_ is very complicated.
- If you're over 18, you're \_\_\_\_\_ to vote.
- We have an elected \_\_\_\_\_ in our city.





## 35 I can talk about crime and the police

### A Organized crime

The Serious **Organized Crime** Agency tackles a range of illegal activities including:

- ➔ **drug-trafficking**, which is considered to pose the greatest threat to the UK in terms of organized criminal involvement, the illegal **proceeds** obtained, and the overall harm caused.
- ➔ immigration crime, which includes both people-**smuggling** and **human-trafficking**, that is, trafficking people for criminal **exploitation**, such as **forced labour**.
- ➔ **fraud** committed against individuals or companies often by organized **gangs**, for example investment fraud, when people are **enticed** to pay money against false promises of returns.

Other threats include **forgery** of official documents and the use of **firearms**.

#### Glossary

<b>organized crime</b>	crime committed by professional criminals working in large groups.	<b>forced labour</b>	hard physical work that sb is forced to do.
<b>trafficking</b>	the buying and selling of sth illegally. <b>drug-/human-trafficking</b> .	<b>fraud</b>	the crime of obtaining money from sb by tricking them. <b>defraud sb v.</b>
<b>proceeds (of sth)</b>	the money you receive when you sell or organize sth.	<b>gang</b>	a group of criminals working together.
<b>smuggling</b>	the crime of moving goods or people illegally into or out of a country. <b>smuggle sth/sb v.</b>	<b>entice sb to do sth</b>	persuade sb to do sth, usually by offering them sth.
<b>exploitation</b>	DISAPPROVING a situation in which sb treats sb else unfairly in order to make money from their work. <b>exploit sb v.</b>	<b>forgery</b>	the crime of making an exact copy of documents or works of art in order to make money by selling them. <b>forge sth v.</b>
		<b>firearm</b>	FML a gun that can be carried.

#### 1 Tick the words which describe an illegal activity.

- |                        |                 |                          |
|------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| 1 smuggling _____      | 4 fraud _____   | 7 forced labour _____    |
| 2 gang _____           | 5 forgery _____ | 8 drug-trafficking _____ |
| 3 entice someone _____ | 6 firearm _____ |                          |

#### 2 Complete the words in the sentences.

- The gang were accused of d\_\_\_\_\_ the company of \$300,000.
- Six boys were rescued at the border, and the men were charged with human-t\_\_\_\_\_.
- In the developing world, large companies e\_\_\_\_\_ young children in order to make goods cheaply.
- A man was arrested for attempting to s\_\_\_\_\_ illegal weapons through customs.
- Most o\_\_\_\_\_ crime is financially motivated, while some is politically motivated.
- The police believe the men are responsible for the f\_\_\_\_\_ of hundreds of passports.
- In internet fraud schemes, victims may be e\_\_\_\_\_ to give their bank account details with the false promise of financial returns. Criminals use the p\_\_\_\_\_ to finance further schemes.

#### 3 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Which crimes in the text are people in your country most concerned about? Which are the most difficult to solve, and why? Write your ideas, or discuss them with another student.





## B An arrest

**A**n arrest is when a police **constable** lawfully **detains** someone suspected of an offence. In the UK, the police can arrest you if they have a valid arrest **warrant** (**issued** by a **magistrate**), or if they have reasonable **grounds** for suspecting you have committed or **are about to** commit an offence. You are **cautioned** and then taken to a police station as soon as possible. Once you are **in custody**, you have the right to legal advice from a **solicitor**. If there is sufficient evidence, the police will charge you; you will then appear in court where a magistrate will decide whether you should be **remanded in custody** or **released on bail**.

### Glossary

<b>detain sb</b>	keep sb in an official place, e.g. a police station, and prevent them from leaving ( <b>be detained in custody</b> ).	<b>caution sb</b>	FML warn sb officially that anything they say may be used against them as evidence in court.
<b>warrant</b>	a legal document signed by a judge that allows the police to do sth; a judge <b>issues a warrant</b> .	<b>custody</b>	the state of being in prison while awaiting trial ( <b>in custody</b> ).
<b>magistrate</b>	an official who acts as a judge in trials involving minor offences.	<b>solicitor</b>	a lawyer who gives legal advice and prepares documents.
<b>grounds (for sth)</b>	PL, FML good or true reasons for saying or doing sth ( <b>reasonable grounds for sth, on the grounds that ...</b> ).	<b>remand sb</b>	send sb away from court until their trial ( <b>remanded in custody</b> = sent to prison until the trial).
<b>be about to (do sth)</b>	be going to do sth very soon.	<b>bail</b>	money left with a court to ensure that a prisoner will return for their trial (a judge <b>releases sb on bail / grants bail or refuses bail</b> ).

### 4 Write your answers.

- Who has a lower rank than a sergeant? \_\_\_\_\_
- Who is above a sergeant? \_\_\_\_\_
- Who is the head of a regional force? \_\_\_\_\_
- Who issues an arrest warrant? \_\_\_\_\_
- Who detains someone? \_\_\_\_\_
- Who offers legal advice? \_\_\_\_\_
- Who is able to grant bail? \_\_\_\_\_
- Who is remanded in custody? \_\_\_\_\_
- Who may be refused bail? \_\_\_\_\_

#### spotlight The police

A **police officer** is any member of the **police force**. In the UK, a (**police**) **constable (PC)** is an officer of the lowest **rank** (= position in an organization). Above the rank of constable is the **sergeant**, the **inspector**, and so on. The **chief constable** is the head of each regional police force.

### 5 Complete the text.

#### ARRESTED IN ROAD RAGE INCIDENT

**A**n 82-year-old man is facing prison after a road rage incident in which he allegedly pointed a gun at another driver and was, allegedly, (1) a \_\_\_\_\_ to use it. A young (2) p \_\_\_\_\_ constable (3) d \_\_\_\_\_ the man at the scene of the crime on the (4) g \_\_\_\_\_ that he was in possession of an illegal firearm. He was (5) c \_\_\_\_\_ at the roadside, and then taken to the police station. Once in (6) c \_\_\_\_\_, the suspect refused to say anything and also refused his right to speak to a (7) s \_\_\_\_\_. The police later charged him, and the man will now appear before a (8) m \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow morning, when he hopes to be (9) r \_\_\_\_\_ on bail.



## 36 I can discuss prisons

### A The prison system

Since the **abolition** of **capital punishment** in the UK, time in prison is the most serious punishment allowed by law. It satisfies our need for **retribution**, and longer sentences are meant to be a **deterrent**. Furthermore, criminals who are **locked up** are no threat to society, and **rehabilitation** programmes in

prison give criminals a chance to **turn over a new leaf**. However, the current system is **in crisis**. More people are being **imprisoned**, over 60 per cent **reoffend**, and for some criminals, prison is simply **regarded** as an **occupational hazard**. Is it just our way of **taking revenge**? If so, can we **justify** its continued existence?

#### Glossary

<b>abolition</b>	the official ending of a law, system, or institution. <b>abolish</b> sth v.	<b>turn over a new leaf</b>	change your behaviour and become a better person.
<b>capital punishment</b>	punishment by death.	<b>in crisis</b>	in a period of great difficulty and uncertainty.
<b>retribution</b>	FML severe punishment for sth serious that sb has done.	<b>reoffend</b>	FML commit a crime again (a person is a <b>reoffender</b> ).
<b>deterrent</b>	a thing that makes sb less likely to do sth. <b>deter</b> sb v.	<b>regard sth/sb as sth</b>	think about sth/sb in a particular way.
<b>lock sb up</b>	INF put sb in prison. SYN <b>imprison</b> sb. <b>imprisonment</b> N.	<b>occupational hazard</b>	a risk or danger (= hazard) that is part of a job.
<b>rehabilitation</b>	the process of helping people to live a normal life after they have been ill or in prison. <b>rehabilitate</b> sb v.	<b>take revenge</b>	take action to punish sb because they made you suffer.
		<b>justify sth</b>	show that sth is right or fair. <b>justification</b> N. <b>justifiable</b> ADJ.

#### 1 Rewrite the sentences on the left, using the sentence beginnings on the right.

- |  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| 1 He's been imprisoned.                    | He's been locked _____.     |
| 2 She thinks of me as a friend.            | She regards _____.          |
| 3 He wants to change and become better.    | He wants to turn _____.     |
| 4 Can we justify the prison system?        | Is the prison system _____? |
| 5 He was imprisoned for life.              | He got life _____.          |
| 6 It changed after they abolished the law. | It changed after the _____. |
| 7 It's one of the risks of the job.        | It's an _____.              |
| 8 Do many people commit a crime again?     | Are there many _____?       |

#### 2 Complete the words in the sentences, then write your own answers, or ask another student.

- Do you believe you can r \_\_\_\_\_ most criminals?
- Do you think prison is an effective d \_\_\_\_\_?
- Do you believe in c \_\_\_\_\_ punishment?
- Would you like to a \_\_\_\_\_ anything in your prison system?
- Is there ever any justification for taking r \_\_\_\_\_?
- Is the prison system in c \_\_\_\_\_ in your country?

#### ABOUT YOU

---



---



---



---



---



---



## B A different system

**GRENDON** is not a typical prison. It is constructed **exclusively** on the principles of group **therapy**, and operates as a 'therapeutic community' for offenders. The **inmates** are all serving long sentences, and a high **proportion** are guilty of violent crime. Yet the prison **deviates from** the normal system in almost every way, with an absence of physical force and **segregation**. The prison is divided into five **self-contained** communities, the inmates are not **confined** in **cells**, and decisions are only taken with their **consent**.

### Glossary

<b>exclusively</b>	only, and with nothing else (e.g. <i>We rely <b>exclusively</b> on aid.</i> ).
<b>therapy</b>	treatment of a physical or mental problem or illness ( <b>group therapy</b> involves discussing each other's problems). <b>therapeutic</b> ADJ.
<b>inmate</b>	a person living in a prison.
<b>proportion</b>	a part or share of the whole amount or number.
<b>deviate from sth</b>	be different from what is normal. <b>deviation</b> N.
<b>segregation</b>	the policy of separating people of different sex, race, religion, etc. <b>segregate</b> V.
<b>confine sb/ sth in sth</b>	keep sb/sth within an enclosed area. <b>confinement</b> N.
<b>cell</b>	a lockable room for prisoners in a prison or police station.
<b>consent</b>	agreement about sth ( <b>by common consent</b> = with everyone's agreement; <b>by mutual consent</b> = with the agreement of both parties involved). <b>consent</b> V.

### spotlight **self-**

Before nouns and adjectives, **self-** means of, to, or by yourself.

**Self-contained** communities exist without outside help.

With a **self-catering** holiday, you cook for yourself.

**Self-assessment** is when you judge your own progress and achievements.

### 3 Circle the correct word(s). Sometimes both words are correct.

- The men were both **confined** / **contained** in a small cell.
- The plane had to **segregate** / **deviate** from the normal route.
- Many of the prisoners / inmates are serving long sentences.
- The management course is based on **self-catering** / **self-assessment**.
- I think it requires the parents' **agreement** / **consent**.
- The club is **exclusively** / **inclusively** for men; women aren't allowed in.

### 4 Complete the dialogues with a single word.

- Do they discuss each other's problems? ~ Yes, it's a type of group \_\_\_\_\_.
- Do they separate men from women? ~ Yes, there's a policy of \_\_\_\_\_.
- They're locked up every night. ~ Yes, and the \_\_\_\_\_ are very small.
- Did everyone agree? ~ Yes, it was by common \_\_\_\_\_.
- Are many of the men violent? ~ Yes, quite a high \_\_\_\_\_.
- Did you both agree to the deal? ~ Yes, it was by \_\_\_\_\_ consent.
- Did the massage help your back pain? ~ Yes, it was very \_\_\_\_\_.
- Are the couple very independent? ~ Yes, they're quite self-\_\_\_\_\_.

### 5 ABOUT YOU What do you think of this prison? Is it likely to be more successful than a normal prison? Write your answers or ask another student.





## 37 I can talk about the armed forces

### A Organization

The US military comprises five branches in its field of operations: army, navy, air force, marine corps, and coast guard, all under civilian authority. More than 1.4 million people serve in the professional full-time military, with a further 1.2 million in the reserve army (the draft has not been enforced since 1986). The US military distinguishes between enlisted personnel, who make up 85 per cent of the armed forces and carry out fundamental operations such as combat and administration, and officers, who manage and supervise operations. The range of jobs is vast, and encompasses such diverse activities as running a hospital, commanding a tank, programming computers, operating a nuclear reactor, and maintaining weapons systems.



tank



helicopter



parachutes



missile

### Glossary

the military	a country's army, navy, and air force. SYN the armed forces. military ADJ.
branch	a part of a large organization (branch of a bank).
operation	a planned military or police action (military operation).
guard	a person or group of people who protect sth/sb. guard sth/sb v.
civilian	not belonging to the armed forces. civilian N.
authority	the power to give orders to other people.
serve	do useful work (serve your country / in the army / etc.).
the reserve(s)	an extra force that performs part-time duties and is available if needed (we also talk about having people in reserve).
the draft	AME the practice of ordering people to serve in the armed forces (called military service in many countries). SYN conscription (BrE).
distinguish between people or things	recognize a difference between people or things. SYNS differentiate, make a distinction N.
enlisted	ESPECIALLY AME relating to members of the armed forces below officer rank (to enlist is to join the armed forces).
fundamental	central, and forming the necessary basis of sth.
combat	fighting between forces (armed/unarmed combat = fighting with/without guns, bombs, etc.).
vast	extremely large (vast majority/numbers/amount). SYN huge.
encompass sth	FML include sth within an area or area of activity.
diverse	different from each other and of various kinds. diversity N.
command sb/sth	(in the forces) be in charge of people (a person is in command).
nuclear reactor	a structure which produces nuclear energy (a country with nuclear weapons is said to have a nuclear capability).
weapon	an object such as a knife, gun, or bomb that is used for fighting (nuclear/chemical weapons; a deadly/lethal weapon can kill sb).

#### spotlight **comprise, make up, consist of, compose**

These verbs describe the way in which something is formed:  
 A group **comprises** / **is composed of** / **consists of** / **is made up of** 30 people.  
 When you mention the parts first, use **make up** or **comprise**:  
 Men **make up** / **comprise** the majority of the group.





### 1 Correct the spelling mistakes.

- |                  |                    |                      |
|------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1 civilian _____ | 4 ennlisted _____  | 7 distinguish _____  |
| 2 wepon _____    | 5 the drauft _____ | 8 missil _____       |
| 3 nucleur _____  | 6 authority _____  | 9 conscription _____ |

### 2 Use each word/phrase in the box once to make eight compound words or phrases.

unarmed    vast    armed    lethal    military    air    forces    combat    majority  
 weapon    force    make    nuclear    operation    capability    a distinction

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Replace the underlined word(s) with a single word that has a similar meaning.

- To run an army requires a huge amount of money. v \_\_\_\_\_
- The decision will be taken by the armed forces. m \_\_\_\_\_
- A brigade is made up of approximately 5,500 men and women. c \_\_\_\_\_
- The right to self-defence is one of their central beliefs. f \_\_\_\_\_
- There was very little armed fighting. c \_\_\_\_\_
- The men are from very different backgrounds. d \_\_\_\_\_
- Six soldiers were on duty to protect the camp. g \_\_\_\_\_
- Single men make up the majority of the regiment. c \_\_\_\_\_
- This knife is a lethal weapon. d \_\_\_\_\_
- They don't recognize a difference between men and women. d \_\_\_\_\_
- The work includes many different tasks and responsibilities. e \_\_\_\_\_
- How many men work in the British army? s \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 Complete the text with suitable words.

The British armed (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (2) \_\_\_\_\_ of the army, the (3) \_\_\_\_\_, and the air (4) \_\_\_\_\_. As head of state, the Queen is theoretically in (5) \_\_\_\_\_ of the armed forces, but in practice they come under the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ of the British prime minister. There are just under 200,000 men and women (7) \_\_\_\_\_ in the professional armed forces (often referred to as 'the regulars'), but with even more than that in the (8) \_\_\_\_\_. The armed forces are also supported by a number of diverse agencies owned by the Ministry of Defence. The navy is the (9) \_\_\_\_\_ of the armed forces which is responsible for Britain's nuclear (10) \_\_\_\_\_, which (11) \_\_\_\_\_ four Trident missile submarines.

### 5 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

- Has your country got a professional and a reserve army? \_\_\_\_\_
- Does your country have military service? \_\_\_\_\_
- Does your country have a nuclear capability? \_\_\_\_\_
- Have you ever: stood next to a tank? \_\_\_\_\_ flown in a helicopter? \_\_\_\_\_  
 been in a professional army? \_\_\_\_\_ dropped from a parachute? \_\_\_\_\_  
 done military service? \_\_\_\_\_





## B For or against the armed forces?

**T**he armed forces provide protection from an invading enemy and from **internal** conflict; they are called upon to **assist** in international **peacekeeping** operations; and they are used in **civil** emergencies after a national disaster. However, a professional army requires **considerably** more **funding** than a reserve army. **The latter** is only **mobilized** when needed and is therefore much cheaper. The armed forces may also harm a society if they are involved in **counter-productive** (or **merely** unsuccessful) **warfare**.

### spotlight **interior and internal**

**Interior** ADJ, N relates to the inside part of sth (e.g. ADJ *the **interior** walls of the house*; N *the **interior** of a car/building*). OPP **exterior** ADJ, N.  
**The interior** is the central part of a country, a long way from the coast.  
**Internal** ADJ relates to the inside of sth, including the body (e.g. ***internal** doors/injuries*; *an **internal** enquiry/problem*). OPP **external**.  
**Internal** is commonly used in reference to things within a country (e.g. ***internal** flights/affairs/markets*). SYN **domestic**.

### Glossary

**assist (sb) in/with sth** FML help sb to do sth.  
**peacekeeping** intended to stop people fighting (a **peacekeeping force**).  
**civil** connected with the people who live in a country (**civil unrest/war/rights/liberties**).  
**considerably** much; a great deal.  
**funding** **considerable** ADJ. money provided for a special purpose (**government funding**).

**the latter** the second of two things that have just been mentioned (**the former** refers to the first of two things mentioned).  
**mobilize (sth)** prepare (an army) to fight in a war.  
**counter-productive** having the opposite effect to the one intended.  
**merely** only; simply (used to emphasize what you are saying).  
**warfare** the activity of fighting a war, often of a particular type (**guerrilla warfare** = fighting in small, unofficial military groups).

### 6 Circle the correct word(s). Sometimes both words are correct.

- 1 We could have **civil** / **civic** war.
- 2 He **simply** / **merely** wanted to help.
- 3 They're **mobilating** / **mobilizing** the army.
- 4 I like the **interior** / **internal** of the car.
- 5 It cost **considerably** / **considerately** more.
- 6 We took a **domestic** / **an internal** flight.
- 7 She's got **interior** / **internal** injuries.
- 8 I'm **assisting** / **helping** him in his enquiries.

### 7 Write a single word to complete each sentence.

- 1 It had the opposite effect to the one we intended, so it was clearly counter-\_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Most of the time their forces are engaged in guerrilla \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 The army have been sent there merely as a peacekeeping \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 There were problems on the coast, but the main area of unrest was in the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 People should be allowed to say what they want. It's one of our basic civil \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 If we want a large modern army, we will need more government \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 There were two plans mentioned. Was she referring to the former or the \_\_\_\_\_?
- 8 How quickly can they mobilize the \_\_\_\_\_?
- 9 Some flights were cancelled – both international and \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10 The bomb exploded in a built-up area, so the damage was \_\_\_\_\_.



# Review: Institutions

## Unit 33

### 1 Complete each dialogue with a suitable word.

- 1 Can I see his medical records? ~ No, they're strictly \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 I don't trust that consultant. ~ Why don't you get a second \_\_\_\_\_?
- 3 Is there a large scar? ~ No, it was done with keyhole \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Was the hospital ward clean? ~ Yes, it was absolutely \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Is there any worthwhile data on this? ~ Yes, they've done clinical \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Will they contact you about Pat? ~ Yes, they said they'd keep me \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 Can you go straight to a specialist? ~ No, you see your GP and get a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 Is she still in hospital? ~ No, she's been \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9 Has he left hospital? ~ Yes, but he needs time to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10 Were you busy? ~ Yes, we were rushed off our \_\_\_\_\_.

### 2 Answer the questions.

- 1 What's the opposite of *senior*? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 What's the opposite of *be discharged from hospital*? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 What's the medical treatment intended to improve someone's appearance? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 What's a synonym for *recuperate*? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Acupuncture and homeopathy are examples of what kind of medicine? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 What's a synonym for *meticulous*? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 What's a synonym for *a muddle*? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 *Pay no attention to something* is the same as '\_\_\_\_\_ no \_\_\_\_\_ of something'.

**A Z** more words: *antenatal*, *postnatal*, *overstretched*, *inpatient/outpatient*, **intensive** care, *biopsy*, in a **critical** condition

## Unit 34

### 1 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

- 1 I believe they will be receiving a government to cover the costs of repairs. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 There are many American living in other countries around the world. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 At what age are you to vote in most countries? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 We will need a very determined person to tomorrow's meeting. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The councillor will do his best to that the community is well represented. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 The party's says that it will allocate more funds to green issues. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 My cousin works in the voluntary, where people often work for no pay. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 People in high- jobs who appear on TV may need help with presentation skills. \_\_\_\_\_



## 2 Complete the dialogues in a suitable way. You only need a single word.

- 1 Do they let you give your opinion? ~ Yes, we can all have a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Who is the spokesperson? ~ Nobody is speaking on our \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Are they listening to your ideas? ~ Yes, they're taking them \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Is it paid work? ~ No, it's all done by \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Is the research all over the country? ~ Yes, it's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Will they support you? ~ Yes, lots of people will \_\_\_\_\_ up for us.
- 7 How much will the department receive? ~ They haven't set the \_\_\_\_\_ yet.
- 8 Is the meeting for people who live there? ~ Yes, it's for all local \_\_\_\_\_.

**A Z** more words: **pressure** group, support an **initiative**, **press** the government for sth, raise **awareness**, improve the **infrastructure**, chamber

## Unit 35

### 1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

- |                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 smuggle ...        | a a warrant           |
| 2 issue ...          | b in custody          |
| 3 grant ...          | c workers             |
| 4 remand someone ... | d diamonds            |
| 5 caution ...        | e someone's passport  |
| 6 exploit ...        | f at a police station |
| 7 forge ...          | g bail                |
| 8 detain someone ... | h a suspect           |

### 2 Complete the explanations.

- 1 If the police want to search someone's house, they need to apply for a search \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 If someone is kept in prison awaiting trial, they are in \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Taking or sending goods out of a country illegally is called \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 If you obtain money from people by deceiving them, that is called \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 A group of professional criminals is often referred to as a \_\_\_\_\_ of criminals.
- 6 Money left with the court to ensure a prisoner will return for trial is called \_\_\_\_\_.

**A Z** more words: counterfeit, embezzlement, espionage, on the **run**, extradition, **undercover** operation

## Unit 36

### 1 Complete the table.

Noun	Verb	Noun	Verb
	abolish		segregate
	imprison		confine
deviation			rehabilitate
justification			consent

## 2 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- 1 He's been in a lot of trouble but there are signs that he's turning out a new leaf. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 She committed a terrible crime and she really should be locked out for it. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I don't believe the death penalty (or capital punish) is justifiable. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 My neighbour and I agreed to share the cost by common consent. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Robertson was always regarded at a common thief until he turned his life round. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 The business has been on crisis but it seems to be recovering now. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 We are aware that being attacked is an occupying hazard for prison officers. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 We believe that imprisoning these offenders will act as a deterrence. \_\_\_\_\_

**A Z** more words: *incarcerate, probation, **solitary** confinement, **custodial** sentence, **suspended** sentence, warder*

## Unit 37

### 1 Tick the word(s) that are possible. One, two, or three may be possible.

- 1 We are concerned about their nuclear *capability* ☐ *weapons* ☐ *military service* ☐.
- 2 There may be internal *conflict* ☐ *enquiries* ☐ *flights* ☐.
- 3 He is a member of *the guard* ☐ *the air* ☐ *a peacekeeping* ☐ force.
- 4 They need to *enlist* ☐ *distinguish* ☐ *make a distinction* ☐ between civilians and the armed forces.
- 5 The force is *made up* ☐ *consisted* ☐ *composed* ☐ of diverse elements.
- 6 The government is worried about civil *unrest* ☐ *rights* ☐ *war* ☐.
- 7 The soldiers discovered a supply of *chemical* ☐ *lethal* ☐ *dead* ☐ weapons.
- 8 Do you agree with *conscription* ☐ *the draft* ☐ *military service* ☐.

### 2 One word is missing in each line. What is it, and where does it go?

- 1 The vast of people are against armed combat if a peaceful solution can be found. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 They had very little respect for the officers command of the troops. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 The paper believes that guerrilla cannot be justified, whatever its aims. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Attacking that particular state would merely be counter-, I would think. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 We can try to negotiate or face the prospect of armed combat: the would obviously be preferable. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Our organization has very little money at the moment, so we are hoping to receive government. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 We need to keep some basic supplies reserve. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 The army have been brought in to with the clearing-up operation after the floods. \_\_\_\_\_

**A Z** more words: *war-torn, veteran, mission, reconnaissance, call sb up, deploy*



## 38 I can understand news headlines

Headlines	Meaning
Arms deal probe	<b>arms</b> FML weapons, especially those used by the armed forces. <b>deal</b> an agreement, especially in business. <b>probe</b> an investigation into sth. <b>probe</b> v.
Mother's plea to kidnappers	<b>plea</b> FML an urgent and emotional request. <b>kidnapper</b> a person who takes sb away illegally and keeps them as a prisoner, usually in order to get money (called a <b>ransom</b> ). <b>kidnapping</b> N. <b>kidnap</b> v, N.
Ten-hour ordeal for tourists	<b>ordeal</b> a difficult or unpleasant experience.
Senate urges caution	<b>senate</b> (in the USA and some other countries) one of the two groups of elected politicians; the politicians are called <b>senators</b> . <b>urge sth</b> forcefully recommend sth (also <b>urge sb to do sth</b> ).
Bid to oust rail chief	<b>bid</b> an attempt. <b>bid</b> v. <b>oust (sb out of sth)</b> force sb out of a job or position. <b>chief</b> (often used in job titles) the most important or one of the most important people in a company or an organization ( <b>police chief</b> ).
Minister vows to quit	<b>minister</b> a senior member of a government. <b>vow</b> make a formal and serious promise to do sth. <b>vow</b> N.
Bomb blast wrecks factory	<b>blast</b> an explosion ( <b>bomb blast</b> ). <b>wreck sth</b> destroy or badly damage sth.
Boost for voters	<b>boost</b> a thing that helps or encourages sth. <b>boost</b> v.
Go-ahead for road scheme	<b>go-ahead</b> (usually <b>the go-ahead</b> ) formal permission to do sth. <b>scheme</b> an official plan.
IMG cease trading	<b>cease</b> FML stop happening or existing. <b>cease sth</b> stop doing sth.
Measures to curb inflation	<b>curb sth</b> limit or control sth.
Politician in death riddle	<b>riddle</b> a mystery (often a problem that is difficult to solve).
Doctor cleared of negligence	<b>clear sb (of sth)</b> prove that sb is innocent of doing sth wrong.
Injury blow for United	<b>blow</b> bad news (when something unfortunate has happened).
New flood alert	<b>alert</b> a warning.
Talks on brink of collapse	If sth is <b>on the brink of</b> happening, it has reached a point where it is about to happen (often sth very bad).
PM rules out referendum	<b>rule sth out</b> reject the possibility of sth.
Valuable gems stolen	<b>gems</b> jewellery.

### spotlight **Headline words**

Certain words often appear in newspaper headlines because they are very short, e.g. *bid*, *plea*, *oust*, *quit*. Other words give stories a more dramatic effect, e.g. *blast* and *boost*. And certain people are often at the centre of news stories, e.g. *ministers* and *senators*.





**1** Good news or bad news for the people in the headlines? Write G or B.

- |                                       |                                       |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 Minister quits under pressure _____ | 5 Owner sees home wrecked _____       |
| 2 Company ousts chairman _____        | 6 New deal for manager _____          |
| 3 Go-ahead for doctors _____          | 7 Boost for farmers _____             |
| 4 Ordeal for parents _____            | 8 Further blow for house buyers _____ |

**2** Match the headline words on the left with the correct meaning on the right.

- |             |                       |
|-------------|-----------------------|
| 1 vow       | a jewellery _____     |
| 2 plea      | b stop _____          |
| 3 bid       | c request _____       |
| 4 cease     | d warning _____       |
| 5 gems      | e investigation _____ |
| 6 riddle    | f promise _____       |
| 7 blow      | g attempt _____       |
| 8 probe     | h bad news _____      |
| 9 alert     | i reject _____        |
| 10 rule out | j mystery _____       |

**3** Replace the underlined words to create typical headlines.

- Senators reject the possibility of more aid      Senators rule out more aid
- 1 New weapons agreement \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 Explosion destroys fire station \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 Permission for official rail plan \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 Company managing director forced from his job \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 Encouragement for big banks \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 Senior members of government to restrict spending \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7 Men who took child demand money for her return \_\_\_\_\_
  - 8 Government strongly advises delay \_\_\_\_\_
  - 9 Motorcyclist found innocent of child's death \_\_\_\_\_
  - 10 Firm in serious danger of closure \_\_\_\_\_

**4** Write your own headlines for these news stories (maximum seven words per headline).

- There are new warnings about the dangers of certain food.  
*NEW FOOD ALERT*
- 1 An explosion has destroyed a new shopping centre.  
\_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 The police have rejected the possibility of a new investigation into the murder.  
\_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 The Prime Minister has promised that he will restrict the amount of money that the government will spend.  
\_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 Senior members of the government are planning a new attempt to force the Prime Minister to resign.  
\_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 There is a mystery surrounding the theft of valuable jewellery.  
\_\_\_\_\_





## 39 I can understand news journalism

### A Common words in news reports

**Amid** further **allegations** of a **cover-up**, **sources** at the Home Office refused to comment on claims of a serious **lapse** in security at a nuclear power station.

**D**iscussions about **controversial** new **measures** to control anti-social behaviour are continuing **behind the scenes**.

**A**ccording to figures from a recent **opinion poll**, the government's popularity is falling.

It **emerged** yesterday that the contents of a **scathing** report on Barkfield Hospital have already been **leaked** to the press. The report **quotes** a senior doctor **as saying that ...**

#### Glossary

<b>amid (or amidst) sth</b>	while sth else is happening.	<b>behind the scenes</b>	without people's awareness or knowledge ( <b>behind closed doors</b> = in private, not in public).
<b>allegation</b>	a statement, without proof, that sb has done sth wrong.	<b>according to</b>	used for saying where ideas or information have come from.
<b>cover-up</b>	<b>allege v.</b> an attempt to stop people discovering the truth about sth. <b>cover sth up v.</b>	<b>(opinion) poll</b>	a process of asking people for their opinion about sth.
<b>source</b>	<b>OFTEN PL</b> a person who provides information, especially for journalists.	<b>emerge</b>	(of facts, information, etc.) become known. <b>emergence N.</b>
<b>lapse</b>	a small mistake caused by forgetting sth or carelessness.	<b>scathing</b>	strongly critical ( <b>scathing attack/remark</b> ).
<b>controversial</b>	causing angry discussion and disagreement. <b>controversy N.</b>	<b>leak sth to sb</b>	give secret information to journalists or the public. <b>leak N.</b>
<b>measure</b>	an official action taken in order to achieve sth.	<b>quote sb</b>	repeat the exact words that sb said ( <b>quote sb as saying that ...</b> ).

#### 1 Complete the dialogues.

- How do you know about this? ~ It was in a recent \_\_\_\_\_ poll.
- How did the man get into the palace? ~ It was a \_\_\_\_\_ in security apparently.
- When did they discover this news? ~ It \_\_\_\_\_ last night.
- Are these talks in public? ~ No, it's all behind closed \_\_\_\_\_.
- Do many people disagree with it? ~ Yes, it's a very \_\_\_\_\_ idea.
- Was she strongly criticized? ~ Yes, it was a \_\_\_\_\_ attack.
- Is there proof the man stole it? ~ No, it's just an \_\_\_\_\_ someone made.
- Is this information accurate? ~ \_\_\_\_\_ to *The Times*, it is.

#### 2 Complete the text with suitable words.

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ continuing pressure on the government, information has been (2) \_\_\_\_\_ to the press of a plan to (3) \_\_\_\_\_ up the fact that Britain cannot meet the European Union's renewable energy targets. (4) \_\_\_\_\_ to reliable (5) \_\_\_\_\_ inside Whitehall, officials have informed the government of this fact, and one expert was (6) \_\_\_\_\_ as saying that Britain might only reach 9 per cent by 2020. Meanwhile, discussions are continuing behind the (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to see what (8) \_\_\_\_\_ can be taken to reach the target.



## B Figurative language in news reports

Words connected with *water*, *fire*, *war*, and *sport* are often used figuratively in news reports. For example, if two people are **locked in battle**, it doesn't mean they are literally fighting, but that they are involved in a competition or struggle, e.g. a **legal battle**. These expressions are also called **metaphors**.

Example		Meaning
WATER	<i>There is certain to be <b>a storm of protest</b> over the new legislation.</i>	a situation in which a large number of people express strong feelings against sth.
	<i>Refugees are <b>flooding</b> into the country.</i>	appearing in large numbers at the same time.
	<i>Some people believe the <b>tide is</b> now <b>turning</b> in the government's favour.</i>	the situation and public opinion are changing.
	<i>The opposition has dismissed the money as <b>a drop in the ocean</b>.</i>	a very small amount compared with what is needed.
FIRE	<i>Police fear the arrest of the two youths could <b>spark</b> further trouble.</i>	cause sth to start or develop.
	<i>The ministers have had <b>a blazing row</b>.</i>	a very angry argument.
WAR	<i>The headteacher has <b>come under attack</b>.</i>	been strongly criticized. SYN <b>come under fire</b> .
	<i>The Board of Directors could be next <b>in the firing line</b>.</i>	in a position in which people can criticize and blame you.
SPORT	<i>The minister has got himself into <b>a tight corner</b>.</i>	a difficult situation.
	<i>MPs are now accusing the government of <b>moving the goalposts</b>.</i>	INF unfairly changing the agreed rules or conditions during a course of action.
	<i>There have been accusations of <b>foul play</b>.</i>	behaviour that is unfair or dishonest.
	<i>Trade Union leaders claim they just want <b>a level playing field</b>.</i>	a situation in which everyone has the same opportunities.

### 3 Cross out the incorrect word in each sentence and write the correct word at the end.

- The Prime Minister could be in the shooting line. \_\_\_\_\_
- We sent some money but it's still only a drip in the ocean. \_\_\_\_\_
- There was a thunderstorm of protest. \_\_\_\_\_
- It was an uphill struggle but I think the wave has turned. \_\_\_\_\_
- Tourists are now raining into the town to see the festival. \_\_\_\_\_
- They are demanding a flat playing field. \_\_\_\_\_
- They're upset that the officials keep moving the goalkeeper. \_\_\_\_\_
- The problem is that she has got herself in a very tight bend. \_\_\_\_\_
- The producer resigned after a burning row with the director. \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 Complete the sentences.

- The Prime Minister has come \_\_\_\_\_ for his handling of the affair.
- A vicious attack on two young boys nearly \_\_\_\_\_ a riot earlier this month.
- The takeover was rather suspicious; I think most people suspect \_\_\_\_\_.
- They expected a \_\_\_\_\_ protest when they banned smoking in public places.
- He's made too many mistakes, so now he's got himself in a very \_\_\_\_\_.
- They desperately need aid, but this gift of cash is still only a \_\_\_\_\_ in the \_\_\_\_\_.





## 40 I can read human interest stories

### A Amazing but true! 🎧

#### An operation 55 years later? **Pencil it in**

A German woman who has spent 55 years with the **tip** of a pencil **lodged** in her brain has finally had it removed. Margret Wegner fell over carrying the pencil when she was four. It **punctured** her cheek and went into her brain causing **excruciating** pain, and she has lived with the **ensuing chronic** headaches ever since. At the time, no one **dared** operate, but the **remaining** 2 cms of pencil were removed on Friday in a delicate operation. She is said to be **making a speedy recovery**.

#### Glossary

pencil sth in	write down details of an arrangement which you may have to change later. This is a <b>pun</b> (= the clever or humorous use of a word with more than one meaning).
tip (of sth)	the thin pointed end of sth.
lodged (in sth)	fixed or stuck in sth.
puncture sth	make a small hole in sth ( <b>puncture skin / a tyre</b> ).
	<b>puncture</b> N.
excruciating	extremely painful ( <b>excruciating pain/headaches</b> ).
ensuing	happening after or as a result of another event.
chronic	(especially of a disease) lasting a long time and hard to cure.
remaining	still existing or needing to be dealt with.
make a speedy/ rapid recovery	get well again quickly after an illness or accident.

#### spotlight **dare**

To **dare** means to be brave enough to do something. It is normally used in questions and negative forms, and can behave like an ordinary verb (e.g. *He **doesn't dare** (to) leave.*) or like a modal (e.g. *He **daren't** leave.*).

**How dare you say that!** (= I am very angry that you said that.)

**Don't you dare come near me!** (used to give someone a strong warning)

#### 1 Circle the correct word(s). Both words may be correct.

- I made a speedy / rapid recovery.
- The pain was excruciating / crucial.
- The bone's stuck / lodged in her throat.
- I've pencilled/penned in the invitation.
- How dare you do/to do that!
- I had six; that's the left / remaining one.

#### 2 Replace the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.

- I had an unpleasant and very painful headache. \_\_\_\_\_
- Her medical condition is continuous and long-lasting. \_\_\_\_\_
- After the fire, we lost sight of him in the resulting panic. \_\_\_\_\_
- A piece of glass made a small hole in the tyre. \_\_\_\_\_
- I love jokes based on words with two meanings. \_\_\_\_\_
- She's too frightened to drive at night on her own. \_\_\_\_\_
- He seems to be making a speedy recovery. \_\_\_\_\_
- The end of the cat's tail is white. \_\_\_\_\_



## B A survival drama

### Man survives **crocs**<sup>1</sup> against all odds

An Australian farmer has described how he spent seven days **sheltering** up a tree above a **crocodile**<sup>1</sup>-infested swamp. David George, 53, said he was forced to **take** such **drastic** action after he accidentally **strayed** into the area. His problems began after he fell off his horse; **dazed** and **disorientated**, he hoped the horse would lead him home. 'By the time I **regained my senses**, I was in the middle of a swamp,' he said. He knew he could either **stay put** and wait for a rescue team, or try and get out and **take a chance on** being eaten by a croc. After a long, **gruelling** week, he was spotted by helicopters and rescued.



### Glossary

<b>against all (the) odds</b>	if sth happens <b>against all odds</b> , it happens or succeeds although it seemed impossible or very unlikely.
<b>shelter</b>	stay somewhere that protects you from danger or bad weather.
<b>infested</b>	full of very many insects, animals, etc. ( <b>rat-infested</b> , <b>shark-infested</b> ).
<b>swamp</b>	an area in which the ground is very wet or covered in water.
<b>take action</b>	do sth to deal with a situation.
<b>drastic</b>	extreme in a way that has a sudden, violent, or serious effect.
<b>stray</b>	move away from where you should be, without intending to.
<b>dazed</b>	unable to think clearly because of shock or a blow to the head.
<b>disorientated</b>	confused about where you are or which way to go.
<b>regain your senses</b>	think clearly again after a period of confusion.
<b>stay put</b>	<b>INF</b> stay where you are rather than moving away.
<b>take a chance on sth</b>	decide to do sth, even though it involves risk.
<b>gruelling</b>	very difficult and tiring; needing great effort. <b>SYN</b> <b>punishing</b> .

### 3 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

1 We had to stay put for an hour.	We couldn't move for an hour.	
2 We found the ring against all odds.	We found the ring against the wall.	
3 Please don't take any risks.	Please don't take any chances.	
4 They found somewhere to shelter.	They found somewhere to relax.	
5 He wandered off the path, into the trees.	He strayed off the path, into the trees.	
6 We took drastic action to prevent losses.	We took some steps to prevent losses.	
7 It was a gruelling experience.	It was a punishing experience.	
8 There are a few sharks in the area.	It's a shark-infested area.	

### 4 Complete the dialogues.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>1 Did you know where you were? ~ No, I was completely d_____.</p> <p>2 Was the land very wet? ~ Yes, they found me by the s_____.</p> <p>3 When did you r_____ your senses?<br/>~ Oh, it wasn't long, only a few minutes.</p> <p>4 How did you respond to the shock?<br/>~ I wandered about; I just felt d_____.</p> | <p>5 Was it safe to move ahead? ~ No, it was too risky; I decided to s_____ put.</p> <p>6 You had a very lucky escape. ~ Mmm.<br/>I survived against all o_____.</p> <p>7 It was an extreme thing to do. ~ Yeah, it was a bit d_____.</p> <p>8 It was a frightening situation to be in. ~ Yes;<br/>I didn't want to take any c_____.</p> |
|---|--|





# 41 I can talk about celebrity

## A Celebrity and the media

### Celebrities 'deserve privacy'

A survey on privacy and the media has revealed that most people think that there should be little or no **coverage** of the private lives of **celebrities**. This contrasts strongly with the huge success of celebrity magazines, which detail the lives of people in the public eye. The **findings** also revealed that people did not want politicians to suffer from press **intrusion**. Certain **tabloids** were **singled out** as being particularly guilty of **prying** into the lives of famous **personalities**.



### Glossary

<b>celebrity</b>	1 c a famous person. <b>SYNS</b> personality, <b>celeb</b> INF, 2 u the state of being famous. <b>SYN</b> fame.	<b>in the public eye</b>	well known to many people through TV or the press.
<b>deserve sth</b>	If you <b>deserve sth</b> , it is right that you should have it, e.g. because of the way you have behaved.	<b>findings</b>	PL information learned as the result of research.
<b>survey</b>	an investigation into the opinions or behaviour of a large group of people, usually in the form of questions ( <b>conduct / carry out a survey</b> ).	<b>intrusion (into sth)</b>	a thing that comes into sb's life in a negative way. <b>intrude into sth</b> v.
<b>privacy</b>	the state of being alone and not watched or disturbed by others.	<b>tabloid</b>	a newspaper that gives emphasis to stories about famous people (more serious papers are <b>broadsheets</b> ).
<b>coverage</b>	the reporting of news in the press.	<b>single sth/sb out</b>	choose sb/sth from a group for special attention.
		<b>pry into sth</b>	try to find information about people's private lives.

### 1 Tick the correct word(s). More than one word may be correct.

- She's an international *celebrity* ☐ *personality* ☐ *celeb* ☐.
- I don't like the way the papers *intrude* ☐ *pry* ☐ *conduct* ☐ into people's private lives.
- Have you read the *coverage* ☐ *tabloids* ☐ *findings* ☐ today?
- All he wants in life is *fame* ☐ *privacy* ☐ *intrusion* ☐.
- She was *singled out* ☐ *intruded* ☐ *deserved* ☐ for special praise.

### 2 Complete the text with suitable words.

A recent (1) \_\_\_\_\_ which was (2) \_\_\_\_\_ out among 650 young people around New York produced some disturbing (3) \_\_\_\_\_ on how some teenagers think about celebrity and (4) \_\_\_\_\_. Many believe that celebrities work hard and (5) \_\_\_\_\_ to be famous, and that becoming a famous (6) \_\_\_\_\_ themselves would improve their lives. Lonely teenagers are more likely to follow the lives of people in the public (7) \_\_\_\_\_.

### 3 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Complete the questions, then write your answers or ask another student.

- Do you agree that celebrities deserve p \_\_\_\_\_ ? \_\_\_\_\_
- In your country, are there both tabloid and b \_\_\_\_\_ papers? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do they p \_\_\_\_\_ into the private lives of people in the p \_\_\_\_\_ eye? \_\_\_\_\_
- What do you think are the benefits and disadvantages of f \_\_\_\_\_ ? \_\_\_\_\_





## B Celebrity headlines

Rocky **allegedly** back in **rehab**

Football team **rocked** by **scandal**

**Newlyweds'** marriage **on the rocks**

**Rumours** of **custody** battle over baby Sahara

Andie **dumps** Gino

**Exclusive!** Sandie **gives birth to** a girl!

**Fellow** celebs **rally to** Tom's defence

### spotlight

### exclusives and scoops

An **exclusive story/interview/photo** etc. is one published or reported only by one newspaper or TV station (**exclusive** N). If a news organization publishes or **broadcasts** (= gives out on TV or the radio) an exciting story before anyone else does, it is called a **scoop** INF. Reporters like to **get a scoop**.

### Glossary

<b>allegedly</b>	If sb <b>allegedly</b> does sth, another person says they have done it, even though this has not been proved. <b>allege</b> v. <b>allegation</b> N.	<b>rumour</b>	a story or piece of information that may or may not be true.
<b>rehab</b>	the process of helping to cure sb with drug or alcohol addiction.	<b>custody</b>	the legal right to look after a child ( <b>have custody of a child</b> ).
<b>rock sb/sth</b>	INF, OFTEN PASSIVE shock or cause upset to sb/sth.	<b>dump sb</b>	INF end a romantic relationship with sb.
<b>scandal</b>	a situation in which important people behave in a dishonest or immoral way that shocks people.	<b>give birth (to sb/sth)</b>	produce a baby or young animal.
<b>newlyweds</b>	USU, PL a man and woman who have not been married long.	<b>fellow</b>	ADJ used to describe sb who is in the same situation as you ( <b>fellow students/workers/passengers</b> ).
<b>on the rocks</b>	INF in difficulties and likely to fail.	<b>rally (round/ to sb/sth)</b>	come together to help or support sb/sth.

#### 4 Complete the dialogues with words from the box in the correct form.

rocks   exclusive   rally   fellow   scandal   broadcast   rehab  
allegation   rock   rumour

- A I heard a \_\_\_\_\_ that the minister is about to resign. Do you think it's true?

B Well, there have been \_\_\_\_\_ that he's involved in a financial \_\_\_\_\_.

A That's terrible. It would really \_\_\_\_\_ the government, wouldn't it?

B Yes, and Sky News are going to \_\_\_\_\_ an \_\_\_\_\_ interview with him tonight.
- A You know that guy who was in *Terminator 5*? Can't remember his name.

B Yeah, I heard his marriage was on the \_\_\_\_\_.

A That's right. Well, evidently he's had drug problems and he's in \_\_\_\_\_ too.

B Poor guy. No doubt his \_\_\_\_\_ celebs will \_\_\_\_\_ round him.

#### 5 Rewrite the sentence using the word in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

- He is said to have lost all his money. ALLEGEDLY Allegedly, he's lost all his money.
- Lulu has ended her relationship with Rocco. DUMP \_\_\_\_\_
  - Amelia had a baby boy last week. BIRTH \_\_\_\_\_
  - Jason has the legal right to look after his daughter. CUSTODY \_\_\_\_\_
  - Arun is a student in my class. FELLOW \_\_\_\_\_
  - The journalist wanted to get the story first. SCOOP \_\_\_\_\_
  - They've just got married. NEWLYWEDS \_\_\_\_\_





## 42 I can discuss political beliefs

### A Political systems

☞ With **capitalism**, the economy is controlled by companies and individuals (who are **capitalists**), not the state. In Britain, capitalism is **associated with** the **Conservative Party**, which tends to **favour** the **status quo** and is **opposed to radical** change.

☞ With **socialism**, the economy of a country is partly controlled by the state and the wealth is **distributed equally**. In Britain, **socialists** are usually **left-wing**, but not **extremists**.

☞ **Liberalism** is based on a belief in personal and economic freedom, supporting gradual social and political change. **Liberals** who hold such beliefs often vote for **centre parties**.

☞ **Communism** is based on common ownership of **the means of production**, and **communists** believe in a classless society.

#### spotlight means

A **means** is a way of doing or achieving something, e.g. **means of transport/communication/escape/expression**. The **means of production** is the materials and equipment needed to produce things. A **means of identification** is a way of showing who you are.

#### 1 True or false? Write T or F, then correct the false sentences.

- ▶ A capitalist economy is owned by the people and run by the state. F  
communist
- 1 People associate liberals with personal freedom \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Socialists believe that wealth should be shared equally. \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 A liberal believes in economic freedom and rapid political change. \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 The Conservative Party in Britain believes in socialism. \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Socialists believe that everyone should own the means of production. \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 2 Complete the sentences with the opposite meaning to the first half of the sentence.

- 1 He's left-wing, but she's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 She's radical, but he's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 He's in favour of it, but she's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 He wants change, but she prefers \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 She has extreme views, but his are \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 They're on the left and right, but I'm \_\_\_\_\_.

#### Glossary

<b>associated with sth/sb</b>	connected with sth/sb. <b>association</b> N.
<b>favour sth/sb</b>	support and agree with sth/sb (also <b>be in favour of sth/sb</b> ).
<b>status quo</b>	the existing situation ( <b>maintain the status quo</b> ).
<b>opposed to sth/sb</b>	disagreeing strongly with sth/sb. <b>opposition</b> N.
<b>radical</b>	1 complete and fundamental. <b>SYN far-reaching</b> . 2 (of a person) in favour of political and social change. <b>OPP reactionary</b> .
<b>distribute sth</b>	share sth among a number of people. <b>distribution</b> N.
<b>equally</b>	in a way that is fair and the same for everyone. <b>equality</b> N.
<b>left-wing extremist</b>	<b>OPP right-wing</b> (also <b>on the left/right</b> ). a person whose political views are generally not considered to be normal or reasonable. <b>extreme</b> ADJ. <b>OPP moderate</b> .
<b>centre party</b>	a political party that is not left-wing or right-wing ( <b>be in the centre</b> ).

#### 3 Complete the words in the sentences.

- 1 I believe in e \_\_\_\_\_ of opportunity and the equal d \_\_\_\_\_ of wealth.
- 2 Is common ownership of the m \_\_\_\_\_ of production practical?
- 3 Would you say you were o \_\_\_\_\_ the left, the right, or in the centre?
- 4 I don't think the director is closely a \_\_\_\_\_ with any political party.
- 5 In my country we have to carry some means of i \_\_\_\_\_ with us at all times.



## B Political metaphors

Word + literal meaning	Example of metaphorical use	Metaphorical meaning
<b>crack</b> a line on the surface of sth where it has broken.	<i>The first <b>cracks</b> are appearing in the government.</i>	a weakness in an idea, a system, or an organization.
<b>driving seat</b> the place where the driver sits.	<i>People are wondering who <b>is in the driving seat</b>.</i>	be in control of a situation. SYN <b>pull the strings</b> .
<b>rock</b> move from side to side.	<i>The Prime Minister doesn't want MPs to <b>rock the boat</b>.</i>	cause problems by making changes to a situation that is satisfactory as it is.
<b>foundations</b> the structures that form the underground base of a building.	<i>She <b>laid the foundations</b> of the party's success.</i>	create the basic ideas or principles from which sth can then develop.
<b>depth</b> (especially of water) the deepness of sth.	<i>Many believe the minister <b>is out of her depth</b>.</i>	be in a situation that is too difficult for you to control.
<b>deep end</b> the end of a swimming pool where the water is deep.	<i>The MPs <b>were thrown in at the deep end</b>. Let's see if they <b>sink or swim</b>.</i>	be faced with a new and difficult task that you're not prepared for. <b>sink or swim</b> fail or succeed.
<b>heat sth</b> make sth hot.	<i>It has started <b>a heated debate</b> in parliament.</i>	an angry discussion (also <b>heated discussion</b> ).
<b>safe</b> OPP dangerous.	<i>He got the job because he's <b>a safe pair of hands</b>.</i>	a person you can rely on.
<b>head</b> move in a particular direction.	<i>The government is <b>heading in the right direction</b>.</i>	making good progress, OPP <b>heading in the wrong direction</b> .
<b>microscope</b> an instrument for looking at things which are too small to see.	<i>The trade secretary could find herself <b>under the microscope</b>.</i>	being watched and examined very carefully.
<b>spin</b> a quick turning movement, round and round. <b>spin</b> v.	<i>No doubt the politicians will give this <b>a positive spin</b>.</i>	a way of giving information to make it appear better, or less bad (the people are <b>spin doctors</b> ).

### 4 Circle the correct answer.

- He's the boss, but it's his wife who pulls the strings / rope.
- During the first few months, she'll be under the microscope / telescope.
- As a politician, he's considered to be a safe pair of gloves / hands.
- Throw them in at the shallow / deep end, then see if they sink / drown or swim.
- They had a very hot / heated discussion.
- I wonder what the spin doctors / dentists will do with this information.
- They've got to remain steady, and not allow anyone to rock the ship / boat.
- The results indicate that the opposition is leading / heading in the wrong direction.

### 5 Complete the dialogues in a suitable way.

- Did they have an easy start? ~ No, they were thrown in \_\_\_\_\_.
- Is she able to do the job? ~ No, she's out \_\_\_\_\_.
- Do you think we're making progress? ~ Yes, we're heading \_\_\_\_\_.
- He created the policies, didn't he? ~ Yes, he laid the \_\_\_\_\_.
- Is the party still united? ~ No, the first \_\_\_\_\_ are starting to appear.
- Do you think she's in control? ~ Yes, she's in the driving \_\_\_\_\_ now.
- Was it dull in parliament? ~ No, there was a very heated \_\_\_\_\_.
- They managed to twist the facts. ~ Yes, the usual political \_\_\_\_\_.





## 43 I can talk about areas of conflict

### Reporting from a war zone

The streets were filled with **rubble** and broken glass was everywhere. Food, water, medicine – the necessities of life – were **scarce**, and hospitals **were overwhelmed with** casualties. Apart from the obvious danger of bombing, there was also the threat of unexploded **shells**, **snipers**, and other forms of **random** violence. Soldiers and civilians alike suffered from the tension, and were never far from **breaking point**, but most people refused to **desert** their city. How did I get through that period? **Adrenalin**. That alone kept me going in the face of the **grim** reality that confronted a city **under siege**.

#### 1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

- |                                  |               |
|----------------------------------|---------------|
| 1 The soldiers were firing ____. | a sniper      |
| 2 He was shot by a ____.         | b rubble      |
| 3 The situation was ____.        | c at random   |
| 4 I just keep going on ____.     | d under siege |
| 5 Food was ____.                 | e grim        |
| 6 The city was ____.             | f scarce      |
| 7 Life is tough in a war ____.   | g adrenalin   |
| 8 The streets were full of ____. | h zone        |

#### 2 Cross out parts of the text and replace them with these words. Write the numbers in the text.

- |                  |                    |          |
|------------------|--------------------|----------|
| 1 grim           | 2 abandoned        | 3 sniper |
| 4 lay siege to   | 5 breaking point ✓ | 6 debris |
| 7 shelling       | 8 scarce           |          |
| 9 overwhelmed by |                    |          |

We were close to ~~► 5 the point where people couldn't deal with the situation~~. Food was in short supply, the situation was unpleasant and depressing, and many people had already left the city for good. Then at 7 a.m. yesterday the attack happened. A man who was just clearing stones, bricks, and glass from a damaged building was shot by a hidden gunman. Amid the ensuing chaos, a small group of rebel soldiers entered the nearby radio station and took control of it. The army immediately began to surround the building. They brought in large guns and started firing at it, then, as night approached, they attacked. The rebels were soon defeated by the superior numbers and firepower of the army.

#### Glossary

<b>zone</b>	an area or region with a particular feature (a <b>war/danger zone</b> ).
<b>rubble</b>	broken stones or bricks from a building that has been destroyed ( <b>debris</b> is similar but is more general and includes wood, glass, etc.).
<b>scarce</b>	not readily available; in short supply. <b>scarcity</b> N.
<b>overwhelm sb/sth</b>	1 present sb or fill sth with too much of sth ( <b>be overwhelmed with/by</b> ). 2 defeat sb/sth completely).
<b>shell</b>	a metal case full of explosives, to be fired from a large gun ( <b>shell sth</b> = fire shells at sth).
<b>sniper</b>	a person who shoots at sb from a hidden position.
<b>random</b>	happening without any intended or regular pattern (things that happen <b>at random</b> are not ordered or regular).
<b>breaking point</b>	the time when problems have become so great that sb can no longer deal with them ( <b>be at / reach breaking point</b> ).
<b>desert sth</b>	go away from a place and leave it empty. <b>SYN abandon sth</b> .
<b>adrenalin</b>	a substance created in the body when you are excited or afraid, giving you more energy.
<b>grim</b>	unpleasant and depressing.
<b>siege</b>	a military operation in which an armed force surrounds a place and stops the supply of food, etc. ( <b>lay siege to sth, be under siege</b> ).



# Review: News and current affairs

## Unit 38

### 1 Complete the sentences which explain the headlines.

- 1 MINISTER OUSTED = A \_\_\_\_\_ minister has \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 BOOST FOR TRANSPORT SCHEME = A transport \_\_\_\_\_ has been given \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 GO-AHEAD FOR ARMS DEAL = A business \_\_\_\_\_ on \_\_\_\_\_ has been given \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 RANSOM ORDEAL FOR FAMILY = A family is going through a \_\_\_\_\_ over a ransom.
- 5 BID TO END KIDNAP = Someone is \_\_\_\_\_ to end a kidnapping.
- 6 BLAST WRECKS HOTEL = A hotel has been \_\_\_\_\_ by \_\_\_\_\_.

**A Z** more words: *Diet puts children in **peril***    *Inflation cut **bolsters** spending*  
*Police **foil** bomb **plot***    *Women **heed** tobacco warnings*    *Record drugs **haul** at Heathrow*

## Unit 39

### 1 One word is missing in each line. What is it, and where does it go?

The blazing  over the leadership of the Liberal Party is in the headlines once again. According sources in Westminster, Harry Jacobs, who has had a strong lead until recently, came under after it was alleged that he had made scathing about the family background of his rival, Ellen Pinter. The comments were to the press by one of Mrs Pinter's supporters, and it is possible that the will now begin to turn in Mrs Pinter's favour, as the tabloid press are beginning to take an interest. She has been as saying that she believes that Mr Jacobs's comments showed a temporary of judgement, and that she felt some sympathy for him as he has clearly put himself in a corner.

- row \_\_\_\_\_
- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7 \_\_\_\_\_
  - 8 \_\_\_\_\_

**A Z** more words: ***grab/hit** the headlines, stand **shoulder** to shoulder, a **torrent** of criticism, score an **own goal**, drop a **bombshell**, get caught in the **crossfire***

## Unit 40

### 1 Complete the words in the story.

The storm was getting closer and we weren't sure whether to (1) s \_\_\_\_\_ under a tree or run for the barn. Jan wanted to (2) s \_\_\_\_\_ put, but I decided to (3) t \_\_\_\_\_ a c \_\_\_\_\_ on the barn. Just then, the tree was hit by lightning and a branch fell on Jan. She wasn't unconscious, but she was obviously very (4) d \_\_\_\_\_. After a minute she seemed to (5) r \_\_\_\_\_ her senses. The pain was now (6) e \_\_\_\_\_, but I didn't (7) d \_\_\_\_\_ move her in case she had internal injuries. Thankfully the ambulance arrived within minutes, and as we drove away I could see the few (8) r \_\_\_\_\_ branches of the tree on fire. Fortunately Jan made a (9) r \_\_\_\_\_ recovery.

**A Z** more words: *on the off **chance**, (not) stand a **chance** (of doing sth), fancy your **chances**, the **chances** are (that), be in with a **chance**, give sb/sth half a **chance***



## Unit 41

1 Complete the TV news report using words from the box in the correct form.

intrusion scandal allegation deserve exclusive privacy allege coverage tabloid

There is continued (1) \_\_\_\_\_ in the newspapers today of the latest (2) \_\_\_\_\_ to hit the Democratic Party. However, the minister who is (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to have awarded a government contract to a company owned by his brother, has hit back at his critics. 'I have done nothing illegal, and do not (4) \_\_\_\_\_ this', he said. He went on to attack the press for an unjustified (5) \_\_\_\_\_ into his private affairs, and asked them to respect the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ of his family. This seems unlikely, as the newspaper who printed the (7) \_\_\_\_\_ story last week refuses to back down, and the rest of the (8) \_\_\_\_\_ are now making similar (9) \_\_\_\_\_.

**A Z** more words: a **household** name, prominent, **high-ranking** officers/politicians, stalker/stalking, **hounded** by the press, the **gutter** press

## Unit 42

1 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. The meaning must remain the same.

- 1 We had a discussion about socialist policies. WING \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 They don't want the situation to change. STATUS \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I don't know who's controlling the situation. DRIVING \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 We'll study the document carefully. MICROSCOPE \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I wouldn't be in favour of the proposal. OPPOSED \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 He created the basic principles for the policy. FOUNDATIONS \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 In our company, everyone has the same rights. EQUALITY \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 The prime minister is making good progress. DIRECTION \_\_\_\_\_

**A Z** more words: **floating** voter, **cast** your ballot, a **close-run** election, **sweep** to victory, a **landslide** win/victory, exit poll

## Unit 43

1 Complete the definitions.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 sniper = a person who _____ at someone from a hidden position | 6 desert somewhere = _____ somewhere   |
| 2 scarce = not readily _____                                    | 7 random = happening _____ any definite or regular _____.                            |
| 3 grim = very _____   | 8 seige = a _____ operation in which an _____ surrounds a town and tries to _____ it |
| 4 rubble = broken _____ from a building                         |  |
| 5 shell = a metal case full of _____                            |  |

**A Z** more words: crossfire, curfew, irreconcilable, call a **truce**, ambush

## 44 I can explain job benefits 🎧

Word/phrase	Meaning
<b>benefits</b>	advantages a company offers in addition to the salary. SYN <b>perks</b> INF.
benefits <b>package</b>	a number of benefits that are offered together.
<b>relocation allowance</b>	<b>relocation</b> the process or act of moving to a new place to work. <b>allowance</b> money paid to sb to help them, either on a regular basis or for a particular purpose ( <b>food/fuel allowance</b> ).
<b>performance-related bonus scheme</b>	<b>performance-related</b> linked to how well sb does in their job. <b>bonus</b> extra money paid to sb, often annually or as a reward for sth. <b>scheme</b> an official plan.
company <b>pension scheme</b>	money paid regularly by a company to help sb when they retire (also <b>government pension</b> or <b>personal/private pension</b> ).
<b>maternity/paternity leave</b>	<b>maternity leave</b> a period when a woman temporarily leaves her job to have a baby; <b>paternity leave</b> a short period off work allowed to a new father.
<b>expenses</b>	the money sb spends while working that the employer pays back to them later ( <b>travel/travelling expenses</b> ).
30 days' holiday <b>entitlement</b>	a thing sb has a right to (often expressed as an amount sb has a right to receive). <b>be entitled to sth</b> v.
<b>comprehensive healthcare provision</b>	<b>comprehensive</b> including everything or almost everything ( <b>comprehensive car/travel/health insurance</b> ). <b>healthcare</b> the service of providing medical care (also <b>childcare</b> = the care and supervision of small children). <b>provision</b> the act of providing sth (here, private health insurance).
<b>subsidized canteen</b>	If sth is <b>subsidized</b> , it is partly paid for by an organization in order to make it cheaper for the people who use it. <b>canteen</b> a place where food is served in a company or school.

### 1 Find six phrases from the words in the box.

travel   subsidized   maternity   pension   healthcare   relocation  
leave   allowance   canteen   expenses   scheme   provision

### 2 Write down:

- three types of insurance you can have: \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.
- three types of allowance you can have: \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.
- three types of pension you can have: \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.
- two types of care that may be provided: \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

### 3 Complete the information from this job advertisement with suitable words.

As you would expect from a high-performing council, we offer excellent (1) \_\_\_\_\_ including:

- government (2) \_\_\_\_\_ scheme      • performance- (3) \_\_\_\_\_ bonus scheme
- generous holiday (4) \_\_\_\_\_      • relocation (5) \_\_\_\_\_
- healthcare (6) \_\_\_\_\_      • subsidized (7) \_\_\_\_\_ with excellent food



Remember to test yourself



## 45 I can describe ways of working

### A Freelance work: the pros and cons

- 😊 you are not **accountable to** anyone but yourself
- 😊 working for a number of employers gives you an **insight into** different companies
- 😊 it can be more **lucrative**, and it's good not to have to rely **solely** on one company
- 😊 working from home makes it easier to **juggle** work and family responsibilities

- 😞 no **guaranteed** income and no **additional** financial benefits (e.g. a company pension)
- 😞 you will **encounter** quiet periods, a **degree of** isolation, and perhaps loneliness
- 😞 work can **encroach upon** your home life and your free time

#### Glossary

<b>the pros and cons</b>	the advantages and disadvantages/ <b>drawbacks</b> .
<b>accountable to sb</b>	expected to explain all your actions to sb if asked (if you are <b>not accountable to anyone</b> you are <b>your own boss</b> ).
<b>insight into sth</b>	a clear understanding of what sth is like.
<b>lucrative</b>	producing a large amount of money.
<b>solely</b>	only; not involving sb/sth else ( <b>be solely responsible for sth</b> ).
<b>juggle sth</b>	try to manage and balance different jobs and activities in order to fit them successfully into your life.
<b>guarantee sth</b>	promise that sth will happen. <b>guarantee</b> N.
<b>additional</b>	more than has been experienced or mentioned before. SYNS <b>extra, further</b> .
<b>encounter sth</b>	experience sth, especially problems or opposition.
<b>encroach upon sth</b>	FML affect or use up too much of sb's time, rights, personal life, etc.

#### spotlight degree

A **degree of sth** is a certain level or amount of sth, and it is commonly used in certain expressions or patterns:

*It **requires a degree of** skill.*

*I have **a greater degree of** freedom.*

*I can do what I like, **to a degree**.* SYN **to an extent**.

#### 1 Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase that has a similar meaning.

- I experienced a few problems. \_\_\_\_\_
- There is a certain amount of stress. \_\_\_\_\_
- I was my own boss. \_\_\_\_\_
- It gave me an understanding of how the company works. \_\_\_\_\_
- Initially she had to balance a full-time career with looking after a family. \_\_\_\_\_
- There are various advantages and disadvantages. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 Complete the text with suitable words.

I was a freelance designer for 10 years. I liked being my own (1) \_\_\_\_\_ and enjoyed the fact that I was (2) \_\_\_\_\_ responsible for everything I did. Like all freelancers, I (3) \_\_\_\_\_ a certain (4) \_\_\_\_\_ of isolation, but I didn't mind that, and the work was quite (5) \_\_\_\_\_ so I was able to buy a nice house. However, once I had children the work did (6) \_\_\_\_\_ upon my family life, so in the end I went back to a regular job with a (7) \_\_\_\_\_ income, plus the (8) \_\_\_\_\_ benefits of a company car and pension.

#### 3 ABOUT YOU Have you ever worked freelance? If so, did you enjoy the same advantages and encounter similar problems? Write your answers or talk to another student.





## B Working in a team: the pros and cons

😊 a **common goal** is good for **morale** and **fosters team spirit**

😊 **collaboration** and **mutual** feedback are **fulfilling** and make people feel **valued**

😊 **pooling** diverse skills is generally more productive

😞 if someone doesn't **fit in**, it can be **disruptive** and can **undermine** the work of the team

😞 teams can **stifle** individual **enterprise** and **initiative**

### Glossary

<b>common goal</b>	a goal shared by two or more people.
<b>morale</b>	the feeling of confidence and enthusiasm that a person or group has at a particular time ( <b>boost morale</b> = improve morale).
<b>foster sth</b>	help sth to develop. <b>SYNS</b> encourage sth, promote sth.
<b>team spirit</b>	the desire among a group to work together and help each other.
<b>collaboration (with sb)</b>	the act of working with others to produce sth.
<b>mutual</b>	used to describe a feeling that two people have for each other equally ( <b>mutual respect/trust</b> ).
<b>fulfilling</b>	giving personal satisfaction. <b>SYN</b> rewarding.
<b>value sb/sth</b>	think that sb/sth is important.
<b>pool sth</b>	collect money, ideas, etc. from different people so it or they can be used by all of them ( <b>pool resources</b> ).
<b>fit in (with sb/sth)</b>	be accepted in a situation by the others in a group.
<b>disruptive</b>	causing problems, and making it hard to continue with sth. <b>disrupt sth</b> v.
<b>undermine sb/sth</b>	make sb/sth gradually weaker or less effective ( <b>undermine sb's confidence/authority</b> ).
<b>stifle sth</b>	stop sth from happening or developing ( <b>stifle creativity</b> ).
<b>enterprise</b>	the ability to think of new ideas and make them successful.
<b>initiative</b>	the ability to take decisions and act alone ( <b>use your initiative</b> ).

#### 4 Positive or negative? Write P or N.

- 1 He showed enterprise. \_\_\_\_ 3 I don't feel valued. \_\_\_\_ 5 It boosted my confidence. \_\_\_\_  
2 She was disruptive. \_\_\_\_ 4 It undermined my confidence. \_\_\_\_ 6 My boss stifles my creativity. \_\_\_\_

#### 5 Find six phrases from the words in the box.

team boost mutual pool undermine stifle spirit  
respect resources creativity your authority morale

#### 6 Rewrite the sentences without using the underlined words. Keep the meaning the same.

- 1 He wasn't accepted by the others. He didn't \_\_\_\_\_.  
2 She can act on her own. She can use \_\_\_\_\_.  
3 I find the work very rewarding. I find the work very \_\_\_\_\_.  
4 They did most of it together. There was a lot of \_\_\_\_\_.  
5 They shared the same aim. They had a \_\_\_\_\_.  
6 We think it will promote team spirit. We think it will \_\_\_\_\_.  
7 We can collect ideas from different people. We can \_\_\_\_\_.  
8 They have a lot of respect for each other. They have a lot of \_\_\_\_\_.



Remember to test yourself



## 46 I can talk about the business world

### A Business takeovers

#### Warburg takeover imminent

The battle for Warburg Glass may soon be over. **Former** chairman Matthew Cavendish is now **mounting** a fresh challenge, and has made a **joint bid** for the company with the **backing** of the powerful EPS group. The company has already **rejected** one offer, but an improved **takeover** bid would be attractive to **shareholders** in view of the company's poor recent **dividends**. City analysts believe Cavendish could **clinch the deal** within weeks, and possibly **set off** a new round of **mergers and acquisitions**.

#### Glossary

<b>imminent</b>	likely to happen soon.
<b>former</b>	having a particular position in the past (former president/boss).
<b>mount sth</b>	organize and begin sth (mount a challenge/campaign).
<b>joint</b>	involving two or more people (joint account/venture). <b>jointly</b> ADV.
<b>bid</b>	an offer to pay a particular price for sth (make a bid for sth). <b>bid</b> V.
<b>backing</b>	help. SYN support. <b>back sb/sth</b> V.
<b>reject sth</b>	refuse to accept sth. SYN turn sth down. <b>rejection</b> N.
<b>shareholder</b>	a person who owns shares in a business or company.
<b>dividend</b>	a portion of a company's profits that is given to shareholders.
<b>clinch sth</b>	succeed in achieving or winning sth (clinch a deal/victory).
<b>set sth off</b>	start a process or series of events.

#### 1 Complete the words in the sentences.

- If we're lucky, we'll c \_\_\_\_\_ the deal next week.
- He wants to buy the company and has already made one b \_\_\_\_\_.
- If there is more uncertainty, it will s \_\_\_\_\_ off another wave of selling.
- Sir Michael is preparing to m \_\_\_\_\_ a challenge for the leadership.
- The takeover hasn't happened yet, but it's i \_\_\_\_\_.
- If the d \_\_\_\_\_ is only 50 cents a share, the s \_\_\_\_\_ won't be happy.

#### spotlight **merger, takeover, and acquisition**

In a **merger**, two companies agree to join and form a single company. In a **takeover**, one company buys the shares of another public company. The companies may or may not agree to the deal. If they agree, it is a **friendly takeover**; if not, it is a **hostile takeover**. In an **acquisition**, one company buys another company which cannot offer its shares for sale to the public.


#### 2 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.

- Are you doing this on your own? ~ No, it's a \_\_\_\_\_ venture with ECL.
- They didn't reject it, did they? ~ Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
- Has he bought another company? ~ Yes, that's three \_\_\_\_\_ this year.
- Is she your current boss? ~ No, she's my \_\_\_\_\_ boss.
- Is another \_\_\_\_\_ bid imminent? ~ Yes, before the end of the week.
- Are they forming a single company? ~ Yes, there is going to be a \_\_\_\_\_.
- Was it a friendly takeover? ~ No, it was a \_\_\_\_\_ takeover.
- Do they need your support? ~ They already have my \_\_\_\_\_.



## B Describing business activity

The table includes many phrases that are commonly used in a figurative sense.

Word or phrase	Example	Meaning
<b>go under</b>	<i>The company may <b>go under</b>.</i>	INF go out of business. SYN <b>go bankrupt</b> .
<b>wind sth up</b>	<i>The board may have to <b>wind up</b> the company.</i>	stop running a business and close it completely.
<b>step down/aside</b>	<i>The chairman had to <b>step down</b>.</i>	leave an important job.
<b>tighten your belt</b>	<i>If there is a recession, we will all have to <b>tighten our belts</b>.</i>	spend less money because there will be less available.
<b>go down that road</b>	<i>The company doesn't want to <b>go down that</b> particular road.</i>	take a particular course of action.
<b>wriggle out of sth / doing sth</b>	<i>They are trying to <b>wriggle out of</b> their obligation to customers.</i>	INF, DISAPPROVING avoid doing sth that you should do.
<b>lure sb</b>	<i>The company is trying to <b>lure</b> passengers away from its rivals.</i>	DISAPPROVING persuade or tempt sb to do sth by offering them a reward. SYN <b>entice sb</b> .
<b>not take sth lying down</b>	<i>You can be sure that BA <b>won't take</b> this situation <b>lying down</b>.</i>	not accept a bad situation without a fight or protest.
<b>tip the balance</b> 	<i>The city's transport links could <b>tip the balance</b> in their favour.</i>	affect the result of sth in one way rather than another.
<b>fuel sth</b>	<i>The situation is <b>fuelling fears</b> that prices could rise again.</i>	increase sth and make it stronger ( <b>fuel fears/inflation</b> ).
<b>the dust settles</b>	<i>Wait until <b>the dust settles</b>.</i>	the situation becomes clearer and less disturbed.
<b>on the cards</b>	<i>A takeover bid is <b>on the cards</b>.</i>	likely to happen.

### 3 Is the meaning in the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

1 Don't try and wriggle out of this.	Don't try and interfere in this.	
2 We won't go down that road.	We won't take that lying down.	
3 He decided to step down.	He decided to give up the job.	
4 We may need to tip the balance.	We may need to tighten our belts.	
5 Are they trying to lure customers away?	Are they trying to entice customers away?	
6 Wait until the situation is clearer.	Wait until the dust settles.	
7 We could go under.	We could go bankrupt.	
8 He could wind up the company.	He could expand the company.	

### 4 Complete the text with suitable words.

The decision by Globus Airlines to open up new routes across the Atlantic is clearly an attempt to (1) \_\_\_\_\_ customers away from competitors. Closest rival MEDINA has already stated it will not take this move (2) \_\_\_\_\_ down, but it may have to reduce its prices to tip the (3) \_\_\_\_\_ once again in its favour. For consumers, of course, this may sound like good news. But is it? If a price war is on the (4) \_\_\_\_\_, it will soon start to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ fears that eventually smaller companies will either go (6) \_\_\_\_\_ or be taken over. In the long term this may not be good news. We will have to wait and see who is still standing when the dust finally (7) \_\_\_\_\_.



Remember to test yourself



## 47 I can talk about money markets Do Unit 46 first

### A Expressing movement in markets

Word	Example	Meaning
<b>soar</b>	Share prices have <b>soared</b> .	rise suddenly and quickly. <b>syn</b> <b>rocket</b> .
<b>surge (in sth)</b>	The market is now expecting a <b>surge in</b> the value of the euro.	a large and sudden increase in the amount or value of sth. <b>surge</b> v.
<b>gain</b>	The dollar made significant <b>gains</b> .	an improvement or increase. <b>opp</b> <b>loss</b> .
<b>hike</b>	Another <b>hike in</b> the rate is possible.	<b>inf</b> a sudden or significant increase in the level or amount of sth. <b>opp</b> <b>cut</b> .
<b>strengthen</b>	The yen will <b>strengthen</b> .	become stronger. <b>opp</b> <b>weaken</b> .
<b>rally</b>	The pound <b>rallied</b> later in the day.	increase in value after a period when it has fallen. <b>syn</b> <b>recover / bounce back</b> .
<b>buoyant</b>	The market is still <b>buoyant</b> .	confident, successful, and staying at a high level. <b>syn</b> <b>healthy</b> .
<b>snap sth up</b>	The advice is to <b>snap up</b> the shares while you can.	buy sth quickly, usually while it is cheap or available.
<b>plummet</b>	The value may <b>plummet</b> even more.	fall suddenly and quickly. <b>syn</b> <b>plunge</b> .
<b>slump</b>	The price has <b>slumped</b> to its lowest level.	fall by a large amount. <b>slump</b> n ( <b>economic slump</b> <b>opp</b> <b>economic boom</b> ).
<b>slash sth</b>	The Federal Reserve has <b>slashed</b> the discount rate.	reduce sth by a large amount.
<b>wipe sth off sth</b>	The recession has <b>wiped</b> billions <b>off</b> the stock markets round the world.	remove sth from sth, quickly and completely.
<b>turmoil</b>	The market is still <b>in turmoil</b> .	a state of great confusion.
<b>volatile</b>	The market <b>remains volatile</b> .	likely to change suddenly. <b>volatility</b> n.
<b>turbulence</b>	There is likely to be short-term <b>turbulence</b> in the market.	a lot of sudden change (also a <b>bumpy ride</b> <b>inf</b> ). <b>turbulent</b> adj.

#### 1 Good or bad news for a company with shares listed on the stock market? Write G or B.

- We saw a surge in the share value. \_\_\_\_\_
- Millions were wiped off the value. \_\_\_\_\_
- The company has slashed dividends. \_\_\_\_\_
- Investors are snapping up shares. \_\_\_\_\_
- Shares rallied yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_
- Shares are in for a bumpy ride. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 Replace the underlined word with an opposite.

- The pound is strengthening. \_\_\_\_\_
- Analysts expect a cut in the interest rate. \_\_\_\_\_
- It could lead to an economic boom. \_\_\_\_\_
- The share price has soared. \_\_\_\_\_
- The market is very stable. \_\_\_\_\_
- The market made significant losses. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 3 Replace the underlined word(s) with a synonym.

- The market remains quite healthy. \_\_\_\_\_
- The dollar recovered slightly. \_\_\_\_\_
- The share price rocketed. \_\_\_\_\_
- Shares plunged to their lowest value. \_\_\_\_\_
- The markets are in total confusion. \_\_\_\_\_
- The market is very unstable. \_\_\_\_\_



## B Reasons to buy and sell shares

**Investors** may be given **contradictory** advice about the right time to invest in **equities**. Here, for example, are the thoughts of two experts in the autumn of 2007.

I would be looking to buy. There is good global growth which will **underpin corporate** profit, and many companies are currently looking strong with few significant **debt burdens**. Current **yields** may be low, but the **underlying outlook** is healthy.

I would be more cautious. There is a huge credit **bubble** at the moment. As the debt expands, bank lending will **dry up**. There has also been a surge in the yen, which could **trigger** more selling and put markets **under pressure**.

### Glossary

<b>investor</b>	a person who buys land, shares, etc. in order to make a profit. <b>invest</b> v.
<b>contradictory</b>	saying two different and opposing things. <b>SYN conflicting</b> . <b>contradiction</b> n. <b>contradict sb/sth</b> v.
<b>equities</b>	PL company shares which do not pay a fixed rate of interest.
<b>underpin sth corporate</b>	support or form the basis of sth. connected with a large business company. <b>corporation</b> n.
<b>debt burden</b>	the responsibility of having to pay back a lot of money.
<b>yield</b>	the total profit or income you get from a business or investment.
<b>underlying</b>	(in finance) An <b>underlying</b> number or situation shows what the true amount or level of sth is.
<b>outlook</b>	the probable future for sth.
<b>bubble</b>	(in finance) a temporary and fragile situation caused by a rapid increase in sth ( <b>the bubble will burst</b> = the situation will end, and people will lose money).
<b>dry up</b>	If sth <b>dries up</b> , there is gradually less and less of it.
<b>trigger sth</b>	cause sth to happen.
<b>under pressure</b>	suffering from strain.

**4** One letter in one word is missing, unnecessary, or wrong. Find the error and correct it.

- Analysts are worried that the debit burden is increasing. \_\_\_\_\_
- Many believe the credit bubble has already burnt. \_\_\_\_\_
- He has just contadicted what he told me earlier. \_\_\_\_\_
- The surge in the stock market is good news for inventors. \_\_\_\_\_
- Solid growth should underpine the economy. \_\_\_\_\_
- The company is planning to move its corporale headquarters. \_\_\_\_\_
- Would you advise me to invest in equiries at the moment? \_\_\_\_\_
- Some people have received record fields on their investment. \_\_\_\_\_

**5** Complete the sentences using words from the box.

bubble	conflicting	under	invest
debt	underlying	advice	equities
pressure	outlook	burden	burst

- On the surface the \_\_\_\_\_ seems uncertain, but the \_\_\_\_\_ situation is good.
- They borrowed a lot of money so there is still a significant \_\_\_\_\_.
- They said different things, so I was given \_\_\_\_\_.
- There is always a risk if somebody chooses to \_\_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_\_.
- If the banks go on lending more money, the credit \_\_\_\_\_ could \_\_\_\_\_.
- If shares continue to lose value, the market is put \_\_\_\_\_.








Remember to test yourself



## 48 I can talk about personal finance

### A Spending and saving

**Are you good at looking after your money?** For instance, do you:

-  keep a record of your **outgoings**, e.g. **debit card** payments, or **lose track** of what you spend?
-  keep your account **in credit** all the time, or are you sometimes **overdrawn**?
-  pay your credit card bills promptly, or do you allow debts to **mount up**?
-  check all the **transactions** in your **bank statements**, or do you just ignore them?
-  think you're **thrifty**, or do you **squander** large **sums** of money?

#### Glossary

<b>outgoings</b>	pl. the money a person or business has to spend regularly. <i>OPP</i> <b>income</b> .	<b>transaction</b>	a piece of business between people. (Here, it is <b>putting</b> money <b>into</b> your account or <b>taking it out</b> . <i>SYN</i> <b>withdrawing</b> it.)
<b>debit card</b>	a plastic card used for taking money directly from your bank account.	<b>bank statement</b>	a record of the money paid into and out of a bank account.
<b>lose track of sth/sb</b>	not have information about what is happening or where sth/sb is. <i>OPP</i> <b>keep track of sth/sb</b> .	<b>thrifty</b>	careful about spending money. <i>OPP</i> <b>extravagant</b> .
<b>credit</b>	If you are <b>in credit</b> , there is money in your account. <i>OPP</i> <b>overdrawn</b> / <b>in the red</b> <i>INF</i> . (If you are <b>overdrawn</b> , you have an <b>overdraft</b> .)	<b>squander sth</b>	waste sth, especially money or time, in a careless way.
<b>mount up</b>	increase gradually in size. <i>SYN</i> <b>build up</b> / <b>accumulate</b> .	<b>sum (of sth)</b>	an amount of money.

#### spotlight Bank accounts

A **current account** gives immediate access to your money, but pays little interest. A **deposit** or **savings account** pays more interest but without such quick access.

#### 1 Complete the sentences with suitable words.

- I'm afraid I \_\_\_\_\_ track of \_\_\_\_\_ card payments because I forget to write them down. When I get my monthly bank \_\_\_\_\_, I can see all the \_\_\_\_\_.
- I keep a reasonable amount of money in my \_\_\_\_\_ account – just enough to keep it in \_\_\_\_\_ – but I put most in a \_\_\_\_\_ account where I get more interest.
- I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ track of my outgoings this month, and now I'm in the \_\_\_\_\_.
- I'm the sensible one with money – very \_\_\_\_\_. My brother isn't; he's very \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 2 Complete each dialogue with a single word.

- Did you take some money out? ~ Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ £100.
- Is there money in your account? ~ No, I'm afraid I'm \_\_\_\_\_.
- Do you know what you spend? ~ Yes, I keep a record of all my \_\_\_\_\_.
- Have you spent too much this month? ~ Yes, and now I've got an \_\_\_\_\_.
- Do you always pay credit card bills? ~ Yes, otherwise debts can \_\_\_\_\_ up.
- Does he spend his money carefully? ~ No, he \_\_\_\_\_ most of it.





## B Looking after your money

### Creating a personal budget

**F**EW PEOPLE bother to **budget**, which is why so many are in debt. You must **calculate** the total amount of money coming in **per** month, and the total going out, both regular outgoings and all other expenses. Then, **subtract** the expenses **from** the income. If there's a **surplus**, don't spend it: that is your emergency **fund** to keep for **contingencies**.

If there is a **shortfall**, then you must take action. Consider where you can **economize** and **make cutbacks**. Be ruthless, and don't expect anyone else to **subsidize** you and **bail you out**.

#### Glossary

**budget** plan how much to spend and what to spend it on (a **budget** is the amount of money available to spend, with a plan for spending it).  
**calculate sth** use numbers to find a total number, amount, or distance. SYN **work sth out**. **calculation** N.  
**per** for each (used to express the cost or amount of sth for each person, period of time, etc.).  
**subtract sth from sth** take one number from another to calculate the difference. SYN **take sth away from sth**.

#### spotlight **surplus**

A **surplus** is more of something than is necessary. If it is money, the opposite is a **deficit**; if it is food, petrol, etc., the opposite is a **shortage**.

**fund** an amount of money available for a particular purpose.  
**contingency** sth that may or may not happen (**contingency plans** / a **contingency fund**).  
**shortfall** the difference between what you have and what you need.  
**economize** reduce the amount of money, time, goods, etc. that you use. SYN **make cutbacks**.  
**subsidize sb** give money to sb to help them pay for sth. **subsidy** N.  
**bail sb out** rescue sb from a difficult situation, often with money.

### 3 Circle the odd one out, then say what the other two words have in common.

- |                |                  |                           |       |
|----------------|------------------|---------------------------|-------|
| 1 a) shortfall | b) surplus       | c) deficit                | _____ |
| 2 a) shortage  | b) contingency   | c) shortfall              | _____ |
| 3 a) economize | b) take away     | c) subtract               | _____ |
| 4 a) economize | b) make cutbacks | c) make contingency plans | _____ |
| 5 a) deficit   | b) fund          | c) budget                 | _____ |
| 6 a) work out  | b) calculate     | c) economize              | _____ |

### 4 Complete the texts with suitable words.

The floods in the spring are now causing severe food (1) \_\_\_\_\_ throughout the country, and this will leave many farmers with a significant (2) \_\_\_\_\_ in their income. A few lucky ones may have a (3) \_\_\_\_\_ fund to help them, but the majority will no doubt be hoping for a government (4) \_\_\_\_\_ to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ them out.

I'm not very careful with money and don't often (6) \_\_\_\_\_, but I decided to keep a record of my regular outgoings each month. At first I found it quite difficult to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ all my other expenses, but I managed it after a while. I realized I had a bit of a (8) \_\_\_\_\_ whenever I had to pay large bills, and would need to make (9) \_\_\_\_\_. The most obvious place to start was the car, as it was costing me £100 (10) \_\_\_\_\_ month.



Remember to test yourself



## 49 I can discuss time management

### A Tips for time management

#### Time management questionnaire

- Do you **jot down** a list of jobs to do on a daily **basis**, and then **prioritize** them? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you prioritize **ruthlessly**, deciding which tasks you have to **accomplish** that day? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you **stick to** your priorities, **no matter what** happens? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you try to **anticipate** so that you can **schedule** your tasks better? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you **delegate** responsibilities as far as possible? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you set yourself **rigorous** time limits for tasks, and stick to them? \_\_\_\_\_

#### 1 Circle the correct word(s). More than one word may be correct.

- Once you have **prioritized** / **accomplished** your daily list, make sure you do it all.
- You need to be **rigorous** / **ruthless** when deciding what the priorities are.
- You need to set a time limit, **no matter what** / **whatever** happens.
- I tend to check emails on a daily **basis** / **base**, **wherever** / **whatever** I am in the world.
- The organizers hadn't **scheduled** / **anticipated** how many people would want to attend.

#### 2 Complete the dialogues.

- How often do you review the figures? ~ Usually on a monthly \_\_\_\_\_.
- He won't give up, even if it's hard. ~ I know, he always \_\_\_\_\_ to the task.
- Were you surprised Jack was angry? ~ Yes. I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ that at all.
- Has the meeting time been fixed? ~ Yes, it's \_\_\_\_\_ for 4.00 today.
- You should get your assistant to do it. ~ I know, I should \_\_\_\_\_ work more often.
- Have you got my email address? ~ No, let me just \_\_\_\_\_ it down.
- Will you finish the project this week? ~ Yes, I'll do it no \_\_\_\_\_ what happens.
- It's been a huge achievement. ~ Yes, we've \_\_\_\_\_ a great deal.

#### 3 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questionnaire, or ask another student.

#### Glossary

<b>jot sth down</b>	write sth quickly.
<b>basis</b>	a particular way in which sth is organized or done ( <b>on a day-to-day basis</b> , <b>on a daily/weekly/regular basis</b> ).
<b>prioritize</b>	put tasks, problems, etc. in order of importance and do the most important first. <b>priority</b> N ( <b>high/low/top priority</b> ).
<b>ruthlessly</b>	in a determined and firm way.
<b>accomplish sth</b>	succeed in doing or completing sth. <b>SYN</b> achieve sth.
<b>stick to sth</b>	continue doing sth despite difficulties.
<b>anticipate sth</b>	expect sth will happen and prepare for it. <b>anticipation</b> N.
<b>schedule sth</b>	arrange for sth to happen at a particular time. <b>schedule</b> N.
<b>delegate sth (to sb)</b>	give part of your work to sb, especially sb in a lower position.
<b>rigorous</b>	strict and severe.

#### spotlight **no matter what, whatever**

**No matter what** (**when**, etc.) means 'it doesn't matter what (when, etc.)' or 'it isn't important what (when, etc.)'. You can sometimes paraphrase it with **whatever** (**whenever**, etc.).

**No matter what** happens, don't panic.

= **Whatever** happens, don't panic.

You'll find work **no matter where** you are.

= **wherever** you are





## B Email stress 🎧

### Email stress: the new office workers' plague

Over a third of workers say they are **inundated** with a **never-ending stream** of emails and are **stressed out** by the pressure to respond to them **promptly**. Research has found that some employees check their emails every few minutes, leaving them frustrated and **unproductive**. Females feel particularly **hard-hit** by the **deluge**. 'Email is an amazing tool, but it's **got out of hand**,' says researcher Karen Renaud. She adds that when you **break off from** what you are doing to read your emails, you lose your **train of thought**. The advice is to **set aside** two or three specific email-reading times each day.



#### Glossary

<b>inundated (with sth)</b>	given so many things that you cannot deal with them. <b>SYNS</b> overwhelmed, swamped.
<b>never-ending</b>	seeming to last for ever. <b>SYN</b> interminable.
<b>stressed out</b>	INF too anxious and tired to be able to relax.
<b>promptly</b>	quickly; without delay. <b>PROMPT</b> ADJ.
<b>unproductive</b>	not producing good results. <b>OPP</b> productive.
<b>hard-hit</b>	badly affected by sth (also <b>severely/badly hit</b> ).
<b>be/get out of hand</b>	be/become impossible to control. <b>OPP</b> be under control.
<b>break off (from sth)</b>	stop speaking or doing sth for a time.
<b>train of thought</b>	a linked series of thoughts in your head at one time.
<b>set sth aside</b>	keep sth, especially money or time, for a purpose.

#### spotlight

#### Metaphorical use of words

A **plague** is a fast-spreading disease which often results in death; in the title it is something that causes irritation. A **stream** is a small river, but here it means a continuous flow of things. A **deluge** is a flood or heavy rain, but in the text it means a great quantity of something arriving at the same time.

#### 4 Correct the spelling mistakes.

- |                      |                     |                        |
|----------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1 diluge _____       | 3 inondated _____   | 5 under controll _____ |
| 2 interminible _____ | 4 severly hit _____ | 6 plage _____          |

#### 5 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| ▶ I'm feeling very / out. <u>stressed</u> | 4 The work has been never- _____              |
| 1 I need to aside money for rent. _____   | 5 Our spending has got out hand. _____        |
| 2 I've lost my of thought. _____          | 6 I had to break from what I was doing. _____ |
| 3 We were hard by the price war. _____    | 7 The situation is control. _____             |

#### 6 Complete the questions.

- |   |       |
|---|-------|
| 1 If you have a constant s _____ of interruptions, do you feel o _____ /s _____ ? | _____ |
| 2 Did you get a lot of work done today, or was it a rather u _____ day?           | _____ |
| 3 Do you agree that people suffer from a d _____ of emails?                       | _____ |
| 4 Do you think it's important to reply to emails p _____ ?                        | _____ |
| 5 Do you often feel s _____ out because of work or studies?                       | _____ |
| 6 What do you think would make you more p _____ at work?                          | _____ |

#### ABOUT YOU

#### 7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student.



Remember to test yourself



## 50 I can discuss workplace disputes

### A An industrial dispute

**T**alks between Royal Mail bosses and the CWU union have again ended in **deadlock**, so the union has decided, following the support of its members in the national **ballot**, to **set a date** for strikes as early as next week. They claim it is not just a pay **dispute**, but an attempt to **halt** the **closure** of 2,500 post offices and the

further **privatization** of services. For the government, though, there is a great deal **at stake**. If the management gives in to the demands, it could **set a precedent** for other groups, who may feel more **inclined to step up** their own claims for higher wage settlements.

#### Glossary

<b>deadlock</b>	a failure to reach an agreement or settle an argument (be unable to <b>break the deadlock</b> ).
<b>ballot</b>	a system of voting in which votes are made in secret ( <b>ballot</b> (v) a group of people = ask members of a group to vote on sth).
<b>dispute</b>	a disagreement, often official, between people or groups (a <b>pay/ industrial dispute</b> , <b>settle a dispute</b> ).
<b>halt sth</b>	prevent sth from continuing.
<b>closure</b>	a situation in which a school, factory, etc. is permanently shut.
<b>privatization</b>	the process of selling an industry so it is no longer owned by the government. <b>OPP nationalization</b> . <b>privatize sth</b> v.
<b>at stake</b>	If sth is <b>at stake</b> , you will lose it if a plan or action is not successful ( <i>there's a lot at stake / the stakes are high</i> ).
<b>precedent</b>	a thing that happened in the past which is seen as a rule or example to be followed by others in a similar situation.
<b>inclined to do sth</b>	likely to do sth or tending to do sth. <b>inclination</b> n.
<b>step sth up</b>	increase the amount of an activity in order to achieve sth.

#### spotlight **set + noun**

**Set** is used with many nouns, often meaning to fix something for others to copy, e.g. **set an example**, **set a standard**, **set a record**, **set a precedent**. It can also mean to decide on something, as in **set a date/limit**.

#### 1 Complete the sentences with a suitable verb.

- He \_\_\_\_\_ the standard for others to follow.
- We must act now in order to \_\_\_\_\_ the dispute.
- The union must \_\_\_\_\_ their members before they can go ahead with strike action.
- They haven't \_\_\_\_\_ a date for the next meeting yet.
- We must find a way to \_\_\_\_\_ the deadlock.
- The government has failed to \_\_\_\_\_ the economic decline, so things look bad.
- If their demands aren't met, some workers will \_\_\_\_\_ their call for strike action.

#### 2 Complete the dialogues with a single word in each space.

- Is it the only factory to close? ~ No, there have been lots of \_\_\_\_\_.
- Why are they going on strike? ~ It's a \_\_\_\_\_ over pay I believe.
- Has this happened before? ~ No, it would set a \_\_\_\_\_.
- Have they reached an agreement? ~ No, the talks ended in \_\_\_\_\_.
- Will the government sell the railways? ~ Yes, there are plans to \_\_\_\_\_ them.
- What will happen if you leave? ~ I think others may be \_\_\_\_\_ to follow.



## B Staff disputes

What would you do in a dispute between members of your own staff? Would you ...

- a) **intervene** at once to **resolve** the problem?

This would be **proactive**, and a positive way to **tackle the problem**, but is there a risk of **blowing it up out of all proportion**?

- b) see if the staff can **sort it out** themselves?

This could be interpreted as **passing the buck**. But the staff may not want you to **interfere**, so it could be a **wise** thing to do.

- c) wait to see if the problem **sorts itself out**?

Is this sensible or would you just be **procrastinating**?

- d) **bury your head in the sand**, as if you're saying, 'What problem?'

### Glossary

**intervene in sth**

**resolve sth**

**proactive**

**tackle a problem**

**blow sth (up) out of (all) proportion**

**sort sth out**

**pass the buck**

**interfere (in sth)**

**wise (of actions)**

**procrastinate**

**bury your head in the sand**

get involved in a situation in order to help. **intervention** N.

FML find an acceptable solution to a problem. **resolution** N.

(of a person or policy) creating or controlling a situation by making things happen, rather than waiting for things to happen.

do sth to solve a problem.

make sth more serious than it is.

deal with a problem successfully (if **sth sorts itself out**, the problem is resolved without the need for action from anyone).

make sb else deal with sth that you should deal with.

get involved in a situation in a way that annoys others. **interference** N.

sensible; showing good judgement. **wisdom** N. SYN **prudent**. **prudence** N.

FML delay doing sth until later, often because you don't want to do it.

**procrastination** N.

pretend a difficult situation doesn't exist.

### 3 Write the nouns related to these verbs.

- |                       |                   |                 |
|-----------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1 procrastinate _____ | 3 resolve _____   | 5 wise _____    |
| 2 interfere _____     | 4 intervene _____ | 6 prudent _____ |

### 4 Is the speaker pleased or angry with his boss? Write P or A.

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1 She tackled the problem. _____         | 5 She was very prudent. _____         |
| 2 She intervened at once. _____          | 6 She passed the buck. _____          |
| 3 She interfered as usual. _____         | 7 She's usually very proactive. _____ |
| 4 She buried her head in the sand. _____ | 8 She always procrastinates. _____    |

### 5 Complete the text.

We recently had a dispute between two employees who wouldn't work together. I could see the problem wasn't going to (1) \_\_\_\_\_ itself out; I realized that if I didn't (2) \_\_\_\_\_ and sort it (3) \_\_\_\_\_, I'd be accused of passing the (4) \_\_\_\_\_. However, I didn't want to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ it up out of all (6) \_\_\_\_\_, so I just had a quiet word with them. It turned out to be a (7) \_\_\_\_\_ decision, because the problem was (8) \_\_\_\_\_ quite quickly.

### 6 ABOUT YOU What would you do in the situation at the top of the page?



Remember to test yourself



# 51 I can talk about office problems



## MY TOP FIVE PET HATES

I can't stand it when colleagues ...

- create a paper **jam** in the **photocopier**<sup>1</sup> and leave others to **put it right**
- are always **absent** when the work **piles up** and things are really **hectic**
- **neglect** their own work, but **poke their noses into** other people's business
- **fail to** provide **handover** instructions when they go away on holiday
- constantly **hum**, whistle, **giggle** uncontrollably, **sniff**, etc. right next to me!

## Glossary

<b>pet hate</b>	a thing you particularly dislike or find annoying.	<b>neglect sth</b>	not do sth, or not give enough attention to sth. <b>neglect</b> N.
<b>jam</b>	a situation in which a machine doesn't work because sth is stuck in one position (a <b>paper jam</b> ). <b>jam</b> v (the photocopier keeps <b>jamming</b> ).	<b>poke/stick your nose in(to) sth</b>	INF become involved in sth that does not concern you.
<b>put sth right</b>	make a situation better after a mistake has made.	<b>fail to do sth</b>	not do sth that people expect you to do. SYN <b>neglect to do sth</b> .
<b>absent (from sth)</b>	not in a place, e.g. because of illness. <b>absence</b> N.	<b>handover</b>	the act of making sb else responsible for sth. <b>hand sth over (to sb)</b> v.
<b>pile up</b>	become larger in quantity or amount. SYN <b>accumulate</b> .	<b>hum</b>	sing a tune with your lips closed.
<b>hectic</b>	very busy.	<b>giggle</b>	laugh in a silly way when you're embarrassed, amused, or nervous.
		<b>sniff</b>	take a quick, noisy breath in through your nose, e.g. when you have a cold.

### 1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

1 The photocopier isn't working.	There's a paper jam in the photocopier.	
2 I mended the fault in the machine.	I put the fault right.	
3 It's one of my pet hates.	It's something I can't stand.	
4 My colleague keeps humming.	My colleague keeps singing.	
5 She was absent this morning.	She wasn't here this morning.	
6 He's always poking his nose in.	He's always neglecting his work.	
7 Work is getting hectic.	Work is really piling up.	
8 I wish she'd stop sniffing.	I wish she'd stop giggling.	

### 2 Complete the text.

My colleague Barbara had a month off recently; she left very specific (1) \_\_\_\_\_ instructions for her colleague Doug, so that after such a long (2) \_\_\_\_\_, she wouldn't come back to find a mountain of work had (3) \_\_\_\_\_. However, Doug's pretty lazy and he (4) \_\_\_\_\_ to do the things she asked him to. He also (5) \_\_\_\_\_ his own work and spent most of the time standing round the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ gossiping, or (7) \_\_\_\_\_ his nose into other people's business or just (8) \_\_\_\_\_ at Mark's silly jokes. Barbara's back now, furious with Doug, and, with all the work we have to do, life is as (9) \_\_\_\_\_ as ever. I don't think Doug will have his job much longer.

### 3 ABOUT YOU Do you work in an office? If so, do you have any pet hates? Write a list, or tell another student.

# Review: Work and finance

## Unit 44

### 1 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A Your office is moving to Milan, isn't it?  
B Yes, and I've got a generous \_\_\_\_\_ allowance, which is great.
- 2 A Does your company have a bonus \_\_\_\_\_?  
B Yeah, and it's \_\_\_\_\_-related, which is why I put in such long hours.
- 3 A When does your maternity \_\_\_\_\_ start?  
B Next month. And when I come back there is childcare \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 A Do you use the company \_\_\_\_\_ at lunchtime?  
B Yes, and it's \_\_\_\_\_, so you can get a good meal for €2.
- 5 A How much holiday are you \_\_\_\_\_ to?  
B I get 30 days off, but I believe the \_\_\_\_\_ is increasing to 32 days next year.

**A Z** more words: **statutory** rights/holidays, temporary **lay-off**, **breach** of contract, free health **screening**, **share/stock** options

## Unit 45

### 1 Tick the words which are correct. One, two, or three may be correct.

- 1 There has always been a lot of mutual ☐ *trust* ☐ *confidence* ☐ *respect*.
- 2 There are several ☐ *additional* ☐ *extra* ☐ *further* factors to consider.
- 3 It's hard to *juggle* ☐ *encroach upon* ☐ *encounter* work and family responsibilities.
- 4 Teamwork requires a *degree* ☐ *an extent* ☐ *an insight* of respect between colleagues.
- 5 Colleagues who don't fit in can *undermine* ☐ *pool* ☐ *disrupt* the work of the team.
- 6 The project has helped to *foster* ☐ *promote* ☐ *encroach upon* team spirit.

**A Z** more words: make **ends** meet, *networking*, the career **ladder**, *camaraderie*, *counterpart*, **dead-end** job, *roller coaster*

## Unit 46

### 1 One word is missing from each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

- 1 They're in a bad state but, knowing them, they won't take it lying. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 The company is likely to an advertising campaign to improve its profile. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 We have no choice but to our belts in the current climate. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 We could borrow more, but we don't want to go that road. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The US job figures are fuelling of a global recession. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 It's been chaotic on the markets, but let's just wait till the settles. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 The bid was turned because of insufficient backing by shareholders. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 There is concern that the move will off a fresh round of bids and mergers. \_\_\_\_\_

**A Z** more words: the (financial) **muscle**, go back to the **drawing board**, **grind** to a halt, an **injection** of cash, back on **track**



## Unit 47

1 Organize the words in the box into the two groups below.

plunge    soar    turbulence    plummet    surge    volatile    slash  
boom    buoyant    turmoil    rally    slump    gains

STABLE OR RISING	UNSTABLE OR FALLING

2 Complete the sentences with suitable words.

- It's a very good time for \_\_\_\_\_ to buy shares.
- The company is struggling under a significant \_\_\_\_\_ burden.
- It's a difficult time for the company as they are under a lot of \_\_\_\_\_.
- If there is a surge in one currency it could \_\_\_\_\_ more selling in another currency.
- Investing in \_\_\_\_\_ carries more risk than putting your money into a bank account.
- The market is unstable at present but the \_\_\_\_\_ is good.
- Analysts are worried that the credit bubble could \_\_\_\_\_.
- Investors are getting \_\_\_\_\_ signs from the market: one day it suggests things are getting worse, the next day the market rallies.

**AZ** more words: **ethical** investments, bonds, **portfolio** of investments, **negative equity**, **rights issue**, **bull market**, **bear market**

## Unit 48



www.languagecentre.ir

آموزش زبان انگلیسی امید

1 Complete the email from a student to her parents.

Dear Mum and Dad

Sorry I haven't been in touch for a while, but things have been really busy at university. Anyway, I'm afraid I've got a confession to make. I've just been looking at my bank (1) \_\_\_\_\_, and I feel really stupid. I don't know how it's happened, but I'm in the (2) \_\_\_\_\_ by a very large amount. In fact, I'm (3) \_\_\_\_\_ by nearly \$500, and even worse, I've already spent the \$200 contingency (4) \_\_\_\_\_ you gave me last term. I know you think I've been (5) \_\_\_\_\_ money instead of spending it wisely as you've always insisted, but my (6) \_\_\_\_\_ have been enormous this term: books, a laptop, DVDs (for my studies, of course)... I know I've never been good at keeping to a (7) \_\_\_\_\_, but if you will just (8) \_\_\_\_\_ me out this one last time, I promise I will (9) \_\_\_\_\_ cutbacks and keep (10) \_\_\_\_\_ of my spending from now on. Honestly, I will. Really. Honestly and truly. I'll ring you tonight to talk it over,  
Lots of love,  
Angelica

**AZ** more words: *live within your* **means**, *fritter (money) away*, *take out a* **mortgage**, *pay sth off*, *extortionate*, *tax* **rebate**

## Unit 49

### 1 Complete the sentences with suitable verbs.

Improve your time management

If you want to (1) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot in one day, here's how to do it.

- First of all, (2) \_\_\_\_\_ your daily tasks, so that important ones are dealt with first.
- As soon as you have your targets for the day, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to them.
- Try to (4) \_\_\_\_\_ any problems; then you are better equipped to deal with them.
- (5) \_\_\_\_\_ meetings so that they don't interrupt your day too much.
- Always (6) \_\_\_\_\_ aside time every day for routine tasks such as responding to emails.
- (7) \_\_\_\_\_ responsibilities so that you don't waste time on trivial things.

**A Z** more words: *workload, absenteeism, backlog, be up to your **eyes** in sth, have a lot on your plate, fall behind **schedule***

## Unit 50

### 1 Cross out the word which is wrong. Write the correct word at the end.

- 1 It's a delicate situation and the stakes are high. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 This legal action could make a precedent. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 The union will need to ballet its members before calling a strike. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 They are having further talks to try to set the dispute. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The government is planning further privatization of the postal service. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 He may get better, but he's inclined to be very lazy. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 I was very grateful for the manager's interference in the dispute. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Don't worry; the problem will sort itself off. \_\_\_\_\_

**A Z** more words: *grievance, go to arbitration, mediate, take the **easy** way out, even-handed, meddle in/with sth*

## Unit 51

### 1 Which words are being defined?

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 _____                                    | sing with your lips closed                            |
| 2 _____                                    | take a quick, noisy breath in                         |
| 3 _____                                    | laugh in a silly way                                  |
| 4 _____                                    | not in your place of work, perhaps because of illness |
| 5 _____                                    | very busy   |
| 6 _____ <i>sth</i>                         | not give enough attention to something                |
| 7 _____                                    | a machine that makes copies of documents              |
| 8 _____ <i>hate</i>                        | a thing you particularly dislike                      |
| 9 _____ <i>sth right</i>                   | make a situation better after a mistake has been made |
| 10 _____ <i>your</i> _____ <i>into sth</i> | become involved in something that doesn't concern you |

**A Z** more words: *aggravating, pester sb, **know**-all, whine about things, seethe (with anger), drum your fingers*



## 52 I can describe cause and effect

### A Actions and reactions

The road rage thing was all **sparked** by a trivial **incident**. The guy behind me kept blowing his horn and it was **driving me mad**. When we stopped at the lights, my passenger Phil **egged me on** to have a word with him. I got out, we started arguing, **one thing led to another** and . . . well, I kicked his car and **dented** it. He **retaliated** and kicked mine, and Phil, who is easily **provoked**, joined in. I realize I **overreacted**, and I'm shocked at my own behaviour; I think it all **boils down to** the fact that I haven't been well lately. All I can say is that it was an unfortunate **chain of events**, that's for sure . . .



#### Glossary

road rage	angry or violent behaviour by one driver towards another driver.
spark sth (off)	cause sth to start or develop suddenly.
incident	sth that happens, especially sth unusual or unpleasant.
drive sb mad/crazy/insane	make sb very angry, crazy, etc.
egg sb on	INF encourage sb to do sth, especially sth they should not do.
one thing leads to another	used to suggest that the way one event leads to another is so obvious that it does not need to be stated.
retaliate	do sth harmful to sb because they harmed you first. <b>retaliation</b> N.
provoke sb (into sth)	say or do sth that you know will annoy sb so that they react angrily. <b>SYN</b> goad sb. <b>provocation</b> N.
overreact (to sth)	react too strongly to sth, especially sth unpleasant.
boil down to sth	INF (of a situation) have sth as a main or basic part.
chain of events	a number of connected events that happen one after the other. <b>SYN</b> sequence of events.

#### 1 Circle the correct word(s). In some cases, both may be correct.

- My neighbour's loud music **drives** / **sparks** me crazy.
- She attacked me and, stupidly, I **retaliated** / **egged her on**.
- He was **provoked** / **goaded** into a huge argument.
- It's very common to **overreact** / **boil down** to provocation.
- It was a very unfortunate **sequence** / **chain** of events, which ended in court.
- How exactly did the **incident** / **dent** end?
- One thing **led** / **went** to another, and I found myself the owner of a new car.
- Don't mention her ex-boyfriend; it will only **drive** / **provoke** her again.

#### 2 Complete the questions, then write your answers, or ask another student. ABOUT YOU

- Have you ever witnessed a r\_\_\_\_\_ rage i\_\_\_\_\_?
- Have you ever kicked something and d\_\_\_\_\_ it?
- Do you tend to remain calm, or do you o\_\_\_\_\_ in difficult situations?
- What kinds of things d\_\_\_\_\_ you mad?



## B Causes, reasons, and results

- A What **aroused** the police's suspicions?  
 B Well, Sims had a clear **motive**: revenge.
- A What was the **outcome** of the discussion?  
 B We were eventually **coerced into** agreeing.
- A The flood had a **knock-on effect** on tourism.  
 B Yes, it was bound to have **repercussions**.
- A What **prompted** you to ring Nina?  
 B **No reason** – just fancied a chat.
- A We're considering various **spin-offs**.  
 B That should **generate** more income.
- A Has the smoking ban **come into effect**?  
 B Yes, it's already **made a big difference**.

### Glossary

<b>arouse sth</b>	make sb have a particular feeling or attitude. <b>arouse</b> (sb's) <b>suspicion/curiosity</b> .
<b>motive</b>	a reason for doing sth.
<b>outcome</b>	the result of a situation or event ( <b>final outcome</b> <small>SYN</small> <b>end result</b> ).
<b>coerce sb</b> (into doing sth)	<small>FML</small> force sb to do sth. <b>coercion</b> <small>N</small> .
<b>repercussions</b>	unintended and usually unwelcome results of an action or event. <small>SYN</small> <b>consequences</b> .
<b>prompt sb to do sth</b>	make sb decide to do sth.
<b>no reason</b>	often used when you do not want to say why you have done sth.
<b>spin-off</b>	a new product that is based on another that already exists.
<b>generate sth</b>	produce or create sth ( <b>generate income/profit/jobs</b> ).
<b>make a difference</b>	have an effect on sth, usually a good effect.

### spotlight **effect**

If a law or regulation **comes into effect**, it begins to apply or be used. **Knock-on effects** cause events to happen one after another in a series. An **adverse** or **detrimental effect** is a negative or unpleasant one (OPP a **beneficial** effect).

### 3 Match 1–8 with a–h.

- |  |                  |
|--|------------------|
| 1 We don't want to feel _____              | a income.        |
| 2 The incident aroused _____               | b effect.        |
| 3 I believe it will make a big _____       | c spin-offs.     |
| 4 The decision had an adverse _____        | d repercussions. |
| 5 The move will have serious _____         | e suspicion.     |
| 6 The suspect had a clear _____            | f coerced.       |
| 7 The company is planning commercial _____ | g difference.    |
| 8 The move generated considerable _____    | h motive.        |

### 4 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

- The house took a long time to build, but the end is fantastic. \_\_\_\_\_
- What made you ring Robert? ~ Oh, reason. \_\_\_\_\_
- The new law came effect at the beginning of June. \_\_\_\_\_
- Too much sunlight can have a effect on your skin. \_\_\_\_\_
- Current levels of deforestation will have long-term. \_\_\_\_\_
- I'm not really sure what him to resign so suddenly. \_\_\_\_\_
- What was the final of the talks in Bali? \_\_\_\_\_
- One indirect result or knock-on will be price rises throughout the economy. \_\_\_\_\_





## A A story about lying



I was once **economical with the truth** on a job application form. I lied about my employment record, **talked up** my skills, and **embellished** my previous salary by a few thousand. Oh, and I **glossed over** one rather **unpalatable** truth, **namely** that I'd been sacked from my last job. But trying to **sustain** the lies at the interview was a nightmare. My interviewer soon **detected** something was wrong, and a friendly chat **deteriorated** into an awful **interrogation**. And after a series of awkward questions, he **caught me out**; I felt utterly **humiliated**. **Needless to say**, I've never done it since.

## Glossary

<b>be economical with the truth</b>	say things that are only partially true (used as a euphemism for 'lie': see page 203).	<b>sustain sth</b>	make sth continue for some time.
<b>talk sth up</b>	describe sth in a way that makes it sound better than it is.	<b>detect sth</b>	discover or notice sth, especially sth that is hard to see or hear.
<b>embellish sth</b>	make a statement or story more interesting by adding details that are not always true.	<b>deteriorate</b>	become worse. <b>deterioration</b> N.
<b>gloss over sth</b>	deliberately avoid talking about sth unpleasant, or say as little as possible about it.	<b>interrogation</b>	the process of asking sb a lot of questions, especially in an aggressive way. <b>interrogate sb</b> V.
<b>unpalatable</b>	unpleasant and hard to accept.	<b>catch sb out</b>	make sb make a mistake which shows they have been lying.
<b>namely</b>	used to introduce more exact information about a subject.	<b>humiliated</b>	feeling ashamed because you have lost the respect of other people. <b>humiliate sb</b> V. <b>humiliation</b> N.
		<b>needless to say</b>	obviously.

**1** Complete the words and circle the stressed syllable.

- e c o n o m i c a l      3 h \_ m \_ l \_ \_ t e d      6 u n p \_ \_ \_ t \_ b l e  
1 e m b e l \_ \_ \_ \_ \_      4 i n t \_ \_ \_ o g \_ \_ i o n      7 d \_ t \_ c t \_  
2 s \_ s t \_ \_ n      5 i n t \_ \_ \_ o g \_ \_ \_ \_      8 n \_ m \_ l y

**2** Complete the dialogue.

- A Did you know that Johnny Savill's got the sack? Evidently he was, well, let's just say he was ' (1) \_\_\_\_\_ with the truth ' about a few things.
- B Well, I can't say I'm surprised. When I worked with him he often (2) \_\_\_\_\_ things up, especially when our sales were down. And I think he was a bit dishonest – he would (3) \_\_\_\_\_ the facts, or (4) \_\_\_\_\_ over the things he didn't want you to know about. And his relationship with Mrs Kilgariff has really (5) \_\_\_\_\_ lately because she was obviously suspicious of him.
- A Yeah, evidently he was called in to see her yesterday and she virtually (6) \_\_\_\_\_ him, asking him loads of difficult questions, and eventually she (7) \_\_\_\_\_ him out. He must have felt really (8) \_\_\_\_\_ – he's a very proud guy. In the end, he just couldn't (9) \_\_\_\_\_ all those lies. Well who could, faced with Mrs Kilgariff? But (10) \_\_\_\_\_ say, I'm not sorry for him. He deserved it.

## B Quotes about truth and lies

When war is **declared**, truth is the first **casualty**. *Arthur Ponsonby*

The most dangerous of all **falsehoods** is a slightly **distorted** truth. *C. G. Lichtenberg*

**Level with** your child by being honest. Nobody spots a **phoney** quicker than a child. *Mary MacCracken*

There are only two ways of telling the complete truth: **anonymously** and **posthumously**. *Thomas Sowell*

Tell the truth so as to **puzzle** and **confound** your **adversaries**. *Henry Wotton*

We are never **deceived**; we deceive ourselves. *Johann Wolfgang von Goethe*

### spotlight Types of lie

A **falsehood** FML is a lie. A **white lie** is a small lie, especially one you tell to avoid hurting someone. A **half-truth** is a statement which only gives some of the facts. A **fib** INF is an unimportant lie.

### Glossary

<b>declare war / a ceasefire</b>	announce the start of war or a ceasefire.
<b>casualty</b>	sth that is destroyed or sb who suffers when sth else happens.
<b>distort sth</b>	twist or change facts, etc. so that they are no longer true.
<b>level with sb</b>	INF tell the truth and not hide any important facts.
<b>phoney</b>	INF a person who is not honest or sincere. <b>phoney</b> ADJ, INF.
<b>anonymously</b>	in such a way that the speaker's name is kept secret. <b>anonymity</b> N.
<b>posthumously</b>	after sb has died.
<b>puzzle sb</b>	make sb feel confused because they don't understand sth. <b>SYNS</b> baffle sb, confound sb FML, puzzled ADJ.
<b>adversary</b>	FML an enemy or opponent.
<b>deceive sb</b>	trick sb by behaving dishonestly (also <b>deceive yourself</b> refuse to admit that sth unpleasant is true <b>SYN</b> delude yourself). <b>deceit</b> N. <b>SYN</b> deception N.

### 3 Write the words in the correct column in the table.

phoney    a white lie    falsehood    confound sb    fib    deceit  
adversary    level with sb    declare sth    distort sth

Formal	Informal	Neutral

### 4 Complete the dialogues.

- Did she sign her name on the letter? ~ No, she sent it \_\_\_\_\_.
- Why did Erich lose his job? ~ He was a \_\_\_\_\_ of the financial cutbacks.
- He was awarded the medal \_\_\_\_\_. ~ Yes, his widow accepted it on his behalf.
- I eat loads of vegetables. ~ That's a \_\_\_\_\_-truth. They're all on your pizzas!
- What's the latest news? ~ The rebels have \_\_\_\_\_ a ceasefire.
- Did you understand what she said? ~ No, I was a bit \_\_\_\_\_, actually.
- I'm good enough to win. ~ You're just \_\_\_\_\_ yourself; you won't.
- Was it true what he said? ~ No, he \_\_\_\_\_ the facts. I was very angry.

### 5 ABOUT YOU Look at the quotes again. Do you agree with them? Write your answers, or discuss with another student.





## 54 I can discuss problems and solutions

### A Problems in general

Word	Example	Meaning
<b>minor</b>	The design is a <b>minor</b> problem.	not important. OPP <b>major</b> .
<b>growing</b>	Obesity is a <b>growing</b> problem.	increasing in size, amount, or degree.
<b>urgent</b>	Lack of funds is an <b>urgent</b> issue.	requiring immediate action.
<b>perennial</b>	Noise is a <b>perennial</b> problem.	always existing and not seeming to change.
<b>insoluble</b>	The problem seems <b>insoluble</b> .	unable to be solved. SYN <b>insurmountable</b> FML.
<b>arise</b>	Various problems have <b>arisen</b> .	start to exist. SYN <b>occur</b> / <b>come up</b> .
<b>raise sth</b>	I <b>raised</b> the problem of staffing.	mention sth for people to discuss.
<b>confront sb</b>	There are a number of problems <b>confronting</b> the head teacher.	If problems <b>confront sb</b> , they appear and have to be dealt with by sb. SYN <b>face sb</b> .
<b>confront sth</b>	She's had to <b>confront</b> the fact that she can no longer walk.	deal with a problem or difficult situation. SYN <b>face up to sth</b> .
<b>address sth</b>	We've got to <b>address</b> the lack of experience in the team.	think about a difficult situation and decide how to deal with it.
<b>get to grips with sth</b>	I'm just beginning to <b>get to grips with</b> my new job.	begin to understand and deal with sth difficult.
<b>tackle sth</b>	They must <b>tackle</b> inflation.	make a big effort to deal with a problem.
<b>overcome sth</b>	The company had to <b>overcome</b> a number of financial difficulties.	succeed in dealing with a problem that has been preventing you from achieving sth.
<b>exacerbate sth</b> FML	We must be careful not to <b>exacerbate</b> the problem.	make an existing problem worse. SYN <b>aggravate sth</b> .

#### 1 Replace the underlined word with a synonym.

- The problem is increasing.
- She's had to confront her fear.
- When did the problem occur?
- Drugs can aggravate the problem.
- It is an insurmountable problem.
- The problem facing us is huge.

#### 2 Complete the gaps in the dialogues with one word.

- Have they aggravated the problem? ~ Yes, they've made it \_\_\_\_\_.
- Is it an \_\_\_\_\_ problem? ~ No, we can deal with it later.
- Have they discussed finance? ~ Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ it at the last meeting.
- Has she \_\_\_\_\_ her shyness? ~ Yes, and the difference is amazing.
- Have they solved the problem? ~ No, but they've begun to get to \_\_\_\_\_ with it.
- It's a \_\_\_\_\_ problem, isn't it? ~ Yes, it never seems to go away.
- Are they \_\_\_\_\_ the problem? ~ Yes, I think they're making a real effort.
- Is it a major problem? ~ No, it's just a \_\_\_\_\_ matter really.

#### 3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Are these things problems in your country? If so, which adjectives above might describe the problem, and what is being done about them?

litter on the streets   graffiti on walls   increasing household waste  
pollution in town centres   parking in town centres   vandalism   bullying in schools



## B Teenage problems and solutions

### How parents can deal with teenage problems

- 1 Teenagers are never satisfied with their appearance and this can **dent** their **self-esteem**. Don't **make light of** these worries even if they seem **trivial** to you. Explain that others don't notice the details that we notice in ourselves.
- 2 Some teenagers **take** failure **in their stride**, while others let it **get them down**. Help your teen to **keep things in perspective**. Explain that everyone has **setbacks** in life, and **reassure** them that you're **behind** them 100 per cent, **regardless of** what happens.
- 3 Some teenagers – boys especially – find it difficult to identify and **articulate** how they feel. Keep **channels of communication** open at all times and respect their ideas.

### Glossary

<b>dent</b> (sb's confidence, reputation, etc.)	damage sb's confidence, etc.	<b>keep sth in perspective</b>	not allow a problem to have too much importance.
<b>self-esteem</b>	the way you feel about yourself ( <b>high/low self-esteem</b> ).	<b>setback</b>	a problem that delays or prevents progress.
<b>make light of sth</b>	treat sth as unimportant. <b>OPP take sth seriously.</b>	<b>reassure sb</b>	say or do sth that makes sb less worried. <b>SYN set sb's mind at rest.</b>
<b>trivial</b>	not important or serious.	<b>be behind sb/sth regardless of sth</b>	give your support to sb/sth, without being affected or influenced by sth.
<b>take sth in your stride</b>	accept and deal with a difficult situation without letting it worry you.	<b>articulate sth</b>	<b>FM</b> express your thoughts clearly in words. <b>articulate</b> <b>ADJ</b> , a system or method for sending or obtaining information.
<b>get sb down</b>	If sth <b>gets you down</b> it makes you feel sad or depressed.	<b>channel of communication</b>	

#### 4 Complete the gaps in the sentences with a single word.

- 1 His poor exam results have not been good for his self-\_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 It's upsetting, but she mustn't let it \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 She expresses herself very well; she's always been extremely \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 His mother will support him \_\_\_\_\_ of what he does, because she loves him.
- 5 Bullying is not a \_\_\_\_\_ issue; it's a very serious problem.
- 6 Parents must ensure there is an open \_\_\_\_\_ of communication with their kids.

#### 5 Complete the conversation with a suitable word or words.

- A Carrie's teacher told her that she isn't good enough to become a doctor, and it has (1) \_\_\_\_\_ her confidence.
- B I'll bet it has. And Carrie's not good at taking these things in (2) \_\_\_\_\_, is she?
- A No. And when you're her age, it's difficult to keep things in (3) \_\_\_\_\_.
- B Yeah. But I'm sure her mother has tried to set her mind (4) \_\_\_\_\_.
- A Oh yes, she's been right (5) \_\_\_\_\_ her, and has (6) \_\_\_\_\_ her that everything is OK. She's also tried to make (7) \_\_\_\_\_ of the teacher's remarks by suggesting that he didn't mean it.
- B Yes, but even so, it must be a real (8) \_\_\_\_\_ for her. I hope she gets over it quickly.

#### 6 ABOUT YOU Have you experienced any of the teenage problems above, either as a teenager yourself or as a parent? What other problems do teenagers often have, and how should parents respond? Write your answers or talk to another student.





## 55 I can describe old and new

### A An old house

... we saw this amazing, **dilapidated** house, **formerly** owned by a wealthy family but then **abandoned** at the end of the century. Some features like the oak staircase are very well **preserved**, but most of it is pretty **run-down** and has **fallen into decay**. It could be a lot of fun **renovating** it, though. It has old **stables**, which I'd like to convert into an **ultra-modern** kitchen. There are also the **ruins** of a **medieval tower**! I'd love to **trace** the history of the place ...



#### Glossary

<b>dilapidated</b>	(of a building) old and in very bad condition. <b>SYNS</b> run-down, ramshackle.
<b>formerly</b>	in earlier times. <b>SYN</b> previously.
<b>abandon sth</b>	leave a place, vehicle, etc. empty without planning to return.
<b>preserve sth</b>	keep sth in its original state or in good condition. <b>preservation</b> <i>N</i> .
<b>fall into decay/</b> <b>disrepair</b>	gradually be destroyed through lack of care.
<b>renovate sth</b>	repair and decorate an old building, car, etc. <b>SYN</b> do sth up <i>INF</i> .
<b>stables</b>	buildings in which horses are kept.
<b>ultra-(modern)</b>	extremely (modern) (also <b>ultra-cautious</b> ).
<b>ruins</b>	parts of a building that remain after it has been destroyed. ( <b>Remains</b> are parts of objects and buildings that have been discovered recently. <b>Human/animal remains</b> are bones or dead bodies.)
<b>medieval</b>	connected with <b>the Middle Ages</b> (= about 1000 to 1450).
<b>trace sth (back) (to sth)</b>	find the origin or cause of sth.

#### 1 Cross out the word that is wrong in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

- The company deals in extra-modern, contemporary furniture. \_\_\_\_\_
- The weather has meant that the building is in a poor state of destruction. \_\_\_\_\_
- They discovered the ruins of a dead sheep at the end of the field. \_\_\_\_\_
- She keeps the horses in the estables at night. \_\_\_\_\_
- The war left the whole area on ruins, with countless run-down buildings. \_\_\_\_\_
- Mumbai, formally known as Bombay, has a population of 15 million. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 Complete the dialogues. More than one word may be correct.

- The building used to be a prison, didn't it? ~ No, it was \_\_\_\_\_ a hospital.
- Are you going to do the place \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Yes, we plan \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- It's in a bad state, isn't it? ~ Yes, it's very \_\_\_\_\_.
- It fell into \_\_\_\_\_ years ago. ~ Yes, it was \_\_\_\_\_ by the owner.
- We can restore it to its original condition. ~ Yes, we should \_\_\_\_\_ old buildings.
- It dates from the \_\_\_\_\_ Ages, I believe. ~ That's right, it's \_\_\_\_\_.
- Why is he using the internet so much? ~ He wants to \_\_\_\_\_ his family history.
- That style's very fashionable just now. ~ Yes, it's \_\_\_\_\_ modern.



## B Old and new objects



**Brand new** Sasko G5000 mobile phone – **cutting-edge** technology at its very best.



**Genuine antique** grandfather clock. The 8-day mechanism is in **mint condition**.



**Innovative** anti-snore **device** – clips on to sleeper's nose for a good night's sleep.



**Reproduction ancient** Egyptian statue of the goddess Bastet.



**Up-to-date** guidebook to Korea – **second-hand** but **good as new**.



**Fully reconditioned** exercise bike with original **packaging** and instructions.

### Glossary

<b>brand new</b>	completely new.	<b>genuine</b>	exactly what it appears to be; real. SYN <b>authentic</b> .
<b>cutting-edge</b> (technology)	the most advanced (technology) in the field.	<b>antique</b>	old, and often very valuable. <b>antique</b> N.
<b>innovative</b>	featuring or introducing new ideas, methods, etc.	<b>in mint condition</b>	new or as good as new. SYN <b>in perfect condition</b> .
<b>device</b>	an object or piece of equipment designed to do a particular job.	<b>reproduction</b>	a thing made as a copy of an earlier object or style. <b>reproduce</b> sth v.
<b>up to date</b>	modern ( <b>out of date</b> = old-fashioned, or without the most recent information and therefore no longer useful).	<b>ancient</b>	belonging to a period of history from thousands of years ago.
<b>second-hand</b> (as) <b>good as new</b>	not new; owned by sb else before. in very good condition (also <b>like new</b> ADV).	<b>reconditioned</b>	(of a machine) repaired so that it is in good condition.
		<b>packaging</b>	materials used to wrap and protect goods sold in shops.

### 3 Complete the phrases.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ of date      3 \_\_\_\_\_ as new      5 brand \_\_\_\_\_  
2 in \_\_\_\_\_ condition      4 cutting \_\_\_\_\_      6 second-\_\_\_\_\_

### 4 Complete the sentences.

- A battery charger is an extremely useful energy-saving \_\_\_\_\_.
- It's a beautifully made, 18<sup>th</sup>-century \_\_\_\_\_ clock. At least, I hope it's genuine!
- There were earrings like it thousands of years ago in \_\_\_\_\_ Greece, and now they make \_\_\_\_\_ of them and sell them in tourist shops.
- We bought a second-hand lawnmower – it was fully \_\_\_\_\_, and it was fantastic value.
- I don't want a copy of the clock: I want a \_\_\_\_\_ antique.
- Shops often sell more goods if they're displayed in attractive \_\_\_\_\_.
- Our small factory \_\_\_\_\_ antique clocks and we sell them on the internet.
- They want something really \_\_\_\_\_ to date, and they're awarding a prize for the most \_\_\_\_\_ design.



## 56 I can talk about success and failure

### A Success

- JANE Maximo, your pizza chain's been a **resounding** success. How did things **turn out** so well for you? What's **the secret of your success**?
- MAXIMO Well, I had a **stroke of luck** early on. I hired a talented young chef who was really keen to **fulfil his potential**, and basically he **never put a foot wrong**. We had to work together to **overcome** all the **obstacles in our way** – we nearly **came unstuck** when the first restaurant was flooded – but eventually we **made it**.
- JANE You **made a big breakthrough** after you were on that TV show, didn't you?
- MAXIMO Yes, we **went from strength to strength** after that. Still, you can never relax ...

### Glossary

<b>resounding</b>	very great (a <b>resounding</b> success/defeat/win/victory).	<b>overcome sth</b>	succeed in controlling or dealing with a problem.
<b>turn out (well/badly)</b>	happen in a particular way, often unexpectedly.	<b>obstacle</b>	a situation or event that makes it hard for you to achieve sth.
<b>the secret of (your) success</b>	a way of doing things that has brought success.	<b>in sb's/the way</b>	stopping sb from doing sth.
<b>a stroke of sth</b>	an unexpected but important event (a <b>stroke of luck</b> ).	<b>come unstuck</b>	INF fail completely.
<b>potential</b>	qualities that exist and can be developed ( <b>fulfil/realize your potential</b> = use your natural abilities to achieve what you hoped to achieve).	<b>make it</b>	succeed in achieving a goal; become successful.
<b>not put a foot wrong</b>	not make a single mistake.	<b>breakthrough</b>	an important development that may lead to an achievement or agreement ( <b>make/achieve a breakthrough</b> ).
		<b>go from strength to strength</b>	become more and more successful.

### 1 Make six phrases using words from the box.

a resounding    come    the secret    turn out    a stroke    fulfil  
of luck    unstuck    of your success    your potential    victory    badly

### 2 Good or bad? Write G or B.

- We went from strength to strength. \_\_\_\_\_
- There were obstacles in our way. \_\_\_\_\_
- They came unstuck. \_\_\_\_\_
- She never put a foot wrong. \_\_\_\_\_
- They had a breakthrough. \_\_\_\_\_
- They overcame the obstacles. \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Complete the sentences.

- He's very successful, but he's had to \_\_\_\_\_ various personal problems during his life.
- I passed my exam. However, I think it was a \_\_\_\_\_ of luck.
- The company struggled at first; now they're going from strength \_\_\_\_\_.
- You must ask him for the \_\_\_\_\_ of his success.
- There's a long way to go, but things have \_\_\_\_\_ out well so far.
- The film industry is a tough business, but I believe she has the \_\_\_\_\_ to go on and make it.



## B Failure

- A Did Don **make a go of** the business?  
 B No, he was **way out of his depth**.  
 A It's a **tricky** situation to deal with.  
 B Yes, Sue's really **up against it**.  
 A I'm afraid the marriage is **going downhill**.  
 B And it started so well. That's sad.  
 A So Carla **came bottom** in the exams.  
 B Yeah, and I only just **scraped through**.  
 Mum thinks we've **let her down**.  
 A That boxer **is past it**, surely.  
 B Yeah, but he still wants to **make a comeback**.  
 A I hear the film was a **flop**.  
 B Afraid so – an **unmitigated** disaster.

### spotlight **way**

**Way** can be used informally to mean 'by a large amount' or 'very far'.

*It cost **way** over \$1,000.* = a lot more than \$1,000  
*The others were **way** ahead of me.* = a long way ahead of me

### Glossary

<b>make a go of sth</b>	INF make sth succeed, especially a business or marriage.
<b>out of your depth</b>	unable to do or understand sth because it is too hard.
<b>tricky</b>	difficult to do or deal with (a <b>tricky situation/question/problem</b> ).
<b>up against it</b>	INF facing difficult problems or opposition.
<b>go downhill</b>	get worse in quality, health, etc. SYN <b>deteriorate</b> .
<b>come bottom</b>	receive the lowest score in an exam. OPP <b>come top</b> .
<b>scrape through (an exam)</b>	only just succeed in passing an exam.
<b>let sb down</b>	make sb disappointed because you haven't behaved well or done what you said you would do.
<b>be past it</b>	INF be too old to do what you used to be able to do.
<b>comeback</b>	If a person in public life <b>makes a comeback</b> , they start doing sth again which they had stopped doing.
<b>flop</b>	INF a film, play, book, party, etc. that is not successful. <b>flop</b> V, INF.
<b>unmitigated</b>	complete (used to describe sth bad). SYN <b>absolute</b> .

#### 4 Tick the words or phrases which are informal.

- |                                  |                                   |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 Did she make a go of it? _____ | 4 He let me down. _____           |
| 2 The play was a flop. _____     | 5 I'm really up against it. _____ |
| 3 She's past it. _____           | 6 That's way too expensive. _____ |

#### 5 Circle the correct word(s). Sometimes both words are correct.

- Embarrassingly, I **got / came** bottom in the end-of-year progress tests.
- He's determined to stay and **make / have** a go of his marriage.
- The team started well but they've **deteriorated / gone downhill** recently.
- He's **away / way** too old to be driving.
- She wants to **do / make** a political comeback at the next election.
- The show was an **unmitigated / absolute** disaster; I didn't know what to do with myself.

#### 6 One word is missing in each speaker's utterance. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 I don't like to tell him he's past. _____ | ~ Hmm, it's a situation. I don't envy you. _____ |
| 2 Any chance he'll make comeback? _____     | ~ No, his last film badly. _____                 |
| 3 Did she top in the public vote? _____     | ~ Yes, but she was against it. _____             |
| 4 He himself down in the exam. _____        | ~ Yes, he only just through. _____               |
| 5 Her interview was an unmitigated. _____   | ~ Yes, she was way of her depth. _____           |





# 57 I can describe the past, present, and future

## A Thinking about time

- **Time flies** when you get older.
- I get depressed **from time to time**.
- I will go to university **in due course**.
- **It's about time** I started a pension.
- **At one time** I wanted to be a journalist.
- I do everything **at the last minute**.
- **In retrospect**, I wish I'd gone to university.
- **For the time being** I'm happy where I am.
- My parents are a bit **behind the times**.
- I've become more tolerant **over time**.
- Elvis Presley was a bit **before my time**.
- **With hindsight** I should've worked harder.

### Glossary

<b>time flies</b>	time seems to pass very quickly.	<b>in retrospect</b>	thinking now about the past, often with a different view from the one you had then.
<b>from time to time</b>	sometimes but not regularly. SYN <b>now and again</b> .		SYN <b>looking back</b> .
<b>in due course</b>	at the right time and not before.	<b>for the time being</b>	for a short period of time but not permanently.
<b>it's about time</b>	used to say that sth should happen soon or should have happened already (notice the past tense). SYN <b>it's high time</b> .	<b>behind the times</b>	old-fashioned in ideas, ways, etc. gradually.
<b>at one time</b>	in the past but not now.	<b>over time</b>	
<b>do sth at the last minute</b>	do sth at the latest possible time before sth else happens. SYN <b>leave sth to/till the last minute</b> .	<b>before your time</b>	before you were born or before you can remember.
		<b>with hindsight</b>	with the ability to understand a situation only after it has happened ( <b>with the benefit of hindsight</b> ).

### 1 Find nine time phrases in the box.

at the last over in with behind at retrospect from time for the time  
in due the times minute one time course hindsight time being to time

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 In \_\_\_\_\_, I don't think I made the most of my time at university.
- 2 With the benefit of \_\_\_\_\_ it was probably a mistake for me to leave my last job.
- 3 The trouble with Angel is that he \_\_\_\_\_ everything to the last \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Listen, it's \_\_\_\_\_ time you started taking these exams seriously.
- 5 My mum used to love punk music, but it's a bit \_\_\_\_\_ my \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 The time has \_\_\_\_\_ since I've been in Greece. I've loved every minute of it.
- 7 The university says they'll give us the date of the exams in due \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ one time I wanted to be a professional footballer. I think I'm a bit old for that now.
- 9 Your English won't improve immediately; it happens \_\_\_\_\_ time.
- 10 This dictionary will be fine \_\_\_\_\_ the time \_\_\_\_\_.

### 3 ABOUT YOU Read the statements at the top again. Are they true for you? If not, write answers that are true for you using the phrases in bold, or talk to another student.



## B Time words which are similar in meaning

Word	Example	Meaning
<b>during</b> <b>throughout</b>	<i>It rained <b>during</b> the day.</i> <i>It rained <b>throughout</b> the day.</i>	at a point within a period of time. continuously within a period of time.
<b>age</b> <b>era</b>	<i>We're living in the nuclear <b>age</b>.</i> <i>When Mandela was released, it was the beginning of a <b>new era</b>.</i>	a particular period of history. a period of time with a particular quality or character.
<b>extend sth</b> <b>prolong sth</b>	<i>They're going to <b>extend</b> my visa.</i> <i>The drugs will <b>prolong</b> her life.</i>	increase the length of time of sth. make sth last longer. OPP <b>curtail</b> FML.
<b>interval</b>  <b>gap</b> <b>break</b>	<i>Buses run at regular <b>intervals</b>.</i> <i>There's a fifteen-minute <b>interval</b>.</i> <i>We met again after a ten-year <b>gap</b>.</i> <i>I get a <b>coffee break</b> and <b>lunch break</b> at work.</i>	a period of time between two events or two parts of sth, e.g. a play. a period of time when sth stops. a short period of time when you stop what you are doing and rest.
<b>spell</b> <b>stage</b> <b>phase</b>	<i>I did a <b>spell of</b> work there.</i> <i>I stopped for water at one <b>stage</b>.</i> <i>It's just a <b>phase</b> that most teenagers go through.</i> <i>It's an early <b>stage/phase</b> of the project.</i>	a short period of time or of a particular activity. a period that forms part of an activity. a difficult period of time that sb/sth passes through ( <b>stage</b> is also possible). a period of time that forms part of a process or the development of sth.
<b>pass</b> <b>elapse</b> <b>go by</b>	<i>Two years <b>passed</b> / <b>elapsed</b> / <b>went by</b> before I saw her again.</i> <i>Time <b>passed</b> / <b>went by</b> slowly.</i>	all the verbs describe the process of time; <b>elapse</b> is FML; <b>pass</b> and <b>go by</b> are often used with an adverb to describe how time happens.
<b>soon</b> or <b>shortly</b>	<i>He <b>soon</b> realized it was a mistake.</i> <i>I'll be with you <b>soon/shortly</b>.</i> <i>I left <b>soon/shortly</b> after Dina.</i> <i>He left <b>shortly</b> before midnight.</i>	quickly (after sth happens). in a short period of time from now. a short period after sb/sth. a short period before sb/sth.

### 4 Circle the correct word(s). Both words may be correct.

- There's bound to be a gap / an interval during the concert.
- We're off soon / shortly but I'll give you a ring tomorrow.
- Several days went by / elapsed before the solicitor rang me again.
- She had a short spell / stage working for an oil company.
- I woke up twice during / throughout the night.
- She's reached a critical stage / phase in her career.
- The late 70s was the height of the 'punk music' age / era.
- I'm afraid we will have to curtail / prolong the meeting until 9.00.

### 5 Complete the text with suitable time words.

I went to university in 1995, and I worked incredibly hard (1) \_\_\_\_\_ the time I was there. I decided I needed a (2) \_\_\_\_\_ after that, so I travelled round Europe, spending nine months in France. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ the time I was there, I had a short (4) \_\_\_\_\_ of work teaching English. It was the most interesting (5) \_\_\_\_\_ of my life. When I came back, I decided that as we were living in the computer (6) \_\_\_\_\_, I'd get a job in IT. It was a terrible mistake. I (7) \_\_\_\_\_ realized I didn't want to sit at a computer all day, and although the company offered to (8) \_\_\_\_\_ my contract, I decided to quit. So, after a three-year (9) \_\_\_\_\_, I retrained as a teacher, and came to work in Finland. Almost five years have (10) \_\_\_\_\_ since I made that decision.





# Review: Concepts

## Unit 52

### 1 Circle the correct word.

- 1 An **outcome** is a cause / result of something.
- 2 You can **dent** a car / book.
- 3 **Coerce** means force / encourage someone.
- 4 **Repercussions** are usually good / bad.
- 5 You **provoke** a person / an object.
- 6 You can **generate** an income / a loss.
- 7 A **motive** is a design / reason.
- 8 A **detrimental** effect is positive / negative.

**A Z** more words: *pressurize sb, lie behind sth, after-effect, domino effect, the upshot, incite, induce*

## Unit 53

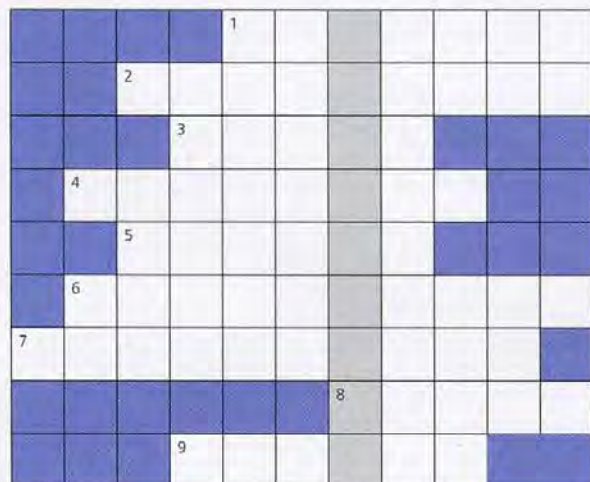
### 1 Make words from the jumbled letters. Use the definitions to help you.

- H A F O L O D E S a formal word for a lie. falsehood
- 1 M A H I T E D U L I feeling ashamed because you have lost the respect of others. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 H E N O P Y a person who is not honest or sincere. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 O G I T E R I N T R A O N the process of asking somebody a lot of difficult questions. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 M O N Y A O Y N U S L A in such a way that the speaker or writer's name is kept secret. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 B E S H E L M I L make a story more interesting by adding false details. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 V A D R Y R E S A a formal word for an enemy or opponent. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7 P A U N A L A T E L B unpleasant and hard to accept. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 8 M E Y A N L used to introduce more exact information about a subject. \_\_\_\_\_

**A Z** more words: a **pack** of lies, a **tall story**, **lie** through your teeth, **true** to your word, too good to be **true**, nothing could be further from the **truth**

## Unit 54

### 2 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out another word. What is it?



- 1 not serious or important
- 2 always existing and never seeming to change
- 3 occur, come up
- 4 deal with a problem or difficult situation
- 5 make a big effort to deal with a problem
- 6 able to express your thoughts clearly in words
- 7 make things worse
- 8 make \_\_\_\_\_ of something = treat something as unimportant
- 9 requiring immediate attention

**A Z** more words: *predicament, dilemma, in a quandary, be at your wits' end, teething troubles, grapple*

## Unit 55

### 1 Is the meaning of the words in italics the same or different? Write S or D.

- 1 The painting is *genuine* / *authentic*. ...
- 2 It's a *brand new* / *an innovative* car. ...
- 3 They want to *preserve it* / *do it up*. ...
- 4 The building is quite *dilapidated* / *ramshackle*. ...
- 5 I collect *ancient* / *antique* clocks. ...
- 6 These shoes are *completely* / *brand new*. ...
- 7 Beijing was *previously* / *formerly* called Peking. ...
- 8 They want to *abandon* / *preserve* the place. ...

**A** Z more words: an **old** hand, a **newcomer**, **newfangled**, new **blood**, be on its/your **last** legs, **archaic**

## Unit 56

### 1 Complete the words in the text.

At 17, Rob Greig was a very successful amateur golfer. Everyone said he had the (1) p\_\_\_\_\_ to go on and (2) m\_\_\_\_\_ it in the professional game, so after a (3) r\_\_\_\_\_ success in the British Open last year, and just three days after his 18th birthday, Rob turned professional. He soon realized how different the professional game was. 'There were experienced players out there ten years older than me, so I knew I was up (4) a\_\_\_\_\_ it,' said Rob. 'At first it was obvious I was (5) w\_\_\_\_\_ out of my (6) d\_\_\_\_\_ and I felt that I was (7) l\_\_\_\_\_ myself down.' But Rob was determined not to let any (8) o\_\_\_\_\_ get in his (9) w\_\_\_\_\_. He kept working at his game to (10) o\_\_\_\_\_ the weaknesses, and his big (11) b\_\_\_\_\_ came last year in the Italian Open. He didn't put a foot (12) w\_\_\_\_\_ in the four rounds and won by three clear shots. Since then he has gone from strength to (13) s\_\_\_\_\_, and is now really starting to (14) f\_\_\_\_\_ his enormous potential.

**A** Z more words: an **overnight** success, an **out-and-out** failure/success, **pull** sth off, **attain** sth, **backfire**, **pinnacle**

## Unit 57

### 1 Complete the sentences in a suitable way.

- 1 I got to the station just as the train was leaving! In retrospect, I \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Jack knows it's a major operation, but it could prolong \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 We left the cinema shortly \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 The children are 5, 12, and 17, so they're at different stages \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 He promised he would come and fix the tap, and in due course \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 I work weekdays mostly, but from time to time \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 The ceremony was very long and we \_\_\_\_\_ throughout it.
- 8 He was released from prison after two years, and with hindsight \_\_\_\_\_.

**A** Z more words: have **time** to kill, **third** time lucky, be (living) on **borrowed** time, **once** upon a time, **nine times** out of ten



## 58 I can use everyday language

### A An informal conversation

- DAN I thought the **do** at Coleen's would be a **good laugh**, but actually it was a **bit of a drag**.
- TIM Yeah, **lousy** I thought. And asking people to pay twenty **quid** was a bit of a **rip-off**. There wasn't much to eat either, but then Coleen is a bit **tight-fisted**, isn't she?
- DAN She can be. And who was that **vile bloke** in the black leather jacket? He was awful.
- TIM Yeah, he was a **pain**, wasn't he? He spent ages **moaning** about his flatmate, and then when I got up and went to the **loo**, he **pinched** my drink.
- DAN **What a nerve!**

#### Glossary (all these items are informal)

<b>do</b>	a friendly informal meeting or party. SYN <b>get-together</b> .	<b>vile</b>	very bad or unpleasant (a <b>vile smell</b> ). SYN <b>disgusting</b> .
<b>a (good) laugh</b>	an enjoyable experience.	<b>bloke</b>	a man. SYN <b>guy</b> .
<b>a (bit of a) drag</b>	a boring or annoying occasion or situation.	<b>a (real) pain</b>	an annoying person or situation. SYN <b>a pain in the neck</b> .
<b>lousy</b>	bad, unpleasant, or of poor quality (a <b>lousy film</b> , <b>lousy weather</b> ).	<b>moan (about sth)</b>	complain (about sth) in a way that annoys people.
<b>quid</b>	a pound (£) in money (PL <b>quid</b> NOT <b>quids</b> ).	<b>loo</b>	a toilet.
<b>rip-off</b>	a thing that is not worth what you pay for it. <b>rip sb off</b> v.	<b>pinch sth</b>	steal sth. SYN <b>nick sth</b> .
<b>tight-fisted</b>	not generous with money. SYNS <b>tight</b> , <b>stingy</b> .	<b>What a nerve!</b>	used to say you think sb's behaviour is rude or inappropriate. SYN <b>What a cheek!</b>

#### 1 Replace the underlined word(s) with an informal equivalent.

- It was a man in the street. \_\_\_\_\_
- Who stole your pen? \_\_\_\_\_
- He's always complaining. \_\_\_\_\_
- What a horrible smell. \_\_\_\_\_
- He is so mean. \_\_\_\_\_
- It was ten pounds. \_\_\_\_\_
- The film was terrible. \_\_\_\_\_
- He's gone to the toilet. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 Complete the dialogues with a single word.

- Is he very annoying? ~ Yes, he's a real \_\_\_\_\_.
- Was the party enjoyable? ~ Yes, it was a good \_\_\_\_\_.
- Did the company overcharge you? ~ Yeah, it was a \_\_\_\_\_.
- Was the trip boring? ~ Yes, it was a bit of a \_\_\_\_\_.
- What a \_\_\_\_\_! ~ Yeah, it was incredibly rude, wasn't it?
- Are they having a do at the office? ~ Yeah, just an informal \_\_\_\_\_.



## B Common informal words in spoken English

Word	Example	Meaning
<b>darling/love</b>	<i><b>Darling</b>, have we got any eggs? What would you like, <b>love</b>?</i>	used to address sb you love, and by some people in shops as a friendly way of addressing customers, particularly women.
<b>broke</b>	<i>I'm completely <b>broke</b>.</i>	not having any money.
<b>starving</b>	<i>What's for lunch? I'm <b>starving</b>.</i>	very hungry. <b>SYN dying for sth to eat.</b>
<b>kip</b>	<i>I might have a <b>kip</b> after lunch.</i>	a short sleep.
<b>posh</b>	<i>They stayed in a very <b>posh</b> hotel.</i>	elegant and expensive.
<b>nosy</b> (also <b>nosey</b> )	<i>I'm careful what I say to Cath; she's very <b>nosy</b>.</i>	DISAPPROVING interested in things that don't concern you.
<b>bug</b>	<i>She picked up a <b>bug</b> on holiday.</i>	an infectious illness.
<b>be into sth</b>	<i>They're both <b>into</b> extreme sports.</i>	be very interested in sth as a hobby.
<b>hammer sb</b>	<i>Our team got absolutely <b>hammered</b> yesterday. We lost 5-1.</i>	defeat sb very heavily (often used when talking about sport). <b>SYN thrash sb.</b>
<b>con sb</b>	<i>I think that builder <b>conned</b> us.</i>	deceive and trick sb, especially in order to get money from them.
<b>flak</b>	<i>He's taken a lot of <b>flak</b> over this issue.</i>	criticism. <b>SYN stick.</b>
<b>daft</b>	<i>It was rather a <b>daft</b> thing to say.</i>	silly (sometimes in an amusing way).
<b>ta</b>	<i>Here's your change. ~ <b>Ta</b>.</i>	thanks. <b>SYN cheers.</b>
<b>dodgy</b>	<i>His idea sounds a bit <b>dodgy</b>.</i>	causing suspicion; possibly dishonest.
<b>laid-back</b>	<i>He's very <b>laid-back</b>.</i>	calm and relaxed. <b>SYN easy-going.</b>
<b>racket</b>	<i>What a terrible <b>racket</b>!</i>	a large amount of noise. <b>SYN din.</b>

**3** Write one word to describe the topic of conversation in each sentence.

- 1 He's got a bug. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 What a racket next door! \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I need a kip. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 She's broke at the moment. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I'm starving. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Will he get much stick for this? \_\_\_\_\_

**4** Replace one informal word with an equivalent informal word or phrase.

- 1 Here's your coffee. ~ Cheers. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 What's that din? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I got a lot of stick for what I did. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 When's dinner? I'm starving. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Do you need the car, love? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 We were thrashed yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_

**5** Complete the dialogues with a suitable informal word.

- 1 Do you want to go out this evening? ~ I can't afford to – I'm \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 What a stupid comment. ~ Yes, it was a bit \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Is he fairly easy-going? ~ Oh yes, very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 This is none of her business. ~ Well, tell her not to be so \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Are you still feeling tired? ~ Yes, I think I'll go and have a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Did he really need money for the bus? ~ No, I think he \_\_\_\_\_ us.
- 7 He's a rather suspicious-looking bloke. ~ Yes, he looks a bit \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 I didn't know she was ill. ~ Yes, she picked up a \_\_\_\_\_ in Crete.
- 9 Do they go to the beach a lot? ~ Yes, they're both \_\_\_\_\_ surfing.
- 10 Their house looks very expensive. ~ Yes, it's a very \_\_\_\_\_ place.





## 59 I can use idioms and set phrases (1)

### A Discussing problems

- A I'm having a hard time with this German course. New words seem to **go in one ear and out the other**. And when I want to say something, **my mind goes a complete blank**.
- B Well, it takes time to learn a language, but you'll **get there** in the end.
- A Yeah, **it's no good** moaning about it. Maybe I **could do with** some extra lessons.
- B That's a possibility. Do you **have anyone in mind**?
- A Not **off the top of my head**, no.
- B Well, **your best bet is to** talk to your teacher. She may know someone who could do it.

#### Glossary

**go in one ear and out (of) the other**  
**my mind goes (a complete) blank**  
**get there**

If sth goes **in one ear and out of the other**, you forget it very quickly.  
 = suddenly I cannot remember sth.

be successful (**get somewhere** = make progress; **get nowhere** = make no progress).

**it's no good + -ing**

used to say that it is not useful doing sth. SYN **there's no point in + -ing**, **it's no use + -ing**.

**I (you/he, etc.) could do with sth**

I (/you/he, etc.) need sth.

**have sb/sth in mind**

be thinking of sb/sth for a particular purpose.

**off the top of my head**

without thinking about sth carefully.

**your best bet (is to ...)**

used when advising sb what to do. SYN **the best thing (to do is ...)**.

#### spotlight **idioms and set phrases**

An **idiom** is a group of words whose overall meaning is different from the meanings of the individual words, e.g. **under the weather** (= slightly ill). Idioms are commonly used in informal English.

A **set phrase** is a group of words which function as a complete unit, e.g. **sorry to keep you waiting**. The meaning may be easy to understand, but the same idea might be expressed differently in your own language.

#### 1 One word is missing. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 It's no worrying about it. _____        | 4 Marty could with some help. _____         |
| 2 That's just off the of my head. _____   | 5 My went a complete blank. _____           |
| 3 It goes in one and out the other. _____ | 6 I think he's feeling under weather. _____ |

#### 2 Complete the idiom or set phrase in each dialogue.

- We need someone for the extra work. ~ True. Do you have anyone in \_\_\_\_\_?
- What shall I do? ~ Off the top of my \_\_\_\_\_, I'm not sure.
- Did she ask you a question? ~ Yes, my mind went a complete \_\_\_\_\_.
- What shall we do? ~ Your best \_\_\_\_\_ is to ring the station.
- They're making very slow progress. ~ Yes, but they'll get \_\_\_\_\_ eventually.
- Has Marc gone to bed? ~ Yes, he was feeling a bit under the \_\_\_\_\_.
- Didn't we say we'd meet at 4 o'clock? ~ Yes. I'm sorry to \_\_\_\_\_.
- Can you remember the instructions? ~ No. They went in one ear \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 3 ABOUT YOUR LANGUAGE How would you translate these idioms and set phrases into your own language? Write a translation, or talk to someone who speaks your language.





## B Idiomatic responses

Idiom or set phrase	Meaning
A Bob's coming, isn't he? B <b>Don't hold your breath.</b>	used to say you don't expect sth to happen even though sb said it would.
A Are they sure to win the election? B Yeah. It's <b>a foregone conclusion.</b>	used to say that sth is a result that is certain to happen.
A Are you going to the party? B <b>You bet.</b>	used to emphasize that you are keen to do sth.
A It's very cold today. B <b>You can say that again.</b>	used to agree completely with what sb has just said.
A Have you got Saturday off? B <b>No such luck.</b> I'm afraid.	used to express your disappointment that sth is not going to happen.
A Sal said she's too busy to help us. B <b>A likely story.</b>	used ironically to say you don't believe what sb has told you.
A Where's Patsy? B <b>I haven't the faintest idea.</b>	used to say you don't know sth. <b>SYNS Don't ask me. Your guess is as good as mine.</b>
A You look very stressed. B Yes, <b>it's been one of those days.</b>	used to say you have had a hard day.
A Shall I apply for that job? B <b>You've got nothing to lose.</b>	used to say there is no reason for sb not to do sth.
A Rani's going out with a film star. B <b>You're kidding.</b>	used to say that you think sth cannot be true and must be a joke. <b>SYNS You're joking. You can't be serious.</b>
A I hurt my toe, then I burnt my hand. B Oh dear. <b>It's not your day,</b> is it?	used when several unpleasant or unfortunate things happen on the same day.
A Can we go in if we're not members? B <b>No way.</b>	used to say that sth is not at all possible or not allowed. <b>SYN no chance.</b>

### 4 Circle the correct word/phrase.

- A likely story** is one that you think is probably true / false.
- If you reply **Don't ask me**, it means you don't know the answer / don't want to answer.
- If you say **You're kidding**, you think the other person is being / not being serious.
- No way** means it's not practical / possible.
- I haven't the faintest idea** means I don't care / I don't know.
- Don't hold your breath** means you expect / don't expect something to happen.

### 5 Complete a suitable idiom in response to these statements or questions.

- I've just won the lottery! ~ You \_\_\_\_\_.
- Could I borrow your Dad's car? ~ No \_\_\_\_\_.
- Why did they leave so early? ~ No idea. Your guess \_\_\_\_\_.
- Has it been busy in the office today? ~ Yes, it's been \_\_\_\_\_.
- Are you going to the wedding? ~ Yes, you \_\_\_\_\_.
- Do you think they'll win? ~ Definitely. It's a \_\_\_\_\_.
- I won some money. Did you? ~ No such \_\_\_\_\_.
- Shall we enter for the competition? ~ Why not? We've got nothing \_\_\_\_\_.
- It's hot in here, isn't it? ~ Yes, you can \_\_\_\_\_.
- My car broke down this morning, and a tooth fell out this afternoon. ~ It's not \_\_\_\_\_.





# 60 I can use idioms and set phrases (2)

Do Unit 59 first

## A Commenting on a situation

Some idioms and set phrases are commonly used to express an opinion about a situation.

We can borrow money if need be, but it's **a last resort**.

I've got a new computer, and frankly **it's more trouble than it's worth**.

He's got his own flat, but his mum still cooks for him – he's got **the best of both worlds**.

She wouldn't admit her mistake because she didn't want to **lose face**.

I think my nephew will do well as long as he **keeps his feet on the ground**.

She's always terribly serious. I think she needs to **let her hair down** a bit.

She's trying her best, but I think she's **fighting a losing battle**.

You can eat what you like and drinks are free. Sounds **too good to be true**, doesn't it?

The trouble with Rolf is that – most of the time – he **lives in a world of his own**.

## Glossary

**a last/final resort**

an action you will take if there is no other option (**as a last resort** SYN if all else fails).

**it's more trouble than it's worth**  
**the best of both worlds**

used to say the disadvantages of sth are greater than the advantages.  
a situation in which you have the advantages of two things without any disadvantages.

**lose face**

look stupid or be less respected because of sth you have done.

**keep your feet on the ground**

remain sensible and realistic about life.

**let your hair down**

relax and enjoy yourself.

**fight a losing battle**

try to do sth that will almost certainly fail.

**too good to be true**

used to express doubts about a surprisingly good situation.

**live/be in a world of your own**

spend your time imagining things, and not be aware of things around you.

## 1 Cover the text and glossary, then complete these set phrases and idioms.

- |                                     |                               |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 let your hair _____               | 5 too good to be _____        |
| 2 if all else _____                 | 6 live in a world _____       |
| 3 fight a losing _____              | 7 the best of both _____      |
| 4 it's more trouble than it's _____ | 8 keep your feet on the _____ |

## 2 Complete each dialogue with a suitable set phrase or idiom.

- Is Karen a bit of a dreamer? ~ Yes, she lives in \_\_\_\_\_.
- You don't want to use your savings? ~ No, that's a last \_\_\_\_\_.
- He thinks he can achieve anything. ~ Yes, he needs to \_\_\_\_\_.
- So you may have to sell your car. ~ Yes, if all \_\_\_\_\_.
- Did he try to cover up his mistake? ~ Yes, he didn't want to \_\_\_\_\_.
- You mean everything is free? ~ Yes, it sounds too \_\_\_\_\_.
- She looks as if she's enjoying herself ~ Yes, she's really \_\_\_\_\_.
- It's near the sea but close to the city. ~ Great, so you've got \_\_\_\_\_.

## 3 ABOUT YOUR LANGUAGE How would you translate these idioms into your own language? Write your answers, or talk to someone who speaks your language.



## B Adding tone and emphasis

Some idioms and set phrases add extra politeness or emphasis, or prepare the listener for what you are going to say, or give a more personal interpretation of the message.

Idiom or set phrase	Meaning
<i>Do you know if they're married, <b>by any chance</b>?</i>	used to add politeness to a question (also: <i>Do you <b>happen to</b> know if they're married?</i> ).
<i><b>If you don't mind my/me asking</b>, how much did it cost?</i>	used before a question which you think may be sensitive.
<i>We'd like to see you, but <b>the thing is</b>, we don't know what time we'll get there.</i>	used to introduce an explanation, and often one that suggests there is a problem.
<i>I think the film is <b>every bit as good as</b> his last one.</i>	used to emphasize the comparative; equally good, bad, interesting, etc.
<i>I may get the job – <b>you never know</b>.</i>	used to say that you can never be certain about future events, so anything is possible.
<i><b>Guess what!</b> Ed and Sue are getting married.</i>	used before giving sb surprising or exciting news.
<i>He doesn't look rich, but <b>believe it or not</b>, he owns a castle in Bavaria.</i>	used to introduce information which is true but surprising.
<i>He's been working since 7 o'clock this morning, so <b>no wonder</b> he's tired.</i>	used to emphasize the fact that sth is not surprising.
<i>Where <b>on earth</b> did you get those boots?</i>	used after <i>wh-</i> questions to indicate surprise, and sometimes annoyance, about sth.
<i>I would say, <b>all things being equal</b>, that women are better communicators than men.</i>	used to say that sth is true if there are no other factors affecting it.
<i>The room is empty but, <b>for some reason</b>, we're not allowed to use it.</i>	used to say, often with slight annoyance, that you don't know the reason or don't understand it.
<i><b>I have to admit</b>, he's very good at his job.</i>	used to agree reluctantly that sth is true.

### 4 Complete the idiom or set phrase in each sentence.

- \_\_\_\_\_ what! I've got a new job.
- I don't think he has the ability to do it, but you never \_\_\_\_\_.
- What on \_\_\_\_\_ are you doing here?
- I made a special trip to the post office, but for \_\_\_\_\_ reason, they closed early.
- I have to \_\_\_\_\_, France are a good team – even though I'm English!
- He won all his matches, so no \_\_\_\_\_ he's delighted.
- All things being \_\_\_\_\_, I think we'll lose.
- We went trekking in the desert and, \_\_\_\_\_ it or not, it started raining!

### 5 Add a suitable idiom or set phrase to these sentences. Put an arrow to show where it goes.

- Do you know if it's open? \_\_\_\_\_
- How old are you? \_\_\_\_\_
- She looks about 20, but she's only 13. \_\_\_\_\_
- He's been very ill, so he looks thin. \_\_\_\_\_
- I'm hoping to go, but I've got a meeting on the same day. \_\_\_\_\_
- There are many exceptions, but I think men are better cooks than women. \_\_\_\_\_
- The book is as violent as all his others. \_\_\_\_\_
- It was a beautiful day, but the beach was deserted; I can't think why. \_\_\_\_\_





# 61 I can use set phrases with two key words

These set phrases consist of two words belonging to the same grammatical category, joined by *and*, *or*, and *to*. The word order is fixed, i.e. *back and forth*, not *forth and back*. Many are made up of synonyms or opposites.

Example	Meaning
We've been going <b>back and forth</b> all day.	from one place to another and then back again, many times.
<b>First and foremost</b> we need a plan.	more than anything else.
I thought <b>long and hard</b> before taking the job.	for a long time.
They'll be here <b>sooner or later</b> .	at some time in the future.
You're wearing your jumper <b>back to front</b> .	with the back where the front should be.
I enjoy the <b>hustle and bustle</b> of city life.	busy and noisy activity.
I learnt how to use a computer by <b>trial and error</b> .	a process of trying to solve a problem in different ways until you are successful.
What are our <b>aims and objectives</b> ?	things you want to achieve.
That's against the <b>rules and regulations</b> .	rules.
Who is responsible for <b>law and order</b> ?	safe and peaceful conditions in society when people obey the law.
Max was very <b>bright and cheerful</b> today.	happy and lively.
The children got home <b>safe and sound</b> .	safely; not harmed, damaged, lost, etc.
I'm <b>sick and tired of</b> this weather.	bored with or annoyed about sth, and wanting it to stop. SYN <b>fed up with sth</b> .
He badly needs a job, so he can't really afford to <b>pick and choose</b> .	choose only those things that you like or want.
They were <b>pushing and shoving</b> behind us.	<b>shove</b> push in a rough way.

## 1 Write eight set phrases using words from the box.

push   pick   back   first   long   sooner  
rules   front   sick   regulations   foremost  
choose   tired   later   hard   shove

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

### spotlight **bribery and corruption**

**Bribery** is the offering of money or another incentive to sb to persuade them to take part in an activity, usually something dishonest. **bribe sb v.** **Corruption** is illegal or dishonest behaviour, especially on the part of sb in power. **corrupt ADJ.** The two words are often used together.  
*There are still allegations of **bribery and corruption** in the police force.*




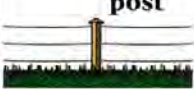



## 2 Complete the set phrase in each sentence.





- I saw Joelle earlier. She's very bright and \_\_\_\_\_ today.
- There's no law and \_\_\_\_\_ in the place: just bribery and \_\_\_\_\_ everywhere.
- They said 4 o'clock, so they should be here sooner or \_\_\_\_\_.
- First and \_\_\_\_\_, we have got to establish our aims and \_\_\_\_\_.
- I used to love the hustle and \_\_\_\_\_ of city life, but I'm sick and \_\_\_\_\_ of it now.
- I didn't have the instructions, so I just worked it out by trial and \_\_\_\_\_.
- It was a terrible flight, but we finally got here safe and \_\_\_\_\_.
- I'm moving stuff from Pete's flat to my flat, and I've been back and \_\_\_\_\_ all day.



## 62 I can use similes 🎧

We form most similes with *as* + adjective + *as* + noun, and some with verb or noun + *like* + noun. Similes with *as* emphasize the meaning of the adjective. (Note that the first *as* is often omitted.)

Key word	Simile
 <b>gold</b>	The kids were <b>as good as gold</b> today. = well behaved
 <b>feather</b>	I picked up the little girl – she was <b>as light as a feather</b> .
 <b>bat</b>	I'm afraid I'm <b>blind as a bat</b> . (used humorously)
 <b>post</b>	My father is <b>deaf as a post</b> . (used humorously)
 <b>ox</b>	John will carry it – he's <b>as strong as an ox</b> .
 <b>rake</b>	My sister's <b>as thin as a rake</b> .
 <b>mouse</b>	The baby's been <b>as quiet as a mouse</b> .

Key word	Simile
 <b>sheet</b>	Ken went <b>as white as a sheet</b> . = white with fear or illness
 <b>beetroot</b>	Sally went <b>as red as a beetroot</b> . = very embarrassed
 <b>bone</b>	The ground is <b>as dry as a bone</b> at the moment.
 <b>cake</b>	The new model is <b>selling like hot cakes</b> . = selling very quickly or in large numbers
 <b>log</b>	I <b>slept like a log</b> last night. = slept very well
 <b>dream</b>	The plan <b>worked like a dream</b> . = was very successful
 <b>sieve</b>	Sometimes I've got <b>a mind like a sieve</b> . = a bad memory

### 1 Complete the similes.

- He's been as quiet as a \_\_\_\_\_.
- I'm sure this new computer game will sell like hot \_\_\_\_\_.
- We badly need rain because the garden is as dry as a \_\_\_\_\_.
- When I picked her up she was as light as a \_\_\_\_\_.
- My father always sleeps like a \_\_\_\_\_.
- She can't remember what she did with it; she's got a mind like a \_\_\_\_\_.
- My builder is as strong as an \_\_\_\_\_.
- I fitted a new ink cartridge and the printer's working like a \_\_\_\_\_ now.

### 2 Choose a suitable simile to describe these people and things.

- My grandfather can't hear a thing. \_\_\_\_\_
- My grandmother can't see a thing. \_\_\_\_\_
- My girlfriend needs to put on weight. \_\_\_\_\_
- The plan was very successful. \_\_\_\_\_
- She looked horrified. \_\_\_\_\_
- The children behaved very well. \_\_\_\_\_
- She was very embarrassed. \_\_\_\_\_
- He often forgets things. \_\_\_\_\_





## 63 I can use a range of phrasal verbs

### A Phrasal verbs with more formal equivalents

Phrasal verb	More formal equivalent
If you <b>talk</b> someone <b>into</b> doing something,	you <b>persuade</b> them to do it.
If you <b>talk</b> someone <b>out of</b> doing something,	you <b>dissuade</b> them <b>from</b> doing it.
If you <b>bring</b> a topic <b>up</b> in a conversation,	you <b>raise</b> the topic.
If you <b>get</b> your ideas <b>across</b> to someone,	you <b>communicate with</b> them clearly.
If you <b>butt in</b> on a conversation,	you <b>interrupt</b> a conversation.
If someone <b>drags out</b> a discussion,	they <b>prolong</b> it (= make it longer than necessary).
If you <b>own up</b> to something,	you <b>confess</b> to it (= admit you did sth wrong).
If someone <b>goes on at</b> you,	they <b>criticize</b> you for sth you have done.
If you <b>hit back at</b> someone who has criticized you,	you <b>retaliate</b> (against them).
If the government <b>does away with</b> a tax,	it <b>abolishes</b> it.
If you <b>call off</b> a meeting,	you <b>cancel</b> it.
If you <b>make up for</b> something,	you <b>compensate for</b> it (= do sth good to balance the bad effects of it).
If someone <b>makes out</b> that they're rich,	they <b>claim</b> that they are rich (= say that they are rich even though it may not be true).
If you are <b>taken in</b> by someone's charm,	you are <b>deceived</b> by it.
If you have a row with someone and then <b>make it up with</b> them,	you <b>are reconciled</b> with them (= become friends with them after a disagreement).
If you <b>take</b> a machine <b>apart</b> ,	you <b>dismantle</b> it (also <b>take it to pieces</b> ).

#### 1 Find a verb in the text below with the same meaning as these verbs.

- ▶ called it off cancelled it    2 make out \_\_\_\_\_    4 bring up \_\_\_\_\_    6 drag out \_\_\_\_\_  
 1 get across \_\_\_\_\_    3 went on at \_\_\_\_\_    5 butted in \_\_\_\_\_    7 hit back at him \_\_\_\_\_

Memo to Alex Parker	From Joey Cassani
<p>I'm afraid I've had a problem with Adam Lewis at SBP. I organized a meeting with him, but he cancelled it ✓ at the last minute. He did the same this week, so I decided to raise the issue with him. I tried to explain politely that we couldn't carry on like this, but he interrupted continually and I wasn't able to communicate my message clearly. He even tried to claim that I'd been late for meetings myself (which was completely untrue), and he criticized me for other things too. Anyway, I didn't want to prolong the discussion, as I knew I might retaliate; so in the end I left it.</p>	

#### 2 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals at the end as part of a phrasal verb.

- I never expected him to confess to the crime. UP \_\_\_\_\_
- Nothing can compensate for the loss of earnings. MAKE \_\_\_\_\_
- She tried to dissuade me from giving up my job. OUT \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you think they'll ever abolish the monarchy? DO \_\_\_\_\_
- He isn't easily deceived. IN \_\_\_\_\_
- Try and persuade him to come. INTO \_\_\_\_\_
- Did they dismantle the shed? TAKE \_\_\_\_\_
- Have they made friends again? UP \_\_\_\_\_





## B Phrasal verbs in context

I **bumped into** Sue in town last week and she was **asking after** you. We arranged to meet for dinner last night, but she didn't **show up**. I guess something must've **cropped up**...

I was aching all over and I realized I must be **going down with** the flu. I was hoping to **shake it off** with painkillers, but once the effects **wore off**, I felt dreadful. I was in bed for days and even **missed out on** my best friend's wedding.

My brother's brilliant at **picking up** languages; he can **get by** in German, Italian, and Swedish, whereas with me, it takes ages for things to **sink in**. But I started learning Spanish last year – I've really **stuck at** it and I feel I'm getting somewhere now.

### spotlight

#### Phrasal verbs: meanings and forms

Many phrasal verbs have more than one meaning and construction, e.g. **pick up** and **pick sb/sth up**.

*Sales have **picked up** (= improved).*

*The wind **picked up** (= got stronger).*

*She **picked me up** (= collected me in her car).*

*This radio can't **pick up** the World Service (= receive an electronic signal).*

You can also **pick up** (= acquire) an illness or a bad habit.

### Glossary

<b>bump into sb</b>	meet sb by chance.
<b>ask after sb</b>	ask sb how sb else is, or what they are doing.
<b>show up</b>	arrive where you have arranged to meet sb. <b>SYN</b> <b>turn up</b> .
<b>crop up</b>	happen unexpectedly. <b>SYN</b> <b>come up</b> .
<b>go down with sth</b>	become sick or ill with sth. <b>SYN</b> <b>catch sth</b> .
<b>shake sth off</b>	get rid of sth, such as an illness or a problem.
<b>wear off</b>	(of a pain, a feeling, or an effect) gradually disappear or stop.
<b>miss out on sth</b>	miss an opportunity to do or have sth.
<b>pick sth up</b>	learn a new skill easily and without effort.
<b>get by</b>	If you <b>get by</b> in a language, you can speak at a basic level.
<b>sink in</b>	become completely understood or able to be remembered.
<b>stick at sth</b>	continue to work in a determined way to achieve sth.

### 3 Correct any mistakes in the sentences. Be careful: some sentences are correct.

- 1 She's fluent in Russian, and she can go by in Hungarian too. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I meant to ring him, but something cropped out and it slipped my mind. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 You'll only make progress if you really stick at your studies. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 My life is so dull. I always have the feeling I'm missing out of something. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Did you bump in her or had you arranged to meet? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I think she's very fond of you; she always asks after you when I see her. \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 Replace the underlined verbs with a phrasal verb with the same meaning.

- 1 After three hours, he arrived without a word of apology. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 You can't use your mobile in the mountains – it's impossible to receive a signal. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I just can't get rid of the feeling that someone is watching me. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 He had to say it several times before the news was completely understood. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 It's not that easy to acquire a language just by living in the country. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 All the people I work with seem to have caught the flu. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Once I'd had the injection, the pain started to gradually disappear. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 As the breeze started to get stronger, we set off for the cottage. \_\_\_\_\_





## 64 I can use discourse markers



I'm not very keen on the flat, or the area. **Mind you**, it's better than my last place. **Incidentally**, do you know how Marek's getting on in his new flat?

SIMON The company is likely to move its headquarters to Brussels. **As for** Deborah, she'll probably have to get a job with another insurance firm.

TANYA Yes, or **alternatively**, she could stay with the company in the UK, but in a different branch.

**It's true** that Peter was only trying to help. **Even so**, he shouldn't have got involved.

ASMA Do you think you'll go back to the same hotel?

BRAD Well, **as a matter of fact** we were a bit disappointed the last time we were there. **By and large** the staff were still very nice, but the food has really gone downhill.

I don't think Alistair should apply for the job in Munich. He doesn't have that much experience; and **in any case**, he doesn't speak German.

I may get the bus, or take a taxi if necessary. **At any rate**, I'll be there on time, so don't worry. And **as I was saying**, if you would like me to bring anything, just let me know.

### Glossary

<b>mind you</b>	INF used to add a further comment which is usually a contrast or a surprise, but can also be an explanation. SYN <b>still</b> .
<b>incidentally</b>	used to change the conversation to a different topic. SYN <b>by the way</b> .
<b>as for</b>	used to start talking about sb or sth new that is connected with what you were talking about before.
<b>alternatively</b>	used to introduce an idea that is a second choice or possibility.
<b>it's true</b>	used to agree with an idea made by the previous speaker (but often before disagreeing). SYN <b>I agree</b> .
<b>even so</b>	used to introduce a counter-argument or return to one the speaker has already made. SYNS <b>all the same</b> , <b>nevertheless</b> .
<b>as a matter of fact</b>	used to say what you really think, or to introduce information which is not what the listener expects to hear. SYNS <b>actually</b> , <b>to be honest</b> , <b>to tell you the truth</b> .
<b>by and large</b>	used to introduce a generalization. SYNS <b>to a large extent</b> , <b>on the whole</b> , <b>broadly speaking</b> .
<b>in any case</b>	used to introduce an additional point and one that is often conclusive or the most important. SYNS <b>besides</b> , <b>anyway</b> .
<b>at any rate</b>	used to say that sth is true or sth will happen in spite of other things mentioned. SYNS <b>anyway</b> , <b>anyhow</b> .
<b>as I was saying</b>	used to return the conversation to sth you said earlier.

### spotlight **anyway**

In spoken English, **anyway** can mean **in any case** (see above) or **at any rate** (see above), but it is commonly used to change the topic of conversation:

Yes, next year could be a difficult time. **Anyway**, let's not worry about that now. What would you like to eat?





**1** Complete the phrases with words from the box to form ten discourse markers.

case   extent   honest   you   rate   speaking   fact   so   same   whole

- |                        |                 |                    |
|------------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1 mind _____           | 5 on the _____  | 8 to be _____      |
| 2 at any _____         | 6 in any _____  | 9 to a large _____ |
| 3 even _____           | 7 broadly _____ | 10 all the _____   |
| 4 as a matter of _____ |                 |                    |

**2** Correct the error in the discourse marker in each sentence.

- Broad speaking, it was very interesting. \_\_\_\_\_
- We had a fantastic time. All same, I was glad to get home. \_\_\_\_\_
- We can take the bags, or alternative leave them here. \_\_\_\_\_
- I don't like the sea because the water is dirty. In every case, I can't swim very well. \_\_\_\_\_
- To say you the truth, I didn't like it very much. \_\_\_\_\_
- The restaurant's great, but as I was telling, it's not good for kids. \_\_\_\_\_

**3** Replace the underlined word/phrase with a different word/phrase that has the same meaning.

- I think he was from the Czech Republic. By the way, what was his name again? \_\_\_\_\_
- The film has had great reviews, but to tell you the truth, I didn't like it. \_\_\_\_\_
- To a large extent, you can get by without speaking the language. \_\_\_\_\_
- I was disappointed with broadband. Still, it's faster than it was before. \_\_\_\_\_
- We can't give Mike a lift – he lives miles away. And in any case, the car's full. \_\_\_\_\_
- I agree some of the definitions could be shorter. Nevertheless, it's a good dictionary. \_\_\_\_\_
- I may find out the results this Wednesday, or I may have to wait until the weekend.  
At any rate, I'll phone you as soon as I know. OK? \_\_\_\_\_
- It's a lovely gallery, but as a matter of fact, we were only there for an hour. \_\_\_\_\_

**4** Complete the sentences and dialogues with suitable discourse markers from the box.

by the way   alternatively   to be honest   as for   by and large  
all the same   besides   mind you   it's true

- I read that public transport was very cheap, but \_\_\_\_\_ I thought it was quite expensive.
- We might go to a camping site. \_\_\_\_\_ we could just stay in a B & B each night.
- \_\_\_\_\_ that a lot of people drop litter, which is very anti-social. \_\_\_\_\_, you can't start sending people to prison for that kind of offence.
- It wasn't a great place to stay. \_\_\_\_\_, it didn't cost a lot.
- A I've packed lots of jumpers so I'm prepared for the cold weather.  
B Good, you'll need them. \_\_\_\_\_, what time does the plane take off?
- I've been told there's a very good Chinese restaurant in the main square. \_\_\_\_\_ somewhere to stay, I'm afraid I can't help you.
- You won't want to climb that hill – it's very steep. And \_\_\_\_\_, it's too far away.
- It can be cold in winter, but \_\_\_\_\_ it doesn't snow much.

**5** ABOUT YOUR LANGUAGE Look at the texts on page 162 and try to translate the discourse markers into your own language. Remember it is spoken language.





## 65 I can use vague language 🎧

You can use the vague language phrases below when you don't want or need to be precise.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| A How long will the trip take?                     | A She looks a lot older. Is she ill <b>or something</b> ? |
| B Three weeks <b>or thereabouts</b> .              | B I don't know; I'm <b>kind of</b> worried about her.     |
| A He earns <b>stacks of</b> money, doesn't he?     | A We'll buy that car <b>somehow or other</b> .            |
| B Mmm, <b>somewhere in the region of</b> €100,000. | B I've got £1,000, <b>give or take</b> a few quid.        |
| A He's <b>something to do with</b> advertising.    | A How much did you pay for that <b>stuff</b> ?            |
| B Yes, <b>or something along those lines</b> .     | B Oh, fifty <b>odd</b> , I think.                         |

### Glossary

<b>or thereabouts</b>	used after a number, quantity, etc. to show that it is approximate. SYN <b>or so</b> .
<b>stacks of sth</b>	INF a large quantity of sth. SYNS <b>tons/loads/bags of sth</b> INF.
<b>(somewhere) in the region of</b>	(used before a number) approximately. SYN <b>round about</b> .
<b>something to do with (sth)</b>	in some way connected with (sth).
<b>kind of</b>	INF to some extent, but in a way that is hard to explain. SYN <b>sort of</b> .
<b>somehow (or other)</b>	in some way or by some means, although you don't know exactly how.
<b>give or take sth</b>	used for talking about numbers which are not exact.
<b>stuff</b>	INF used to refer to things when it is obvious what you are talking about, or you don't know the name, or the name isn't important.
<b>(-)odd</b>	INF (after a number) a little more or less than the number ( <b>thirty-odd</b> people).

### 1 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

- The whole trip cost somewhere the region of €380. \_\_\_\_\_
- She was just sort pretending to be ill; in fact she wasn't. \_\_\_\_\_
- We seem to have of rice; I'd better make paella. \_\_\_\_\_
- There were about 100 people or of that sort. \_\_\_\_\_
- We'll leave at seven, give take a few minutes. \_\_\_\_\_
- I've got a meeting tonight but I'll finish my essay by tomorrow or other. \_\_\_\_\_
- I'll send a card or letter, or something along those. \_\_\_\_\_
- Could you give me a ring about 6.30 tonight? \_\_\_\_\_

#### spotlight or something

You can use these phrases when you are being vague.  
*She's a nurse **or something like that / or something along those lines**.*  
*He works in publishing **or something / or something of that sort**.*

### 2 Rewrite the sentence, making it more vague. Use the word at the end of the line, and make any necessary changes.

- We invited a hundred to the wedding. SO We invited a hundred or so to the wedding.
- I've completed 50 per cent of the project. ROUND \_\_\_\_\_
  - He looks depressed. KIND \_\_\_\_\_
  - His job is in marketing. DO \_\_\_\_\_
  - Do you know who all those CDs and DVDs belong to? STUFF \_\_\_\_\_
  - I imagine we'll get forty-nine people at the meeting. ODD \_\_\_\_\_
  - We've got vegetables so I'd better make some soup. TONS \_\_\_\_\_
  - She must be getting on for 80, I would say. THEREABOUTS \_\_\_\_\_
  - We could get him a book for his birthday. SOMETHING \_\_\_\_\_



## 66 I can use sayings and proverbs

### A Famous last words

Some sayings are concise ways of explaining something, or commenting on a situation.

Example	Meaning
A He thinks the exam will be easy. B Oh, <b>famous last words</b> .	used when you think sb is being too confident about something that is going to happen.
A Are tickets available? B Yes, but it's <b>first come, first served</b> .	people will be served or dealt with in the order in which they arrive or ask for sth.
A She ought to pass easily. B Yes, but <b>you can never tell</b> .	you can never be sure about sth because things are not always what they appear to be.
A She's not going to apply again. B No, <b>once bitten, twice shy</b> , I guess.	after an unpleasant experience, you are careful to avoid sth similar.
A You should tell him he's wrong. B Hmm, <b>easier said than done</b> .	it is easy to talk about something, but it is much more difficult to do it.
A Can anyone come this evening? B Yes, <b>the more the merrier</b> .	if there are more people or things, the situation will be better and more enjoyable.
A How's the new job? B <b>So far, so good</b> .	used to say that everything is fine at the moment but you know things may become more difficult.
A Barry never writes or phones. B Well, <b>out of sight, out of mind</b> – I suppose.	used to say that sb stops thinking about people when they are not with them.
A I met two of your colleagues today. B Oh, it's <b>a small world</b> , isn't it?	used to express your surprise when you meet sb you know unexpectedly, or when you are talking to sb and realize they know people who you know.
A He said you were a hypocrite. B Well, that's <b>the pot calling the kettle black</b> .	used about sb who criticizes people for faults that they have themselves.

#### 1 Cross out the wrong word and write the correct one to form the saying.

- |                               |                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 It's a little world. _____  | 5 So far, no good. _____          |
| 2 Once eaten twice shy. _____ | 6 First come, are served. _____   |
| 3 The more the happier. _____ | 7 Out of eyes, out of mind. _____ |
| 4 Famous last phrase. _____   | 8 Easier spoken than done. _____  |

#### 2 Complete the saying in each sentence.

- He'll never get married again: once bitten, \_\_\_\_\_
- We'll have tougher times ahead but so far, \_\_\_\_\_
- Since I've been here I've met four people I know. It's a small \_\_\_\_\_
- When she's with you she makes you feel important, but out of sight, \_\_\_\_\_
- I think he'll do well, but you know, you can \_\_\_\_\_
- They want to limit the numbers, but in my opinion the more \_\_\_\_\_
- She suggested I tried asking for a rise, but that's easier \_\_\_\_\_
- Air passengers are given seats on the basis of first come, \_\_\_\_\_
- He said that I look stupid when I dance. Talk about the pot \_\_\_\_\_

#### 3 ABOUT YOUR LANGUAGE How would you translate these sayings into your own language? Write a translation, or talk to another student who speaks your language.





## B Practice makes perfect

Many sayings give advice, or say something that is generally true.



Example	Meaning
He tends to get what he wants because <b>money talks</b> <sup>1</sup> .	If you have a lot of money, you will have more power and influence than other people.
He treats her very badly but she doesn't realize; <b>love is blind</b> <sup>2</sup> in her case.	When you love somebody, you cannot see their faults.
Don't worry – <b>lightning never strikes twice (in the same place)</b> <sup>3</sup> .	An unusual or unpleasant event won't happen in the same place or to the same person twice.
Don't say anything at the moment; <b>let sleeping dogs lie</b> <sup>4</sup> .	Avoid mentioning a particularly difficult subject which may cause trouble.
She spends hours at the piano, but <b>practice makes perfect</b> .	If you do sth repeatedly, you will become very good at it.
I haven't heard from my son for weeks, but usually <b>no news is good news</b> .	If you haven't had any news, then it's probable that nothing has gone wrong and things are fine.
It seems cruel to do it, but in this case <b>the end justifies the means</b> .	Bad or unfair methods of doing sth are acceptable if the results of the action are good or positive.
You mustn't do that: <b>two wrongs don't make a right</b> .	If sb does sth bad to you, that is not a reason to do sth bad to them.
Let's do this together: <b>two heads are better than one</b> .	Two people can achieve more than one person working alone.
He thinks <b>blood is thicker than water</b> .	Family relationships are stronger than any other.
He can say what he likes, but <b>actions speak louder than words</b> .	What a person actually does is more important than what they say they will do.
He believes in an <b>eye for an eye (and a tooth for a tooth)</b> .	Used to say that you should punish somebody by doing to them what they have done to you.
Don't forget that <b>charity begins at home</b> .	You should help and care for your own family first before you start helping others.
She may be very attractive, but <b>beauty is only skin-deep</b> .	How someone looks is less important than their character.
They finally turned up at 8.30, but <b>better late than never</b> .	It is better to arrive late or achieve sth late, than not arrive or achieve anything at all.
The mountain road is dangerous so go slowly – <b>better safe than sorry</b> .	It is better to be careful than to take a risk or act too quickly and later regret it.
<b>Live and let live</b> – that's my motto.	Accept other people's opinions and ways of life, even if they are different from your own. A <b>motto</b> is a phrase which expresses the beliefs of a person or organization.
Enjoy yourself: <b>you're only young once</b> .	Young people should enjoy themselves because in later life they will have more to worry about.
In my view <b>prevention is better than cure</b> .	It is better to stop something bad from happening than try to deal with it after it has happened.



- 4 Look at the sayings on page 166. Write down two which are connected with each of these topics.

- 1 family: \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 relationships: \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 morality: \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 tolerance: \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 progress: \_\_\_\_\_

- 5 Write down six sayings using words from the box.

cure actions love better than louder than blood words water  
lightning charity at home never is prevention blind strikes  
is begins twice speak thicker than is

---

---

---

- 6 Complete these sayings.

- |                            |                                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 Better late than _____.  | 7 No news is _____.            |
| 2 Better safe than _____.  | 8 The end _____.               |
| 3 You're only young _____. | 9 Two wrongs _____.            |
| 4 Let sleeping dogs _____. | 10 Lightning never _____.      |
| 5 Practice makes _____.    | 11 Prevention is better _____. |
| 6 Two heads are _____.     | 12 An eye _____.               |

- 7 Use a suitable saying to respond to each of these situations.

- I came down slowly – I didn't want to fall over. Better safe than sorry!
- 1 He works on his English for three hours every day. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 Shall we work on this problem together? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 When she finishes university she wants to travel round Europe. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 I would always go to my family for help before asking friends. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 He went to hospital over three hours ago, but we haven't heard anything. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 Why does he get a seat first just because he owns lots of companies? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7 If he takes my exercise book, I'll take his dictionary. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 8 They finally got here, but they missed the first part. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 9 We don't share the same opinions on things, but I just accept it. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 10 It's a very sensitive subject with Amélie. Should I say something? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 11 She doesn't seem to see her husband's faults. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 12 After what he did to me, I'll get my revenge. \_\_\_\_\_

- 8 ABOUT YOU Which sayings on page 166 do you think are generally true or represent good advice? Write your answers or ask another student.

- 9 ABOUT YOUR LANGUAGE How would you translate these sayings into your own language? Do you have equivalent sayings? Write a translation, or talk to another student who speaks your language.





# Review: Spoken English

## Unit 58

1 One letter in one word is wrong in each line. Cross out the mistake and correct it.

- 1 Would you believe it! Someone's ticked my bike again! \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Madonna got a lot of flan from the press last year. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I'm not feeling too good – I think I must have a rug. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 He tried to borrow €200 from me – what a creek! \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 They were making a terrible jacket so I asked them to turn it down. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 It's no good trying to get him to pay; he's really light. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Have you got anything in the fridge? I'm lying for something to eat. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 I like most parties, but that one was a bit of a drug; in fact I left early. \_\_\_\_\_

2 Complete the email using words from the box in the correct form.

cheek lousy broke neck stick guy laugh moan back bloke

Hi Sven

Hope you had a nice weekend – it's a pity you weren't here because we had a really good (1) \_\_\_\_\_ on Saturday night at Erno's. We were completely (2) \_\_\_\_\_ after going to that night club on Friday, so we decided to stay in and we invited Kim, Des, and a couple of other (3) \_\_\_\_\_ round for a drink. One of these other (4) \_\_\_\_\_, whose name was Phil, was a real pain in the (5) \_\_\_\_\_ – he just kept (6) \_\_\_\_\_ all evening about everything: football, the state of the country, the weather, on and on . . . and then he started giving Erno some (7) \_\_\_\_\_ because he didn't think Erno's cooking was very good (in fact, he's right, it is pretty (8) \_\_\_\_\_), but we thought it was a bit of a (9) \_\_\_\_\_, especially as he'd done nothing to help. Anyway, you know Erno, he's pretty (10) laid-\_\_\_\_\_ – he just smiled and then he started to laugh, and then he couldn't stop, and soon we were all laughing . . .

**A Z** more words: **off colour**, to **nip** out/round, it's **bust**, **clear** off!, a **doddle/cinch**, a **tip-off** / **tip** sb off

## Unit 59

1 Cross out the incorrect word in each response.

- 1 Do you think he'll be on time? ~ Your guess is as good as mine is.
- 2 Mark's split up with Jessica. ~ You're not kidding! I don't believe it.
- 3 You look completely worn out. ~ Yes, it's been one of those bad days.
- 4 What time will Gerry be back? ~ Don't you ask me. He never tells me a word.
- 5 Did you get tickets for the match? ~ No any such luck, I'm afraid.
- 6 Have you had the test results back? ~ No, but there's no use of worrying.
- 7 Did you speak to Jack about his room? ~ Yes, but it goes in one ear and out the other ear.
- 8 Should I try ringing the bank again? ~ Well, you've got nothing for to lose.

**A Z** more words. Look at idioms under 'far' in your dictionary, e.g. **go far**, **not far** off. Make a list of all the other useful idioms in your notebook.

## Unit 60

### 1 Complete the dialogue.

- A How are things going at home?  
 B Well, we've got new neighbours upstairs and – guess (1) \_\_\_\_\_ – they're every (2) \_\_\_\_\_ as annoying as the last lot who lived there.  
 A Oh, how awful. Why?  
 B Well, believe it or (3) \_\_\_\_\_, this family have even worse taste in music and play it till three in the morning.  
 A No (4) \_\_\_\_\_ you're fed up. What on (5) \_\_\_\_\_ can you do about it?  
 B I'm moving – the whole business is more trouble than it's (6) \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A Yes, you'd just end up fighting a losing (7) \_\_\_\_\_ and feel frustrated. And you never (8) \_\_\_\_\_, living somewhere else might be just the change you need.

### 2 Put the words in order to make sentences.

- 1 equal / things / centre / in / rather / being / the / I'd / live / all \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 of / in / to / world / own / she / live / seems / a / her \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 as / is / exercise / what / as / bit / eat / important / every / you \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 he / for / him / reason / I / answer / but / rang / some / didn't \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 you / asking / me / if / charge / did / you / much / how / don't / they / mind / ? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 let / down / great / week / to / hard / hair / after / a / it's / your \_\_\_\_\_

**A Z** more words: *pay **lip service** to sth, **pull** the wool over someone's eyes, get the **wrong** end of the stick, turn a **blind** eye to sth, a new **lease** of life, can't make **head** nor tail of sth*

## Unit 61

### 1 One word is wrong in each sentence. Cross it out and write the correct word at the end.

- 1 I love having the option to pick and select the songs on my iPod. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 You've got your jumper on backwards to front; turn it round. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 It is crucial that our aims and objects are absolutely clear. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 There's something exciting about the hustle and hassle of a big city. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 We ended up going back and fourth several times till we found the shop. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 She's a delightful colleague – always so light and cheerful. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 I had to give in and obey the rules and regulators in the institution. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 I couldn't do it at first, but you eventually get there by trial and mistake. \_\_\_\_\_

**A Z** more words: ***take** it or leave it, **prim** and proper, **down and out**, **short** and sweet, **scrimp** and save, **odds and ends***



## Unit 62

### 1 Complete the similes.

- The children were as \_\_\_\_\_ as gold.
- She's as \_\_\_\_\_ as a mouse.
- The ground is as \_\_\_\_\_ as a bone.
- My son's as \_\_\_\_\_ as an ox.
- I went as \_\_\_\_\_ as a beetroot.
- The software package worked like a \_\_\_\_\_.
- I've got a memory like a \_\_\_\_\_.
- She sleeps like a \_\_\_\_\_.

**A Z** more words: **dead** as a doornail/dodo, **safe** as houses, **sick** as a parrot, **tough** as old boots, **easy** as pie, **hard** as nails, be like **gold dust**

## Unit 63

### 1 Match the phrasal verbs with a more formal synonym on the right.

do away with    own up    crop up  
take sth apart    take sb in    drag sth out  
hit back    butt in    turn up

prolong sth    arrive    interrupt  
deceive sb    abolish    dismantle sth  
retaliate    confess    happen unexpectedly

**A Z** more words: Look up the phrasal verbs related to *live*, *drop*, *stand*, *catch*, and *talk*. Write down any meanings and examples which are new to you.

## Unit 64

### 1 Circle the correct phrase. Sometimes, both phrases are correct.

- A Have you started your art course yet?

B As a matter of fact / By the way, I'm doing the course on digital photography.
- A What did you think of the meeting?

B Well, on the whole / by and large, I thought it was pretty successful. Mind you / Besides, I thought Caroline was a bit irritating – she didn't keep to the point at all.

A Yes, to be honest / all the same, I've always found her very difficult.
- A I'm not sure how long I'll be away, but I'll be back by the weekend at any rate / anyhow.

B That's good – oh, incidentally / even so, what time are you leaving?
- A Hi, Sue, I'm just having a few problems with my computer; it keeps crashing.

B Try turning it off and on again; alternatively / to tell you the truth, ring technical support.
- I agree / It's true he was only using me as an example, but even so / even if it was very insensitive.
- I don't really want to go in this weather. At any rate / Besides it's too far away.

**A Z** more words: *having said that*, *on top of sth/sb*, *as a rule*, *to say nothing of sth*, *above all*, *talking of sb/sth*

## Unit 65

### 1 Complete the sentences using vague language.

- 1 I must've seen twenty horses or \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 His parents aren't old; I'd say they were fifty \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Their farm is somewhere in the \_\_\_\_\_ of 500 acres.
- 4 I can't really afford a new car, but I'll find the money \_\_\_\_\_ or other.
- 5 The whole project will take nine months, give or \_\_\_\_\_ a week or two.
- 6 His job is \_\_\_\_\_ to do with the railways.
- 7 What's all that \_\_\_\_\_ doing on the floor?
- 8 He's a pharmacist or something along those \_\_\_\_\_.

**A Z** more words: *whats-his/her-name*, *whatsit*, *thingummy/thingamajig*, *whatnot*, *whatchamacallit*, *doodah*

## Unit 66

### 1 Write a proverb or saying using the word in capitals. The meaning must be the same as in the sentence.

- 1 Accept other people's opinions and ways of life, even if they differ from yours.  
LIVE \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 It's easy to talk about something but a lot harder to do something about it.  
SAID \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Two people working together can achieve more than one.  
HEADS \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 If you have a bad experience, you don't want something like it to happen again.  
SHY \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Family relationships are stronger than other relationships.  
THICKER \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 If someone does something bad to you, you won't improve things by doing something bad to them.  
RIGHT \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 He's pretty well off, and as they say, \_\_\_\_\_ talks – he gets what he wants.
- 2 I'm still waiting to hear from the hospital, but I guess that \_\_\_\_\_ news is \_\_\_\_\_ news.
- 3 Don't get into another row with the neighbours – just let \_\_\_\_\_ dogs lie.
- 4 If you want to come camping with us next week, please do – the more the \_\_\_\_\_!
- 5 Don't forget to lock the doors when you leave – better \_\_\_\_\_ than \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 It's hard to find a seat in the library – it's first \_\_\_\_\_, first \_\_\_\_\_, so get there early!
- 7 My driving is gradually improving and I'm a bit safer – I guess \_\_\_\_\_ makes perfect.
- 8 She only rings me at New Year – it's a case of out of \_\_\_\_\_, out of \_\_\_\_\_.

**A Z** more words: **waste** not, want not; nothing **ventured**, nothing gained; **touch** wood; **absence** makes the heart grow fonder; **familiarity** breeds contempt; **ignorance** is bliss



## 67 I can write a formal letter

### A Useful phrases for formal letters

Scottish Property Services Ltd  
3 Union Terrace  
GLASGOW

2 Grampian Close  
HELENSBURGH  
G84 7PP  
30th June 2001

Phrase	Use/Meaning
Opening a letter	
<i>I am writing to inform you that I will be leaving at the end of June.</i> <i>I am writing to inform you of my intention to terminate my lease.</i>	used for giving information. <b>intention (to do sth)</b> a plan to do sth <b>terminate sth</b> end or stop sth. <b>lease</b> a legal agreement for renting a property.
<i>I am writing to enquire whether ...</i>	used for asking a question or making a request.
<i>I regret to inform you that ...</i>	used for giving bad news.
<i>I am delighted to inform you that ...</i>	used for giving good news.
<i>I am writing in response to your appeal for aid in ...</i>	used for replying to an advertisement, etc. <b>appeal for sth</b> an urgent or sincere request for people to give money, help, etc.
<i>Please accept my sincere condolences.</i>	used for expressing apologies, sympathy, etc. <b>sincere</b> expressing what you really think or feel. SYN <b>genuine</b> . <b>condolences</b> the things you say to show sympathy when sb has just died.

Opening a reply to a letter	
<i>Further to our meeting last week, ...</i> <i>Following our conversation on 5 May, ...</i> <i>In reply to your letter of 7 July, ...</i> <i>With reference to your letter of 3 June, ...</i> <i>Thank you for your letter concerning ...</i>	used to refer to a previous conversation with the receiver, or a letter/email from them.  <b>concerning</b> about. SYN <b>regarding</b> .

Referring to something in a letter	
<i>Please find enclosed a copy of ...</i> <i>As you will see from my CV, I ...</i>	used to refer to sth in the body of the letter or included with it.
<i>I would like to draw your attention to ...</i>	used to refer to sth in the body of the letter, or sth that is relevant to the subject of the letter.

Closing a letter	
<i>Should you require any further information, please do not hesitate to contact me.</i>	commonly used at the end of a formal letter or offer ( <i>should</i> here is a more formal equivalent of <i>if</i> ).
<i>I would be grateful if you could contact me as soon as possible.</i>	used to make a request, or ask for action to be taken.
<i>I look forward to meeting you.</i> <i>I look forward to hearing from you.</i>	used to end a formal letter ( <b>hearing from you</b> is used when you expect a reply).

### 1 Circle the correct word(s).

- 1 Please accept my sincere condolence/condolences on the death of your father.
- 2 As you will see/read from my CV, I have extensive experience in marketing.
- 3 I am delighted/delighted to inform you that your application has been successful.
- 4 I look toward/forward to hearing from you.
- 5 Following/Following to our earlier conversation, I have now looked at the plan.
- 6 Thank you for your letter concerning/concerned the sale of your property.
- 7 Would/Should you require any further information, do not hesitate to contact me.
- 8 I am writing in response for/to your appeal for assistance at Longhurst Farm in July.

### 2 Write a more formal word or phrase with a similar meaning to the words in *italics*.

- 1 I am writing to *ask* / \_\_\_\_\_ whether there has been any progress with my application.
- 2 I am *sorry* / \_\_\_\_\_ to *tell* / \_\_\_\_\_ you that the International Sustainability conference has been cancelled.
- 3 I am writing to inform you of my *plan* / \_\_\_\_\_ to *end* / \_\_\_\_\_ my lease.
- 4 If / \_\_\_\_\_ you *need* / \_\_\_\_\_ any *more* / \_\_\_\_\_ information, please *feel free* / \_\_\_\_\_ to *get in touch with* / \_\_\_\_\_ me.
- 5 *After* / \_\_\_\_\_ our *chat* / \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday, *it would be good* / \_\_\_\_\_ if you could send me the details *about* / \_\_\_\_\_ the proposed changes.

### 3 One word is missing from each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

- 1 I am writing in to your article about supermarket packaging. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 We look forward hearing from you. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I am writing reply to your letter of 17 October. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Thank you for your letter the pre-service training course at CDQ. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Please enclosed a copy of my birth certificate. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I am writing in reply to your for donations following the tsunami disaster. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Please accept my sincere on the death of your grandfather. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 I would like to your attention to the final clause of the lease. \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 As you see from my CV, I have extensive experience in sales and marketing. \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 With to your letter of 17 May, I am enclosing the documents you requested. \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 Write sentences suitable for formal letters.

- Ask a customer to get in touch with you before the weekend.  
*I would be grateful if you could contact me before the weekend.*
- 1 Start a letter explaining that you saw an advertisement for a receptionist in yesterday's paper.  
\_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 Point out that you have included a photocopy of your driving licence in the envelope.  
\_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 Mention a conversation you had with your client yesterday, and tell them that you now have the necessary documents.  
\_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 Say that you are happy to give any more information needed about your qualifications if they are needed.  
\_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 Say that you would like the company to send you a brochure and price list.  
\_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 Explain to an interview candidate that they have been given the job.  
\_\_\_\_\_





## B Advice on writing formal letters

When writing a formal letter, firstly **state** your purpose in the opening paragraph in a **straightforward** manner. The **body** of the letter should contain one or more paragraphs, each dealing with a separate aspect of the **subject matter**. The final paragraph should **spell out** what you want to happen next.

It is crucial to adopt a suitable **tone**. Be clear, **concise**, and **to the point**, avoiding **superfluous** matter, but not too **blunt** or **abrupt**. Keep the language **plain** and simple where possible. Refer to **sample** letters on the internet for further guidance.

### Glossary

<b>state sth</b>	write or say sth clearly or firmly.	<b>to the point</b>	relevant and without any extra information. <i>SYN</i> <b>pertinent</b> .
<b>straightforward</b>	uncomplicated and easy to understand. <i>OPP</i> <b>convoluted</b> .	<b>superfluous</b>	unnecessary.
<b>body</b>	the main part of a book, article, text, etc.	<b>blunt</b>	saying what you think even if it offends or upsets people.
<b>subject matter</b>	the ideas or information in a book, letter, painting, etc.	<b>abrupt</b>	speaking or acting with few words and in a way that seems unfriendly or rude. <i>SYNS</i> <b>brusque</b> , <b>curt</b> .
<b>spell sth out</b>	explain the details of sth in a simple, clear way.	<b>plain</b>	without unnecessary detail; clear.
<b>tone</b>	the general attitude or feeling expressed in a piece of writing.	<b>sample</b>	an example, or small amount, of sth to show what all of it is like.
<b>concise</b>	expressed clearly and without using any unnecessary words.		

### 5 According to the text above, are the following positive (P) or negative (N)?

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 The information was superfluous. _____   | 6 I thought his email was quite abrupt. _____ |
| 2 She writes in plain English. _____       | 7 The information was pertinent. _____        |
| 3 The letter sounds curt. _____            | 8 The tone was brusque. _____                 |
| 4 It was to the point. _____               | 9 It was written in a convoluted way. _____   |
| 5 His style is very straightforward. _____ | 10 Her response was very blunt. _____         |

### 6 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.

- Did he say what he needed? ~ Yes, he \_\_\_\_\_ it very clearly.
- Her tone is rather brusque, isn't it? ~ Yes, I find it rather \_\_\_\_\_.
- Did you find some model letters? ~ Yes, I found some \_\_\_\_\_ letters on a website.
- He should tell her the problem clearly. ~ That's right; he's got to \_\_\_\_\_ it out.
- Did you enjoy the programme? ~ No, I wasn't interested in the \_\_\_\_\_ matter.
- Was the complaint in the introduction? ~ No, I put it in the \_\_\_\_\_ of the letter.
- Is that detail really necessary? ~ No, it's \_\_\_\_\_.
- Is the letter easy to follow? ~ Yes, it's very \_\_\_\_\_.

### 7 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Is the advice in the text similar to the advice you would give for formal letters in your own language? Where is it the same, and where does it differ?



## 68 I can use formal link words 🎧

In addition to the many link words you already know, e.g. *however, although, furthermore, since*, etc., there are a limited number of link words and phrases which are mostly used in formal written English.

It is our understanding that the residents of Alton Court received a full apology from the council in writing **prior to** the meeting that was held on 7 June. **In view of** the limited inconvenience they suffered, this was felt to be adequate; **thus** no further action was taken. **With regard to** Mr Wilson, however, the council acknowledges some damage was caused to his property, **albeit** very minor, and therefore agrees to pay the full costs incurred by Mr Wilson, **notwithstanding** the burden it will inevitably place on the council's resources. **In conclusion**, we sincerely hope this brings an end to the matter.

### Glossary

<b>prior to sth</b>	before sth.
<b>in view of sth</b>	used to introduce the reason for a decision. SYN <b>considering sth</b> .
<b>thus</b>	therefore. SYN <b>hence</b> .
<b>with/in regard to sb/sth</b>	relating to a particular person or subject. SYNS <b>concerning sth, regarding sth</b> .
<b>albeit</b>	although.
<b>notwithstanding</b>	in spite of.
<b>in conclusion</b>	used in writing or a formal speech to show that you are about to finish what you are saying.

### spotlight **hitherto and henceforth**

**Hitherto** means 'up to this time'.

**Hitherto** we had had no problems of this kind.

**Henceforth** means 'from this time on'.

Jason Dean Williams (**henceforth** referred to as 'the accused') . . .

### 1 Replace the underlined word(s) with a more formal equivalent.

- 1 He was only seven, so he couldn't be held responsible for his actions. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I agreed, although with some reluctance, that I would accompany them. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 The meeting will go ahead in spite of the planned protests. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 We were told before the meeting. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 His performance was extraordinary considering his advancing years. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Up to this time, the species was unknown. \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Complete the sentences with a suitable link word or phrase.

- 1 Deoxyribonucleic acid (\_\_\_\_\_ referred to as DNA) carries genetic information.
- 2 They did not have valid tickets, \_\_\_\_\_ they were not allowed to board the train.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ our conversation yesterday, I had not met either man.
- 4 Work on the new extension will commence next month. \_\_\_\_\_ the roof, the contractors have assured us that the necessary repairs will be carried out immediately.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ the complaints received, we still have complete faith in both the company and the Managing Director.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_, the board would like to thank everyone for attending the meeting and making such a positive contribution.





## 69 I can use academic English

### A Public examinations

#### Exam requirements

Some public examinations in English consist of a written paper in which candidates are required to produce a piece of **discursive** writing. They may be asked to present and develop an **argument**, **evaluate** ideas, **summarize** information, etc. Candidates are **assessed** on a number of **criteria**, including their ability to write in an organized and **coherent** way, their **command of** a range of **stylistic** features, and their ability to write in an appropriate **register**. Some tasks may also involve the use of **narrative**.

#### spotlight **present v**

The verb **present** (stress on second syllable) can be used to show or describe something in speech, e.g. at a **conference**, where there are talks on different subjects, or in writing. **presentation** N.

*I'm **presenting** the new product at the sales **conference**.  
He didn't **present** his ideas very coherently in his essay.*

#### Glossary

<b>discursive argument</b>	discussing different ideas. a set of reasons that sb uses to show that sth is true or correct.
<b>evaluate sth</b>	form an opinion of sth after careful thought. <b>evaluation</b> N. SYN <b>assess sth</b> v, <b>assessment</b> N.
<b>summarize sth</b>	give a short statement that brings together the main points of sth. SYN <b>sum sth up</b> . <b>summary</b> N.
<b>criterion</b> (PL <b>criteria</b> )	a standard or principle by which sth is judged.
<b>coherent</b>	(of writing) clear and comprehensible, with each part following on logically from the one before. OPP <b>incoherent</b> . <b>coherence</b> N.
<b>command of sth</b>	a knowledge of sth and an ability to use it well.
<b>stylistic</b>	connected to the way a writer or artist does sth. <b>style</b> N.
<b>register</b>	the words, grammar, and style that sb uses in a particular situation, e.g. <i>formal</i> .
<b>narrative</b>	a description of events, especially in a novel. SYN <b>story</b> (the person is a <b>narrator</b> ).

#### 1 Circle the correct word(s). Sometimes both words may be correct.

- He asked me to **sum up / summarize** the main points.
- Having read her essay, what was your **command / assessment** of it?
- The events in the novel are described by a **narrative / narrator**.
- We had to **assess / evaluate** the plans.
- The single most important **criterion / criteria** was experience.
- The chairman came to my **conference / presentation** and thanked me afterwards.
- It was an interesting **argument / register**, but I'm not sure I agree with it.
- You have to be able to **propose / present** your ideas on paper.

#### 2 Complete the sentences.

- I decided to write a \_\_\_\_\_ because I'm quite good at telling stories.
- You should provide a brief \_\_\_\_\_ of your ideas at the end of the talk.
- I couldn't follow what the writer was trying to say because it was so \_\_\_\_\_.
- The use of metaphors is an important \_\_\_\_\_ feature of the writing.
- What are your \_\_\_\_\_ for choosing the best candidate for the job?
- To write an academic essay, you need a very good \_\_\_\_\_ of the language.
- Most academic essays are written in a formal style and \_\_\_\_\_.
- I'm not very good at discussing ideas on paper, so I avoid \_\_\_\_\_ essays.





## B Basics of academic writing

In a piece of academic writing, the writer will do at least some of the following:

- **outline** their main ideas
- **explore** certain ideas in greater depth
- **highlight** important facts
- **adopt** a particular **stance** or point of view
- **exemplify** certain points
- **draw conclusions**

They may also compare and contrast, **condemn** or **condone**, explain, describe, analyse, **hypothesize**, **assert**, **justify**, and – to the irritation of some people – **sit on the fence**.

### Glossary

<b>outline sth</b>	give a description of the main points involved in sth. <b>outline</b> N.
<b>explore sth</b>	examine, discuss, or think about sth carefully. <b>SYN analyse sth.</b>
<b>highlight sth</b>	emphasize sth to give it more attention.
<b>adopt sth</b>	decide to take and support a particular point of view, plan, etc.
<b>stance (on sth)</b>	an opinion that sb has about sth and expresses publicly. <b>SYN position.</b>
<b>exemplify sth</b>	give an example to make sth clearer. <b>SYN illustrate sth.</b>
<b>conclusion</b>	a decision reached after discussion and examination of any evidence ( <b>reach / draw / come to a conclusion</b> ). <b>conclude</b> V.
<b>condemn sth/sb</b>	say publicly that you think sth or sb is bad or wrong. <b>condemnation</b> N.
<b>condone sth</b>	accept or forgive behaviour that most people think is wrong.
<b>hypothesize</b>	suggest a possible explanation for sth, but without knowing whether it is really true. <b>hypothesis</b> N.
<b>assert sth</b>	state clearly that sth is true. <b>SYN claim sth. assertion</b> N.
<b>justify sth</b>	show that sth is right or reasonable. <b>justification</b> N.
<b>sit on the fence</b>	<b>IDIOM</b> avoid deciding or saying which side of an argument you support.

### 3 Complete the sentences with a form of the word in capitals.

- |  |            |
|--|------------|
| 1 There was universal _____ of the attack.             | CONDEMN    |
| 2 What _____ did you draw?                             | CONCLUDE   |
| 3 It may be unwise to _____ at this stage.             | HYPOTHESIS |
| 4 I felt he _____ the point very well.                 | EXAMPLE    |
| 5 He was correct in his _____ that the man was guilty. | ASSERT     |
| 6 What was his _____ for that argument?                | JUSTIFY    |

### 4 Rewrite the sentences on the left using a single verb or noun for the underlined words in 1–7, and a phrase in 8. Keep the meaning the same.

- |   |                       |
|---|-----------------------|
| 1 She <u>gave a general picture of</u> her ideas.             | She _____             |
| 2 She had one <u>possible explanation</u> .                   | She had one _____     |
| 3 She <u>gave special emphasis to</u> certain points.         | She _____             |
| 4 She wouldn't <u>accept or forgive</u> his behaviour.        | She wouldn't _____    |
| 5 She didn't <u>take and support</u> a clear <u>stance</u> .  | She didn't _____      |
| 6 She went on to <u>analyse</u> the idea in more depth.       | She went on to _____  |
| 7 She couldn't <u>show</u> her ideas <u>were reasonable</u> . | She couldn't _____    |
| 8 In the end, she <u>wouldn't agree or disagree</u> .         | In the end, she _____ |





# 70 I can talk about literature 🎧

## *Far from the Madding Crowd* by Thomas Hardy

**SYNOPSIS:** After inheriting her **prosperous** uncle's farm, Hardy's **protagonist**, Bathsheba Everdene, becomes an independent woman. But her beauty attracts many admirers: farm worker Gabriel Oak, landowner William Boldwood, and handsome soldier Frank Troy, whom she later marries. However, Troy is a selfish man who allows his earlier love, Fanny Robin, to die in poverty while giving birth to his child. Boldwood is madly jealous of Troy, and later in the novel this is the reason for his **downfall** when, in a jealous rage, he kills Troy. Gabriel asks for **mercy** to be shown him, and, on the grounds of **insanity**, Boldwood escapes death but is sent to prison. The novel ends with Bathsheba marrying Gabriel.

**COMMENTARY:** Incidents such as Fanny's pregnancy and **pitiful** death, and Boldwood's act of murderous violence, **convey** Hardy's growing taste for tragedy. But **unlike** Tess in the later *Tess*

*of the D'Urbervilles*, **fate** still favours Bathsheba. She **finally** finds contentment with Gabriel, who **embodies** the best qualities of the rural community in the fight against the growth of industrialism, which Hardy finds so **alien**.

Another theme in the novel is the danger and destruction **inherent in** romantic love and marriage. Hardy **exposes** the irrationality and **betrayals** of romantic relationships, and implies that the true basis of a happy marriage is **companionship** and a common interest. For some it is also an early example of feminist literature. Bathsheba is **portrayed** as an independent woman with the courage to **defy** convention and run a farm herself. Her passionate nature leads her into errors of judgement, but Hardy **endows** her with the **resilience**, intelligence, and good luck to overcome the mistakes of youth.

### Glossary

<b>synopsis</b>	a short summary of the plot of a book, film, etc.
<b>prosperous</b>	rich and successful. <b>SYN</b> affluent. <b>prosperity</b> N.
<b>protagonist</b>	the main character in a book, film, etc.
<b>downfall</b>	A person's <b>downfall</b> is the complete loss of their money, power, etc.
<b>mercy</b>	a kind or forgiving attitude towards sb you have the power to harm or punish. <b>merciful</b> ADJ. <b>OPP</b> merciless.
<b>insanity</b>	the state of being seriously mentally ill. <b>insane</b> ADJ. <b>OPP</b> sane.
<b>commentary</b>	a written explanation or discussion of sth such as a book.
<b>pitiful</b>	deserving, or causing you to feel, pity.
<b>convey sth</b>	communicate ideas and feelings.
<b>unlike</b>	used to contrast one person or thing with another.
<b>fate</b>	a power that is believed to control everything and that cannot be changed.
<b>alien</b>	strange, difficult to understand, and often unacceptable.
<b>inherent (in sth)</b>	If sth is <b>inherent in sth</b> , it is a natural part of it and cannot be removed from it. <b>SYN</b> intrinsic.

<b>expose sth</b>	tell the true facts about sth and show it to be bad or wrong.
<b>betrayal</b>	the act of being disloyal to sb who trusts you. <b>betray</b> V.
<b>companionship</b>	a friendly and comfortable relationship between people.
<b>portray sb/sth</b>	describe sb/sth in a piece of writing. <b>SYN</b> depict sb/sth. <b>portrayal</b> N.
<b>defy sth/sb</b>	refuse to obey a law or rule, or a person. <b>defiance</b> N. <b>defiant</b> ADJ.
<b>resilience</b>	the ability to recover and become strong again after a difficult or unpleasant situation. <b>resilient</b> ADJ.

### spotlight **embody/represent sth, endow sb with sth**

If a character in a book **embodies** or **represents** something, they show or express a particular idea or quality (**embodiment** N). If the writer **endows** a character **with** something, they give the character a particular quality or feature.

He **embodies** the spirit of hopefulness.

She is the **embodiment** of beauty.

The author **endows** the hero **with** great powers.





# 1 Add the related words.

- |                   |                      |                        |
|-------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1 betray _____ N  | 4 embody _____ N     | 7 resilience _____ ADJ |
| 2 portray _____ N | 5 prosperous _____ N | 8 mercy _____ ADJ      |
| 3 defy _____ N    | 6 insane _____ N     | 9 pity _____ ADJ       |

# 2 Circle the correct word(s).

- A commentary on a novel is a synopsis / an explanation of the main events.
- If something is alien to you, it is easy / difficult to understand.
- If you expose someone, you tell the truth / lies about them.
- A pitiful story is likely to make you feel sad / proud.
- Resilience is the ability / inability to recover from a big disappointment.
- If you are defiant, you agree / refuse to do something.

# 3 Replace the underlined word(s) with another word that has a similar meaning in the context.

- Could you just give me a summary of the novel? \_\_\_\_\_
- She is portrayed as a very virtuous character. \_\_\_\_\_
- In the end she died a rather sad death. \_\_\_\_\_
- He was one of the more affluent landowners. \_\_\_\_\_
- Generosity was one of her intrinsic qualities. \_\_\_\_\_
- There were fears he might be mad. \_\_\_\_\_
- In the novel she embodies the forces of change. \_\_\_\_\_
- She misses the enjoyment of being with other people. \_\_\_\_\_

# 4 Complete the synopsis of the novel with words from the box, in the correct form.

fate represent downfall mercy protagonist depict unlike  
endow convey defy betray embodiment

Tess is the (1) \_\_\_\_\_ in Hardy's novel that bears her name, *Tess of the D'Urbervilles*. She is (2) \_\_\_\_\_ in the novel as a daughter of nature, and Hardy (3) \_\_\_\_\_ her with so many noble qualities that she is one of his most sympathetic characters. But time and again she has to endure suffering and the brutality of the industrial age. This brutality is (4) \_\_\_\_\_ in the character of Alec D'Urberville, who is the (5) \_\_\_\_\_ of evil in the novel. The other man in her life is Angel Clare, an intelligent young freethinker, who (6) \_\_\_\_\_ convention and is happy to work on a farm rather than go to university. He and Tess fall in love and marry, but when Tess tells him that she has previously had a child, Angel feels (7) \_\_\_\_\_ and leaves her. (8) \_\_\_\_\_ is sometimes kind to Hardy's heroines, but not in this case. Tess goes back to Alec, but when Angel returns from Brazil and forgives her, she brings about her own (9) \_\_\_\_\_ by stabbing Alec to death. But (10) \_\_\_\_\_ Boldwood at the end of Hardy's earlier novel *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Tess is shown no (11) \_\_\_\_\_. She is executed for her crime, although the final incident is only (12) \_\_\_\_\_ to us by a black flag being waved over the prison.

# 5 ABOUT YOU What was the last novel you read? Can you give a synopsis of it? Write it down, or tell another student.





# 71 I can use scientific English

## A Research

### Scientific method

**S**CIENTIFIC RESEARCH proposes **hypotheses** as explanations of **phenomena**, and then designs experimental studies to gather **empirical** evidence and test them out. These **procedures** must be repeatable in order to predict future results with some certainty. A **facet** shared by other fields of

enquiry is the **conviction** that the process must also be **objective** in order to reduce a **biased** interpretation of the results. Another basic expectation is to document, **archive**, and share all data so that it is available for **scrutiny** by other scientists. There is then the opportunity to **verify** the results by **replicating** them.

### 1 Complete the tables.

ADJECTIVE	NOUN
objective	_____
biased	_____
empirical	_____
VERB	NOUN
verify	_____
_____	hypothesis
_____	scrutiny

### 2 Replace the underlined word with a word of similar meaning.

- Objectivity is just one aspect of the problem.  
f \_\_\_\_\_
- The results came under close examination.  
s \_\_\_\_\_
- At the moment it's just a working theory.  
h \_\_\_\_\_
- His views are completely objective.  
u \_\_\_\_\_
- Their personal belief is that the drug is safe.  
c \_\_\_\_\_
- Can we duplicate this experiment?  
r \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Complete the sentences.

- Experiments must follow a clear \_\_\_\_\_.
- Violence in society is not a new \_\_\_\_\_.
- We need to \_\_\_\_\_ experiments so that we can verify other people's results.
- Do you have any \_\_\_\_\_ evidence to support your theory?
- All the published results are kept in an \_\_\_\_\_ in the library.
- It's a \_\_\_\_\_ report and lacks objectivity.

### Glossary

**hypothesis** (PL **hypotheses**) a possible explanation of sth, based on a few facts but not yet proven to be true. SYN **theory**. **hypothesize** V. **hypothetical** ADJ.  
**phenomenon** (PL **phenomena**) a thing that happens or exists, especially sth that is not fully understood.  
**empirical** based on experiments or experience, not just ideas (**empirical evidence/knowledge/research**). **empiricism** N.  
**procedure** a way of doing sth, especially the usual or correct way.  
**facet (of sth)** a particular part of sth. SYN **aspect (of sth)**.  
**conviction** a strong opinion or belief (**political/moral conviction**).  
**objective** based on fact and not influenced by personal feelings or opinion. SYN **unbiased**.  
 OPP **subjective**. **objectivity** N.  
**biased** influenced by personal feelings.  
 OPP **unbiased/objective**. **bias** N.  
**archive sth** put documents in an **archive** (a set of historical documents).  
**scrutiny** careful and thorough examination (**come under close/careful scrutiny**). SYN **inspection**.  
**scrutinize sth** V.  
**verify sth** check or show that sth is true and accurate. **verification** N.  
**replicate sth** copy sth exactly. SYN **duplicate sth**.





## B Genetics

**GENE THERAPY:** *Genes* are the basic physical and functional **units** of **heredity**, and *gene therapy* is a technique for correcting **defective** genes responsible for diseases. It works by **inserting** a normal gene into the *genome* (the complete set of genes in a living cell) to replace an **abnormal** gene. A carrier **molecule** called a **vector** must be used to deliver the therapeutic gene to the patient's target **cells**. But there are many limitations:

- the rapidly dividing nature of many cells means that gene therapy may be **short-lived**;
- the normal gene may be attacked and **repelled** by the patient's **immune system**;
- gene therapy works best on disorders arising from the **mutation** of a single gene.

### Glossary

<b>genetics</b>	the scientific study of the ways in which different characteristics are passed from one generation to the next. <b>genetic</b> ADJ.	<b>short-lived</b>	only lasting for a short time. <i>OPP</i> long-lived.
<b>heredity</b>	the process by which physical and mental characteristics are passed from parents to their children. <b>hereditary</b> ADJ.	<b>repel sth</b>	successfully fight or drive away sth that is attacking you.
<b>defective</b>	having a fault or faults. <i>SYN</i> faulty. <b>defect</b> N.	<b>immune system</b>	the system in your body that produces substances to help it fight against infection and disease (giving <b>immunity</b> ).
<b>insert sth (into sth)</b>	put sth into sth else or between two things. <b>insertion</b> N.	<b>mutation</b>	(in biology) a process in which genetic material changes in structure when it is passed on. <b>mutate</b> v.
<b>abnormal</b>	different from what is expected, and often harmful or unwanted.		
<b>molecule</b>	the smallest unit (of two or more <b>atoms</b> ) that a substance can be divided into, without changing its chemical nature. <b>molecular</b> ADJ.		
<b>cell</b>	the smallest unit of living matter that can exist; all plants and animals are made up of <b>cells</b> (blood cells, brain cells).		

#### spotlight unit

A **unit** can be a thing, person, or group that is complete in itself but can also form part of something larger.

The **basic unit** of society is the family.

A **maternity unit** in a hospital.

#### 4 Circle the correct word(s).

- 1 The unit is defective / defaulty.
- 2 Is this particularly disnormal / abnormal?
- 3 The ward is in the maternity unit / system.
- 4 Arthritis can be heredity / hereditary.
- 5 The effects are short-living / short-lived.
- 6 It's your immune / immunity system.

#### 5 Complete the sentences.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ therapy has been used to restore the function of ageing brain \_\_\_\_\_ in monkeys.
- 2 The problem was caused by the \_\_\_\_\_ of the genes as they were passed on.
- 3 Doctors \_\_\_\_\_ a tube into the patient's stomach.
- 4 The body has to be able to \_\_\_\_\_ the abnormal cells that are attacking it.
- 5 A \_\_\_\_\_ disorder is a disease caused by an abnormality in someone's DNA.
- 6 If an illness is passed from parents to their children, it's a problem of \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 The technique involves the \_\_\_\_\_ of genes for nerve growth into the brain.
- 8 In \_\_\_\_\_ science, a \_\_\_\_\_ is a stable unit comprising two or more atoms.





## 72 I can use technical English 🗣️

### Skyscrapers:



### design and construction

Every skyscraper is designed within physical **constraints** such as climate and geology, and then has to **comply with** the most **stringent** safety regulations. It also has to **meet the needs of** its **occupants**, and satisfy the aesthetic objectives of both owner and architect.

Design engineers translate the architect's vision into a detailed plan that is structurally sound. As each skyscraper is unique, models of the building must undergo **rigorous** tests in wind tunnels to **determine** whether they can **withstand** the effects of high winds. If tests show the building will **sway** excessively, designers may add mechanical devices to **counteract** or restrict **motion**.

In the construction, engineers dig a massive hole in the rock and then establish the **footings**<sup>1</sup>, which form the base that **anchors** the building. Steel or **reinforced concrete** columns are inserted in the footings, and concrete is poured on top.

**Vertical** supports are put in place by **cranes**<sup>2</sup>; these support the vertical **load**. Horizontal **beams** and steel **girders** are then placed at a 90 degree **angle** to the vertical columns; these hold the building together. Exterior walls merely enclose the structure, and are constructed by attaching **panels**<sup>3</sup> of material such as glass or metal to the building's framework. This is often done by **bolting** them to **brackets** secured to the floors or support columns. ■

### Glossary

<b>constraint</b>	a thing which limits your freedom to do sth ( <b>physical/financial/political constraints</b> ). <b>SYN restriction</b> . <b>constrain</b> v.
<b>comply with sth</b>	obey a rule, order, law, etc. <b>compliance</b> n.
<b>stringent</b>	(of a law, rule, etc.) very strict.
<b>meet the needs of sb/sth</b>	satisfy the needs of sb/sth.
<b>occupant</b>	a person who lives or works in a particular room or building ( <b>residents</b> live or stay in a building, but don't work in a building).
<b>rigorous</b>	done carefully and with great attention to detail. <b>SYN thorough</b> .
<b>determine sth</b>	calculate sth exactly. <b>SYN establish sth</b> .
<b>withstand sth</b>	be strong enough to be unharmed by great heat, cold, pressure, etc. <b>SYNS resist sth, stand up to sth</b> .
<b>sway</b>	move slowly from side to side.
<b>counteract sth</b>	do sth to reduce or prevent the bad effects of sth.
<b>motion</b>	the act or process of moving (sth can be <b>in motion</b> ).
<b>anchor sth</b>	fix sth firmly in position so that it cannot move.
<b>reinforced</b>	made stronger, especially by the addition of another material.
<b>concrete</b>	a mixture of sand, cement, small stones, and water, which forms a hard building material.
<b>vertical</b>	going straight up or down from a surface.
<b>load</b>	the amount of weight pressing down on sth (a <b>vertical load</b> ).
<b>beam</b>	a long piece of wood or metal, used to support a weight above.
<b>girder</b>	a strong metal beam in large buildings.
<b>angle</b>	the space between two lines or surfaces that join ( <b>angle sth</b> v move or position sth so it is not straight; it is <b>at an angle</b> ).
<b>bolt sth to sth</b>	fasten sth to sth with a <b>bolt</b> (= a long piece of metal).
<b>bracket</b>	a piece of metal or wood fixed to a wall to support sth.







**1** Circle the odd one out.

- |                  |               |               |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1 a) restriction | b) compliance | c) constraint |
| 2 a) stringent   | b) rigorous   | c) thorough   |
| 3 a) beam        | b) girder     | c) bracket    |
| 4 a) motion      | b) anchor     | c) sway       |
| 5 a) counteract  | b) determine  | c) establish  |
| 6 a) withstand   | b) resist     | c) comply     |
| 7 a) angle       | b) concrete   | c) steel      |
| 8 a) occupant    | b) constraint | c) resident   |
| 9 a) panels      | b) crane      | c) footings   |
| 10 a) bracket    | b) bolt       | c) load       |

**2** Replace the underlined word(s) with a single word of similar meaning.

- 1 We haven't managed to determine the extent of the damage. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 The building is moving from side to side. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 You can't do anything once it is in motion. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 We hope the structure will be able to stand up to the pressure. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 They hope this will satisfy the needs of the planners. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Most architects have to operate with various financial restrictions. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Basically, the fence comprises six rectangular pieces of wood. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 We need to firmly fix it to the ground. \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 High-rise buildings have to comply with very strict fire regulations. \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 They have very thorough tests before they are given the go-ahead. \_\_\_\_\_

**3** Complete the texts with suitable words.

With a skyscraper, the effects of the wind are a greater problem than the weight of the structure, so designers have to ensure that the building can (1) \_\_\_\_\_ strong winds, and will not (2) \_\_\_\_\_ enough to cause the (3) \_\_\_\_\_ physical or emotional discomfort.

In the design, engineers will have to (4) \_\_\_\_\_ whether the steel (5) \_\_\_\_\_ are strong enough to support the vertical (6) \_\_\_\_\_. If not, engineers will have to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the pressure of the weight, and one common method is to add more (8) \_\_\_\_\_ concrete around the supports in order to stiffen the central core of the building.





## 73 I can use abbreviations 🎧

### A Electronic messaging

NB Abbreviations in text messaging are changing all the time.

#### Text Language Guidelines

- VOWELS are often removed, e.g. **WKND** = weekend, **sry** = sorry, **pls** = please, **xlnt** = excellent, **thx/tnx** = thanks, **msg** = message, **spk** = speak, **yr** = your OR you're
  - WORDS can be omitted, especially articles, prepositions, and pronouns.
  - SINGLE LETTERS replace words with the same sound:  
**b** = be, **c** = see, **d** = the, **n** = in OR and, **r** = are, **u** = you
  - SINGLE NUMBERS replace words and parts of words with the same sound:  
**8** = -ate, e.g. **GR8** = great, **l8r** = later; **4** = for, -fore e.g. **b4** = before; **2** = to, too
  - / is used to show missing letters, e.g. **w/** = with, **w/o** = without, **s/t** = something
  - COMMON ABBREVIATIONS (also used in chatrooms and email)  
**2day**, **2nite**, **2moro** = today, tonight, tomorrow
- ttyl** = talk to you later  
**asap** = as soon as possible  
**bfn** OR **b4n** = bye for now  
**hand** = have a nice day  
**cul8r** = see you later  
**fyi** = for your information  
**atb** = all the best  
**btw** = by the way  
**lol** = lots of love OR laughing out loud  
**imho** = in my humble opinion (humorous, = in my opinion, though I am not an important person)  
**x** = kiss
- myob** = mind your own business  
**iirc** = if I remember/recall correctly
- gtg** = (I've) got to go (now)  
**prolly** OR **prbly** = probably
- EMOTICONS (you have to read some of these **sideways** by turning your head to the left)  
 ☺ OR :) = happy or amused (a **smiley**)  
 ;) = **winking** (showing you are joking)  
 ☹ OR :( = unhappy or displeased  
 :-/ = doubtful or confused  
 ;-x = my lips are **sealed** (I won't tell anyone)



#### Glossary

- mind your own business** a rude way of telling sb not to ask questions about or get involved in sth you don't want them to know about. **SYN** **it's none of your business.**
- recall sth** remember sth. **SYN** **recollect sth. recollection** N.
- sideways** to, towards, or from the side.
- wink (at sb)** see picture



- seal sth** close sth very firmly so that nothing can get in or out.



# 1 Cross out any wrong words. Write the correct word(s) at the end.

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1 imho = in my humorous opinion _____ | 7 2day = two days _____                |
| 2 btw = by the weekend _____          | 8 lol = lots of laughs _____           |
| 3 fyi = for your interest _____       | 9 ;-x = my letters are sealed _____    |
| 4 hand = have a nice drink _____      | 10 :-/ = doubtful or concerned _____   |
| 5 :( = unhappy or tired _____         | 11 myob = make your own business _____ |
| 6 ttyl = turn to you later _____      | 12 iirc = if I read correctly _____    |

## 2 Translate the messages into standard English.

Hi, thx 4 yr msg. R u goin 2 c Sally ths wknd? Pls giv her lol :) Alice

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Hi cn u fone me asap? S/t important 2 tel u! ;-x atb Suzie

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Dinr lst nite wz xInt. tnx ☺ Wil u b n 2nite? Hope 2 cul8r Joe

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Cd u spk 2 yr dad b4 d wknd? Iirc he wil b n 2moro. Lol Steffi

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Sry bt im proly goin 2 b l8 4 d mtng. Wil rng u w/ mor info l8r. Strt w/o me. Bfn Zoe

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

## 3 Write these words or phrases in text messaging language.

- today 2day
- 1 great \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 thanks \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 see you later \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 in my humble opinion \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 excellent \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 before \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 lots of love \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 without \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 I won't tell anyone \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 tomorrow \_\_\_\_\_





## B Common abbreviations

The abbreviations used here in spoken English are all pronounced as individual letters.

Abbreviations used in written English		Spoken or written abbreviations	
<b>sae</b>	stamped (self-)addressed envelope	<b>B &amp; B</b>	bed and breakfast = a small hotel and the service provided.
<b>PS</b>	postscript (written at the end of a letter to add extra information)		closed-circuit television, often used in a building to prevent crime.
<b>encl.</b>	document(s) enclosed	<b>CEO</b>	chief executive officer
<b>inc.</b>	(in advertisements) included / including, e.g. <i>batteries not inc.</i>	<b>PC</b>	<b>politically correct</b> (of language or behaviour) aiming to avoid offending anyone, e.g. <i>It's more PC to refer to old people as elderly.</i>
<b>incl.</b>	inclusive, e.g. <i>12–24 June incl.</i>		
<b>attn</b> or <b>fao</b>	for the attention of, e.g. <i>Sales Dept</i> <b>attn</b> Doug Smith	<b>HQ</b>	<b>headquarters</b> = the main offices of an organization.
<b>PTO</b>	please turn over	<b>ETA</b>	estimated time of arrival
<b>RSVP</b>	(on invitations) please reply (from French 'Répondez s'il vous plaît')	<b>IQ</b>	intelligence quotient = a measure of sb's intelligence using special tests ( <b>a high/low IQ</b> ).
<b>c/o</b>	care of (used on a letter to sb staying at another person's house)	<b>TLC</b>	<b>tender loving care</b> = the sympathy and support you show sb to make them feel better.
<b>NB</b>	used to make sb notice some important information (from Latin 'nota bene')	<b>DIY</b>	do-it-yourself = home repairs and decoration you do yourself rather than paying sb to do it.

### 4 True or false? Write T or F.

- You use NB to highlight something. \_\_\_\_\_
- You write your address on an sae. \_\_\_\_\_
- Big companies usually have an HQ. \_\_\_\_\_
- 'incl.' and 'encl.' mean the same. \_\_\_\_\_
- You see ETA on travel information. \_\_\_\_\_
- PTO means 'please take over'. \_\_\_\_\_
- RSVP means 'tell me if you can come'. \_\_\_\_\_
- You have to pay someone for DIY. \_\_\_\_\_

### 5 Complete the texts with suitable abbreviations.

Mary Collins, (1) \_\_\_\_\_  
Mr and Mrs E Brooks,  
34 Sydney Hill,  
Devon  
TX7 5GN

(3) \_\_\_\_\_ Jeff Sergeant,  
DELTA,  
87 Riverside,  
Milton Keynes  
MY6 2AJ

... a room reservation for  
12–14 July  
(5) \_\_\_\_\_, i.e.  
leaving 15 July ...

See you soon, love Mina

(2) \_\_\_\_\_ I nearly forgot –  
Jackie's pregnant again!

As requested, I have enclosed an (4) \_\_\_\_\_  
for further details of the campaign.

### 6 Complete the sentences with suitable abbreviations.

- He has risen through the company to become the \_\_\_\_\_ – with all the stress that entails.
- She's quite hard of hearing – which is a more \_\_\_\_\_ way of saying 'deaf'.
- He's had a terrible time – he really needs a bit of \_\_\_\_\_. Let's invite him for a drink.
- We found a gorgeous little \_\_\_\_\_ in a remote village. The owners were really kind.
- I'm sure they'll get the pickpocket – there is \_\_\_\_\_ all over the town.
- Just having a high \_\_\_\_\_ doesn't mean you'll be any more successful than anyone else.



# Review: Written English

## Unit 67

1 Find five pairs of synonyms in the box.

straightforward   complicated   abrupt   unnecessary   brusque  
convoluted   easy to understand   relevant   superfluous   pertinent

\_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_   \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_   \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_

**A Z** more words: *indent, pompous, waffle, to whom it may concern*

## Unit 68

1 Complete the table with a formal link word and its less formal equivalent.

although   prior to   in spite of   albeit   in view of   thus  
considering   notwithstanding   before   therefore

Formal link word(s)	Less formal equivalent

**A Z** more words: *nonetheless, likewise, herewith, herein*

## Unit 69

1 Complete the tables.

Verb	Noun
evaluate	
condemn	
assert	
summarize	
	hypothesis
	justification
	example
	outline



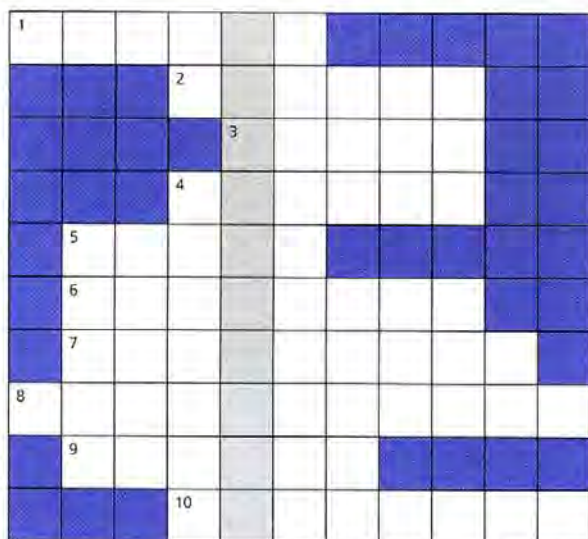
## 2 Yes or no? Write Y or N.

- 1 If someone committed a serious crime, would most people condone it? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 If you adopt a stance, do you sit on the fence? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 If you explore an issue, do you analyse it? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 If you write a narrative, does it need to be coherent? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 If you highlight an issue, do you condemn it? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 If someone has a good command of English, do they use appropriate register? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 If you have to outline an argument, should you give a lot of detail? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 If you write a discursive essay, are you producing an outline of a story? \_\_\_\_\_

**A-Z** more words: *account for sth*, *cross-reference*, **cite** your sources, *plagiarism*, *elucidate*, *acknowledgements*

## Unit 70

- 1 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out another word. What is it, and what does it mean?



- 1 portray someone or something in a piece of writing
- 2 communicate ideas and feelings to someone
- 3 a kind willingness to forgive someone you have power over
- 4 express or show an idea or quality
- 5 strange and difficult to understand
- 6 a complete loss of power, money, etc.
- 7 a description of someone or something in a piece of writing
- 8 the main character in a book, film, etc.
- 9 be disloyal to someone who trusts you in a way that hurts them
- 10 a summary of something longer, like a book or film

**A-Z** more words: *parody*, *allusion*, *analogy*, *understatement*, *anticlimax*, *flashback*

## Unit 71

- 1 One word is either wrong or missing in these definitions. Make any necessary corrections.

- 1 A phenomenon happens or exists, and is usually fully understood. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 A procedure is a way of describing something. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 A cell is the largest unit of living matter that can exist. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Someone who is biased is not influenced by their feelings and opinions. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 In biology, mutation is a process in which genetic material declines when it is passed on. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 If you replicate something, you replace it. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 If you repel something, you unsuccessfully fight something that is attacking you. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 A conviction is a weak opinion or belief. \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the word in capitals.

- |   |            |
|---|------------|
| 1 We can only _____ at this point.              | HYPOTHESIS |
| 2 This disease is often _____.                  | HEREDITY   |
| 3 We will _____ the information carefully.      | SCRUTINY   |
| 4 They think it's a _____ gene.                 | DEFECT     |
| 5 Her views are objective and completely _____. | BIAS       |
| 6 We need _____ of these details.               | VERIFY     |
| 7 It doesn't guarantee _____.                   | IMMUNE     |
| 8 It's a branch of _____ science.               | MOLECULE   |

**A Z** more words: *adjacent, binary, correlation, fusion, induce, linear, synthesis, spectrum, segment, residue*

## Unit 72

### 1 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

- The central core of a building is often made of reinforced. \_\_\_\_\_
- Large steel are placed between the vertical columns to hold the building together. \_\_\_\_\_
- The exterior walls are made by attaching made of glass or metal to the building. \_\_\_\_\_
- Skyscrapers undergo rigorous tests to whether they can withstand high winds. \_\_\_\_\_
- All support beams are lifted by and then put in place. \_\_\_\_\_
- The design has to with strict safety regulations before construction begins. \_\_\_\_\_
- All buildings have to conform to physical imposed by climate and geology. \_\_\_\_\_
- Mechanical devices may be added to or resist motion. \_\_\_\_\_
- All construction has to go through the most safety checks. \_\_\_\_\_
- The building's support columns are usually in the footings. \_\_\_\_\_

**A Z** more words: *aggregate, bond/bonding, cladding, welding, rivet, axis, contraction, density*

## Unit 73

### 1 What do these abbreviations stand for?

- |                 |               |                |
|-----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1 B & B = _____ | 5 DIY = _____ | 9 fao = _____  |
| 2 PTO = _____   | 6 CEO = _____ | 10 IQ = _____  |
| 3 HQ = _____    | 7 PC = _____  | 11 ETA = _____ |
| 4 CCTV = _____  | 8 c/o = _____ | 12 TLC = _____ |








**A Z** more abbreviations: *A & E, AGM, AOB, DOB, IMF, WHO, YHA, VSO, VIP*




## 74 I can use prefixes

### A Mis-, inter-, ill-

Professor Morton's lecture was terrible:

-  he **miscalculated** the time
-  it was full of **misconceptions**
-  his handout was full of **misprints**
-  he **misjudged** the audience
-  there was no **interaction** with the audience
-  his jokes completely **misfired**
-  it was **ill-informed** and **ill-prepared**

Prefix	Word and meaning	Other words
<b>mis-</b> = bad(ly) or wrong(ly)	<b>miscalculate sth</b> estimate a time, amount, etc. wrongly. <b>misconception</b> a <b>concept</b> (= idea) which is not based on correct information or is not clearly understood. <b>misconceived</b> ADJ. <b>misprint</b> a small mistake, e.g. a spelling mistake in a book, paper, etc. <b>misjudge sth/sb</b> make a wrong judgement about sth or sb. <b>misfire</b> (of a plan or joke) go wrong.	<b>misdiagnose sth</b> be wrong about what illness sb has. <b>misinform sb (about sth)</b> give sb the wrong information about sth. <b>mismanage sth</b> manage or deal with sth badly. <b>SYN mishandle sth.</b> <b>mislay sth</b> lose sth for a time. <b>SYN misplace sth.</b> <b>mistreat sth/sb</b> treat sth/sb in a bad or cruel way.
<b>inter-</b> = between; from one to another	<b>interaction</b> the activity of being with and talking to people; the way that people react to each other. <b>interact (with sb)</b> v.	<b>interdependent</b> consisting of parts that depend on each other. <b>interrelated</b> (of two things) closely related and affecting each other.
<b>ill-</b> + PP = badly ( <i>ill-</i> is an adverb but can act like a prefix)	<b>ill-informed</b> having little or no knowledge of sth. <b>ill-prepared</b> badly planned or organized.	<b>ill-treated</b> treated in a cruel or unkind way. <b>ill-advised</b> not sensible; likely to have a bad effect.

**1**  Cover the table. Write the prefixes.

- |                    |                   |                  |
|--------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| 1 _____ action     | 5 _____ dependent | 9 _____ lay      |
| 2 _____ conception | 6 _____ treat     | 10 _____ advised |
| 3 _____ diagnose   | 7 _____ fire      | 11 _____ related |
| 4 _____ prepared   | 8 _____ informed  | 12 _____ judge   |

**2** Complete the sentences on the right using a word beginning with *mis-*, *ill-*, or *inter-*.

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1 I was given inaccurate information.          | I was _____.                         |
| 2 They dealt with the situation badly.         | The situation was _____.             |
| 3 The animals were handled in a cruel manner.  | The animals were _____.              |
| 4 She hardly knew anything about the topic.    | She was _____.                       |
| 5 Someone lost the documents.                  | The documents were _____.            |
| 6 The newspaper's full of typing mistakes.     | The article was full of _____.       |
| 7 Most people's ideas about it are wrong.      | Most people's ideas are _____.       |
| 8 They didn't identify the illness accurately. | The illness was _____.               |
| 9 I thought I had enough, but I got it wrong.  | I thought I had enough, but I _____. |
| 10 The two things affect one another.          | The two things are _____.            |



## B Re-, de-, anti-, over-, under-

Prefix	Example	Other words
<b>re-</b> again	We need to <b>reappraise</b> the idea. = examine the idea again to see if it needs changing. <b>SYN reassess.</b>	<b>refuel</b> put more fuel in a plane. <b>rewrite, reconstruct, reinvent, retell</b>
<b>de-</b> 1 indicating reversal or removal	That is now <b>declassified</b> information. = officially no longer secret. <b>OPP classified.</b> I <b>defrosted</b> the fridge. = removed ice from the fridge.	<b>depopulated</b> (of an area) from which all or most of the people have moved away. <b>OPP populated.</b> <b>decentralize, destabilize</b> <b>decaffeinated</b> with the caffeine removed.
<b>de-</b> 2 indicating reduction	The currency was <b>devalued</b> . = the value of the currency was officially reduced.	<b>depreciate</b> become less valuable over time.
<b>anti-</b> 1 opposed to	We went on an <b>anti-war</b> demonstration. = opposed to war.	<b>anti-racism, anti-drugs policy, anti-virus software</b>
<b>anti-</b> 2 preventing; curing	He took <b>anti-inflammatory</b> drugs. = used to reduce swelling and pain.	<b>anti-depressants</b> drugs used to treat depression.
<b>over-</b> indicating 'too much/many'	Why do airlines <b>overbook</b> flights? = sell more tickets than are in fact available.	<b>overrated</b> If sth is <b>overrated</b> , it is believed by some people to be better than it is. <b>OPP underrated.</b> <b>overdose</b> N, <b>overemphasize, overload</b>
<b>under-</b> indicating 'not enough'	The child was <b>undernourished</b> . = unhealthy because of a lack of food. <b>SYNS malnourished, underfed.</b>	<b>underprivileged</b> having less money and fewer advantages than most people. <b>SYN disadvantaged.</b>

### spotlight **un- and under-**

There is a difference between **un-** and **under-**.

An **unemployed** person doesn't have a job; an **underemployed** person doesn't have enough work to do, or their skills are not made use of. More examples: **uncooked/undercooked, undeveloped/underdeveloped, unpaid/underpaid, unsold** and **undersold** = sold at a price lower than the real value.

- 3 Find the end of each word. Circle the ones which can be preceded by *de-*.  
racism frost privileged depressant populated assess classified fuel fed value book

- 4 Circle the correct form(s). Sometimes both words are correct.

- |                                   |                                  |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 unsold / undersold              | 4 underrated / overrated         |
| 2 underadvantaged / disadvantaged | 5 unprivileged / underprivileged |
| 3 anti-war / overwar              | 6 unpaid / underpaid             |

- 5 Complete the dialogues.

- Will this cream reduce the swelling? ~ Yes, it's \_\_\_\_\_.
- Is there enough work for Joe in the factory? ~ No, he's rather \_\_\_\_\_.
- Has the painting gone up in value? ~ No, sadly it has actually \_\_\_\_\_.
- I keep getting computer viruses. ~ You need some \_\_\_\_\_.
- We should consider that plan again. ~ I agree; it's time to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- My chicken's still red in the middle. ~ Don't eat it – they've \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- Why was she rushed to hospital? ~ She was on drugs and took an \_\_\_\_\_.
- That child is terribly thin, isn't he? ~ Yes, if you ask me, he's \_\_\_\_\_.





## 75 I can use suffixes

### A -ize and -ify

The suffixes *-ize* (also *-ise*) and *-ify* are added to adjectives and nouns to form verbs, indicating 'become or make something like (the adjective or noun)'. Adding *-ify* may change the spelling of the verb.

Noun/Adj	Example with -ize	Meaning
legal ADJ	Some people want to <b>legalize</b> drugs.	make sth legal.
nation N	The government is planning to <b>nationalize</b> the railways.	put an industry or company under the control of the government. OPP <b>privatize</b> .
vandal N (person)	Youths have <b>vandalized</b> the bus shelter.	damage or destroy sth for no reason. <b>vandalism</b> N.
character N	The coastline is <b>characterized</b> by very steep cliffs.	give sth its typical quality or feature. <b>characteristic</b> ADJ.
visual ADJ	I can't <b>visualize</b> what the room will look like.	form a picture of sth in your mind. SYN <b>imagine</b> .

Also: **economize**, **popularize**, **modernize**, **personalize**, **commercialize**, **finalize**, **specialize**, **industrialize**, **socialize**, **generalize**, **familiarize**, **itemize**, **equalize**, **standardize**, **symbolize**

Noun/Adj	Example with -ify	Meaning
intense ADJ	The news has <b>intensified</b> speculation that the chairman may resign.	<b>intense</b> (of feelings) very strong. If you <b>intensify</b> sth, you make it greater in strength or degree. SYN <b>heighten</b> sth.
solid N, ADJ	When the liquid cools, it <b>solidifies</b> .	become solid or make sth solid.
pure ADJ	These tablets <b>purify</b> the water.	If sth is <b>pure</b> it isn't mixed with anything. If you <b>purify</b> sth, you remove any dirty substances to make it pure.
quantity N	It's hard to <b>quantify</b> how much I need.	express sth as an amount or number.
peace N	One of the men tried to <b>pacify</b> the angry crowd.	make sb who is angry become quiet and calm. SYN <b>placate</b> sb.

Also: **electrify**, **simplify**, **identify**, **exemplify** (= give examples), **clarify** (= make sth clear)

#### 1 What are the verbs related to these nouns or adjectives?

- |                   |                    |                  |
|-------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 1 character _____ | 4 symbol _____     | 7 electric _____ |
| 2 solid _____     | 5 legal _____      | 8 peace _____    |
| 3 clear _____     | 6 industrial _____ | 9 example _____  |

#### 2 Replace the underlined words with a verb ending in -ize or -ify in the correct form.

- We will all have to spend less money. \_\_\_\_\_
- The presence of the police heightened the tension in the crowd. \_\_\_\_\_
- After all these years, I can't imagine what his sister will look like. \_\_\_\_\_
- All the bus shelters have been damaged by gangs of youths. \_\_\_\_\_
- The promise of action did not placate the angry demonstrators. \_\_\_\_\_
- We need to remove any dirty or harmful substances from the water. \_\_\_\_\_
- First they nationalized the railway, now they plan to sell it off. \_\_\_\_\_
- Can we express in an amount how much damage has been done? \_\_\_\_\_



### 3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

Has your government recently nationalized or privatized any industries? \_\_\_\_\_  
 Do you have much vandalism? What things are vandalized? \_\_\_\_\_  
 Is there currently anything against the law that you would like to legalize? \_\_\_\_\_  
 Does your country specialize in making any particular type of product? If so, what? \_\_\_\_\_

## B -proof, -free

Buy our **foolproof** guide to dressing for your body shape.

Interested in **tax-free** earnings or **inflation-proof** savings? Contact us today.

Take the heat out of cooking with our **ovenproof** dishes.

Buy a plasma TV and get 12 months' **interest-free** credit.

**Magnetic childproof** safety locks.

No other lock compares!

### Glossary

#### foolproof

If sth is **foolproof** it is so well designed that it cannot go wrong or be used wrongly (a **foolproof machine/method**).

#### tax-free

**Tax-free** earnings are earnings that you don't have to pay tax on.

#### inflation-proof savings

savings that are safe because they are guaranteed to go up as much as inflation.

#### ovenproof

able to be used safely inside an oven.

#### interest-free

**Interest-free** credit is a loan that you don't have to pay interest on.

#### magnetic

ADJ, **magnet** N (see picture).



#### childproof

If sth is **childproof** it is designed so that children cannot open or use it.

### spotlight -proof, -free

**-proof** means safe against the thing mentioned, e.g. a **waterproof** coat doesn't let water through; a **soundproof** room doesn't let sound through; a **bullet-proof** vest (see picture) protects the wearer from bullets (also **bullet-proof armour/windows**).

**-free** means without the thing mentioned, e.g. if you buy **duty-free** cigarettes you don't have to pay **duty** (= tax); a **trouble-free** life is a life without worry or anxiety.



### 4 Choose the best noun from the right for each of the adjectives on the left.

trouble-free _____	tax-free _____	room	perfume
soundproof _____	foolproof _____	locks	life
childproof _____	duty-free _____	income	method

### 5 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- If you're doing some cooking, use the other dishes; these aren't \_\_\_\_\_.
- You can buy most fridges and freezers with \_\_\_\_\_ credit.
- Anyone can use this machine: it's \_\_\_\_\_.
- Famous people sometimes travel in cars with \_\_\_\_\_ windows for security.
- You need to make sure that any savings you have are \_\_\_\_\_.
- My feet are wet. These boots aren't \_\_\_\_\_.





## 76 I can use words with prepositions

### A Noun + preposition

Noun	Example with a preposition	Meaning
<b>excerpt</b>	<i>She's reading an <b>excerpt from</b> her latest novel.</i>	a short piece taken from a book, piece of music, etc. <b>SYN extract</b> (from a film it is a <b>clip</b> ).
<b>remedy</b>	<i>What's the <b>remedy for</b> this crisis? It is used as a <b>remedy for</b> colds.</i>	1 a way of dealing with a problem. <b>SYN solution</b> . 2 a treatment to cure an illness, reduce pain, etc.
<b>aptitude</b>	<i>I have no <b>aptitude for</b> languages.</i>	natural skill or ability in doing sth.
<b>restriction</b>	<i>Are there <b>restrictions on</b> parking here?</i>	a law or rule that limits what you can do, or what can happen.
<b>compilation</b>	<i>The CD is a <b>compilation of</b> her best singles.</i>	different items, especially music or writing, that are brought together in a performance, CD, or book.
<b>disregard</b>	<i>He shows a complete <b>disregard for</b> his own safety.</i>	a lack of care or concern about sth (you can also <b>have no regard for sth</b> ).
<b>complex</b>	<i>He has a <b>complex about</b> his nose.</i>	an abnormal worry or concern about sth.
<b>substitute</b>	<i>You can use honey as a <b>substitute for</b> sugar.</i>	a thing that you use or have instead of the one you usually use or have.
<b>grudge</b>	<i>He has a <b>grudge against</b> his boss.</i>	a feeling of dislike for sb because of sth they have done to you.
<b>involvement</b>	<i>They have some <b>involvement with</b> a number of companies.</i>	the act of participating in sth.
<b>ban</b>	<i>There's a total <b>ban on</b> smoking.</i>	a rule that says sth is not allowed.

#### spotlight **control of/over sth/sb**

You can **gain/keep/lose control of sth/sb**.  
*The army has **gained control of** the city.*

You can also **have control over sb/sth**.  
*The parents **have no control over** their children.*

#### 1 Circle the correct word.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 a grudge <b>for</b> / <b>against</b> someone      | 6 an aptitude <b>for</b> / <b>about</b> something |
| 2 a ban <b>on</b> / <b>of</b> alcohol               | 7 a disregard <b>of</b> / <b>for</b> something    |
| 3 a substitute <b>for</b> / <b>of</b> something     | 8 involvement <b>with</b> / <b>for</b> something  |
| 4 a complex <b>on</b> / <b>about</b> something      | 9 an extract <b>from</b> / <b>for</b> something   |
| 5 have control <b>over</b> / <b>about</b> something | 10 a remedy <b>for</b> / <b>of</b> something      |

#### 2 Complete the sentences with a suitable noun.

- He's a thoughtless man, and has absolutely no \_\_\_\_\_ for other people's feelings.
- The album is largely a \_\_\_\_\_ of her old songs.
- I had to read an \_\_\_\_\_ from her autobiography.
- Barry has had a \_\_\_\_\_ against me ever since I was promoted over him.
- I've never had an \_\_\_\_\_ for figures or mental arithmetic.
- They showed a couple of \_\_\_\_\_ from Almodóvar's latest film.
- Is there any \_\_\_\_\_ on the number of books we can borrow from the library?
- She's lost \_\_\_\_\_ of the movement in her left arm.



## B Adjective or verb + preposition

**H**aving **embarked on** industrial action, the air traffic controllers are now **intent upon** causing maximum disruption, and most flights will be **subject to** long delays.

**S**ome of the workers remain stubbornly **resistant to** change, but they are no longer **representative of** the majority, who now seem **reconciled to** the new proposals.

**P**roblems may **stem from** the fact that a new computer isn't always fully **compatible with** existing equipment, and people may have to learn to **live with** this.

**T**he way these women are **dependent on** their husbands, and still **subservient to** them, is **reminiscent of** life in the 19th century.

### Glossary

<b>embark on sth</b>	start to do sth new or difficult.
<b>intent upon/on sth</b>	determined to do sth.
<b>subject to sth</b>	likely to be affected by sth, especially sth bad.
<b>stem from sth</b>	be the result of sth.
<b>compatible with sth/sb</b>	able to be used with sth or exist with sb without causing problems.
<b>live with sth</b>	accept an unpleasant situation.
<b>resistant to sth</b>	opposed to sth and trying to stop it happening.
<b>representative of sth/sb</b>	typical of a particular group or thing.
<b>reconciled to sth</b>	able to accept a bad situation that you cannot change. SYN <b>resigned to sth</b> .
<b>dependent on sb/sth</b>	needing sb/sth in order to survive or be successful.
<b>subservient to sb</b>	always obeying sb and doing what they want.
<b>reminiscent of sth/sb</b>	tending to remind people of sth/sb.

### 3 Match 1–6 with a–f.

- |                                  |                                 |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 He's a representative ...      | a on a new venture.             |
| 2 The times are subject ...      | b with each other.              |
| 3 They plan to embark ...        | c upon winning the competition. |
| 4 The two are not compatible ... | d of the group.                 |
| 5 He is still intent ...         | e from the earlier injury.      |
| 6 The difficulties stem ...      | f to change.                    |

### 4 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.

- Would you say he's typical? ~ Yes, he's fairly \_\_\_\_\_ of the group.
- Does he need Marion? ~ Yes, he's completely \_\_\_\_\_ on her.
- Does she do whatever he tells her? ~ Yes, she's totally \_\_\_\_\_ to him.
- Do they accept the changes? ~ I think they're \_\_\_\_\_ to them now.
- He's determined to succeed, isn't he? ~ Yes, he seems \_\_\_\_\_ on pursuing his goals.
- Are the trains running on time yet? ~ No, they're still \_\_\_\_\_ to delays.
- He can't change his situation, can he? ~ No, he'll just have to \_\_\_\_\_ with it.
- They hate any kind of change. ~ Yes, they're extremely \_\_\_\_\_ to it.
- Why don't they get on with each other? ~ It \_\_\_\_\_ from a row they had ages ago.
- It's quite a strange piece of music. ~ Yes, it's \_\_\_\_\_ of 1980s rock music.





## 77 I can use prepositional phrases

### A A range of prepositional phrases

A Did she get the job **on merit**?

B Yes, **on balance** she was the right choice.

A The journey must have been boring.

B **On the contrary**, it was fantastic!

A **On reflection** I wish we'd stayed in London.

B Yes, I wouldn't have moved **by choice**.

A She rings me every day **without fail**.

B She must be very keen on you!

A Do you have to travel **at short notice**?

B Yes, I get a call and have to leave **at once**.

A Is that a new camera?

B Yes. I got it **in exchange for** my TV.

A There's a job going at the studios.

B Yeah, Basil mentioned it **in passing**.

A I can't be bothered to cook.

B Well, **at the very least**, have a burger.

### Glossary

**on merit** according to how good sb is, and for no other reason.

**on balance** after considering all the facts.  
SYN **all things considered**.

**on the contrary** used for emphasizing that sth is true even though it is the opposite of what has been suggested.

**on reflection** after thinking carefully about sth.

**by choice** as a thing you have chosen.

**without fail** 1 always. 2 When you tell sb to do sth **without fail**, you are telling them they must do it (*Be home by 10.00 without fail!*).

**at short notice** with very little warning (also **at a moment's notice**).

**at once** immediately. SYNS **right away**, **straightaway**.

**in exchange for sth** If you give sb sth **in exchange for** sth, you give them sth and they give you sth of a similar value or type.

**in passing** If you say sth **in passing**, you say it while you are talking about sth else.

**at the very least** as an absolute minimum.

### 1 Circle the correct word.

1 He came **in** / **at** a moment's notice.

2 **On** / **In** balance, that's the best one.

3 She mentioned it **on** / **in** passing.

4 He comes every day **without fail** / **failing**.

5 She got the job **in** / **on** merit alone.

6 We have to leave **right way** / **away**.

7 No, **on** / **in** the contrary, we loved the show!

8 She got it **in exchange** / **change** for a favour.

### 2 Complete the sentences using words from left and right.

at on at by  
without on at in

once fail exchange for balance  
the very least choice short notice reflection

1 I drive to work, but I'd never do it \_\_\_\_\_ if I could avoid it.

2 You should take the dessert out of the freezer and serve it \_\_\_\_\_.

3 I thought I understood it, but \_\_\_\_\_ I realized it was more complicated.

4 They should give me my money back or \_\_\_\_\_ offer to exchange the shoes.

5 We're offering her a free room in our house \_\_\_\_\_ looking after our child.

6 I need you to finish this project by tomorrow morning, \_\_\_\_\_.

7 It may be difficult to find someone to do the job \_\_\_\_\_, but we'll try.

8 I would say that, \_\_\_\_\_, the best thing is to do nothing for the moment.





## B More phrases

### GOVERNMENT **OUT OF TOUCH** **WITH PUBLIC MOOD**

Road named **in honour of**  
Nelson Mandela

**Giant** insurance firm **under**  
**investigation** for fraud

### GENE THERAPY TRIAL **ON HOLD**

Statue unveiled **in memory of**  
Mother Theresa

Couple found **in possession of** cocaine

New shopping centre **under construction**

Traffic flow improved **by means of**  
better public transport

UNIONS WORK HARD TO KEEP  
GOVERNMENT **IN OFFICE**

Film release delayed **out of**  
**respect for bereaved** family

## Glossary

<b>out of touch (with sth)</b>	no longer having recent knowledge or information about sth. <b>OPP in touch</b> (also <b>out of luck</b> , <b>out of sight</b> ).
<b>in honour of sb/sth</b>	in order to show respect and admiration for sb or sth.
<b>giant</b>	(of a company) very large and successful.
<b>on hold</b>	delayed until a later time or date.
<b>in memory of sb/sth</b>	in honour of, and to remind people of, sb who has died.
<b>in possession of sth</b>	<b>FML</b> having or holding sth.
<b>by means of sth</b>	<b>FML</b> with the help of sth.
<b>in office</b>	in a position of authority, especially in government (also <b>in power</b> , <b>in danger</b> , <b>in trouble</b> ).
<b>out of respect (for sb)</b>	because of consideration and respect felt for sb.
<b>bereaved</b>	If sb is <b>bereaved</b> , a close friend or relative has recently died.

## spotlight **under**

**Under** can mean 'in the process of something', e.g.:  
**under investigation**  
(= in the process of being investigated),  
**under discussion**,  
**under construction**,  
**under attack**.

3 Tick the words which are possible. One, two, or three may be possible.

- The government has been *in power* ☐ *out of touch* ☐ *in office* ☐ for years.
- Following the attack, several men are now *under investigation* ☐ *under suspicion* ☐ *on hold*.
- The suspect was found *in possession of* ☐ *by means of* ☐ *in honour of* ☐ stolen goods.
- I attended the ceremony *in honour of* ☐ *out of respect for* ☐ *in memory of* ☐ those who died.
- She is *in touch* ☐ *out of luck* ☐ *out of sight* ☐ with the feelings of the general public.

4 One word is missing from each line. What is it, and where does it go? Write it at the end.

- We have had to put our holiday plans on for the moment because of work. \_\_\_\_\_
- Out respect for the bereaved family, hundreds turned up at the funeral. \_\_\_\_\_
- I'm afraid I can't help as I'm really out of with this area of research. \_\_\_\_\_
- The demonstrators will be in serious if the army starts to attack them. \_\_\_\_\_
- The multi-storey car park has been construction for six months. \_\_\_\_\_
- He works for a engineering company; it's a multinational and doing very well. \_\_\_\_\_
- She opened the can by of a special device designed for the disabled. \_\_\_\_\_
- We caught a glimpse of the rabbit before it ran of sight into the bushes. \_\_\_\_\_





# 78 I can use a range of adjectives

## A Synonyms and opposites

Marcus Campion was nearing the end of a **distinguished** career. He was a man of **exceptional** talent, and had been one of the most **eminent** lawyers of his generation, but he felt **perplexed** and uneasy as he considered his latest case. 'This Mabbutt is a **bizarre** character I'll admit, and his story is somewhat **implausible**,' remarked Campion to his army of admiring young colleagues. 'But is it really **conceivable** that he could kill his young wife and daughter?' Campion had defended **wicked** men in the past, but now the prospect of it made him feel quite **dejected**. He sat down with a heavy heart.



### Glossary

<b>distinguished</b>	successful, and admired and respected by others. <b>SYN</b> illustrious.
<b>exceptional</b>	unusually good. <b>SYN</b> outstanding.
<b>perplexed</b>	confused because you are unable to understand sth. <b>SYNS</b> puzzled, baffled.
<b>bizarre</b>	very strange and unusual. <b>SYN</b> weird.
<b>implausible</b>	not reasonable or likely to be true. <b>OPP</b> plausible. (A convincing story makes you believe it is true. <b>OPP</b> unconvincing.)
<b>conceivable</b>	able to be imagined or believed; possible. <b>OPP</b> inconceivable.
<b>wicked</b>	bad and morally wrong. <b>SYN</b> evil.
<b>dejected</b>	unhappy and depressed. <b>SYN</b> despondent.

### spotlight Fame

Someone who is **eminent** is famous and respected, often for being good at a profession. If someone or something is **notorious**, they are well known for being bad (e.g. a **notorious criminal**). **SYN** infamous **FML**.

### 1 Circle the correct word(s). Sometimes both words are correct.

- No one knows why he made that decision. We were all rather **dejected** / **perplexed**.
- After the mistakes we've made, it's **conceivable** / **inconceivable** we'll lose the election.
- It was an unusual story, but it sounded quite **plausible** / **convincing**.
- Al Capone was a **notorious** / **infamous** American gangster.
- I couldn't tell you what the film was about; it was **exceptional** / **bizarre**.
- Two of my uncles had **illustrious** / **distinguished** careers in the navy.

### 2 Write the answers.

- a synonym for *infamous* \_\_\_\_\_
- a synonym for *evil* \_\_\_\_\_
- the opposite of *convincing* \_\_\_\_\_
- a synonym for *perplexed* \_\_\_\_\_
- the opposite of *conceivable* \_\_\_\_\_
- a synonym for *weird* \_\_\_\_\_
- the opposite of *plausible* \_\_\_\_\_
- a synonym for *dejected* \_\_\_\_\_
- a synonym for *illustrious* \_\_\_\_\_
- a synonym for *outstanding* \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Complete the words in the sentences.

- He was a w \_\_\_\_\_ man and responsible for the death of many innocent people.
- She looked very d \_\_\_\_\_ when I saw her this morning, after the defeat yesterday.
- She's an e \_\_\_\_\_ scientist as well as being a well-known writer.
- I was completely b \_\_\_\_\_ by his directions; I couldn't understand them at all.
- He played an o \_\_\_\_\_ game – he was easily the best player on the pitch.
- There's a b \_\_\_\_\_ story in the paper about a man who lives underwater.





## B Adjectives easily confused

Adjective	Example	Meaning
<b>concluding</b> <b>conclusive</b>	<i>It's in the <b>concluding</b> chapter. Do we have <b>conclusive</b> proof?</i>	(of the final chapter/section of sth) ending. showing sth to be definitely true.
<b>tasteful</b>  <b>tasty</b>	<i>The room was very <b>tasteful</b>.  The soup was very <b>tasty</b>.</i>	(especially of clothes, furniture, etc.) attractive and of good quality. having a pleasant taste ( <b>tasteless</b> is the opposite of <b>tasty</b> and <b>tasteful</b> ).
<b>naked</b> <b>nude</b>  <b>bare</b>	<i>The child was almost <b>naked</b>. She posed as a <b>nude</b> model for Picasso. They walked in <b>bare</b> feet.</i>	not wearing clothes. used to talk about the naked human form in art ( <b>in the nude</b> = naked). (of a part of the body) not covered by clothes ( <b>bare head/arms/legs</b> ).
<b>exhausted</b> <b>exhaustive</b>	<i>He was <b>exhausted</b> after the run. It's an <b>exhaustive</b> investigation.</i>	extremely tired. SYN <b>worn out</b> . extremely thorough and complete.
<b>comprehensive</b>  <b>comprehensible</b> SYN <b>intelligible</b>	<i>They gave me a <b>comprehensive</b> list of hotels in the area. It's a clear and <b>comprehensible</b> document.</i>	including all or almost all the facts or details that may be necessary. able to be understood. OPPS <b>incomprehensible, unintelligible</b> .
<b>invaluable</b> <b>worthless</b>	<i>Her advice was <b>invaluable</b>. That vase is <b>worthless</b>.</i>	very useful or valuable. having no worth or value. SYN <b>valueless</b> .
<b>childlike</b> <b>childish</b>	<i>He has a <b>childlike</b> enthusiasm. Her behaviour is very <b>childish</b>.</i>	APPROVING having qualities typical of a child. DISAPPROVING behaving in a silly way.
<b>negligent</b>  <b>negligible</b>	<i>They have proved that the doctors were <b>negligent</b>. The damage was <b>negligible</b>.</i>	FML not taking enough care over sth you are responsible for. so small as to be of no importance.

### 4 Correct the mistakes. Three sentences have no mistakes.

- 1 In some countries women can't walk around with naked arms. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 She was crying just because she lost her pen. That's a bit childlike, isn't it? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Police have carried out an exhaustive search for the missing girl. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 He wouldn't give me any money for it – he said it was invaluable. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The police found a nude body in the lake. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 The fish dish was very tasty. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Someone has scratched the side of my car, but the damage is negligent. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 He used naked models in many of his paintings. \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 We were completely worn out after all that gardening. \_\_\_\_\_

### 5 Complete the adjective in each sentence.

- 1 They've done some research but we'll have to wait for a more *comp* \_\_\_\_\_ study.
- 2 She still has a *child* \_\_\_\_\_ quality about her, which is lovely.
- 3 There is no *concl* \_\_\_\_\_ evidence that Parker was at the scene of the crime.
- 4 They carried out an *exhaust* \_\_\_\_\_ study into the causes of the disaster.
- 5 All the decor was very *tast* \_\_\_\_\_ and it created a charming atmosphere.
- 6 The heroine gets killed in the *concl* \_\_\_\_\_ chapter of the book.
- 7 Anyone could follow her instructions: they were clear and *comp* \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 They found that one of the police officers was *negli* \_\_\_\_\_ in his duties.





## 79 I can use different types of adverb

### A Commenting

- A I can't believe that Martin still commutes to London every day: it's an awful journey.
- B I know. But **apparently** he really likes his job. And **presumably** he earns a lot more working in London.
- A Yeah, I guess so. But **ultimately** I think he does it for his career, not the money.
- B Well, **to be perfectly honest**, I think he's mad.
- A Yes, it's **obviously** not what we would choose. You want to be able to spend time with your family, **naturally**, and I wouldn't commute to London because ... well, **basically** I'm too lazy. But Martin's different. His career means **practically** everything to him.
- B True. But **strangely enough**, he wasn't all that ambitious when we were at school.



### Glossary

apparently	according to what you have heard or read. <b>SYN</b> evidently.
presumably	used to say that you think sth is probably true.
ultimately	finally, when everything has been considered.
to be (perfectly) honest	used when saying what you really think about sth. <b>SYNS</b> frankly, personally.
obviously	used when giving information that you expect other people to know already or agree with. <b>SYN</b> clearly.
naturally	used to say that sth is normal and not surprising. <b>SYN</b> of course.
basically	used when giving the most important fact. <b>SYN</b> essentially.
practically	almost. <b>SYN</b> virtually.
strangely (enough)	used to show that sth is surprising. <b>SYNS</b> oddly/curiously (enough).

### 1 Replace the underlined word(s) with another word or phrase that keeps the same meaning.

- Sharon rang a couple of minutes ago. Apparently, the others missed the train. \_\_\_\_\_
- They said the restaurant was always busy, but surprisingly it was almost empty. \_\_\_\_\_
- Virtually all the shops were closed when I got into town. \_\_\_\_\_
- He promised to come, but I would think that he'll turn up later. \_\_\_\_\_
- We got there early essentially because we weren't sure when it started. \_\_\_\_\_
- I got her a ticket but, to be perfectly honest, I don't think she's interested. \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word or phrase.

- I know he won't be happy, but f \_\_\_\_\_ I don't care what he thinks.
- A \_\_\_\_\_ we can't get tickets until tomorrow. That's what he told me.
- We can all say what we think, but u \_\_\_\_\_ it's your decision.
- There are eight of us, so o \_\_\_\_\_ we'll need two cars.
- We're both chefs, so n \_\_\_\_\_ we talk about food quite a lot.
- I usually feel nervous before I give a talk, but c \_\_\_\_\_ e \_\_\_\_\_ I felt fine today.





## B Stating a perspective or viewpoint

Word	Example	Meaning
<b>commercially</b>	<b>Commercially</b> , the film was a flop, but I really enjoyed it.	= from the point of view of sales or profit. SYN <b>financially</b> , <b>commercial</b> ADJ.
<b>traditionally</b>	<b>Traditionally</b> it was men who went out to work, but that's changing.	= according to past custom. <b>traditional</b> ADJ.
<b>logically</b>	<b>Logically</b> , we should consult a lawyer if there is a legal problem.	= if we are to act sensibly and with sound reasons. <b>logical</b> ADJ. <b>logic</b> N.
<b>socially</b>	<b><sup>ADJ</sup>Socially</b> , it's good for children to mix with other kids in a playgroup.	= from the point of view of making friends. <b>social</b> ADJ.
<b>realistically</b>	<b>Realistically</b> , people won't give up their cars unless public transport is greatly improved.	= if we are sensible about what can be achieved, we have to conclude that ... <b>realistic</b> ADJ.
<b>officially</b>	<b>Officially</b> , we can't go in until 10 a.m., but they might open earlier.	= according to the rules, or what we have been told. OPP <b>unofficially</b> .
<b>indirectly</b>	The changes aren't aimed at us, but we will be affected <b>indirectly</b> .	= as an additional effect or consequence. OPP <b>directly</b> .
<b>technically</b>	<b>Technically</b> her performance was very good, but I didn't personally enjoy it.	= from the point of view of her technical skill. <b>technical</b> ADJ. <b>technique</b> N.
<b>physically</b> <b>mentally</b>	<b>Physically</b> the work isn't difficult ... ... but <b>mentally</b> it's very tough.	= considering the effect on the body. = considering the effect on the mind.
<b>theoretically</b>	<b>Theoretically</b> we could still lose the championship.	used to say that sth could possibly happen or be true, but is unlikely.
<b>as far as sth is concerned</b>	<b>As far as</b> money is <b>concerned</b> , we can manage.	used to give facts or an opinion about an aspect of sth.

### spotlight ... speaking

This word can be added to some adverbs when an area of activity is being defined.

*Technically **speaking**, he was good. Financially **speaking**, it was a disaster.*

### 3 Replace the underlined words with a single adverb.

- 1 According to the rules, nobody is allowed in without a ticket. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 In terms of the profit we made, the festival was a great success. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 In terms of what we can actually achieve, 80 per cent is probably the maximum. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 For the good of society this legislation will bring considerable improvements. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 In terms of technique, she is very competent. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 It's reasonable and sensible that the money should be divided between her sons. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 It is possible that we could work on Sunday, but we'd be exhausted. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 It's the custom that the festival is held on the last weekend in May. \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 Complete the sentences with a suitable word or phrase.

- 1 As far as the environment is \_\_\_\_\_, it could be very damaging.
- 2 Physically the job is quite easy but \_\_\_\_\_ it demands a lot of concentration.
- 3 The job cuts are in a different department but they will affect us \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 He's a natural athlete, but technically \_\_\_\_\_ he still has a lot to learn.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ children sing songs outside people's homes. It happens every year.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ money is concerned, it's been quite successful.





## C Adverbs with different or overlapping meanings

I worked in the tax office **briefly**, but it seemed like **forever**.

I don't know **precisely** how it happened, but I could see she was **truly** sorry about it.

She said she did it **purely** to get experience, but it wasn't **strictly** true.

The restaurant is **invariably** full, but it's **primarily** for tourists.

It wasn't **simply** my fault; we're both **equally** responsible.

Things have changed **somewhat** since I was there, but it's still **relatively** unspoilt.

### Glossary

<b>briefly</b>	1 for a short time. 2 in a few words ( <i>he explained briefly</i> ).
<b>forever</b>	for a long time; for all time ( <i>nothing lasts forever</i> ).
<b>purely</b>	completely and only ( <i>purely by chance</i> ). SYN <b>simply</b> .
<b>strictly</b>	exactly and completely (also used to emphasize that sth must happen in all circumstances: <i>Smoking in the lift is strictly prohibited</i> ).
<b>simply</b>	just; only (also, absolutely: <i>He was simply brilliant</i> ).
<b>equally</b>	to the same degree (also used to introduce a second point which is as important as the first).
<b>precisely</b>	exactly and correctly (also used to emphasize that sth is very true or obvious: <i>He's very young; that's precisely why he needs my help</i> ).
<b>truly</b>	sincerely (also used to emphasize a particular quality: <i>a truly remarkable man</i> ).
<b>invariably</b>	used to emphasize that sth is always true or always happens.
<b>primarily</b>	mainly. SYNS <b>chiefly</b> , <b>predominantly</b> .
<b>somewhat</b>	fairly; quite (can be used after a verb or before an adjective).
<b>relatively</b>	to a fairly large degree in comparison with sth else.

### 5 Tick the correct word(s). More than one may be correct.

- 1 It was *relatively* ☐ *strictly* ☐ *somewhat* ☐ unusual, but not that strange.
- 2 She studies physics *simply* ☐ *equally* ☐ *purely* ☐ because she enjoys it.
- 3 I'm not sure she is being *strictly* ☐ *precisely* ☐ *equally* ☐ honest.
- 4 It's not a huge place but it's *invariably* ☐ *relatively* ☐ *precisely* ☐ big.
- 5 He spoke *relatively* ☐ *briefly* ☐ *chiefly* ☐ about his childhood.
- 6 I'm always punctual, but she's *precisely* ☐ *invariably* ☐ *primarily* ☐ late.
- 7 His voice is *simply* ☐ *predominantly* ☐ *truly* ☐ remarkable.
- 8 Camping here is *truly* ☐ *somewhat* ☐ *strictly* ☐ forbidden.

### 6 Complete the sentences with a suitable adverb.

- 1 She's worked all over the world, but \_\_\_\_\_ in North and South America.
- 2 I'm unlucky with the weather. It \_\_\_\_\_ rains when I go on holiday.
- 3 She came to stay with us \_\_\_\_\_ last year; just for a few days.
- 4 I don't like getting there too early, but \_\_\_\_\_ I don't want to be late.
- 5 She's doing well now, but her success won't last \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 I was \_\_\_\_\_ sorry to hear about her mother's accident.
- 7 Pavel knows \_\_\_\_\_ what we need, so he's getting everything.

## 80 I can use euphemisms

My neighbour's **getting on a bit**; she's **visually impaired** and rather **hard of hearing**. I feel very sorry for her as well because her husband **passed away** recently and she had to have her cat **put to sleep**.

There's more talk of **downsizing** at work. If I were the boss, I'd **let Godfrey go**; he's **not exactly bright** – and I've seen him **helping himself** to the office stationery.

It says here that two soldiers were injured during a **friendly fire** incident. There's nothing 'friendly' about it – just another of those terrible euphemisms, like '**collateral damage**'.

### spotlight Euphemisms

A **euphemism** is a mild or less direct word or phrase that people use to refer to something embarrassing or unpleasant, sometimes to make it seem more acceptable than it is, e.g. *I don't know what I'd do **if anything happened to him*** (= if he died). Euphemisms often refer to death, war, age, and sex.

### Glossary

<b>getting on (a bit)</b>	INF (of a person) quite old.	<b>not exactly bright</b>	a way of saying that sb is unintelligent (also <b>not exactly clever/practical</b> , etc.).
<b>visually impaired</b>	having poor eyesight.	<b>help yourself to sth</b>	DISAPPROVING steal sth.
<b>hard of hearing</b>	unable to hear very well.	<b>friendly fire</b>	If sb is killed or injured by <b>friendly fire</b> , they are hit by a bomb or weapon fired by their own side.
<b>pass away</b>	die. SYN <b>pass on</b> .	<b>collateral damage</b>	death or injury to ordinary citizens, and possibly damage to buildings as well, during the course of a war.
<b>put sth to sleep</b>	kill a sick or injured animal with drugs so that it dies without pain. SYN <b>put sth down</b> .		
<b>downsizing</b>	the dismissing of employees to reduce costs. <b>downsize</b> v.		
<b>let sb go</b>	dismiss sb or make them redundant.		

### 1 Complete the dialogues.

- Was it a \_\_\_\_\_ incident? ~ Yes, hit by weapons from our own side.
- She's hopeless at housework. ~ Yes, she's not exactly \_\_\_\_\_, is she?
- Did he catch what you said? ~ No, I think he's a bit \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_.
- Will he lose his job? ~ Yes, they'll have to \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.
- Is your grandmother still alive? ~ No, she \_\_\_\_\_ two years ago.
- There's not much money left. ~ No, I think Eric's been \_\_\_\_\_ himself to it.
- Was the dog badly injured? ~ Yes, I'm afraid they had to \_\_\_\_\_ it to \_\_\_\_\_.
- He can't see very well, can he? ~ No, he's visually \_\_\_\_\_.

### 2 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. Make any necessary changes.

- Did she just take a couple of pens? HELP \_\_\_\_\_
- The company is cutting the number of workers. DOWNSIZE \_\_\_\_\_
- The animal was killed by the vet. DOWN \_\_\_\_\_
- My dog Barty is very stupid. CLEVER \_\_\_\_\_
- The president's pretty old. ON \_\_\_\_\_
- There were many killed and injured in the bombing. COLLATERAL \_\_\_\_\_



# Review: Aspects of language

## Unit 74

### 1 Cross out the wrong answer or answers.

- 1 I think he was mis\_\_\_\_\_.  
a) informed      b) advised      c) understood      d) diagnosed
- 2 The children were under\_\_\_\_\_.  
a) advantaged      b) nourished      c) privileged      d) fed
- 3 It's an anti-\_\_\_\_\_ march.  
a) drugs      b) racism      c) war      d) virus
- 4 The two things are inter\_\_\_\_\_.  
a) dependent      b) similar      c) related      d) place
- 5 I think she was ill-\_\_\_\_\_.  
a) handled      b) advised      c) treated      d) prepared

**A Z** more words: *ill-conceived, interlinked, misquote, demobilize, overexpose, oversubscribed, relaunch, reinstate, reinvest*

## Unit 75

### 1 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals with an appropriate suffix. The meaning must stay the same.

- 1 The hurricane is getting stronger as it heads towards land. INTENSE  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 You don't have to pay tax on this income. TAX  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 This kind of vegetation is typical of the region. CHARACTER  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The building contains a system which removes pollution from the air. PURE  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 You can't hear a thing outside the studio. SOUND  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 He needs to give a better explanation of his intentions. CLEAR  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 7 If you leave that in the sun, it'll just go hard. SOLID  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 8 The plan I've devised can't possibly go wrong. FOOL  
\_\_\_\_\_

**A Z** more words: *institutionalize, harmonize, rationalize, liquidize, vilify, magnify, falsify*

## Unit 76

### 1 Complete the sentences with a suitable preposition.

- 1 In your country, are children largely subservient \_\_\_\_\_ their parents? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Do most drivers show a total disregard \_\_\_\_\_ the speed limit? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 What would you like to see a ban \_\_\_\_\_ in your country? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Do parents usually have a firm control \_\_\_\_\_ their teenagers? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Are most people resistant \_\_\_\_\_ advice on healthy eating? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Do people in your country generally have an aptitude \_\_\_\_\_ languages? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Do many people embark \_\_\_\_\_ a new career in middle age? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Do you agree that there is no substitute \_\_\_\_\_ hard work? \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

**A Z** more words: *allegiance to sb/sth, craving for sth, safeguard against sth, proportionate to sth, susceptible to sth, settle for sth*

## Unit 77

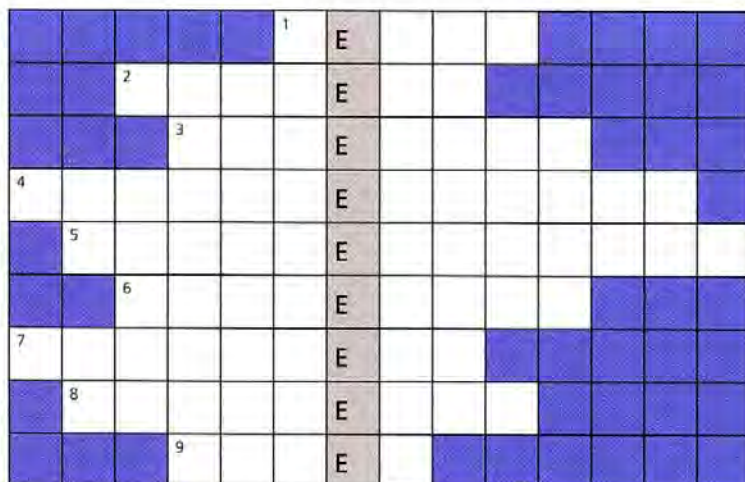
### 1 Cross out the noun which does not follow the preposition at the beginning.

- 1 *on*: balance / passing / merit / reflection
- 2 *at*: once / choice / short notice / the very least
- 3 *in*: the contrary / office / power / possession of
- 4 *out of*: respect / sight / luck / discussion
- 5 *under*: suspicion / danger / investigation / attack

**A Z** more words: *on account of, out of action, in accordance with, on hand, out of bounds, under duress, off the subject*

## Unit 78

### 1 Complete the crossword.



- 1 bizarre
- 2 famous and respected in a professional capacity
- 3 unhappy and depressed
- 4 impossible to imagine or believe
- 5 including all or most of the facts or details necessary
- 6 lacking flavour
- 7 failing to take enough care over something you are responsible for
- 8 baffled
- 9 not wearing clothes

**A Z** more words: Use the synonyms feature boxes in the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary*, and look at: *artificial, dirty, exciting, nervous, serious, wrong*.



## Unit 79

### 1 Use adverbs from the box to complete the sentences.

invariably indirectly officially purely apparently briefly virtually ultimately

- I met her \_\_\_\_\_ by chance outside the hairdresser's.
- People who play chess are \_\_\_\_\_ good at logic puzzles.
- She spoke \_\_\_\_\_ about her father, but I was disappointed. I wanted to hear more.
- The outcome of the election is \_\_\_\_\_ certain; the polls give Lawson a 20 per cent lead.
- The rise in interest rates is bound to affect us, at least \_\_\_\_\_.
- He had a difficult choice to make but, \_\_\_\_\_, it was his decision and his alone.
- I thought she had spread the rumour but \_\_\_\_\_ it was nothing to do with her.
- He got us into the concert free, but \_\_\_\_\_ we should have paid.

### 2 Tick the best sentence ending. In some cases, both may be correct.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 I'd invited too many people, and realistically | a I should have realized that <input type="checkbox"/> .      |
|  | b I rang and told some not to come <input type="checkbox"/> . |
| 2 The evening was freezing, but oddly enough     | a I took my coat <input type="checkbox"/> .                   |
|  | b I hardly noticed <input type="checkbox"/> .                 |
| 3 There wasn't enough food, but frankly          | a it was too late to do anything <input type="checkbox"/> .   |
|  | b I didn't care <input type="checkbox"/> .                    |
| 4 Sue has a son, so naturally                    | a I invited him too <input type="checkbox"/> .                |
|  | b she brought him <input type="checkbox"/> .                  |
| 5 The guests were predominantly                  | a from my neighbourhood <input type="checkbox"/> .            |
|  | b late arriving <input type="checkbox"/> .                    |
| 6 By midnight I was practically                  | a doing the washing up <input type="checkbox"/> .             |
|  | b asleep <input type="checkbox"/> .                           |

**A Z** more words: *undoubtedly, ostensibly, supposedly, outwardly, numerically, overtly*

## Unit 80

### 1 Complete the dialogues, explaining the literal meaning of the euphemisms. Look at the example first.

- He's getting on a bit. ~ You mean he 's quite old.
- She's not exactly bright. ~ You mean she \_\_\_\_\_.
  - He's visually impaired. ~ You mean he \_\_\_\_\_.
  - The company are downsizing. ~ You mean they \_\_\_\_\_.
  - They were hit by friendly fire. ~ You mean by \_\_\_\_\_.
  - The cat has been put to sleep. ~ You mean it \_\_\_\_\_.
  - He's a bit hard of hearing. ~ You mean he \_\_\_\_\_.
  - I think she helped herself to the money. ~ You mean she \_\_\_\_\_.
  - There's been some collateral damage. ~ You mean some \_\_\_\_\_.

**A Z** more words: *put sb/sth out of their misery, do sb in, men's/ladies' (room), in the family way, throw up, give up the ghost*

# Vocabulary building

The related forms of many words are included within the glossaries in the individual units (to find them, use the word list on pages 236–56). Other related forms are included in the tables below. The items in bold are all taught in the book, and the related forms all have a closely related meaning.

## 1 Adjectives and nouns

ADJECTIVE	NOUN
<b>addicted</b>	addiction, <b>addict</b>
<b>additional</b>	addition
<b>alien</b> , alienated	alienation
anonymous	<b>anonymity</b>
aromatic	<b>aroma</b>
attentive, inattentive	<b>attention</b>
bereavement	<b>bereaved</b>
<b>blunt</b>	bluntness
chaotic	<b>chaos</b>
<b>compatible</b> , incompatible	compatibility, incompatibility
<b>concise</b>	conciseness
<b>cruel</b>	cruelty
<b>discreet</b> , indiscreet	discretion, indiscretion
<b>distracted</b>	distraction
<b>ecstatic</b>	ecstasy
<b>elated</b>	elation
faithful	<b>faith</b>
<b>familiar</b> , unfamiliar	familiarity
flammable/inflammable	<b>flame</b>
<b>hysterical</b>	hysteria
<b>jubilant</b>	jubilation
<b>neutral</b>	neutrality
normal, <b>abnormal</b>	normality, abnormality
<b>notorious</b>	notoriety
<b>nude</b>	nudity, <b>nude</b>
<b>precise</b>	<b>precision</b>
proportionate	<b>proportion</b>
<b>ruthless</b>	ruthlessness
scandalous	<b>scandal</b>
secretive	secrecy, <b>secret</b>
snobbish	snobbery, <b>snob</b>
spiritual	<b>spirit</b>
<b>subservient</b>	subservience
<b>subtle</b>	subtlety
<b>transparent</b>	transparency
<b>trivial</b>	triviality
<b>visible</b> , invisible	visibility, invisibility
<b>wicked</b>	wickedness

## 2 Verbs and nouns

VERB	NOUN
<b>accomplish</b>	accomplishment
<b>acquire</b>	acquisition
<b>allocate</b>	allocation
compile	<b>compilation</b>
<b>confront</b>	confrontation
<b>contribute</b>	<b>contribution</b> , contributor
<b>desert</b>	desertion
<b>detain</b>	detention
<b>detect</b>	detection
<b>distort</b>	distortion
<b>divert</b>	diversion
<b>embark</b>	embarkation
<b>impose</b>	imposition
<b>indulge</b>	indulgence
photocopy	<b>photocopier</b>
proceed	<b>procedure</b>
<b>propose</b>	proposal, proposition
<b>pursue</b>	pursuit
<b>reassure</b>	reassurance
substitute	<b>substitute</b> , substitution
<b>subtract</b>	subtraction
<b>suppress</b>	suppression



Test yourself



### 3 Nouns, verbs, and adjectives

NOUN(S)	VERB	ADJECTIVE
accumulation	<b>accumulate</b>	cumulative
<b>adjustment</b>	<b>adjust</b>	adjustable
<b>appreciation</b>	<b>appreciate</b>	appreciative
<b>association</b>	associate	<b>associated</b>
authenticity	authenticate	<b>authentic</b>
bend	<b>bend</b>	bent
comparison	<b>compare</b>	<b>comparable</b> , comparative
<b>control</b>	control	controlled, uncontrolled
description	<b>describe</b>	descriptive, <b>indescribable</b>
disruption	<b>disrupt</b>	<b>disruptive</b>
exhaustion	exhaust	<b>exhausted</b>
exploration	<b>explore</b>	exploratory
exposure	<b>expose</b>	exposed
<b>favour</b>	<b>favour</b>	favourable, unfavourable
flirt (person)	<b>flirt</b>	flirtatious
forgiveness	<b>forgive</b>	forgivable, <b>unforgivable</b>
inclusion	<b>include</b>	<b>inclusive</b>
<b>indication</b>	<b>indicate</b>	indicative
<b>intrusion</b>	<b>intrude</b>	intrusive
<b>justification</b>	<b>justify</b>	<b>justifiable</b> , justified
mixture	<b>mix</b>	mixed
<b>opposition</b>	oppose	<b>opposed</b> , opposing
<b>possession</b>	possess	possessive
<b>provocation</b>	<b>provoke</b>	provocative
purification	<b>purify</b>	<b>pure</b>
puzzle	<b>puzzle</b>	<b>puzzled</b>
<b>quantity</b>	<b>quantify</b>	quantifiable
reinforcement	reinforce	<b>reinforced</b>
reminiscence	reminisce	<b>reminiscent</b>
<b>retaliation</b>	<b>retaliate</b>	retaliatory
stimulation	<b>stimulate</b>	stimulating
symbolism, symbol	<b>symbolize</b>	symbolic

# Answer key

## Unit 1

1 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 D 7 S 8 S

- 2 1 ambiguity/ambiguities  
2 precision  
3 synonymous  
4 interchangeable  
5 interpretation  
6 self-explanatory

- 3 1 literal  
2 figurative  
3 making  
4 *Both answers are correct.*  
5 sarcasm  
6 mocked  
7 ironic  
8 *Both answers are correct.*

- 4 1 disapproving  
2 literary  
3 made  
4 slang, current, dated/old-fashioned  
5 pejorative/derogatory  
6 figuratively

## Unit 2

- 1 1 second thoughts 5 flying  
2 on my mind 6 two minds  
3 get out of 7 ulterior  
4 believe this 8 tied up

- 2 1 crawling 3 sweet 5 dawned  
2 thick 4 tied up

- 3 1 How did you **get** him ...  
2 keep you **going** until ...  
3 that will **make** it ...  
4 fishing that **brought** people ...  
5 it won't **keep** after tomorrow  
6 to **put** them into words  
7 that will **do** for ...

- 4 1 brings 5 do 8 leave  
3 get 6 keep 9 get  
3 come 7 make 10 push  
4 leave

## Unit 3

- 1 1 cut 5 clips  
2 barbed 6 polish  
3 expectancy 7 spare  
4 pin 8 passer

- 2 1 licence 4 rhymes 6 certificate  
2 kin 5 weekend 7 fruit/slot  
3 fancy

- 4 built-up, worn out, thick-skinned, panic-stricken, narrow-minded, bad-tempered

- 5 1 narrow-minded 4 single-minded  
2 last-minute 5 off-putting  
3 tongue-tied 6 broad-minded/open-minded

## 6 Possible answers:

- 1 Were there many dropouts?  
2 There was a five-mile tailback.  
3 It was a setback (for him) when he failed the exam.  
4 We had a two-hour hold-up.  
5 There was a breakdown on the motorway.  
6 It was awful after the break-up.  
7 What was the turnout?  
8 The outbreak of war was inevitable.

- 7 1 turnout 3 let-down 5 tailbacks  
2 write-off 4 break-up 6 outlay

## Unit 4

- 1 1 go out, spread, die down  
2 light, put out  
3 catch, fire, burst, go up

- 2 1 caught 4 burst 6 put it out  
2 broke 5 on 7 setting  
3 spread

- 3 1 gone out 5 broke out  
2 die down 6 burst into  
3 went out 7 forest  
4 put, out 8 spreading

- 5 1 considerable 4 fierce/widespread  
2 principal 5 utter  
3 widespread 6 classic

- 6 1 honour 4 effort 7 accent  
2 faces 5 criticism 8 escape  
3 summary 6 chaos

- 7 1 Torrential  
2 gale-force  
3 utter/total  
4 considerable/great  
5 concerted  
6 main/principal  
7 extensive/widespread  
8 fierce/strong/widespread

## 8 These words are not correct:

1 c 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 a

- 9 1 eyesore, entirely 5 such thing  
2 holds, take 6 reached, entirely  
3 made 7 prospect  
4 settle, back 8 offence, reach



## Unit 5

- 1 1 reflect (4) 4 absorb (3)  
 2 absorbed (1) 5 count (1)  
 3 counted (2) 6 reflected (1)
- 2 1 shrugged 4 favour 6 circumstances  
 2 owes 5 nodded 7 stamped  
 3 raised
- 3 1 We could see our faces reflected in the water.  
 2 She proposed **that we** leave the children behind. OR She proposed **leaving** the children behind.  
 3 You can take dogs into shops in certain circumstances.  
 4 There were ten people there, **not** counting the two of us.  
 5 He proposed **taking** the car. OR He proposed **that we** take the car.  
 6 I'll need to reflect on what he said.
- 4 1 count myself lucky  
 2 in favour of  
 3 under the circumstances  
 4 reflected badly on everyone
- 5 The correct prepositions are:  
 1 conducive **to** sth  
 2 fraught **with** (danger)  
 3 devoid **of** sth  
 4 immune **to** sth

## Unit 6

- 1 1 reputable 5 inexcusable  
 2 inclusive 6 uneventful  
 3 inexplicable 7 apologetic  
 4 comparable 8 indescribable
- 2 1 They excel at/in sport.  
 2 I think he was a worthy winner.  
 3 The party was uneventful.  
 4 The flat is unfurnished.  
 5 The trip was pointless.  
 6 It's an interesting vase but it's worthless.  
 7 The movement has a large following.  
 8 There is increasing recognition of its value.  
 OR People increasingly recognize its value.
- 3 1 housing 6 pointless  
 2 noticeable 7 following  
 3 apologetic 8 furnished  
 4 inclusive  
 5 unforgivable/inexcusable
- 4 1 finalize 4 handling 7 comparable  
 2 excel 5 pointless 8 heartless  
 3 emotive 6 mistook
- 6 1 to **keep** himself  
 2 defend **myself**  
 3 origin of  
 4 **make** the confession

- 5 assured **me/him/us**, etc. it would  
 6 commit **himself**

## 7 Possible answers:

- 1 Where did this originate?  
 2 I want to simplify the procedure.  
 3 There is a lot of alcohol abuse. OR Alcohol abuse is very common.  
 4 Does the research give us an/any/some indication of a link?  
 5 He's got to make a commitment.  
 6 Did she make a confession?  
 7 The boy suffered racial abuse.  
 8 I was surprised at the severity of the conditions.

## Unit 7

## 1 Possible answers:

- Frail** people are often **dodderly** (when they walk).  
 A **paunch** is a fat **stomach**.  
**Freckles** are on your **skin**.  
**Hair** can be **ginger**.  
**Chubby** means a bit fat.  
 You wear a **brace** on your **teeth**.

- 2 1 show off 4 straighten  
 2 getting on for, gorgeous 5 stick out  
 3 cheeks 6 cute
- 3 1 true 4 notice 7 better  
 2 help you 5 more 8 can't  
 3 positive 6 don't notice
- 4 1 pay 5 stripes  
 2 unflattering 6 key  
 3 features 7 draw  
 4 hips 8 exaggeration

## Unit 8

- 1 1 B 2 B 3 G 4 G 5 B 6 B 7 B 8 G
- 2 1 leaping/jumping 5 misinterpret  
 2 look out 6 not necessarily  
 3 observant 7 gestures, excessive  
 4 display/show 8 combination
- 3 These words are correct:  
 1 make 3 stroke 5 with  
 2 fist 4 arms 6 someone
- 4 1 implication  
 2 flirting  
 3 leant/leaned, fancied/fancies  
 4 stubborn/obstinate  
 5 implies, mind, generalize  
 6 fiddle

## Unit 9

- 1 1 limping 5 chase  
 2 stagger 6 marched  
 3 dash 7 charged/dashed  
 4 galloped 8 tiptoed/crept

- 2 1 had a pronounced limp  
2 made a dash for cover  
3 went for a stroll along the beach  
4 broke into a gallop  
5 led the charge  
6 the car chase
- 3 1 sluggish 5 thought up/devised  
2 Bend 6 constant  
3 supple/agile 7 strenuous/arduous  
4 alternate 8 recurrent
- 4 1 constant 4 press-ups  
2 alternate 5 sprint  
3 loosen up / warm up 6 fear

## Unit 10

- 1 1 beeping 4 slam 7 rustling  
2 rattling 5 creak 8 rumbling  
3 squelching 6 pitched
- 2 1 creaks 4 high 7 rumble  
2 rustling 5 screeching 8 rattle  
3 beeping 6 slamming
- 3 1 mice squeak 5 dogs growl  
2 owls hoot 6 cocks crow  
3 dogs bark 7 bees buzz  
4 wolves howl
- 4 1 P 2 N 3 N 4 N 5 P 6 N 7 P 8 N
- 5 1 roar 4 squeaky  
2 howling/roaring 5 hooted  
3 bark, bite 6 buzzing

## Unit 11

- 1 1 sight/eyesight 4 eliminate  
2 discomfort 5 glare  
3 blinking 6 blurred
- 2 1 Sore, tired or burning eyes are classic symptoms of eye **strain**.  
2 If your eyes are dry and **irritated**, try using eye drops.  
3 He must be very **short-sighted** because he can't read the dictionary definitions.  
4 You should get up and walk about to **ease/alleviate** the problem of back pain.  
5 Make a conscious effort to **blink** more often to prevent dry eyes.  
6 Whenever I make too much noise in the office, my colleague glares **at** me.
- 3 1 haze  
2 spectacular, breathtaking  
3 caught sight of, spotted  
4 stand, keep  
5 only just, barely  
6 came into, disappeared from

- 4 1 I was only just able to make out the boat on the horizon.  
2 As I turned the corner, the house came into view/sight.  
3 Those stars are invisible without a telescope.  
4 We could only just see the trees through the fog.  
5 She eyed me very suspiciously.  
6 The thief left the building and vanished into thin air.  
7 I caught a glimpse of the thief as he ran out of the building. or I glimpsed the thief as...  
8 We watched the boat until eventually it disappeared from sight.

## Unit 12

- 1 1 P 2 U 3 P 4 U 5 U 6 P 7 P 8 P
- 2 1 squeeze 4 slid 7 applied  
2 stimulate 5 steadily 8 fingertips  
3 stroking 6 pinch
- 3 1 flavour 5 aroma  
2 unappetizing 6 water  
3 pungent 7 nauseating  
4 musty 8 insipid
- 4 1 appetizing 6 disgusting  
2 mouth-watering 7 appetite  
3 delicate 8 stench/smell  
4 pungent 9 subtle  
5 gone off

## Unit 13

- 1 sprain your ankle dislocated shoulder  
high blood pressure splitting headache  
hay fever itchy scalp  
upset stomach mouth ulcer  
nasty rash
- 2 1 blisters  
2 rash  
3 diarrhoea  
4 itch  
5 constipated  
6 pulled
- 4 1 T 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 T 8 T
- 5 1 dose 3 date 5 limit  
2 term 4 aspirin 6 effects
- 6 1 lethargic 4 expectations  
2 disorder/upset/ache 5 persistent  
3 enclosed 6 discarded

## Unit 14

- 1 1 happy-go-lucky 5 passion  
2 within reason 6 a real chatterbox/  
3 have a go at really chatty  
4 considerate 7 down-to-earth



- 2 1 attribute/quality 4 pretentious  
2 affection 5 spontaneous  
3 go 6 integrity
- 3 1 N 3 P 5 N 7 P 9 P  
2 P 4 P 6 N 8 N 10 P
- 4 1 make 3 conceited 5 nose  
2 struck 4 take 6 assertive
- 5 1 conscientious 4 ruthless  
2 assertive 5 trustworthy  
3 shrewd
- 6 1 misled  
2 distant/stand-offish  
3 diffident  
4 impulsive/rash  
5 cunning  
6 deceptive
- 7 1 virtue, vice 5 surface, cover  
2 sceptical 6 traits  
3 cynical 7 naivety  
4 cruel

### Unit 15

- 1 1 P 2 N 3 N 4 P 5 P 6 N 7 P 8 N
- 2 lose your temper desperately unhappy  
over the moon hit the roof  
close to tears go mad
- 3 1 stunned  
2 his temper  
3 desperation  
4 heartbroken/devastated  
5 the roof  
6 ecstatic/euphoric/elated  
7 tears  
8 hysterical
- 4 1 uneasy 3 suppress 5 guarded  
2 reveal 4 vulnerable 6 innermost
- 5 1 heart  
2 wasn't in it  
3 gave it away  
4 on her sleeve, pent-up  
5 heart

### Unit 16

- 1 1 N 2 P 3 N 4 P 5 N 6 P
- 2 1 complimentary 5 inevitably  
2 resented 6 strain  
3 hostility 7 tough  
4 sticking
- 3 1 instant 4 face(s)  
2 up 5 goes  
3 compliment

- 5 1 He's fully accepted ~~to~~ our decision. –  
2 She feels she can confide ~~with~~ me. in  
3 I think they all respect ~~for~~ him. –  
4 The ~~initially~~ problem was money. initial  
5 I regret his ~~reluctant~~ to go. reluctance  
6 It took time to hold their respect. gain/  
win/earn
- 6 1 How are things? 6 respect  
2 reluctant 7 ups and downs  
3 appreciates 8 looking up  
4 Initially 9 way things are  
5 accepts 10 bond, make sacrifices

### Unit 17

- 1 1 courageous 4 inspirational  
2 humble 5 dignity  
3 bravery 6 idolize
- 2 1 I looked up to my father.  
2 I want to follow in his footsteps.  
3 Why did she have a go at him?  
4 He dedicated himself to helping the poor.  
5 She was my inspiration.  
6 He was Paula's idol/hero.
- 4 1 hypocritical 4 malicious  
2 rebellious 5 spiteful  
3 idealistic 6 despicable
- 5 1 snob 5 idealist  
2 gossip 6 hypocrite  
3 rebel 7 vulgar/coarse/crude  
4 bully

### Unit 18

- 1 peer pressure, nature or nurture?, play a  
part, broken home, deprived childhood, a  
beneficial effect
- 2 1 P 2 P 3 N 4 N 5 P 6 N
- 3 1 home 4 nature 7 part  
2 deprived 5 impact 8 incentive  
3 pressure 6 model
- 5 1 set 3 make 5 do  
2 kick up 4 pull 6 lay down
- 6 1 threatening  
2 on and on (about them)  
3 nagging  
4 a mess  
5 gave in / capitulated  
6 unappealing

### Unit 19

- 1 1 inoffensive 4 perceive  
2 courteous 5 downwards  
3 etiquette 6 chopsticks

- 2 1 customary  
2 frowned  
3 manners  
4 viewed  
5 considered  
6 Customs  
7 regarded, respectful  
8 offensive  
9 discourteous/disrespectful  
10 etiquette
- 4 1 ~~put his foot in it~~  
2 *All three are possible.*  
3 cheek  
4 her foot in it  
5 *All three are possible.*  
6 comments, disgrace  
7 *All three are possible.*  
8 ~~an insolence~~
- 5 1 class 6 downright  
2 manners 7 remark/comment  
3 behaviour 8 exception  
4 foot 9 taste  
5 put

## Unit 20

- 1 1 artichoke 7 ginger  
2 pomegranate 8 squash  
3 beetroot 9 almonds  
4 cinnamon 10 radishes  
5 papaya 11 lentils  
6 fennel 12 bean sprouts
- 2 1 Raisins and sultanas are types of dried fruit.  
2 Sage and coriander are herbs.  
3 Almonds and cashews are types of nut.  
4 Papaya and passion fruit are tropical fruits.  
5 Ginger and cinnamon are spices.
- 4 cheese grater, lemon squeezer, kitchen scales, food processor, garlic crusher, deep fat fryer
- 5 1 colander 3 corkscrew 5 sieve  
2 wok 4 ladle 6 whisk
- 6 1 lemon/lime/orange  
2 cheese  
3 flour  
4 rice/fish/vegetables  
5 fruit, vegetables, meat, bread, etc.  
6 meat and some vegetables
- 7 1 grapes 4 bread 7 cake  
2 chickens 5 cheese 8 nut  
3 fish 6 pear
- 8 1 made a meal of it  
2 to have his cake and eat it  
3 chalk and cheese  
4 eat my words  
5 a fish out of water  
6 fishy/a bit fishy (to me)

## Unit 21

- 1 1 streets 4 it all 7 around  
2 wander 5 track 8 batteries  
3 easy 6 atmosphere
- 2 1 undergone 4 unique  
2 flourishing 5 unspoilt  
3 remarkably 6 remote
- 3 1 thriving  
2 stunning  
3 diverse  
4 off the beaten track/isolated  
5 trek  
6 retain  
7 unwind/take it easy/chill out  
8 restored
- 4 1 easy 5 wander  
2 remote 6 cobbled  
3 restoration 7 away from it  
4 laze

## Unit 22

- 1 1 edge 6 unanimously  
2 effects 7 adaptation  
3 -biting 8 -tingling  
4 out of 9 ghost  
5 twist 10 applaud
- 2 1 audience  
2 brilliant/sensational  
3 acclaim  
4 cast  
5 set  
6 phenomenally  
7 nail-biting/gripping  
8 clapping
- 3 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 D
- 4 1 deadly, stiff 5 unconvincing  
2 clichéd 6 rubbish  
3 wooden 7 death, mediocre  
4 feeble 8 dire

## Unit 23

- 1 1 F 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 T
- 2 1 round 5 runners-up  
2 drawn 6 got through  
3 victories 7 the rest  
4 draw 8 knocked out
- 3 1 we **dominated** the first half  
2 put us **under** a lot  
3 we gave **away** a  
4 went **to** pieces  
5 let us **down**  
6 no **chance** of  
7 could be **relegated**



- 4 1 run  
2 chance  
3 promoted  
4 verge of victory  
5 unbeaten this season  
6 form  
7 on top/dominant

### Unit 24

- 1 1 field 5 obtain/acquire  
2 site 6 camping site  
3 attract 7 wildlife  
4 copy/imitate 8 scenery  
2 1 process 4 countryside  
2 nest, shed 5 seeds  
3 plant, stem, roots 6 cottage, slopes  
3 1 B 2 G 3 B 4 B 5 B 6 G  
4 1 spade  
2 my feet up  
3 mow the lawn  
4 cut back this bush  
5 compost to the soil  
6 plant some roses  
7 hedge round the field  
8 the weeding  
9 fertile

### Unit 25

- 1 1 around 3 focused 5 from  
2 his 4 an 6 browse  
2 1 search of 6 on impulse  
2 after 7 drop  
3 tag 8 off  
4 shop around 9 browsing  
5 minute/moment  
3 bargain hunting, drug addict, compulsive  
gambler, crippling debts, shopping spree,  
leisure pursuit  
4 1 heading 4 outweigh  
2 indulge 5 outnumber  
3 gadget 6 addicted to

### Unit 26

- 1 1 hosts 5 socializes  
2 disposable 6 drown out  
3 away 7 contribution  
4 time-consuming  
2 1 laid on 5 warmed up  
2 beforehand 6 livened up  
3 contributed 7 deafening  
4 gatecrashers 8 clearing up  
3 1 in company 5 awkward  
2 got/was drunk 6 warm welcome  
3 loner 7 cliquey  
4 do/party tonight 8 accompany you

- 4 1 join in 5 get-together/do  
2 doubt 6 do/get-together, fancy  
3 pop 7 company  
4 own company 8 clique

### Unit 27

- 1 1 transform  
2 amend, adapt, reform  
3 restore, revert, reverse  
4 evolve, assimilate, transition  
2 1 transition 5 go/revert  
2 restore 6 adapt/adjust  
3 evolution 7 irreversible  
4 reversal 8 assimilate  
3 1 N 2 N 3 P 4 N 5 P 6 P  
4 1 subtle  
2 sweeping/wholesale/major  
3 refreshing  
4 enforce  
5 implement  
6 bring about / cause  
5 1 pursue 6 ongoing  
2 sweeping 7 consultation  
3 resistance 8 implemented  
4 consulted 9 obvious  
5 welcome

### Unit 28

- 1 1 B 3 G 5 B 7 B 9 G  
2 B 4 B 6 G 8 B 10 B  
2 1 dryer  
2 charge (up)  
3 consume  
4 appliances  
5 conserve  
6 batteries, still, charger  
7 saving  
8 consumer  
4 1 environmentally-friendly, eco-friendly  
2 in season  
3 food miles, our carbon footprint  
4 maximize  
5 enterprise, venture  
6 *All three are possible.*  
5 1 groundbreaking 5 disposed  
2 recycling 6 minimizes  
3 venture 7 miles  
4 recycle 8 season

### Unit 29

- 1 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 S 6 S 7 S  
2 1 out, extinct 4 in, wild  
2 decline, gradual 5 reserve, habitat  
3 danger, breed 6 species, becoming

- 3 1 ~~divested~~ diverted  
 2 ~~putting~~ taking  
 3 ~~puts~~ poses  
 4 ~~genes-pool~~ gene pool  
 5 in on/upon  
 6 over after  
 7 ~~fund~~ funds  
 8 ~~threaten~~ threat

- 4 1 likelihood 4 rhino  
 2 territory 5 territorial  
 3 poaching 6 poverty

### Unit 30

- 1 invasion, invasive  
 cure, curable/incurable  
 resumption  
 conventional  
 vaccination, vaccinate  
 diagnose, diagnostic  
 transplant
- 2 1 No 3 Yes 5 No 7 No 9 Yes  
 2 No 4 No 6 Yes 8 No 10 No
- 3 1 b 3 h 5 g 7 c 9 f  
 2 i 4 e 6 j 8 a 10 d
- 4 1 wiped out, eradicated  
 2 restricted, transplant  
 3 vaccinate, vaccine  
 4 conventional, advances  
 5 rate, survival  
 6 carry out/perform, confined

### Unit 31

- 1 1 scroll up a document  
 2 enter your password  
 3 use computer jargon  
 4 hack into someone's computer  
 5 anti-virus protection  
 6 e-learning  
 7 do a web search  
 8 block spam from your inbox
- 2 1 password 4 google 7 viruses  
 2 username 5 links 8 filters  
 3 log on/in 6 search
- 3 1 T 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 T
- 4 1 downloaded 5 virtual  
 2 registered 6 dreamt/thought  
 3 videoblog, rated 7 downloaded  
 4 uploaded 8 format

### Unit 32

- 1 1 emigrated 5 fled  
 2 seek 6 prejudice, migrants  
 3 refuge 7 seek/take  
 4 ethnic

- 2 1 There's no limit on the number of people granted political **asylum** in this country.  
 2 Racial and sexual **discrimination** is against the law in matters of employment.  
 3 Economic **migration** to richer countries has existed for centuries.  
 4 There's been a rise in the **deportation** of illegal workers back to their home countries.  
 5 Nearly half a million people were forced to **flee** their homes during the civil war, and many of them **took** refuge in the mountains, away from the fighting.  
 6 Many families **were** uprooted against their will to make way for the new road.
- 3 1 ~~for~~ towards  
 2 ~~acclimated~~ acclimatized  
 3 ~~nostalgic~~ nostalgia  
 4 ~~stereoscope~~ stereotype  
 5 ~~integrity~~ integration  
 6 ~~natural~~ native
- 4 1 used/accustomed 6 desire  
 2 native 7 integrate  
 3 faith 8 hostility/animosity  
 4 shock 9 peace  
 5 stereotypical 10 hang

### Unit 33

- 1 1 protect someone's confidentiality, get hold of something, clinical trial, enrol on a course, strictly confidential, cosmetic surgery
- 2 1 register 6 access  
 2 hours 7 charge  
 3 referred 8 surgery  
 4 referral 9 medicine  
 5 opinion 10 negligence
- 4 1 S 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 D 8 D 9 S
- 5 1 kept 4 junior  
 2 surgery 5 spotlessly  
 3 rushed 6 convalescence

### Unit 34

- 1 1 resident 5 charity  
 2 ensure 6 allocate  
 3 voluntary 7 manifesto  
 4 council 8 councillor
- 2 1 manifestos 4 volunteer voluntary  
 2 to in 5 for-of  
 3 make take 6 out up
- 3 1 councillors, behalf 4 stick/stand, take  
 2 councils, charity 5 grant  
 3 have 6 citizens



- 4 1 *All three are possible.*  
 2 transport, road  
 3 profile  
 4 chairman, chairperson  
 5 spokesperson, spokesman  
 6 eligible, ineligible
- 5 1 police 4 agency 7 eligible  
 2 promotes 5 budget 8 mayor  
 3 chair 6 network

### Unit 35

- 1 *The following activities are illegal:*  
 smuggling, fraud, forgery, drug-trafficking.
- 2 1 defrauding 5 organized  
 2 trafficking 6 forgery  
 3 exploit 7 enticed, proceeds  
 4 smuggle
- 4 1 a constable  
 2 an inspector/the chief constable  
 3 the chief constable  
 4 a magistrate/judge  
 5 the police/a police constable/officer/  
 a policeman  
 6 a solicitor  
 7 a judge/magistrate  
 8 someone awaiting trial / prisoner  
 9 a prisoner/someone awaiting trial
- 5 1 about 6 custody  
 2 police 7 solicitor  
 3 detained 8 magistrate  
 4 grounds 9 released  
 5 cautioned

### Unit 36

- 1 1 up  
 2 me as a friend  
 3 over a new leaf.  
 4 justifiable  
 5 imprisonment  
 6 abolition of the law  
 7 occupational hazard  
 8 reoffenders
- 2 1 rehabilitate 4 abolish  
 2 deterrent 5 revenge  
 3 capital 6 crisis
- 3 *These are correct:*  
 1 confined 4 self-assessment  
 2 deviate 5 agreement/consent  
 3 prisoners/inmates 6 exclusively
- 4 1 therapy 5 proportion  
 2 segregation 6 mutual  
 3 cells 7 therapeutic  
 4 consent 8 contained

### Unit 37

- 1 1 civilian 6 authority  
 2 weapon 7 distinguish  
 3 nuclear 8 missile  
 4 enlisted 9 conscription  
 5 the draft
- 2 unarmed combat military operation  
 vast majority air force  
 armed forces make a distinction  
 lethal weapon nuclear capability
- 3 1 vast  
 2 military  
 3 composed  
 4 fundamental  
 5 combat  
 6 diverse  
 7 guard  
 8 comprise  
 9 deadly  
 10 distinguish/differentiate  
 11 encompasses  
 12 serve
- 4 1 forces 7 enlisted/serving  
 2 consist 8 reserves  
 3 navy 9 branch  
 4 force 10 capability/weapons  
 5 command 11 comprises/comprise  
 6 authority/command
- 6 1 civil 5 considerably  
 2 simply/merely 6 a domestic/an internal  
 3 mobilizing 7 internal  
 4 interior 8 assisting/helping
- 7 1 productive 6 funding  
 2 warfare 7 latter  
 3 force 8 army / armed forces  
 4 interior 9 domestic/internal  
 5 rights/liberties 10 considerable

### Unit 38

- 1 1 B 2 B 3 G 4 B 5 B 6 G 7 G 8 B
- 2 1 f 3 g 5 a 7 h 9 d  
 2 c 4 b 6 j 8 e 10 i
- 3 1 New arms deal  
 2 Blast wrecks fire station  
 3 Go-ahead for rail scheme  
 4 Company chief ousted  
 5 Boost for big banks  
 6 Ministers to curb spending  
 7 Kidnappers demand ransom  
 8 Government urges delay  
 9 Motorcyclist cleared of child's death  
 10 Firm on brink of closure

## 4 Possible answers:

- 1 Blast wrecks new shopping centre
- 2 Police rule out new murder probe
- 3 Prime Minister vows to curb government spending
- 4 Ministers bid to oust PM
- 5 Riddle surrounding stolen gems

## Unit 39

- |             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| 1 1 opinion | 5 controversial |
| 2 lapse     | 6 scathing      |
| 3 emerged   | 7 allegation    |
| 4 doors     | 8 According     |
- 
- |                 |            |
|-----------------|------------|
| 2 1 Amid/Amidst | 5 sources  |
| 2 leaked        | 6 quoted   |
| 3 cover         | 7 scenes   |
| 4 According     | 8 measures |
- 
- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 3 1 shooting firing               |  |
| 2 drip drop                       |  |
| 3 <del>thunderstorm</del> storm   |  |
| 4 <del>wave</del> tide            |  |
| 5 <del>raining</del> flooding     |  |
| 6 flat level                      |  |
| 7 <del>goalkeeper</del> goalposts |  |
| 8 <del>bend</del> corner          |  |
| 9 <del>burning</del> blazing      |  |
- 
- |                       |                |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| 4 1 under attack/fire | 4 storm of     |
| 2 sparked             | 5 tight corner |
| 3 foul play           | 6 drop, ocean  |

## Unit 40

- |                       |             |
|-----------------------|-------------|
| 1 1 Both are correct. | 4 pencilled |
| 2 excruciating        | 5 do        |
| 3 Both are correct.   | 6 remaining |
- 
- |                  |           |
|------------------|-----------|
| 2 1 excruciating | 5 puns    |
| 2 chronic        | 6 daren't |
| 3 ensuing        | 7 rapid   |
| 4 punctured      | 8 tip     |
- 
- |       |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 3 1 S | 2 D | 3 S | 4 D | 5 S | 6 D | 7 S | 8 D |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
- 
- |                       |           |
|-----------------------|-----------|
| 4 1 disorientated     | 5 stay    |
| 2 swamp               | 6 odds    |
| 3 regain              | 7 drastic |
| 4 dazed/disorientated | 8 chances |

## Unit 41

- |                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| 1 1 All three are correct. |  |
| 2 intrude/pry              |  |
| 3 coverage/tabloids        |  |
| 4 fame/privacy             |  |
| 5 singled out              |  |
- 
- |            |                         |
|------------|-------------------------|
| 2 1 survey | 5 deserve               |
| 2 carried  | 6 personality/celebrity |
| 3 findings | 7 eye                   |
| 4 fame     |                         |
- 
- |              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| 3 1 privacy  | 3 pry, public |
| 2 broadsheet | 4 fame        |

- |  |
|--|
| 4 1 rumour, allegations, scandal, rock, broadcast, exclusive |
| 2 rocks, rehab, fellow, rally                                |
- 
- |  |
|--|
| 5 1 Lulu has dumped Rocco.                   |
| 2 Amelia gave birth to a baby boy last week. |
| 3 Jason has custody of his daughter.         |
| 4 Arun is a fellow student.                  |
| 5 The journalist wanted to get a scoop.      |
| 6 They're newlyweds.                         |

## Unit 42

- |  |
|--|
| 1 1 T  |
| 2 T  |
| 3 F; A liberal believes in economic freedom and <b>gradual</b> political change. |
| 4 F; The Conservative Party in Britain believes in <b>capitalism</b> .           |
| 5 F; <b>Communists</b> believe that everyone should own the means of production. |
- 
- |                                |
|--------------------------------|
| 2 1 right-wing                 |
| 2 reactionary                  |
| 3 opposed to it/against it     |
| 4 (to maintain) the status quo |
| 5 moderate                     |
| 6 in the centre                |
- 
- |                            |
|----------------------------|
| 3 1 equality, distribution |
| 2 means                    |
| 3 on                       |
| 4 associated               |
| 5 identification           |
- 
- |              |           |
|--------------|-----------|
| 4 1 strings  | 5 heated  |
| 2 microscope | 6 doctors |
| 3 hands      | 7 boat    |
| 4 deep, sink | 8 heading |
- 
- |                          |
|--------------------------|
| 5 1 at the deep end      |
| 2 of her depth           |
| 3 in the right direction |
| 4 foundations            |
| 5 cracks                 |
| 6 seat                   |
| 7 debate/discussion      |
| 8 spin                   |

## Unit 43

- |       |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 1 c | 2 a | 3 e | 4 g | 5 f | 6 d | 7 h | 8 b |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
- 
- 2 We were close to > 5 ~~the point where~~ people couldn't deal with the situation. Food was 8 ~~in short supply~~, the situation was 1 ~~unpleasant and depressing~~, and many people had already 2 left the city for good. Then at 7 a.m. yesterday the attack happened. A man who was just clearing 6 ~~stones, bricks, and glass~~ from a damaged building was shot by a 3 ~~hidden~~ **gunman**. Amid the ensuing chaos, a small



group of rebel soldiers entered the nearby radio station and took control of it. The army immediately ~~4 began to surround~~ the building. They brought in large guns and started ~~7 firing at~~ it, then, as night approached, they attacked. The rebels were soon ~~9 defeated by~~ the superior numbers and firepower of the army.

#### Unit 44

- 1 travel expenses pension scheme  
subsidized canteen healthcare provision  
maternity leave relocation allowance
- 2 1 car, travel, health  
2 relocation, food, fuel  
3 company, government, private/personal  
4 healthcare, childcare
- 3 1 benefits ('perks' is too informal for a job advertisement)  
2 pension  
3 related  
4 entitlement  
5 allowance  
6 provision  
7 canteen

#### Unit 45

- 1 1 encountered  
2 degree  
3 was accountable to no one OR wasn't accountable to anyone  
4 insight into  
5 juggle  
6 pros and cons
- 2 1 boss  
2 solely  
3 encountered  
4 degree  
5 lucrative  
6 encroach  
7 guaranteed  
8 additional/extra/further
- 4 1 P 2 N 3 N 4 N 5 P 6 N
- 5 team spirit pool resources  
boost morale undermine your authority  
mutual respect stifle creativity
- 6 1 He didn't fit in.  
2 She can use her initiative.  
3 I find the work very fulfilling.  
4 There was a lot of collaboration.  
5 They had a common goal.  
6 We think it will foster team spirit.  
7 We can pool our resources.  
8 They have a lot of mutual respect.

#### Unit 46

- 1 1 clinch 4 mount  
2 bid 5 imminent  
3 set 6 dividend, shareholders
- 2 1 joint 5 takeover  
2 turned it down 6 merger  
3 acquisitions 7 hostile  
4 former 8 backing
- 3 1 D 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 S 6 S 7 S 8 D
- 4 1 lure/entice 5 fuel  
2 lying 6 bankrupt/under  
3 balance 7 settles  
4 cards

#### Unit 47

- 1 1 G 2 B 3 B 4 G 5 G 6 B
- 2 1 weakening  
2 hike  
3 slump  
4 plummeted/plunged  
5 volatile/in turmoil/turbulent  
6 gains
- 3 1 buoyant  
2 rallied/bounced back  
3 soared  
4 plummeted  
5 turmoil  
6 turbulent/volatile
- 4 1 debit debt  
2 burnt burst  
3 contradicted contradicted  
4 inventors investors  
5 underpin underpin  
6 corporate corporate  
7 equities equities  
8 fields yields
- 5 1 outlook, underlying  
2 debt burden  
3 conflicting advice  
4 invest, equities  
5 bubble, burst  
6 under pressure

#### Unit 48

- 1 1 lose, debit, statement, transactions  
2 current, credit, savings/deposit  
3 keep, red  
4 thrifty, extravagant
- 2 1 withdrew 4 overdraft  
2 overdrawn 5 mount/build  
3 outgoings 6 squanders

- 3 1 *Surplus* is different; *shortfall/deficit* mean an amount that is less than you need.  
 2 *Contingency* is different; *shortfall/shortage* both mean not having enough of something.  
 3 *Economize* is different; *take away/subtract* mean to take one number from another.  
 4 *Make contingency plans* is different; *economize/make cutbacks* mean to reduce the amount you spend.  
 5 *Deficit* is different; *budget/fund* mean an amount of money you have available to spend.  
 6 *Economize* is different; *work out/calculate* mean to find the total number/amount of something.
- 4 1 shortages                      6 budget  
 2 shortfall                      7 work out  
 3 contingency                  8 shortfall/deficit  
 4 subsidy                      9 cutbacks  
 5 bail                          10 per

### Unit 49

- 1 1 prioritized                      4 basis, wherever  
 2 *Both are correct.*              5 anticipated  
 3 *Both are correct.*
- 2 1 basis                      5 delegate  
 2 sticks                      6 jot  
 3 anticipate                  7 matter  
 4 scheduled                  8 accomplished/achieved
- 4 1 deluge                      4 severely hit  
 2 interminable                  5 under control  
 3 inundated                      6 plague
- 5 1 I need to **set** aside money for rent.  
 2 I've lost my **train** of thought.  
 3 We were hard **hit** by the price war.  
 4 The work has been never-**ending**.  
 5 Our spending has got out **of** hand.  
 6 I had to break **off** from what I was doing.  
 7 The situation is **under** control.
- 6 1 stream, overwhelmed/stressed/swamped  
 2 unproductive  
 3 deluge  
 4 promptly  
 5 stressed  
 6 productive

### Unit 50

- 1 1 set                      4 set                      6 halt  
 2 settle                      5 break                      7 step up  
 3 ballot
- 2 1 closures                      4 deadlock  
 2 dispute                      5 privatize  
 3 precedent                      6 inclined (or likely)

- 3 1 procrastination                  4 intervention  
 2 interference                      5 wisdom  
 3 resolution                      6 prudence
- 4 1 P    2 P    3 A    4 A    5 P    6 A    7 P    8 A
- 5 1 sort                      5 blow  
 2 intervene                  6 proportion  
 3 out                      7 wise/prudent/sensible  
 4 buck                      8 resolved

### Unit 51

- 1 1 S    2 S    3 S    4 D    5 S    6 D    7 S    8 D
- 2 1 handover  
 2 absence  
 3 piled up/accumulated  
 4 failed/neglected  
 5 neglected  
 6 photocopier  
 7 poking  
 8 giggling  
 9 hectic

### Unit 52

- 1 1 drives  
 2 retaliated  
 3 *Both words are correct.*  
 4 overreact  
 5 *Both words are correct.*  
 6 incident  
 7 led  
 8 provoke
- 2 1 road, incident                  3 overreact  
 2 dented                      4 drive
- 3 1 f    2 e    3 g    4 b    5 d    6 h    7 c    8 a
- 4 1 The house took a long time to build, but the end **result** is fantastic.  
 2 A What made you ring the doctor?  
 B Oh, **no** reason.  
 3 The new law came **into** effect at the beginning of June.  
 4 Too much sunlight can have a **detrimental** effect on your skin.  
 5 Current deforestation will have long-term **repercussions/consequences**.  
 6 I'm not really sure what **prompted** him to resign so suddenly.  
 7 What was the final **outcome/result** of the talks in Bali?  
 8 One indirect result or knock-on **effect** will be price rises throughout the economy.

### Unit 53

- 1 1 embellish                      5 interrogated  
 2 sustain                      6 unpalatable  
 3 humiliated                      7 detect  
 4 interrogation                      8 namely



- 2 1 economical 6 interrogated  
2 talked 7 caught  
3 embellish 8 humiliated  
4 gloss 9 sustain  
5 deteriorated 10 needless to
- 3 Formal: falsehood, confound sb, adversary, declare sth  
Informal: phoney, fib, level with sb  
Neutral: a white lie, deceit, distort
- 4 1 anonymously 5 declared  
2 casualty 6 baffled/puzzled  
3 posthumously 7 deceiving/deluding  
4 half 8 distorted

### Unit 54

- 1 1 growing 4 exacerbate  
2 face up to 5 insoluble  
3 arise/come up 6 confronting
- 2 1 worse 5 grips  
2 urgent 6 perennial  
3 raised 7 tackling/confronting  
4 overcome 8 minor
- 4 1 esteem 4 regardless  
2 get her down 5 trivial  
3 articulate 6 channel
- 5 1 dented 5 behind  
2 her stride 6 reassured  
3 perspective 7 light  
4 at rest 8 setback

### Unit 55

- 1 1 extra- ultra-  
2 destruction preservation  
3 ruins remains  
4 estables stables  
5 on-ruins in ruins  
6 formally formerly
- 2 1 formerly/previously  
2 up, renovate  
3 run-down/dilapidated/ramshackle  
4 decay/disrepair, abandoned ('neglected' is also possible here)  
5 preserve  
6 Middle, medieval  
7 trace  
8 ultra-
- 3 1 out 4 cutting edge  
2 mint/perfect 5 new  
3 good 6 hand
- 4 1 device 5 genuine  
2 antique 6 packaging  
3 ancient, reproductions 7 reproduces  
4 reconditioned 8 up, innovative

### Unit 56

- 1 a resounding victory, come unstuck, the secret of your success, turn out badly, a stroke of luck, fulfil your potential
- 2 1 G 2 B 3 B 4 G 5 G 6 G
- 3 1 overcome 3 to strength 5 turned  
2 stroke 4 secret 6 potential
- 4 The informal words and phrases are:  
1 make a go of it 4 -  
2 flop 5 up against it  
3 past it 6 way
- 5 1 came  
2 make  
3 Both words are correct.  
4 way  
5 make  
6 Both words are correct.
- 6 1 I don't like to tell him he's past it. ~ Hmm, It's a **tricky** situation. I don't envy you.  
2 Any chance he'll make a comeback? ~ No, his last film **flopped** badly.  
3 Did she **come** top in the public vote? ~ Yes, but she was **up** against it.  
4 He **let** himself down in the exam. ~ Yes, he only just **scraped/got** through.  
5 Her interview was an unmitigated **disaster**. ~ Yes, she was way **out** of her depth.

### Unit 57

- 1 at the last minute, over time, in retrospect, with hindsight, behind the times, at one time, from time to time, for the time being, in due course
- 2 1 retrospect 6 flown  
2 hindsight 7 course  
3 leaves, minute 8 At  
4 about/high 9 over  
5 before my time 10 for the time being
- 4 1 an interval 5 during  
2 Both words are correct. 6 Both words are correct.  
3 Both words are correct. 7 era  
4 spell 8 prolong
- 5 1 throughout/during  
2 break  
3 During  
4 spell  
5 phase/stage/time  
6 age  
7 soon  
8 extend  
9 gap  
10 elapsed/passed/gone by

## Unit 58

- 1 1 bloke/guy  
2 nicked/pinched  
3 moaning  
4 vile/disgusting  
5 tight-fisted/tight/stingy  
6 quid  
7 lousy  
8 loo
- 2 1 pain (in the neck) 4 drag  
2 laugh 5 cheek/nerve  
3 rip-off 6 get-together
- 3 1 illness 3 sleep 5 food  
2 noise 4 money 6 criticism
- 4 1 Cheers = Ta  
2 din = racket  
3 stick = flak  
4 starving = dying for something to eat  
5 love = darling  
6 thrashed = hammered
- 5 1 broke 5 kip 8 bug  
2 daft 6 conned 9 into  
3 laid-back 7 dodgy 10 posh  
4 nosy

## Unit 59

- 1 1 It's no **good**/use worrying about it.  
2 off the **top** of my head  
3 in one **ear** and out the other  
4 could **do** with  
5 My **mind** went a complete blank  
6 under **the** weather
- 2 1 mind 5 there/somewhere  
2 head 6 weather  
3 blank 7 keep you waiting  
4 bet 8 and out the other
- 4 1 false  
2 don't know the answer  
3 not being  
4 possible  
5 I don't know  
6 don't expect
- 5 1 're joking/'re kidding'/can't be serious  
2 way/chance  
3 is as good as mine  
4 one of those days  
5 bet  
6 foregone conclusion  
7 luck  
8 to lose  
9 say that again  
10 your day.

## Unit 60

- 1 1 down 4 worth 7 worlds  
2 fails 5 true 8 ground  
3 battle 6 of your own
- 2 1 a world of her own  
2 resort  
3 keep his feet on the ground  
4 else fails  
5 lose face  
6 good to be true  
7 letting her hair down  
8 the best of both worlds
- 4 1 Guess 4 some 7 equal  
2 know 5 admit 8 believe  
3 earth 6 wonder
- 5 1 Do you know if it's open, **by any chance**?  
OR Do you **happen to** know if it's open?  
2 How old are you, **if you don't mind me/ my asking**?  
3 She looks about 20, but **believe it or not**, she's only 13. OR ... but she's only 13, **believe it or not**.  
4 He's been very ill, so **no wonder** he looks thin.  
5 I'm hoping to go, but **the thing is**, I've got a meeting on the same day.  
6 There are many exceptions, but **all things being equal**, I think men are better cooks than women.  
7 The book is **every bit** as violent as all his others.  
8 It was a beautiful day, but **for some reason**, the beach was deserted; I can't think why.

## Unit 61

- 1 push and shove long and hard  
pick and choose sooner or later  
back to front rules and regulations  
first and foremost sick and tired
- 2 1 cheerful 5 bustle, tired  
2 order, corruption 6 error  
3 later 7 sound  
4 foremost, objectives 8 forth

## Unit 62

- 1 1 mouse 4 feather 7 ox  
2 cakes 5 log 8 dream  
3 bone 6 sieve
- 2 1 He's deaf as a post.  
2 She's blind as a bat.  
3 She's as thin as a rake.  
4 It worked like a dream.  
5 She went/was as white as a sheet.  
6 They were as good as gold.  
7 She went/was as red as a beetroot.  
8 He's got a mind like a sieve.



## Unit 63

- 1 1 communicate  
2 claim  
3 criticized  
4 raise  
5 interrupted  
6 prolong  
7 retaliate
- 2 1 I never expected him to **own up** to the crime.  
2 Nothing can **make up** for the loss of earnings.  
3 She tried to **talk me out of** giving up my job.  
4 Do you think they'll ever **do away with** the monarchy?  
5 He isn't easily **taken in**.  
6 Try and **talk him into** coming.  
7 Did they **take** the shed **to pieces/apart**?  
8 Have they **made up**?
- 3 1 ~~go-by~~ get by  
2 ~~cropped out~~ cropped up  
3 *Correct*  
4 ~~missing out of~~ missing out on  
5 ~~bump in~~ bump into  
6 *Correct*
- 4 1 turned up/showed up  
2 pick up  
3 shake off  
4 sank in  
5 pick up  
6 gone down with  
7 wear off  
8 pick up

## Unit 64

- 1 1 mind you  
2 at any rate  
3 even so  
4 as a matter of fact  
5 on the whole
- 6 in any case  
7 broadly speaking  
8 to be honest  
9 to a large extent  
10 all the same
- 2 1 **Broadly** speaking  
2 All **the** same  
3 alternatively
- 4 In **any** case  
5 To **tell** you the truth  
6 as I was **saying**
- 3 1 Incidentally  
2 to be honest/as a matter of fact/actually  
3 On the whole/By and large/Broadly speaking  
4 Mind you  
5 besides/anyway  
6 It's true; even so/all the same  
7 Anyway/Anyhow  
8 actually/to be honest/to tell you the truth
- 4 1 to be honest  
2 Alternatively  
3 It's true, All the same  
4 Mind you
- 5 By the way  
6 As for  
7 besides  
8 by and large

## Unit 65

- 1 1 somewhere **in** the region  
2 sort **of** pretending to be ill  
3 have **stacks/tons/loads/bags** of rice  
4 or **something** of that sort  
5 give **or** take a few minutes  
6 tomorrow **somehow** or other  
7 along those **lines**.  
8 **round** about 6.30
- 2 1 I've completed **round about** 50 per cent of the project.  
2 He looks **kind of** depressed.  
3 His job is **something to do with** marketing.  
4 Do you know who all **that stuff** belongs to?  
5 I imagine we'll get fifty-**odd** people at the meeting.  
6 We've got **tons of** vegetables so I'd better make some soup.  
7 She must be getting on for 80 or **thereabouts**, I would say.  
8 We could get him a book **or something (like that/along those lines)** for his birthday.

## Unit 66

- 1 1 It's a **small** world.  
2 Once **bitten**, twice shy.  
3 The more the **merrier**.  
4 Famous last **words**.  
5 So far, so **good**.  
6 First come, **first** served.  
7 Out of **sight**, out of mind.  
8 Easier **said** than done.
- 2 1 twice shy  
2 so good  
3 world  
4 out of mind  
5 never tell  
6 the merrier  
7 said than done  
8 first served  
9 calling the kettle black
- 4 1 blood is thicker than water; charity begins at home.  
2 love is blind; beauty is only skin-deep.  
3 two wrongs don't make a right; the end justifies the means.  
4 live and let live; let sleeping dogs lie.  
5 two heads are better than one; practice makes perfect.
- 5 Prevention is better than cure.  
Actions speak louder than words.  
Love is blind.  
Blood is thicker than water.  
Lightning never strikes twice.  
Charity begins at home.

- 6 1 never 7 good news  
2 sorry 8 justifies the means  
3 once 9 don't make a right  
4 lie 10 strikes twice  
5 perfect 11 than cure  
6 better than one 12 for an eye

- 7 1 Practice makes perfect.  
2 Two heads are better than one.  
3 You're only young once.  
4 Blood is thicker than water.  
5 No news is good news.  
6 Money talks.  
7 Two wrongs don't make a right.  
8 Better late than never.  
9 Live and let live.  
10 Let sleeping dogs lie.  
11 Love is blind.  
12 An eye for an eye.

### Unit 67

- 1 1 condolences 5 Following  
2 see 6 concerning  
3 delighted to 7 Should  
4 forward 8 to
- 2 1 enquire  
2 regret, inform  
3 intention, terminate  
4 Should, require, further, do not hesitate, contact  
5 Following/Further to, conversation, I would be grateful, concerning
- 3 1 I am writing in **response** to your article about supermarket packaging.  
2 We look forward to hearing from you.  
3 I am writing **in** reply to your letter of 17 October.  
4 Thank you for your letter **concerning/ regarding** the pre-service training course at CDQ.  
5 Please **find** enclosed a copy of my birth certificate.  
6 I am writing in reply to your **appeal** for donations following the tsunami disaster.  
7 Please accept my sincere **condolences** on the death of your grandfather.  
8 I would like to **draw** your attention to the final clause of the lease.  
9 As you **will** see from my CV, I have extensive experience in sales and marketing.  
10 With **reference** to your letter of 17 May, I am enclosing the documents you requested.

#### 4 Possible answers:

- 1 I am writing in response to your advertisement for a receptionist in yesterday's paper.  
2 Please find enclosed a photocopy of my driving licence.

- 3 Following/Further to our conversation yesterday, I now have the necessary documents.  
4 Should you require any further information about my qualifications, please do not hesitate to contact me.  
5 I would be grateful if you could send me a brochure and price list.  
6 I am delighted to inform you that your application has been successful/ that you have been given the job/post.

- 5 1 N 3 N 5 P 7 P 9 N  
2 P 4 P 6 N 8 N 10 N

- 6 1 stated 5 subject  
2 abrupt/curt/rude 6 body  
3 sample 7 superfluous/irrelevant  
4 spell 8 straightforward

### Unit 68

- 1 1 thus/hence 4 prior to  
2 albeit 5 in view of  
3 notwithstanding 6 Hitherto
- 2 1 henceforth  
2 thus/hence  
3 Prior to  
4 With regard to/Regarding/Concerning  
5 Notwithstanding  
6 In conclusion

### Unit 69

- 1 1 sum up / summarize 5 criterion  
2 assessment 6 presentation  
3 narrator 7 argument  
4 assess/evaluate 8 present
- 2 1 narrative 5 criteria  
2 summary 6 command  
3 incoherent 7 register  
4 stylistic 8 discursive
- 3 1 condemnation 4 exemplified  
2 conclusion 5 assertion  
3 hypothesize 6 justification
- 4 1 She **outlined** her ideas.  
2 She had one **hypothesis**.  
3 She **highlighted** certain points.  
4 She wouldn't **condone** his behaviour.  
5 She didn't **adopt** a clear **position**.  
6 She went on to **explore** the idea in more depth.  
7 She couldn't **justify** her ideas.  
8 In the end, she **sat on the fence**.

### Unit 70

- 1 1 betrayal 6 insanity  
2 portrayal 7 resilient  
3 defiance 8 merciful/merciless  
4 embodiment 9 pitiful



## 5 prosperity

- 2 1 an explanation 4 sad  
2 difficult 5 ability  
3 the truth 6 refuse
- 3 1 synopsis 5 inherent  
2 depicted 6 insane  
3 pitiful 7 represents  
4 prosperous 8 companionship
- 4 1 protagonist 7 betrayed  
2 depicted 8 Fate  
3 endows 9 downfall  
4 represented 10 unlike  
5 embodiment 11 mercy  
6 defies 12 conveyed

## Unit 71

- 1 objective, objectivity  
biased, bias  
empirical, empiricism  
verify, verification  
hypothesize, hypothesis  
scrutinize, scrutiny
- 2 1 facet 4 unbiased  
2 scrutiny 5 conviction  
3 hypothesis 6 replicate
- 3 1 procedure 4 empirical  
2 phenomenon 5 archive  
3 duplicate/replicate 6 biased/subjective
- 4 1 defective 4 hereditary  
2 abnormal 5 short-lived  
3 unit 6 immune
- 5 1 Gene, cells 5 genetic  
2 mutation 6 heredity  
3 insert/inserted 7 insertion  
4 repel/fight 8 molecular, molecule

## Unit 72

- 1 1 b 3 c 5 a 7 a 9 b  
2 a 4 b 6 c 8 b 10 c
- 2 1 establish 6 constraints  
2 swaying 7 panels  
3 moving 8 anchor  
4 withstand/resist 9 stringent  
5 meet 10 rigorous
- 3 1 withstand/stand up to/resist  
2 sway  
3 occupants/residents  
4 determine/establish  
5 girders/supports  
6 load  
7 counteract  
8 reinforced

## Unit 73

- 1 1 humorous humble  
2 weekend way  
3 interest information  
4 drink day  
5 tired displeased  
6 turn talk  
7 two days today  
8 laughs love (or laughing out loud)  
9 letters lips  
10 concerned confused  
11 make mind  
12 read remember/recall
- 2 Hi, thanks for your message. Are you going to see Sally this weekend? Please give her lots of love. :) Alice  
Dinner last night was excellent. Thanks ☺  
Will you be in tonight? Hope to see you later. Joe  
Sorry, but I'm probably going to be late for the meeting. I will ring you with more information later. Please start without me. Bye for now, Zoe  
Hi, can you phone me as soon as possible? I have something important to tell you! My lips are sealed. All the best, Suzie  
Could you speak to your dad before the weekend? If I recall/remember correctly, he will be in tomorrow. Lots of love, Steffi.
- 3 1 gr8 5 xInt 8 w/o  
2 thx 6 b4 9 ;x  
3 cul8r 7 lol 10 2moro  
4 imho
- 4 1 T 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 T 8 F
- 5 1 c/o 3 attn/fao 5 incl.  
2 PS 4 sae
- 6 1 CEO 3 TLC 5 CCTV  
2 PC 4 B & B 6 IQ

## Unit 74

- 1 1 interaction 7 misfire  
2 misconception 8 ill-informed  
3 misdiagnose 9 mislay  
4 ill-prepared 10 ill-advised  
5 interdependent 11 interrelated  
6 mistreat 12 misjudge
- 2 1 misinformed  
2 mishandled/mismanaged  
3 mistreated/ill-treated  
4 ill-informed  
5 mislaid/misplaced  
6 misprints  
7 misconceived  
8 misdiagnosed  
9 miscalculated  
10 interrelated

3 racism/frost/privileged/depressant/populated/  
assess/classified/fuel/fed/value/book  
defrost, depopulated, declassified, devalue

- 4 1 Both forms are correct.  
2 disadvantaged  
3 anti-war  
4 Both forms are correct.  
5 underprivileged  
6 Both forms are correct.

- 5 1 anti-inflammatory  
2 underemployed  
3 depreciated  
4 anti-virus software  
5 reassess/reappraise/reconsider  
6 undercooked  
7 overdose  
8 undernourished/underfed

### Unit 75

- 1 1 characterize 6 industrialize  
2 solidify 7 electrify  
3 clarify 8 pacify  
4 symbolize 9 exemplify  
5 legalize

- 2 1 economize 5 pacify  
2 intensified 6 purify  
3 visualize 7 privatize  
4 vandalized 8 quantify

4 a trouble-free life, a soundproof room,  
childproof locks, tax-free income, a  
foolproof method, duty-free perfume

- 5 1 ovenproof 4 bulletproof  
2 interest-free 5 inflation-proof  
3 foolproof 6 waterproof

### Unit 76

- 1 1 against 5 over 8 with  
2 on 6 for 9 from  
3 for 7 for 10 for  
4 about

- 2 1 regard 5 aptitude  
2 compilation 6 clips  
3 extract/excerpt 7 restriction  
4 grudge 8 control

3 1 d 2 f 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 e

- 4 1 representative 6 subject  
2 dependent 7 live  
3 subservient 8 resistant  
4 reconciled/resigned 9 stems  
5 intent 10 reminiscent

### Unit 77

- 1 1 at 4 fail 7 on  
2 On 5 on 8 exchange  
3 in 6 away

- 2 1 by choice 5 in exchange for  
2 at once 6 without fail  
3 on reflection 7 at short notice  
4 at the very least 8 on balance

- 3 1 All three are possible.  
2 under investigation/under suspicion  
3 in possession of  
4 All three are possible.  
5 in touch

- 4 1 We have had to put our holiday plans on  
**hold** for the moment because of work.  
2 Out of respect for the bereaved family,  
hundreds turned up at the funeral.  
3 I'm afraid I can't help as I'm really out of  
**touch** with this area of research.  
4 The demonstrators will be in serious  
**trouble** if the army starts to attack them.  
5 The multi-storey car park has been **under**  
construction for six months.  
6 He works for a **giant** engineering  
company; it's a multinational and doing  
very well.  
7 She opened the can by **means** of a special  
device designed for the disabled.  
8 We caught a glimpse of the rabbit before  
it ran **out** of sight into the bushes.

### Unit 78

- 1 1 perplexed  
2 conceivable  
3 Both are correct.  
4 a notorious/an infamous  
5 bizarre  
6 Both are correct.

- 2 1 notorious 6 bizarre  
2 wicked 7 implausible  
3 unconvincing 8 despondent  
4 puzzled/baffled 9 distinguished  
5 inconceivable 10 exceptional

- 3 1 wicked 4 baffled  
2 despondent/dejected 5 outstanding  
3 eminent 6 bizarre

- 4 1 naked bare  
2 childlike childish  
3 Correct  
4 **invaluable** worthless/valueless  
5 **nude** naked  
6 Correct  
7 negligent negligible  
8 **naked** nude  
9 Correct

- 5 1 comprehensive 5 tasteful  
2 childlike 6 concluding  
3 conclusive 7 comprehensible  
4 exhaustive 8 negligent



**Unit 79**

- 1 1 Evidently  
 2 curiously (enough)/strangely (enough)/  
 oddly (enough)  
 3 Practically  
 4 presumably  
 5 basically  
 6 frankly/personally
- 2 1 frankly                      4 obviously  
 2 Apparently                5 naturally  
 3 ultimately                6 curiously enough
- 3 1 Officially  
 2 Financially/Commercially (speaking)  
 3 Realistically  
 4 Socially  
 5 Technically  
 6 Logically  
 7 Theoretically (speaking)  
 8 Traditionally
- 4 1 concerned                4 speaking  
 2 mentally                    5 Traditionally  
 3 indirectly                6 As far as
- 5 1 relatively/somewhat  
 2 simply/purely  
 3 strictly  
 4 relatively  
 5 briefly/chiefly  
 6 invariably  
 7 simply/truly  
 8 strictly
- 6 1 primarily/chiefly/predominantly  
 2 invariably  
 3 briefly  
 4 equally  
 5 forever  
 6 truly  
 7 precisely

**Unit 80**

- 1 1 friendly fire                5 passed away  
 2 practical                    6 helping  
 3 hard of hearing            7 put it to sleep  
 4 let him go                  8 impaired
- 2 1 Did she help herself to a couple of pens?  
 2 The company is downsizing.  
 3 The animal was put down.  
 4 My dog Barty is not exactly clever.  
 5 The president's getting on.  
 6 There was a lot of collateral damage.

# Answer key to review units

## Expanding your vocabulary

### Unit 1

- 1 1 ambiguous
- 2 transparent/self-explanatory
- 3 old-fashioned
- 4 poke fun
- 5 disapproving
- 6 precise
- 7 interchangeable/synonyms/synonymous
- 8 virtually

### Unit 2

- 1 1 It suddenly dawned on me who had stolen my mobile.
- 2 I'm in two minds about the job.
- 3 In his haste, he sent the vase flying.
- 4 She ate some chocolate, which kept her going until she was rescued.
- 5 The laptop's a bargain and comes with free software.
- 6 Do many people try to get out of paying tax?
- 7 That/It was sweet of you to do that for me.
- 8 Changing his job is the last thing on his mind.

### Unit 3

- 1 1 look
- 2 shoes, equipment
- 3 off-putting
- 4 hold-up
- 5 passer-by, next of kin
- 6 car
- 7 setback, break-up
- 8 drawing pin
- 2 1 open-minded
- 2 last-minute
- 3 nursery rhymes
- 4 shortcut OR short cut
- 5 turnout
- 6 absent-minded
- 7 spare part
- 8 shake-up
- 9 breakdown
- 10 barbed wire

### Unit 4

- 1 1 caught fire
- 2 broken out
- 3 spread rapidly
- 4 gale-force winds
- 5 advance warning
- 6 a narrow escape
- 7 put it out
- 8 growing concern
- 9 face the prospect
- 10 held responsible

- 2 1 considerable/great
- 2 real
- 3 reach
- 4 point
- 5 fierce/widespread/strong
- 6 make
- 7 concern
- 8 compromise
- 9 honour
- 10 familiar
- 11 brief

### Unit 5

- 1 1 lick
  - 2 count
  - 3 reflect
  - 4 absorb
  - 5 shrug
  - 6 stamp
  - 7 favour
  - 8 circumstances
  - 9 raise
  - 10 propose
  - 11 hung
- The word in the grey squares is 'information'.

### Unit 6

- 1 apologetic
- occupied
- forgivable/unforgivable
- defenceless, defensive
- finalize
- excel
- pointless
- emotive/emotional
- heartless
- severity

## The body

### Unit 7

- 1 1 h 2 f 3 a 4 b 5 g 6 c 7 e 8 d
- 2 1 attracted drew
- 2 make create
- 3 loosen straighten
- 4 enhance exaggerate
- 5 going getting
- 6 unflattering flattering
- 7 for to
- 8 cover conceal/hide

### Unit 8

- 1 1 flirting
- 2 fancied
- 3 fiddling
- 4 contact
- 5 conclusion(s)
- 6 leaning
- 7 folded
- 8 going
- 9 misinterpreted



## Unit 9

## 1 Possible answers:

- Perhaps because they had injured their leg or foot.
- If someone was riding it in a race.
- For pleasure. / To enjoy yourself.
- So that no one could hear or see you.
- Not usually.
- Not usually.
- To give yourself some variety.
- Do some exercise. / Work out at the gym.

## Unit 10

- |             |           |             |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|
| 1 rattled   | 5 beeped  | 8 squelched |
| 2 rumbled   | 6 screech | 9 creaking  |
| 3 rustled   | 7 slammed | 10 pitched  |
| 4 splashing |           |             |
- 
- |          |           |        |
|----------|-----------|--------|
| 2 1 roar | 4 rattle  | 7 buzz |
| 2 creak  | 5 screech | 8 slam |
| 3 howl   | 6 bark    |        |

## Unit 11

- |                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1 1 barely     | 5 tears       |
| 2 breathtaking | 6 blinking    |
| 3 blurred      | 7 spectacular |
| 4 warily       | 8 alleviate   |

## Unit 12

- 1 TOUCH: tap, vigorous, squeeze, stroke, slide, pinch  
 SMELL: stench, fragrance, aroma, musty, pungent  
 TASTE: bland, insipid, peppery

## Unit 13

- |             |           |             |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|
| 1 1 effects | 5 persist | 8 lethargic |
| 2 excess    | 6 itchy   | 9 blisters  |
| 3 upset     | 7 dose    | 10 ulcer    |
| 4 sprained  |           |             |

The phrase in the grey squares is 'expiry date'.

## 2 These words are correct:

- long-term, short-term
- persistent, splitting
- dose, dosage
- the speed limit, all my expectations
- an itchy scalp, a nasty rash
- Drowsiness, Lethargy

## You and other people

## Unit 14

- |              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1 cynicism   | naivety     |
| scepticism   | spontaneity |
| affectionate | passionate  |
| charisma     | virtuous    |

- What did you make of him?
- I think you ought to give it a go.
- I'll do anything within reason.
- He's sceptical about the figures.
- I took to him after a while.
- He strikes me as very bright.
- He really got up my nose.
- He's a real character. / He's a character.
- On the surface it seemed sensible.
- Don't judge a book by its cover.

## Unit 15

- 1 reveal/disclose
- uneasy/uncomfortable
- devastated/heartbroken
- ecstatic / over the moon
- hit the roof / went mad
- suppress / bottle up
- cautious/guarded

## Unit 16

- 1 an instant dislike to me
- talking about me behind my back
- everything to gain/win/earn his respect
- a strain on me
- and confide in my boss
- he resented the fact
- really tough decision
- decided to stick up for myself
- but as time has gone by,
- feel that things are looking up

## Unit 17

- |             |             |              |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1 1 idolize | 5 criticize | 8 principles |
| 2 rebel     | 6 idealist  | 9 heroine    |
| 3 crude     | 7 footsteps | 10 down      |
| 4 inspire   |             |              |
- The word in the grey squares is 'dedication'.

## Unit 18

## 1 These are correct:

- a mess, a fuss
- broken, deprived
- beneficial, detrimental
- All three are correct.
- an unappealing
- All three are correct.

## Unit 19

- |       |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 1 P | 2 N | 3 N | 4 P | 5 N | 6 N | 7 N | 8 P |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
- 1 put
  - foot
  - exception
  - customary/usual, regard/view/consider, upper, middle, regard/view/consider
  - frown
  - etiquette/custom



## Leisure and lifestyle

### Unit 20

- 1 1 d 2 e 3 a 4 f 5 b 6 h 7 c 8 g
- 2 **Suggested answers:**  
 You can use a corkscrew to open a bottle of wine.  
 You beat eggs with a whisk.  
 A raisin is a kind of dried fruit.  
 You drain things with a colander.  
 Lentils are a kind of pulse.  
 You can braise things in a casserole.  
 You use a ladle to serve soup.  
 A cashew is a kind of nut.  
 You use a wok to stir-fry food.  
 Sage is a kind of herb.

### Unit 21

- 1 Lisbon is surrounded by seven hills, and from most of them you have **stunning** views of this **remarkable** city, which has managed to **retain** so much of its **diverse** architecture and cultural heritage. But it is also a modern, **thriving** European capital, and in recent years many of the old buildings have been **restored**. For tourists, one of the most popular parts is the Alfama, where you can **wander** around and **soak up** the charms of the old town. The Chiado district is famous for shops and restaurants, but for really **vibrant** night life, head for the Bairro Alto. Then after all that, you can **unwind** on the nearby beaches of Cascais and Estoril: wonderful places to **recharge your batteries**.
- 2 1 **unique**: the **only** one of its kind  
 2 **off the beaten track**: far away from other people and houses  
 3 **unspoilt**: beautiful because it hasn't changed  
 4 **cobbled streets**: streets with a surface of old round **stones**  
 5 **take it easy**: **relax** and do very little  
 6 **trek**: a long hard **walk**  
 7 **undergo something**: experience a process of **change**  
 8 **charm**: very **attractive/pleasant** qualities or features

### Unit 23

- 1 **These are correct:**  
 1 promoted, relegated  
 2 under pressure, off form  
 3 a last, a great, an outside  
 4 home, a neutral venue  
 5 through, knocked out  
 6 runners-up
- 2 1 drawn, eliminated / knocked out  
 2 victory, last  
 3 run, unbeaten, form  
 4 top, gave away

### Unit 24

1	M	C	O	M	P	O	S	T	S	
	E	L			R			S	P	
	A	A	B	B	U	S	H	H	A	W
	D	W	U		N			E	D	I
	O	N	L		E			D	E	L
	W	M	B	H	E	D	G	E	S	D
	W	O	F	E	R	T	I	L	E	L
	E	W							E	I
	E	E	N	R	I	C	H		D	F
	D	R	O	O	T	S			S	E

- 2 1 roots 7 enrich  
 2 wildlife 8 fertile  
 3 seeds 9 hedge  
 4 meadow 10 prune  
 5 bulb 11 lawnmower, shed  
 6 weed 12 spade

### Unit 25

- 1 1 impulse 4 around 7 gambler  
 2 pursuit 5 spree 8 debts  
 3 addict 6 hunting 9 tag
- 2 1 ~~before~~ after 5 out off  
 2 ~~minutes~~ minute 6 ~~addict~~ addicted  
 3 ~~for~~ on 7 ~~to~~ for  
 4 ~~induct~~ indulge 8 ~~searching~~ search

### Unit 26

- 1 1 socialize 6 pop 10 make  
 2 loner 7 lay 11 host  
 3 company 8 liven 12 get-together  
 4 join 9 drowns 13 away  
 5 awkward  
 8 ~~deterrence~~ deterrent

### Unit 22

- 1 1 biting 4 miscast 7 tears/death  
 2 audiences 5 clichés 8 rubbish  
 3 edge 6 effects
- 2 **negative**: dire, tedious, mediocre, feeble, unconvincing, atrocious  
**positive**: sensational, fabulous, phenomenal, brilliant, extraordinary



## A changing world

### Unit 27

- 1 1 irreversible 3 ongoing 5 gone back  
2 subtle 4 sweeping 6 practice

### Unit 28

- 1 How to be **green**: dos and don'ts
- Eat locally produced fruit and vegetables to reduce food **miles**.
  - Try to eat fruit and vegetables that are in **season**.
  - **Recycle** most of your waste rather than throwing it away.
  - Use energy-**saving** light bulbs, which **emit** less CO<sub>2</sub>.
  - Use **rechargeable** batteries.
  - Don't use a **tumble dryer**: it **consumes/uses** masses of energy.
  - Maximize natural light in order to **minimize** the use of electric lights.
  - Don't leave electrical appliances such as TVs on **standby**.
  - Avoid things which are **disposable** and designed to be thrown away after use.

### Unit 29

- 1 1 deforestation 5 captivity  
2 wiped 6 wild  
3 extinction 7 reserves  
4 habitat 8 toll

### Unit 30

- 1 1 eradicated, wiped out 5 limit, restrict  
2 invasive 6 condition  
3 bed, a wheelchair 7 resume  
4 *All three are possible.* 8 parts, organs

### Unit 31

- 1 1 log in/on OR log on/off  
2 cyberspace OR cybercafé  
3 scroll up OR scroll down (OR scroll bar)  
4 e-business OR e-learning  
5 a virtual community OR virtual office OR virtual reality  
6 upload something OR download something
- 2 1 videoblog 3 camcorder 5 install  
2 password 4 upload

### Unit 32

- 1 1 flee 6 discrimination  
2 native 7 faith  
3 refuge 8 peace  
4 asylum 9 nostalgia  
5 shock

## Institutions

### Unit 33

- 1 1 confidential  
2 opinion  
3 surgery  
4 spotless/immaculate  
5 trials  
6 informed  
7 referral  
8 discharged  
9 recuperate/convalesce/recover  
10 feet
- 2 1 junior  
2 be admitted to hospital  
3 cosmetic surgery / plastic surgery  
4 convalesce ('recover' would also be possible)  
5 complementary  
6 fastidious  
7 a mix-up ('a mess' would also be possible)  
8 take no notice of sth

### Unit 34

- 1 1 a government **grant**  
2 American **citizens**  
3 are you **eligible** to vote  
4 to **chair** tomorrow's meeting  
5 to **ensure** that (also **see** that)  
6 The party's **manifesto**  
7 voluntary **sector**  
8 high-**profile** jobs
- 2 1 say 4 volunteers 7 budget  
2 behalf 5 nationwide 8 residents  
3 seriously 6 stand/stick

### Unit 35

- 1 1 d 2 a 3 g 4 b 5 h 6 c 7 e 8 f
- 2 1 warrant 3 smuggling 5 gang  
2 custody 4 fraud 6 bail

### Unit 36

- 1 abolition, abolish  
imprisonment, imprison  
deviation, deviate  
justification, justify  
segregation, segregate  
confinement, confine  
rehabilitation, rehabilitate  
consent, consent
- 2 1 turning ~~out~~ over  
2 locked ~~out~~ up  
3 capital ~~punish~~ punishment  
4 ~~common~~ mutual consent  
5 regarded ~~at~~ as  
6 ~~on~~ in crisis  
7 ~~occupying~~ occupational hazard  
8 ~~deterrence~~ deterrent



## Unit 37

- 1 1 capability/weapons
- 2 All three are possible.
- 3 the air / a peacekeeping
- 4 distinguish / make a distinction
- 5 made up / composed
- 6 All three are possible.
- 7 chemical/lethal
- 8 All three are possible.
- 2 1 the vast majority
- 2 officers in command
- 3 guerrilla warfare
- 4 counter-productive
- 5 the former would
- 6 government funding
- 7 in reserve
- 8 to assist with / to help with

## News and current affairs

## Unit 38

- 1 Possible answers:
- 1 A government minister has been forced out of his/her job.
- 2 A transport plan has been given encouragement.
- 3 A business agreement on weapons has been given approval.
- 4 A family is going through a very bad experience over a ransom.
- 5 Someone is trying/attempting to end a kidnapping.
- 6 A hotel has been destroyed by an explosion.

## Unit 39

- 1 1 According to
- 2 under attack/fire
- 3 scathing remarks
- 4 were leaked to the press
- 5 the tide will now
- 6 has been quoted as saying
- 7 a temporary lapse of judgement
- 8 a tight corner

## Unit 40

- |                       |                |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| 1 1 shelter           | 6 excruciating |
| 2 stay                | 7 dare         |
| 3 take a chance       | 8 remaining    |
| 4 dazed/disorientated | 9 rapid        |
| 5 regain              |                |

## Unit 41

- |              |             |               |
|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1 1 coverage | 4 deserve   | 7 exclusive   |
| 2 scandal    | 5 intrusion | 8 tabloids    |
| 3 alleged    | 6 privacy   | 9 allegations |

## Unit 42

- 1 Possible answers:
- 1 We had a discussion about left-wing policies.
- 2 They want to maintain the status quo.
- 3 I don't know who's in the driving seat.
- 4 We'll put the document under the microscope.
- 5 I'd be opposed to the proposal.
- 6 He laid the foundations for the policy.
- 7 There is equality in our company.
- 8 The prime minister is heading in the right direction.

## Unit 43

- 1 1 shoots
- 2 available
- 3 unpleasant and depressing
- 4 bricks and stones
- 5 explosives
- 6 leave / go away from
- 7 without, pattern
- 8 military, army / armed force, capture

## Work and finance

## Unit 44

- 1 1 relocation
- 2 scheme, performance
- 3 leave, provision
- 4 canteen, subsidized
- 5 entitled, entitlement

## Unit 45

- 1 1 trust, respect
- 2 All three are possible.
- 3 juggle
- 4 a degree
- 5 undermine, disrupt
- 6 foster, promote

## Unit 46

- 1 1 take it lying down
- 2 likely to mount (or launch) an advertising campaign
- 3 no choice but to tighten our belts
- 4 to go down that road
- 5 fuelling fears of a global recession
- 6 wait till the dust settles
- 7 The bid was turned down
- 8 the move will set off a fresh round

## Unit 47

- 1 Rising and stable: soar, surge, boom, buoyant, rally, gains  
Falling and unstable: plunge, turbulence, plummet, volatile, slash, turmoil, slump



- |               |                             |
|---------------|-----------------------------|
| 2 1 investors | 5 equities/shares           |
| 2 debt        | 6 outlook                   |
| 3 pressure    | 7 burst                     |
| 4 trigger     | 8 conflicting/contradictory |

**Unit 48**

- |                            |             |
|----------------------------|-------------|
| 1 1 statement              | 6 outgoings |
| 2 red                      | 7 budget    |
| 3 overdrawn                | 8 bail      |
| 4 fund                     | 9 make      |
| 5 squandering (OR wasting) | 10 track    |

**Unit 49**

- 1 1 achieve/accomplish
- 2 prioritize
- 3 stick/keep
- 4 anticipate
- 5 Schedule/Timetable/Organize/Arrange
- 6 set
- 7 Delegate

**Unit 50**

- 1 1 ~~steaks~~ stakes
- 2 ~~make~~ set
- 3 ~~ballet~~ ballot
- 4 ~~set~~ settle
- 5 ~~privatizement~~ privatization
- 6 ~~inclinated~~ inclined
- 7 ~~interference~~ intervention
- 8 ~~off~~ out

**Unit 51**

- |          |                   |
|----------|-------------------|
| 1 1 hum  | 6 neglect         |
| 2 sniff  | 7 photocopier     |
| 3 giggle | 8 pet             |
| 4 absent | 9 put             |
| 5 hectic | 10 poke your nose |

**Concepts****Unit 52**

- |            |             |            |
|------------|-------------|------------|
| 1 1 result | 4 bad       | 7 reason   |
| 2 car      | 5 a person  | 8 negative |
| 3 force    | 6 an income |            |

**Unit 53**

- |                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1 1 humiliated  | 5 embellish   |
| 2 phoney        | 6 adversary   |
| 3 interrogation | 7 unpalatable |
| 4 anonymously   | 8 namely      |

**Unit 54**

- |             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1 1 trivial | 6 articulate |
| 2 perennial | 7 exacerbate |
| 3 arise     | 8 light      |
| 4 confront  | 9 urgent     |
| 5 tackle    |              |

The word in the grey squares is 'insoluble'.

**Unit 55**

- 1 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 D

**Unit 56**

- 1 1 potential
- 2 make
- 3 resounding ('remarkable' is also possible)
- 4 against
- 5 way ('well' is also possible)
- 6 depth
- 7 letting
- 8 obstacles
- 9 way
- 10 overcome
- 11 breakthrough
- 12 wrong
- 13 strength
- 14 fulfil

**Unit 57**

- 1 Possible answers:
  - 1 should have set out earlier / should have left earlier / should have taken a taxi.
  - 2 his life considerably/ by several years.
  - 3 after the film ended. / after 10.00.
  - 4 of development.
  - 5 he did. / he turned up.
  - 6 I (have to) work on Saturdays/Sundays.
  - 7 had to stand / were very bored
  - 8 he shouldn't have been let out. / that was too short.

**Spoken English****Unit 58**

- |                   |                          |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 1 ticked nicked | 5 jacket racket          |
| 2 flæ flak        | 6 light tight            |
| 3 rûg bug         | 7 lying dying            |
| 4 creek cheek     | 8 drag drag              |
| 2 1 laugh         | 7 stick/flak             |
| 2 broke           | 8 lousy/vile/ disgusting |
| 3 blokes/guys     | 9 cheek                  |
| 4 guys/blokes     | 10 back                  |
| 5 neck            |                          |
| 6 moaning         |                          |

**Unit 59**

- 1 1 Your guess is as good as mine is.
- 2 You're ~~not~~ kidding! I don't believe it.
- 3 Yes, it's been one of those ~~bad~~ days.
- 4 Don't ~~you~~ ask me. He never tells me a word.
- 5 No ~~any~~ such luck, I'm afraid.
- 6 No, but there's no use ~~of~~ worrying.
- 7 No; it goes in one ear and out the other ~~ear~~.
- 8 Well, you've got nothing ~~for~~ to lose.



**Unit 60**

- 1 1 what      4 wonder      7 battle  
2 bit      5 earth      8 know  
3 not      6 worth
- 2 1 All things being equal, I'd rather live in the centre. OR I'd rather live in the centre, all things being equal.  
2 She seems to live in a world of her own.  
3 Exercise is every bit as important as what you eat. OR What you eat is every bit as important as exercise.  
4 I rang him but for some reason he didn't answer. OR I rang him but he didn't answer for some reason.  
5 How much did they charge you, if you don't mind me asking?  
6 It's great to let your hair down after a hard week. OR After a hard week, it's great to let your hair down.

**Unit 61**

- 1 1 pick and **choose**  
2 **back** to front  
3 aims and **objectives**  
4 hustle and **bustle**  
5 back and **forth**  
6 **bright** and cheerful  
7 rules and **regulations**  
8 trial and **error**

**Unit 62**

- 1 1 good      4 strong      7 sieve  
2 quiet      5 red      8 log  
3 dry      6 dream

**Unit 63**

- 1 do away with / abolish  
own up / confess  
crop up / happen unexpectedly  
take sth apart / dismantle  
take sb in / deceive  
drag sth out / prolong  
hit back / retaliate  
butt in / interrupt  
turn up / arrive

**Unit 64**

- 1 *These phrases are correct:*  
1 As a matter of fact  
2 on the whole / by and large, Mind you, to be honest  
3 at any rate / anyhow, incidentally  
4 alternatively  
5 I agree / It's true, even so  
6 Besides

**Unit 65**

- 1 1 so/thereabouts  
2 odd / something / or thereabouts  
3 region  
4 somehow  
5 take  
6 something  
7 stuff  
8 lines

**Unit 66**

- 1 1 Live and let live.  
2 Easier said than done.  
3 Two heads are better than one.  
4 Once bitten, twice shy.  
5 Blood is thicker than water.  
6 Two wrongs don't make a right.
- 2 1 money      4 merrier      7 practice  
2 no, good      5 safe, sorry      8 sight, mind  
3 sleeping      6 come, served

**Written English****Unit 67**

- 1 straightforward / easy to understand  
complicated/convoluted  
abrupt/brusque  
unnecessary/superfluous  
relevant/pertinent

**Unit 68**

- 1 albeit, although  
prior to, before  
notwithstanding, in spite of  
in view of, considering  
thus, therefore

**Unit 69**

- 1 evaluate, evaluation  
condemn, condemnation  
assert, assertion  
summarize, summary  
hypothesize, hypothesis  
justify, justification  
exemplify, example  
outline, outline

2 1 N 2 N 3 Y 4 Y 5 N 6 Y 7 N 8 N

**Unit 70**

- 1 1 depict      5 alien      8 protagonist  
2 convey      6 downfall      9 betray  
3 mercy      7 portrayal      10 synopsis  
4 embody  
The word in the grey squares is 'commentary'.



## Unit 71

- 1 1 **not** usually fully understood
- 2 **describing** doing
- 3 **largest** smallest
- 4 **not**
- 5 **declines** changes
- 6 **replace** copy
- 7 **unsuccessfully**
- 8 **weak** strong
- 2 1 hypothesize                      5 unbiased
- 2 hereditary                          6 verification
- 3 scrutinize                          7 immunity
- 4 defective                          8 molecular

## Unit 72

- 1 1 The central core of a building is often made of reinforced **concrete**.
- 2 Large steel **girders** are placed between the vertical columns to hold the building together.
- 3 The exterior walls are made by attaching **panels** made of glass or metal to the building.
- 4 Skyscrapers undergo rigorous tests to **determine/establish/assess** whether they can withstand high winds.
- 5 All support beams are lifted by **cranes** and then put in place.
- 6 The design has to **comply** with strict safety regulations before construction begins.
- 7 All buildings have to conform to physical **constraints** imposed by climate and geology.
- 8 Mechanical devices may be added to **counteract** or resist motion.
- 9 All construction has to go through the most **stringent/rigorous/thorough** safety checks.
- 10 The building's support columns are usually **anchored** in the footings.

## Unit 73

- 1 1 bed and breakfast
- 2 please turn over
- 3 headquarters
- 4 closed-circuit television
- 5 do-it-yourself
- 6 chief executive officer
- 7 politically correct
- 8 care of
- 9 for the attention of
- 10 intelligence quotient
- 11 estimated time of arrival
- 12 tender loving care

## Aspects of language

## Unit 74

- |              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| 1 1 advised  | 4 similar, place |
| 2 advantaged | 5 handled        |
| 3 virus      |                  |

## Unit 75

- 1 1 The hurricane is **intensifying** as it heads towards land.
- 2 This income is **tax-free**.
- 3 This kind of vegetation **characterizes** the region.
- 4 The building contains a system which **purifies** the air.
- 5 The studio is **soundproof**.
- 6 He needs to **clarify** his intentions.
- 7 If you leave that in the sun, it will just **solidify**.
- 8 The plan I've devised is **foolproof**.

## Unit 76

- |        |        |       |
|--------|--------|-------|
| 1 1 to | 4 over | 7 on  |
| 2 for  | 5 to   | 8 for |
| 3 on   | 6 for  |       |

## Unit 77

- |                |              |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1 1 passing    | 4 discussion |
| 2 choice       | 5 danger     |
| 3 the contrary |              |

## Unit 78

- |                 |             |
|-----------------|-------------|
| 1 1 weird       | 6 tasteless |
| 2 eminent       | 7 negligent |
| 3 dejected      | 8 perplexed |
| 4 inconceivable | 9 naked     |
| 5 comprehensive |             |

## Unit 79

- |              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1 1 purely   | 4 virtually  | 7 apparently |
| 2 invariably | 5 indirectly | 8 officially |
| 3 briefly    | 6 ultimately |              |
| 2 1 a        | 3 a and b    | 5 a          |
| 2 b          | 4 a and b    | 6 b          |

## Unit 80

- 1 Possible answers:
  - 1 's unintelligent
  - 2 's got very poor eyesight.
  - 3 're dismissing/sacking people
  - 4 our own side
  - 5 's dead or 's been killed by the vet
  - 6 can't hear (very well) or 's rather deaf
  - 7 stole it
  - 8 ordinary citizens/people have been killed/injured



# List of spotlight boxes

Unit	Title of spotlight box	Page	Unit	Title of spotlight box	Page
1B	<i>make fun of someone</i>	11	34B	Gender	97
3B	Adjectives with <i>-minded</i>	15	35B	The police	99
3C	<i>outbreak, outlay, etc.</i>	16	36B	<i>self-</i>	101
4A	Collocation	17	37A	<i>comprise, make up, consist of, compose</i>	102
4C	<i>entirely</i>	19	37B	<i>interior and internal</i>	104
6A	Different related forms	22	38	Headline words	108
7A	Suffix <i>-en</i>	29	40A	<i>dare</i>	112
7B	Expressions with <i>attention</i>	29	41B	<i>exclusives and scoops</i>	115
9A	Verbs and nouns	32	42A	<i>means</i>	116
9B	Expressions with <i>constant</i>	33	45A	<i>degree</i>	122
10A	Ergative verbs	34	46A	<i>merger, takeover, and acquisition</i>	124
11A	<i>-sighted</i>	36	48A	Bank accounts	128
11B	Ways of seeing	37	48B	<i>surplus</i>	129
12A	Adverbs of manner	38	49A	<i>no matter what, whatever</i>	130
12B	Adjectives ending in <i>-y</i>	39	49B	Metaphorical use of words	131
13B	<i>exceed</i> and related forms	41	50A	<i>set + noun</i>	132
14C	<i>cynical, sceptical</i>	47	52B	<i>effect</i>	139
15A	<i>desperate</i> and related forms	48	53B	Types of lie	141
15B	Other expressions with <i>heart</i>	49	56B	<i>way</i>	147
16A	<i>tough</i>	50	59A	<i>idioms and set phrases</i>	154
16B	<i>accept</i>	51	61	<i>bribery and corruption</i>	158
17B	<i>principles and values</i>	53	63B	Phrasal verbs: meanings and forms	161
18B	<i>expect</i>	55	64	<i>anyway</i>	162
19A	<i>consider, regard, view, perceive</i>	56	65	<i>or something</i>	164
21	<i>relax</i>	64	68	<i>hitherto and henceforth</i>	175
22B	Boredom	67	69A	<i>present v</i>	176
23B	<i>chance</i>	69	70	<i>embody/represent sth, endow sb with sth</i>	178
24A	<i>nature</i>	70	71B	<i>unit</i>	181
25B	Prefix <i>out-</i>	73	74B	<i>un-</i> and <i>under-</i>	191
26B	<i>company</i>	75	75B	<i>-proof, -free</i>	193
27B	Adjective + <i>change</i>	81	76A	<i>control of/over sth/sb</i>	194
28B	<i>-friendly</i>	83	77B	<i>under</i>	197
29A	<i>extinct, extinction</i>	84	78A	Fame	198
30A	<i>rate</i>	86	79B	<i>... speaking</i>	201
31A	<i>e-</i> and <i>cyber-</i>	88	80	Euphemisms	203
32A	<i>migration</i>	90			
32B	Getting used to things	91			
33B	A stay in hospital	95			



# Word list / Index

Numbers are unit numbers, not page numbers

- a likely story /ə'laɪkli stɔːri/ 59  
 a real character /ə'riːəl kærəktə(r)/ 14  
 a real effort /ə'riːəl ɛfərt/ 4  
 a real eyesore /ə'riːəl 'aɪsɔː(r)/ 4  
 a real pain /ə'riːəl 'peɪn/ 58  
 a small world /ə'smɔːl 'wɜːld/ 66  
 a tight corner /ə'taɪt 'kɔːnə(r)/ 39  
 abandon /ə'bændən/ 43, 55  
 abnormal /əb'nɔːml/ 71  
 abolish /ə'bɒlɪʃ/ 36, 63  
 abolition /ə'bɒlɪʃn/ 36  
 about as in be about to do sth 35  
 abrupt /ə'brʌpt/ 67  
 absence /'æbsəns/ 51  
 absent /'æbsənt/ 51  
 absent-minded /'æbsənt 'maɪndɪd/ 3  
 absolute /ˈæbsəluːt/ 56  
 absorb /əb'zɔːb/ 5  
 abuse N /ə'bjuːs/ 6  
 abuse V /ə'bjuːz/ 6  
 accent /'æksənt/ 4  
 accept /ək'sept/ 16  
 access N, V /'ækses/ 33  
 accident-prone /'æksɪdənt 'prəʊn/ 30  
 acclaim /ə'kleɪm/ 22  
 acclaimed /ə'kleɪmd/ 22  
 acclimatized as in get acclimatized 32  
 accompany /ə'kʌmpəni/ 26  
 accomplish /ə'kʌmplɪʃ/ 49  
 according to /ə'kɔːdɪŋ tuː, tə/ 39  
 account as in current/deposit account 48  
 accountable to /ə'kaʊntəbl tuː, tə/ 45  
 accumulate /ə'kjuːmjəleɪt/ 48, 51  
 accustomed as in get accustomed 32  
 achieve /ə'tʃiːv/ 49  
 acquire /ə'kwɪə(r)/ 24  
 acquisition /əkwi'zɪʃn/ 46  
 action as in take action 40  
 actions speak louder than words /'ækʃnz spɪk 'ləʊdər ðən 'wɜːdz/ 66  
 actually /'æktʃuəli/ 64  
 adapt to /ə'dæpt tuː, tə/ 27  
 adaptation /ædæp'teɪʃn/ 22  
 addict as in drug addict 25  
 addicted to sth /ə'dɪktɪd tə, .../ 25  
 additional /ə'dɪʃənəl/ 45  
 address V /ə'dres/ 54  
 adjust /ə'dʒʌst/ 11  
 adjust to /ə'dʒʌst tuː, tə/ 27  
 adjustment /ə'dʒʌstmənt/ 11  
 admit sb to hospital /əd'mɪt, ... tə 'hɒspɪtl/ 33  
 adopt /ə'dɒpt/ 69  
 adrenalin /ə'drenəlɪn/ 43  
 advance /əd'vɑːns/ 30  
 adversary /'ædvəsəri/ 53  
 adverse effect /əd'vɜːs ɪ'fekt/ 52  
 advertising agency /'ædvɜːtaɪzɪŋ ,eɪdʒənsi/ 34  
 affection /ə'fekʃn/ 14  
 affectionate /ə'fekʃənət/ 14  
 affluent /'æfluənt/ 70  
 after sth /'ɑːftə, .../ 25  
 against all (the) odds /ə'ɡenst ɔːl ðɪ 'ɒdz/ 40  
 age /eɪdʒ/ 57  
 agency /'eɪdʒənsi/ 34  
 aggravate /'æɡrəveɪt/ 54  
 agile /'ædʒaɪl/ 9  
 agility /ə'dʒɪləti/ 9  
 agree entirely /ə'ɡriː m'taɪəli/ 4  
 aims and objectives /eɪmz ənd əb'dʒektɪvz/ 61  
 air force /'eə ,fɔːs/ 37  
 albeit /'əlbɪt/ 68  
 alcoholic /ælkə'hɒlɪk/ 25  
 alert N /ə'leɪt/ 38  
 alien /'eɪliən/ 70  
 all the same /ɔːl ðə 'seɪm/ 64  
 all things being equal /'ɔːl θɪŋz ,biːŋ 'iːkwəl/ 60  
 all things considered /'ɔːl θɪŋz kən'sɪdəd/ 77  
 allegation /æli'ɡeɪʃn/ 39, 41  
 allege /ə'leɪdʒ/ 39, 41  
 allegedly /ə'ledʒɪdli/ 41  
 alleviate /ə'liːveɪt/ 11  
 allocate /'æləkeɪt/ 34  
 allowance /ə'laʊəns/ 44  
 almonds /'ɑːməndz/ 20  
 alongside /ə'lɒŋsaɪd/ 31  
 aloof /ə'luːf/ 14  
 alternate V /'ɔːltənəɪt/ 9  
 alternatively /ɔːl'tɜːnətɪvli/ 64  
 ambiguity /æm'bɪ'ɡjuːəti/ 1  
 ambiguous /æm'bɪ'ɡjuːəs/ 1  
 amend /ə'mend/ 27  
 amendment /ə'mendmənt/ 27  
 amid /ə'mɪd/ 39  
 amidst /ə'mɪdst/ 39  
 an eye for an eye /ən ,aɪ fər ən 'aɪ/ 66  
 an eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth /ən ,aɪ fər ən 'aɪ ən ə ,tuːθ fər ə 'tuːθ/ 66  
 analyse /'ænəlaɪz/ 69  
 anchor V /'æŋkə(r)/ 72  
 ancient /'eɪnʃnt/ 55  
 angle N, V /'æŋɡl/ 72  
 animosity /æni'mɒsəti/ 32  
 ankle /'æŋkl/ 13  
 anonymity /æna'nɪməti/ 53  
 anonymously /ə'nɒnɪməsli/ 53  
 anti- /'ænti/ 74  
 anti-depressant /'ænti dɪ'presənt/ 74  
 anti-drugs policy /'ænti 'drʌgz ,pɒləsi/ 74  
 anti-inflammatory /'ænti m'flæmətri/ 74  
 anti-racism /'ænti 'reɪsɪzəm/ 74  
 anti-spam filter /'ænti 'spæm ,fɪltə(r)/ 31  
 anti-virus protection /'ænti 'vaɪrəs prə'tekʃn/ 31  
 anti-virus software /'ænti 'vaɪrəs ,sɒftweə(r)/ 74  
 anti-war /'ænti 'wɔː(r)/ 74  
 anticipate /'æntɪ'sɪpeɪt/ 49  
 anticipation /'æntɪ'sɪpeɪʃn/ 49  
 antique N, ADJ /'æntɪk/ 55  
 anyhow /'enihaʊ/ 64  
 anyway /'eniweɪ/ 64  
 apart as in take sth apart 63  
 apologetic /ə'pɒlə'ɡetɪk/ 6  
 apologize /ə'pɒlədʒaɪz/ 6  
 appalled /ə'pɔːld/ 15  
 apparently /ə'pærəntli/ 79  
 appeal N /ə'piːl/ 67  
 appeal for /ə'piːl fər/ 67  
 appealing /ə'piːlɪŋ/ 18  
 appetite /'æpɪtaɪt/ 12  
 appetizing /'æpɪtaɪzɪŋ/ 12  
 applaud /ə'plɔːd/ 22  
 applause /ə'plɔːz/ 22  
 appliance /ə'plaɪəns/ 28  
 apply pressure to /ə'plai 'preʃə tə/ 12  
 appreciate /ə'priːʃieɪt/ 16  
 appreciation /ə'priːʃi'eɪʃn/ 16  
 aptitude /'æptɪtjuːd/ 76  
 archive N, V /'ɑːkaɪv/ 71  
 arduous /'ɑːdʒuəs/ 9  
 argument /'ɑːɡjʊmənt/ 69  
 arise /ə'raɪz/ 54  
 armed combat /,ɑːmd 'kɒmbæt/ 37  
 armed forces /,ɑːmd 'fɔːsɪz/ 37  
 arms /ɑːmz/ 38  
 arms as in folded arms 8  
 army /'ɑːmi/ 37  
 aroma /ə'rəʊmə/ 12  
 arouse /ə'raʊz/ 52  
 artichoke /'ɑːtɪtʃəʊk/ 20  
 articulate ADJ /ɑː'tɪkjʊlət/ 54  
 articulate V /ɑː'tɪkjʊleɪt/ 54  
 as a favour /əz ə 'feɪvə(r)/ 5  
 as a matter of fact /əz ə ,mætər əv 'fækt/ 64  
 as far as sth is concerned /əz ,fɑːr əz ... ɪz kən'sɜːnd/ 79  
 as blind as a bat /əz ,blaɪnd əz ə 'bæt/ 62  
 as deaf as a post /əz ,def əz ə 'pəʊst/ 62  
 as dry as a bone /əz ,draɪ əz ə 'bəʊn/ 62  
 as for /əz fər/ 64

VOWELS: æ cat | ɪ father | e ten | ɜː bird | ə about | ɪ sit | i see | i many | ɒ got | ɔː saw | ʌ up | ʊ put | u too | u actual |  
 aɪ my | aʊ now | eɪ say | əʊ go | ɔɪ boy | ɪə near | eə hair | ʊə pure



as good as gold /əz ˌɡʊd əz  
'ɡəʊld/ 62  
as I was saying /'æz aɪ wəz ˌseɪɪŋ/ 64  
as light as a feather /əz ˌlaɪt əz ə  
'feðə(r)/ 62  
as quiet as a mouse /əz ˌkwaiət əz ə  
'maʊs/ 62  
as red as a beetroot /əz ˌred əz ə  
'bi:tru:t/ 62  
as strong as an ox /əz ˌstrɒŋ əz ən  
'ɒks/ 62  
as thin as a rake /əz ˌθɪn əz ə  
'reɪk/ 62  
as time went by /əz ˌtaɪm wɛnt  
'baɪ/ 16  
as white as a sheet /əz ˌwaɪt əz ə  
'ʃi:t/ 62  
as you will see from my CV ... /æz  
ju: wɪl ˌsi: frəm ˌmaɪ ˌsi: 'vi:/ 67  
asap (= as soon as possible) /ˌeɪ ˌes ˌeɪ  
'pi:/ 73  
ask a favour /ˌɑ:sk ə 'feɪvə(r)/ 5  
ask after /'ɑ:sk ˌɑ:ftə(r)/ 63  
aspect /'æspekt/ 71  
assert /ə'sɜ:t/ 69  
assertion /ə'sɜ:ʃn/ 69  
assertive /ə'sɜ:tɪv/ 14  
assess /ə'ses/ 69  
assessment /ə'sesmənt/ 69  
assimilate /ə'sɪməleɪt/ 27  
assimilation /ə'sɪməleɪʃn/ 27  
assist /ə'sɪst/ 14  
associated with /ə'səʊʃiətiəd wɪð/ 42  
association /ə'səʊʃi'eɪʃn/ 42  
assurance /ə'ʃʊərəns/ 6  
assure /ə'ʃʊə(r)/ 6  
astute /ə'stu:t/ 14  
asylum /ə'saɪləm/ 32  
at a moment's notice /ət ə ˌməʊmənts  
'nəʊtɪs/ 77  
at an angle /ət ən ˌæŋɡl/ 72  
at any rate /ət ˌeni ˌreɪt/ 64  
at ease as in put sb at ease 33  
at home /ət ˌhaʊm/ 23  
at once /ət ˌwʌns/ 77  
at one time /ət ˌwʌn ˌtaɪm/ 57  
at random /ət ˌrændəm/ 43  
at short notice /ət ˌʃɔ:t ˌnəʊtɪs/ 77  
at stake /ət ˌsteɪk/ 50  
at the last minute /ət ðə ˌlɑ:st  
'mɪnɪt/ 57  
at the very least /ət ðə ˌveri ˌli:st/ 77  
atb (= all the best) 73  
8 (= -ate) 73  
atom /'ætəm/ 71  
atrocious /ə'trəʊʃəs/ 22  
attack as in under attack 77  
attention /ə'tenʃn/ 7  
attn 73  
attract /ə'trækt/ 24  
attract sb's attention /ə'trækt ˌ...  
'tenʃn/ 7  
attribute N /'ætrɪbjʊt/ 14  
audience /'ɔ:diəns/ 22  
authentic /ə'θentɪk/ 55  
authority /ə'θɒrəti/ 37  
away /ə'wei/ 23

away as in get away from it all 21  
away as in right away 77  
awkward /'ɔ:kwəd/ 26  
B & B (= bed and breakfast) /bi: ən  
'bi:/ 73  
b (= be) 73  
b4 (= before) 73  
b4n (= bye for now) 73  
back v /bæk/ 46  
back as in behind sb's back 16  
back and forth /bæk ən ˌfɔ:θ/ 61  
back down /bæk ˌdaʊn/ 4  
back to front /bæk tə ˌfrʌnt/ 61  
backing /'bækiŋ/ 46  
bad run /bæd ˌrʌn/ 23  
bad taste as in be in bad taste 19  
bad-tempered /bæd ˌtempəd/ 3  
badly hit /bædli ˌhɪt/ 49  
baffle /'bæfl/ 53  
baffled /'bæfld/ 78  
bags of /bægz əv/ 65  
bail /beɪl/ 35  
bail sb out /beɪl ˌ... ˌaʊt/ 48  
balance as in on balance 77  
balance as in tip the balance 46  
ballot N, v /bælət/ 50  
ban N /bæn/ 76  
bank /bæŋk/ 37  
bank statement /'bæŋk ˌsteɪtmənt/ 48  
bankrupt as in go bankrupt 46  
barbed wire /bɑ:bd ˌwaɪə(r)/ 3  
bare /beə(r)/ 78  
barely /'beəli/ 11  
bargain hunting /'bɑ:gɪn ˌhʌntɪŋ/ 25  
bark N, v /bɑ:k/ 10  
basic unit /'beɪsɪk ˌju:nɪt/ 71  
basically /'beɪsɪkli/ 79  
basis /'beɪsɪs/ 49  
bat /bæt/ 62  
batteries as in recharge your  
batteries 21  
battery charger /'bætəri ˌtʃɑ:ʒə(r)/ 28  
battle as in fight a losing battle 60  
battle as in locked in battle 39  
be about to do sth /bi: ə ˌbaʊt tə ˌdu:  
ˌ.../ 35  
be behind sb/sth /bi ˌbi'hænd ˌ.../ 54  
be bullied /bi ˌbʊlɪd/ 17  
be carried away /bi ˌkæriəd ə ˌweɪ/ 26  
be composed of /bi ˌkəm ˌpəʊzɪd  
əv/ 37  
be confined to a wheelchair /bi  
kən ˌfaɪnd tə ə ˌwi:lʃeə(r)/ 30  
be confined to bed /bi ˌkən ˌfaɪnd tə  
'bed/ 30  
be cruel to be kind /bi ˌkru:əl tə bi  
'kaɪnd/ 14  
be detained in custody /bi ˌdi ˌteɪnd ɪn  
'kæstədi/ 35  
be distracted by sth /bi ˌdi ˌstræktɪd  
baɪ ˌ.../ 25  
be drawn against /bi ˌdrɔ:n  
ə ˌɡenst/ 23  
be drawn to /bi ˌdrɔ:n tə/ 14  
be economical with the truth /bi:  
i:kə ˌnɒmɪkl wɪð ðə ˌtru:θ/ 53

be entitled to /bi: ɪn ˌtaɪtld ˌtu:  
tə/ 44  
be getting on for /bi ˌ'ɡetɪŋ ɒn  
fə(r)/ 7  
be humiliated /bi ˌhju: ˌmɪliətiəd/ 60  
be in a mess /bi: ɪn ə ˌmes/ 18  
be in a world of your own /bi: ɪn ə  
ˌwɜ:ld əv ʃɔ:r ˌəʊn/ 60  
be in bad taste /bi: ɪn ˌbæd ˌteɪst/ 19  
be in favour of /bi: ɪn ˌfeɪvə əv/ 42  
be in poor taste /bi: ɪn ˌpɔ: ˌteɪst/ 19  
be in the driving seat /bi: ɪn ðə  
'draɪvɪŋ ˌsi:t/ 42  
be in the red /bi: ɪn ðə ˌred/ 48  
be in two minds about /bi: ɪn ˌtu:  
'maɪndz ə ˌbaʊt/ 2  
be into sth /bi: ɪntə ˌ.../ 58  
be locked in battle /bi ˌlɒkt ɪn  
'bætl/ 39  
be off /bi: ˌɒf/ 25  
be on top /bi: ɒn ˌtɒp/ 23  
be on your best behaviour /bi: ɒn  
ʃɔ: ˌbest bi ˌheɪvə(r)/ 19  
be out of hand /bi: ˌaʊt əv  
'hænd/ 49  
be out of your depth /bi: ˌaʊt əv ʃɔ:  
'depθ/ 42  
be overdrawn /bi: əʊvə ˌdrɔ:n/ 48  
be overwhelmed by /bi: əʊvə ˌwelmd  
baɪ/ 43  
be past it /bi ˌpɑ:st ɪt/ 56  
be promoted /bi ˌprə ˌməʊtiəd/ 23  
be put out /bi ˌpʊt ˌaʊt/ 19  
be reconciled with /bi ˌ'rekənsaɪld  
wɪð/ 63  
be referred to sb /bi ˌrɪ ˌfɜ:d tə ˌ.../ 33  
be relegated /bi ˌreli ˌɡeɪtiəd/ 23  
be the last thing on sb's mind /bi ðə  
ˌlɑ:st ˌθɪŋ ɒn ˌ... ˌmaɪnd/ 2  
be thrown in at the deep end /bi  
ˌθrəʊn ɪn ət ðə ˌdi:p ˌend/ 42  
be tied up /bi ˌtaɪd ˌʌp/ 2  
be under siege /bi: ˌʌndə ˌsi:ʒ/ 43  
be uprooted /bi: ˌʌp ˌru:tɪd/ 32  
beam /bi:m/ 72  
bean sprouts /bi:n ˌsprəʊts/ 20  
bear sth in mind /bi ˌbeə ˌ... ɪn  
'maɪnd/ 8  
beat /bi:t/ 20  
beautiful /'bjʊ:tɪfl/ 21  
beauty is only skin-deep /bi ˌju:ti ɪz  
ˌəʊnli ˌskɪn ˌdi:p/ 66  
bee /bi:/ 10  
beep N, v /bi:p/ 10  
beetroot /'bi:tru:t/ 20, 62  
before sb's time /bi ˌfɔ: ˌ... ˌtɑɪm/ 57  
beforehand /bi ˌfɔ:hænd/ 26  
behalf as in on behalf of sb 34  
behaviour as in be on your best  
behaviour 19  
behind as in be behind sb/sth 54  
behind closed doors /bi ˌhaɪnd ˌkləʊzd  
'dɔ:z/ 39  
behind sb's back /bi ˌhaɪnd ˌ...  
'bæk/ 16  
behind the scenes /bi ˌhaɪnd ðə  
'si:nz/ 39



- behind the times /bɪˈhaɪnd ðə ˈtaɪmz/ 57  
 believe it or not /bɪˈli:v ɪt ɔː ˈnɒt/ 60  
 belt as in tighten your belt 46  
 bending /ˈbendɪŋ/ 9  
 beneficial effect /benɪˈfɪʃl rɪˈfekt/ 18  
 benefits /ˈbenɪfɪts/ 44  
 bereaved /bɪˈri:vɪd/ 77  
 besides /bɪˈsaɪdz/ 64  
 best as in the best of both worlds 60  
 best as in the best thing 59  
 bet as in your best bet 59  
 betray /bɪˈtreɪ/ 70  
 betrayal /bɪˈtreɪəl/ 70  
 better late than never /ˈbetə ˌleɪt ðən ˈnevə(r)/ 66  
 better safe than sorry /ˈbetə ˌseɪf ðən ˈsɒri/ 66  
 better still /ˈbetə ˌstɪl/ 28  
 bfn (= bye for now) 73  
 bias /ˈbaɪəs/ 71  
 biased /ˈbaɪəst/ 71  
 bid N, v /bɪd/ 38, 46  
 bid as in make a bid for 46  
 big chance /ˈbɪɡ ˈtʃɑːns/ 23  
 bigoted /ˈbɪɡətɪd/ 3  
 birth as in give birth 41  
 birth certificate /ˈbɜːθ səˈtɪfɪkət/ 3  
 birth rate /ˈbɜːθ reɪt/ 30  
 bit of a drag /ˈbɪt əv ə ˈdræg/ 58  
 bite your fingernails /ˈbaɪt ʃəː ˈfɪŋɡənɪlz/ 8  
 bizarre /bɪˈzɑː(r)/ 78  
 blame as in take the blame 4  
 bland /blænd/ 12  
 blast /blɑːst/ 38  
 blazing row /ˈbleɪzɪŋ ˈraʊ/ 39  
 blink v /blɪŋk/ 11  
 blister /ˈblɪstə(r)/ 13  
 block spam /ˈblɒk ˈspæm/ 31  
 bloke /blɒk/ 58  
 blood is thicker than water /ˈblʌd ɪz ˌθɪkə ðən ˈwɔːtə(r)/ 66  
 blood pressure /ˈblʌd ˌpreʃə(r)/ 13  
 blow /bləʊ/ 38  
 blow sth out of proportion /ˈbləʊ ˌaʊt əv prəˈpɔːʃn/ 50  
 blunt /blʌnt/ 67  
 blurred vision /ˈblɜːd ˌvɪʒn/ 11  
 boast v /bəʊst/ 10  
 boat as in rock the boat 42  
 body /ˈbɒdi/ 5, 67  
 boil down to sth /ˈbɔɪl ˌdaʊn tə ˌ.../ 52  
 bolt v, N /bɒlt/ 72  
 bond /bɒnd/ 16  
 bone /bəʊn/ 62  
 bonus /ˈbəʊnəs/ 44  
 book as in don't judge a book by its cover 14  
 boom as in economic boom 47  
 boost N, v /buːst/ 38  
 boost morale /ˌbuːst məˈrɑːl/ 45  
 bored out of your mind /ˈbɔːd ˌaʊt əv ʃəː ˈmaɪnd/ 22  
 bored stiff /ˈbɔːd ˌstɪf/ 22  
 bored to death /ˈbɔːd tə ˈdeθ/ 22  
 bored to tears /ˈbɔːd tə ˈtiːəz/ 22  
 boring /ˈbɔːrɪŋ/ 22  
 boss as in your own boss 45  
 bottle sth up /ˈbɒtl ˌ... ˈʌp/ 15  
 bounce back /ˌbaʊns ˈbæk/ 47  
 brace /breɪs/ 7  
 bracket N /ˈbrækt/ 72  
 braise /breɪz/ 20  
 branch /brɑːntʃ/ 37  
 brand new /ˈbrænd ˈnjuː/ 55  
 brave /breɪv/ 17  
 bravery /ˈbreɪvəri/ 17  
 breadwinner /ˈbredwɪnə(r)/ 20  
 break /breɪk/ 57  
 break down /ˌbreɪk ˈdaʊn/ 3  
 break into a gallop /ˌbreɪk ˌɪntuː ə ˈɡæləp/ 9  
 break off from sth /ˌbreɪk ˈɒf frəm ˌ.../ 49  
 break out /ˌbreɪk ˈaʊt/ 3, 4  
 break the deadlock /ˌbreɪk ðə ˈdedlɒk/ 50  
 break up /ˌbreɪk ˈʌp/ 3  
 break-up /ˌbreɪk ˈʌp/ 3  
 breakdown /ˌbreɪkdaʊn/ 3  
 breaking point /ˌbreɪkɪŋ ˌpɔɪnt/ 43  
 breakthrough /ˌbreɪkθruː/ 56  
 breath as in don't hold your breath 59  
 breathtaking /ˈbreθteɪkɪŋ/ 11  
 breed /briːd/ 29  
 bribe v /braɪb/ 61  
 bribery /ˈbraɪbəri/ 61  
 brief summary /ˌbriːf ˈsʌməri/ 4  
 briefly /ˈbriːfli/ 79  
 bright as in not exactly bright 80  
 bright and cheerful /ˌbraɪt ən ˈtʃɪəfl/ 61  
 brilliant /ˈbrɪljənt/ 22  
 bring sb somewhere /ˈbrɪŋ ˌ... ˌsʌmweə(r)/ 2  
 bring sth about /ˌbrɪŋ ˌ... əˈbaʊt/ 27  
 bring sth up /ˌbrɪŋ ˌ... ˈʌp/ 63  
 broad-minded /ˌbrɔːd ˈmaɪndɪd/ 3  
 broadcast v /ˈbrɔːdkɑːst/ 41  
 broadly speaking /ˌbrɔːdli ˌspiːkɪŋ/ 64  
 broadsheet /ˈbrɔːdʃiːt/ 41  
 broke /brəʊk/ 58  
 broken home /ˌbrəʊkən ˈhəʊm/ 18  
 browse /braʊz/ 25  
 browser /ˈbraʊzə(r)/ 31  
 brusque /bruːsk/ 67  
 btw (= by the way) 73  
 bubble /ˈbʌbl/ 47  
 buck as in pass the buck 50  
 budget N /ˈbʌdʒɪt/ 34  
 budget N, v /ˈbʌdʒɪt/ 48  
 bug /bʌg/ 58  
 build up /ˌbɪld ˈʌp/ 48  
 built-up /ˌbɪlt ˈʌp/ 3  
 bulb (= light bulb) /bʌlb/ 28  
 bulb (= plant) /bʌlb/ 24  
 bullet-proof /ˈbʊlɪt ˌpruːf/ 75  
 bully N, v /ˈbʊli/ 17  
 bump into sb /ˈbʌmp ˌɪntə ˌ.../ 63  
 bumpy ride /ˌbʌmpi ˈraɪd/ 47  
 buoyant /ˈbɔɪənt/ 47  
 burden as in debt burden 47  
 burst into flames /ˌbɜːst ˌɪntə ˈfleɪmz/ 4  
 burst into tears /ˌbɜːst ˌɪntə ˈtiːəz/ 4  
 bury your head in the sand /ˌberi ʃəː ˌhed ɪn ðə ˈsænd/ 50  
 bush /bʊʃ/ 24  
 butt in /ˌbʌt ˈɪn/ 63  
 butterfly /ˈbʌtəflaɪ/ 24  
 buy sth on impulse /ˌbaɪ ˌ... ɒn ˈɪmpʌls/ 25  
 buzz v /bʌz/ 10  
 buzz about /ˌbʌz əˈbaʊt/ 10  
 by and large /ˌbaɪ ən ˈlɑːdʒ/ 64  
 by any chance /ˌbaɪ ˌeni ˈtʃɑːns/ 60  
 by chance as in purely by chance 70  
 by choice /ˌbaɪ ˈtʃɔɪs/ 77  
 by common consent /ˌbaɪ ˌkɒmən ˌkənˈsent/ 36  
 by means of /ˌbaɪ ˈmiːnz əv/ 77  
 by mutual consent /ˌbaɪ ˌmjuːtʃʊəl ˌkənˈsent/ 36  
 by the way /ˌbaɪ ðə ˈweɪ/ 64  
 c (= see) 73  
 cake as in have your cake and eat it 20  
 cake as in sell like hot cakes 62  
 calculate /ˈkælkjuleɪt/ 48  
 calculation /ˌkælkjuːleɪʃn/ 48  
 call sth off /ˌkɔːl ˌ... ˈɒf/ 63  
 camcorder /ˈkæmkɔːdə(r)/ 31  
 cancel /ˈkænsəl/ 63  
 canteen /ˈkæntiːn/ 44  
 capital punishment /ˌkæpɪtl ˌpʌnɪʃmənt/ 36  
 capitalism /ˈkæpɪtəlɪzəm/ 42  
 capitalist /ˈkæpɪtəlɪst/ 42  
 capitulate /ˌkæpɪtʃuleɪt/ 18  
 captivity as in in captivity 29  
 car chase /ˈkɑː ˌtʃeɪs/ 9  
 carbon footprint /ˌkɑːbən ˈfʊtprɪnt/ 28  
 carried away as in be/get carried away 26  
 carry out (= implement) /ˌkæri ˈaʊt/ 27  
 carry out (a procedure) /ˌkæri ˈaʊt/ 30  
 carry out (a survey) /ˌkæri ˈaʊt/ 41  
 case as in in any case 64  
 cashews /ˈkæʃuːz, kæˈʃuːz/ 20  
 casserole /ˈkæsərɔːl/ 20  
 cast /kɑːst/ 22  
 casualty /ˈkæʒʊəlti/ 53  
 catch /kætʃ/ 63  
 catch a glimpse of /ˌkætʃ ə ˈɡlɪmps əv/ 11  
 catch fire /ˌkætʃ ˈfaɪə(r)/ 4  
 catch sb out /ˌkætʃ ˌ... ˈaʊt/ 53  
 catch sight of /ˌkætʃ ˌsaɪt əv/ 11  
 cause /kɔːz/ 27  
 caution v /ˈkɔːʃn/ 35  
 cautious /ˈkɔːʃəs/ 15  
 CCTV (= closed circuit television) /ˌsiː ˌsiː ˌtiː ˈviː/ 73  
 cease /siːs/ 38

VOWELS: æ cat | ʌ father | e ten | ɜː bird | ə about | ɪ sit | i see | i many | ɒ got | ɔː saw | ʌ up | ʊ put | u too | u actual |  
 at my | ʌo now | eɪ say | ɔː go | ɔɪ boy | ɪə near | eə hair | ʊə pure



- celeb /sə'leɪb/ 41  
 celebrity /sə'lebrəti/ 41  
 cell (= prison cell) /sel/ 36  
 cell (e.g. blood cell) /sel/ 71  
 centre party /'sentə ,pɑ:ti/ 42  
 CEO (= chief executive officer) /,si: ,i: 'əʊ/ 73  
 certificate *as in* birth certificate 3  
 chain of events /,tʃeɪn əv i'vents/ 52  
 chair N, V /tʃeə(r)/ 34  
 chairman /'tʃeəməŋ/ 34  
 chairperson /'tʃeəpɜ:sn/ 34  
 chairwoman /'tʃeəwʊməŋ/ 34  
 chalk *as in* like chalk and cheese 20  
 chance /tʃɑ:ns/ 23  
 chance *as in* by any chance 60  
 chance *as in* purely by chance 79  
 chance *as in* take a chance on sth 40  
 change /tʃeɪndʒ/ 27  
 channel of communication /,tʃænl əv kəmju:nɪ'keɪʃn/ 54  
 chaos *as in* total/utter chaos 4  
 character /'kærəktə(r)/ 14  
 characteristic /kærəktə'rɪstɪk/ 75  
 characterize /'kærəktəraɪz/ 75  
 charge N, V /tʃɑ:ʒ/ 9  
 charge sth /tʃɑ:ʒ ,... 'ɒp/ 28  
 charge sth up /tʃɑ:ʒ ,... 'ɒp/ 28  
 charger /'tʃɑ:ʒə(r)/ 28  
 charisma /kə'rɪzmə/ 14  
 charismatic /kærɪz'mætɪk/ 14  
 charity /'tʃærəti/ 34  
 charity begins at home /tʃærəti bɪ'ɡɪnz ət 'həʊm/ 66  
 charity organization /'tʃærəti ɔ:gənə'zeɪʃn/ 34  
 charm /tʃɑ:m/ 21  
 charming /'tʃɑ:mɪŋ/ 21  
 chase N, V /tʃeɪs/ 9  
 chatterbox /'tʃætəbɒks/ 14  
 chatty /'tʃæti/ 14  
 cheek (= rude behaviour) /tʃi:k/ 19, 58  
 cheeky /'tʃi:ki/ 19  
 cheerful *as in* bright and cheerful 61  
 cheers /tʃiəz/ 58  
 cheese *as in* like chalk and cheese 20  
 chemical weapon /,kemɪkl 'wepən/ 37  
 chemotherapy /ki:məʊ'therəpi/ 30  
 chickens *as in* don't count your chickens 20  
 chief /tʃi:f/ 38  
 chief constable /tʃi:f 'kɒnstəbl/ 35  
 chiefly /'tʃi:flɪ/ 79  
 childcare /'tʃaɪldkeə(r)/ 44  
 childish /'tʃaɪldɪʃ/ 78  
 childlike /'tʃaɪldlaɪk/ 78  
 childproof /'tʃaɪld,pru:f/ 75  
 chill out /tʃɪl 'aʊt/ 21  
 chocoholic /tʃɒkə'hɒlɪk/ 25  
 choice *as in* by choice 77  
 choose *as in* pick and choose 61  
 chop V /tʃɒp/ 20  
 chopsticks /'tʃɒpstɪks/ 19  
 chore /tʃɔ:(r)/ 24  
 chronic /'krɒnɪk/ 40  
 chubby /'tʃʌbi/ 7  
 chubby cheeks /tʃʌbi 'tʃi:ks/ 7  
 cinnamon /'sɪnəmən/ 20  
 circumstance /'sɜ:kəmstɑ:ns/ 5  
 citizen /'sɪtɪzn/ 34  
 city-wide /'sɪti ,waɪd/ 34  
 civil /'sɪvl/ 37  
 civilian N, ADJ /sə'vɪliən/ 37  
 claim V /kleɪm/ 63, 69  
 clap /klæp/ 22  
 clarify /'klærəfaɪ/ 75  
 class *as in* lower/middle/upper/ working class 19  
 classic example /'klæsɪk ɪg,zɑ:mpl/ 4  
 classified /'klæsɪfaɪd/ 74  
 clean *as in* spotlessly clean 33  
 clear /kliə(r)/ 29  
 clear sb of /'kliə ,... əv/ 38  
 clear sth up /,kliə ,... 'ɒp/ 26  
 clear up /,kliə 'ɒp/ 26  
 clearly /'kliəli/ 79  
 clenched fist /,klentʃt 'fɪst/ 8  
 cliché /'kli:ʃeɪ/ 22  
 clichéd /'kli:ʃeɪd/ 22  
 clinch V /kɪntʃ/ 46  
 clinical trial /,klɪnɪkl 'traɪəl/ 33  
 clip N /klɪp/ 31, 76  
 clique /kli:k/ 26  
 cliques /'kli:ki/ 26  
 close to tears /,klaʊs tə 'tiəz/ 15  
 closure /'kləʊʒə(r)/ 50  
 clue *as in* I haven't a clue 59  
 c/o /'keə əv/ 73  
 coarse /kɔ:s/ 17  
 cobbled streets /'kɒblɪd ,stri:ts/ 21  
 cock /kɒk/ 10  
 coerce /kəʊ's:z/ 52  
 coercion /kəʊ's:ʃn/ 52  
 coffee break /'kɒfi ,breɪk/ 57  
 coherence /kəʊ'hɪərəns/ 69  
 coherent /kəʊ'hɪərənt/ 69  
 coincide with /kəʊm'saɪd wɪð/ 31  
 coincidence /kəʊ'ɪnsɪdəns/ 31  
 colander /'kɒləndə(r)/ 20  
 collaboration /kələbə'reɪʃn/ 45  
 collateral damage /kə'kɒlətərəl 'dæmɪʒ/ 80  
 collocation /kələ'keɪʃn/ 4  
 combat /'kɒmbæt/ 37  
 combination /kəm'bɪneɪʃn/ 8  
 combine /kəm'baɪn/ 8  
 come across as /'kʌm ə,kroʊs əz/ 14  
 come bottom /,kʌm 'bɒtəm/ 56  
 come in /,kʌm 'ɪn/ 2  
 come into effect /,kʌm ,ɪntu: 'ɪfekt/ 52  
 come into sight /,kʌm ,ɪntə 'saɪt/ 11  
 come into view /,kʌm ,ɪntə 'vju: / 11  
 come top /,kʌm 'tɒp/ 56  
 come under attack /,kʌm ,ʌndə ə'tæk/ 39  
 come under fire /,kʌm ,ʌndə 'faɪə(r)/ 39  
 come unstuck /,kʌm ʌn'stʌk/ 56  
 come up /,kʌm 'ʌp/ 54, 63  
 come with /'kʌm ,wɪð/ 2  
 comeback /'kʌmbæk/ 56  
 command N /kə'mɑ:nd/ 69  
 command V /kə'mɑ:nd/ 37  
 comment /'kɒment/ 19  
 commentary /'kɒməntəri/ 70  
 commercial /kə'mɜ:ʃl/ 79  
 commercialize /kə'mɜ:ʃəlaɪz/ 75  
 commercially /kə'mɜ:ʃəli/ 79  
 commit /kə'mɪt/ 6  
 commitment /kə'mɪtmənt/ 6  
 common goal /,kɒmən 'gəʊl/ 45  
 communicate with /kə'mju:nɪkeɪt ,wɪð/ 63  
 communism /'kɒmjunɪzəm/ 42  
 companionship /kəm'pænjənʃɪp/ 70  
 company /'kʌmpəni/ 26  
 comparable /'kɒmpərəbl/ 6  
 compare /kəm'peə(r)/ 6  
 compatible with /kəm'pætəbl ,wɪð/ 76  
 compensate for /'kɒmpənsɪt ,fɔ:(r), fə(r)/ 63  
 compilation /kəm'pɪleɪʃn/ 76  
 complementary medicine /kəm'plɪ,mentri 'medsn/ 33  
 complex /'kɒmpleks/ 76  
 compliance /kəm'plaɪəns/ 72  
 compliment N, V /'kɒmplɪmənt/ 16  
 complimentary /kəm'plɪ,mentri/ 16  
 comply with /kəm'plaɪ ,wɪð/ 72  
 compose /kəm'pəʊz/ 37  
 composed *as in* be composed of 37  
 compost /'kɒmpɒst/ 24  
 comprehensible /kɒm'pri'hensəbl/ 78  
 comprehensive /kɒm'pri'hensɪv/ 44, 78  
 comprise /kəm'praɪz/ 37  
 compulsive /kəm'pʌlsɪv/ 25  
 conc V /kɒn/ 58  
 conceal /kən'si:l/ 7  
 conceited /kən'si:tɪd/ 14  
 conceivable /kən'si:vəbl/ 78  
 concept /'kɒnsept/ 74  
 concern *as in* main/principal/growing concern 4  
 concerned *as in* as far as sth is concerned 79  
 concerning /kən'sɜ:nɪŋ/ 67, 68  
 concerted effort /kən'sɜ:tɪd 'efət/ 4  
 concise /kən'saɪs/ 67  
 conclude /kən'klu:d/ 69  
 concluding /kən'klu:dɪŋ/ 78  
 conclusion /kən'klu:ʒn/ 69  
 conclusions *as in* jump/leap to conclusions 8  
 conclusive /kən'klu:sɪv/ 78  
 concrete /'kɒŋkri:t/ 72  
 condemn /kən'dem/ 69  
 condemnation /kɒndem'neɪʃn/ 69  
 condition /kən'dɪʃn/ 30  
 condolences /kən'dəʊlənsɪz/ 67  
 condone /kən'dəʊn/ 69  
 conduct (a survey) /kən'dɒkt/ 41  
 conference /'kɒnfərəns/ 69  
 confess /kən'fes/ 6, 63  
 confession /kən'feʃn/ 6  
 confide in /kən'faɪd ,ɪn/ 16  
 confidential /kɒn'fɪdenʃl/ 33



- confidentiality /kənʃɪdənʃi'æləti/ 33  
 confine /kən'faɪn/ 36  
 confined *as in* be confined to bed / a wheelchair 30  
 confinement /kən'faɪnmənt/ 36  
 conflicting /kən'flɪktɪŋ/ 47  
 confound /kən'faʊnd/ 53  
 confront /kən'frʌnt/ 54  
 conscientious /kənʃi'entʃəs/ 14  
 conscription /kən'skrɪpʃn/ 37  
 consent *N, v* /kən'sent/ 36  
 consent *as in* by common/mutual consent 36  
 consequences /'kɒnsɪkwənsɪz/ 52  
 conservation /kən'sə'veɪʃn/ 28  
 Conservative /kən'sə:vətɪv/ 42  
 conserve /kən'sə:v/ 28  
 consider /kən'sɪdə(r)/ 19  
 considerable /kən'sɪdərəbl/ 37  
 considerable difficulty /kən'sɪdərəbl 'dɪfɪkəlti/ 4  
 considerably /kən'sɪdərəbli/ 37  
 considerate /kən'sɪdərət/ 14  
 considered *as in* all things considered 77  
 considering /kən'sɪdərɪŋ/ 68  
 consist of /kən'sɪst əv/ 37  
 constable /'kɒnstəbl/ 35  
 constant /'kɒnstənt/ 9  
 constipated /'kɒnstɪpeɪtɪd/ 13  
 constipation /kɒnstɪ'peɪʃn/ 13  
 constrain /kən'streɪn/ 72  
 constraint /kən'streɪnt/ 72  
 construction *as in* under construction 77  
 consult /kən'sʌlt/ 27  
 consultation /kɒnsəl'teɪʃn/ 27  
 consultative /kən'sʌltətɪv/ 27  
 consume /kən'sju:m/ 28  
 consumer /kən'sju:mə(r)/ 28  
 consumption /kən'sʌmpʃn/ 28  
 contingency /kən'tɪndʒənsi/ 48  
 contradict /kɒntrə'dɪkt/ 47  
 contradiction /kɒntrə'dɪkʃn/ 47  
 contradictory /kɒntrə'dɪktəri/ 47  
 contrary *as in* on the contrary 77  
 contribute /kən'trɪbjʊ:t/ 26  
 contribution /kɒntrɪ'bju:ʃn/ 26  
 control /kən'trəʊl/ 76  
 control *as in* under control 49  
 controversial /kɒntrə'vɜ:ʃl/ 39  
 controversy /'kɒntrəvɜ:si, kən'trɒvəsi/ 39  
 convalesce /kɒnvə'les/ 33  
 convalescence /kɒnvə'lesns/ 33  
 convention /kən'venʃn/ 30  
 conventional /kən'venʃənəl/ 30  
 convey /kən'veɪ/ 70  
 conviction /kən'vɪkʃn/ 71  
 convincing /kən'vɪnsɪŋ/ 22, 78  
 convoluted /'kɒnvəlu:tɪd/ 67  
 copy *N, v* /'kɒpi/ 24  
 coriander /kɒri'ændə(r)/ 20  
 corkscrew /'kɔ:kskru:/ 20  
 corner *as in* a tight corner 39  
 corporate /'kɔ:pəreɪt/ 47  
 corporation /kɔ:pə'reɪʃn/ 47  
 corrupt /kə'rʌpt/ 61  
 corruption /kə'rʌpʃn/ 61  
 cosmetic surgery /kɒz'metɪk 'sɜ:dʒəri/ 33  
 cottage /'kɒtɪdʒ/ 24  
 could *as in* I could do with 59  
 council /'kaʊnsəl/ 34  
 councillor /'kaʊnsələ(r)/ 34  
 count /kaʊnt/ 5  
 counter-productive /,kaʊntə prɒ'dʌktɪv/ 37  
 counteract /kaʊntər'ækt/ 72  
 countryside /'kʌntrɪsaɪd/ 24  
 courage /'kʌrɪdʒ/ 17  
 courageous /kə'reɪdʒəs/ 17  
 courteous /'kɜ:tiəs/ 19  
 courtesy /'kɜ:tiəsi/ 19  
 cover sth up /,kʌvə ... 'ʌp/ 39  
 cover-up /'kʌvə ,ʌp/ 39  
 coverage /'kʌvərɪdʒ/ 41  
 crack *N* /kræk/ 42  
 crafty /'kra:ftɪ/ 14  
 crane /kreɪn/ 72  
 crawl /kro:əl/ 2  
 crazy *as in* drive sb crazy 52  
 creak *N, v* /kri:k/ 10  
 create /kri'eɪt/ 27  
 create an illusion /kri'eɪt ən ɪ'lʊ:ʒn/ 7  
 credit /'kredit/ 48  
 creep /kri:p/ 9  
 crime *as in* organized crime 35  
 crippling /'krɪplɪŋ/ 25  
 crisis *as in* in crisis 36  
 criteria /kraɪ'tɪəriə/ 69  
 criterion /kraɪ'tɪəriən/ 69  
 criticism /'krɪtɪsɪzəm/ 4  
 criticize /'krɪtɪsaɪz/ 17, 63  
 croc /krɒk/ 40  
 crocodile /'krɒkədaɪl/ 40  
 crop up /,krɒp 'ʌp/ 63  
 crow /kroʊ/ 10  
 crude /kru:d/ 17  
 cruel /'kru:əl/ 6  
 cruel *as in* be cruel to be kind 14  
 crush *v* /kraʃ/ 20  
 crush (= see you later) 73  
 culture shock /'kʌltʃə ,ʃɒk/ 32  
 cunning /'kʌnɪŋ/ 14  
 curable /'kjʊərəbl/ 30  
 curb *v* /kɜ:b/ 38  
 cure *N, v* /kjʊə(r)/ 30  
 curiously enough /'kjʊəriəsli ɪ,nəf/ 79  
 current *as in* in current use 1  
 current account /'kʌrənt ə,kaʊnt/ 48  
 curt /kɜ:t/ 67  
 curtain /'kɜ:teɪl/ 57  
 custody /'kʌstədi/ 35, 41  
 custom /'kʌstəm/ 19  
 customary /'kʌstəməri/ 19  
 cut *N* /kʌt/ 47  
 cut sth back /,kʌt ... 'bæk/ 24  
 cutbacks *as in* make cutbacks 48  
 cute /kju:t/ 7  
 cutting edge /,kʌtɪŋ 'edʒ/ 55  
 cutting-edge technology /,kʌtɪŋ ,edʒ tek'nɒlədʒi/ 55  
 cyber- /'saɪbə/ 31  
 cyber-café /'saɪbə ,kæfeɪ/ 31  
 cyberspace /'saɪbəspeɪs/ 31  
 cynical /'sɪnɪkl/ 14  
 cynicism /'sɪnɪsɪzəm/ 14  
 d (= the) 73  
 daft /dɑ:ft/ 58  
 damage *as in* extensive/widespread damage 4  
 damp /dæmp/ 11  
 danger *as in* in danger 29, 77  
 danger zone /'deɪndʒə ,zəʊn/ 43  
 dank /dæŋk/ 12  
 dare *v* /deə(r)/ 40  
 darling /'dɑ:lɪŋ/ 58  
 dash *N, v* /dæʃ/ 9  
 date *as in* out of / up to date 55  
 date *as in* set a date 50  
 dated /'deɪtɪd/ 1  
 dawn on /'dɔ:n ,ɒn/ 2  
 day *as in* it's not sb's day / it's been one of those days 59  
 dazed /deɪzd/ 40  
 de- /di:/ 74  
 deadlock /'dedlɒk/ 50  
 deadly dull /,dedli 'dʌl/ 22  
 deadly weapon /,dedli 'wepən/ 37  
 deafening /'defnɪŋ/ 26  
 deal *N* /di:l/ 38  
 death rate /'deθ ,reɪt/ 30  
 debate *as in* heated debate 42  
 debit card /'deɪt ,kɑ:d/ 48  
 debris /'debri:/ 43  
 debt burden /'det ,bɜ:dn/ 47  
 decade /'dekeɪd/ 30  
 decaffeinated /di:'kæfɪneɪtɪd/ 74  
 decay *as in* fall into decay 55  
 deceit /di'si:t/ 53  
 deceive /di'si:v/ 14, 53, 63  
 deceive yourself /di'si:v jɔ:s, self/ 53  
 decentralize /di:'sentərəlaɪz/ 74  
 deception /di'sepʃn/ 53  
 deceptive /di'septɪv/ 14  
 declare a ceasefire /di,kleə ə 'si:sfaɪə(r)/ 53  
 declare war /di,kleə 'wɔ:(r)/ 53  
 declassified /di:'klesɪfaɪd/ 74  
 decline *as in* gradual/steady decline 29  
 dedicate /'dedɪkeɪt/ 17  
 dedicated /'dedɪkeɪtɪd/ 17  
 dedication /dedɪ'keɪʃn/ 17  
 deep end /'di:p ,end/ 42  
 deep fat fryer /,di:p ,fæt 'fraɪə(r)/ 20  
 deep-fry /,di:p 'fraɪ/ 20  
 defect /di:'fekt/ 71  
 defective /di:'fektɪv/ 71  
 defenceless /di:'fensləs/ 6  
 defend /di'fend/ 6  
 defiance /di'faɪəns/ 70  
 defiant /di'faɪənt/ 70  
 deficit /'defɪsɪt/ 48  
 deforestation /di:'fɒrɪsteɪʃn/ 29  
 defraud /di'frɔ:d/ 35  
 defrost /di:'frɒst/ 74  
 defy /di'faɪ/ 70  
 degree of /di'ɡri: əv/ 45

VOWELS: æ cat | ɑ: father | e ten | ɜ: bird | ə about | ɪ sit | i: see | i many | ɒ got | ɔ: saw | ʌ up | ʊ put | u: too | u actual |  
 at my | əʊ now | eɪ say | əʊ go | ɔɪ boy | ɪə near | eə hair | ʊə pure



- dejected /di'dʒektɪd/ 78  
 delegate sth to /'delɪɡeɪt ... tə/ 49  
 delicate /'delɪkət/ 12  
 delude yourself /di'lud ɔː self/ 53  
 deluge /'deljuːdʒ/ 49  
 dent N, v /dent/ 52, 54  
 dent sb's confidence /,dent ...  
 'kɒnfɪdəns/ 54  
 dent sb's reputation /,dent ...  
 repju'teɪʃn/ 54  
 dependent on /di'pendənt, ɒn/ 76  
 depict /di'pɪkt/ 70  
 depopulated /di:'pɒpjuleɪtɪd/ 74  
 deport /di'pɔːt/ 32  
 deportation /di'pɔːteɪʃn/ 32  
 deposit account /di'pɒzɪt ə,kaʊnt/ 48  
 depreciate /di'priːʃieɪt/ 74  
 deprivation /deprɪ'veɪʃn/ 18  
 deprived /di'praɪvd/ 18  
 depth /depθ/ 42  
 depth as in out of your depth 56  
 derogatory /də'rogətri/ 1  
 describe /di'skraɪb/ 6  
 desert v /di'zɜːt/ 43  
 deserve /di'zɜːv/ 41  
 desire /di'zaɪə(r)/ 32  
 desperate /'despəɪt/ 15  
 desperately /'despəɪtli/ 15  
 desperation /despə'reɪʃn/ 15  
 despicable /di'spɪkəbl/ 17  
 despise /di'spaɪz/ 17  
 despondent /di'spɒndənt/ 78  
 destabilize /di'steɪbəlaɪz/ 74  
 detain /di'teɪn/ 35  
 detect /di'tekt/ 53  
 deter /di'tɜː(r)/ 18, 36  
 deteriorate /di'tɪəriəreɪt/ 53, 56  
 deterioration /di'tɪəriə'reɪʃn/ 53  
 determine /di'tɜːmɪn/ 72  
 deterrent /di'terənt/ 18, 36  
 detrimental effect /detri'mentl  
 rɪ'fekt/ 18, 52  
 devalued /di'væljuːd/ 74  
 devastated /devə'steɪtɪd/ 15  
 deviate /'diːvieɪt/ 36  
 deviation /diːvi'eɪʃn/ 36  
 device /di'vaɪs/ 55  
 devise /di'vaɪz/ 9  
 diagnose /'daɪəgnəʊz/ 30  
 diagnosis /daɪə'gnɒsɪs/ 30  
 diagnostic /daɪə'gnɒstɪk/ 30  
 diarrhoea /daɪə'riə/ 13  
 die down /,daɪ 'daʊn/ 4  
 die out /,daɪ 'aʊt/ 29  
 difference as in make a  
 difference 52  
 different as in entirely different 4  
 differentiate /dɪfə'renʃieɪt/ 37  
 difficulty as in great difficulty 4  
 diffident /'dɪfɪdənt/ 14  
 dig /dɪɡ/ 24  
 dignified /'dɪɡnɪfaɪd/ 17  
 dignity /'dɪɡnəti/ 17  
 dilapidated /dɪ'læpɪdeɪtɪd/ 55  
 din /dɪn/ 58  
 dire /'daɪə(r)/ 22  
 direction as in head in the right/  
 wrong direction 42  
 directly /dɪ'rektli, dr-, daɪ-/ 79  
 disadvantaged /dɪsəd'vɑːntɪdʒd/ 74  
 disappear from sight /dɪsə'piə frəm  
 'saɪt/ 11  
 disappear from view /dɪsə'piə frəm  
 'vjuː/ 11  
 disapproving /dɪsə'pruːvɪŋ/ 1  
 discard /dɪs'kaːd/ 13  
 discharge sb /dɪs'tʃɑːdʒ .../ 33  
 disclose /dɪs'kləʊz/ 15  
 disclosure /dɪs'kləʊʒə(r)/ 15  
 discomfort /dɪs'kʌmfət/ 11  
 discourteous /dɪs'kɜːtiəs/ 19  
 discreet /dɪ'skriːt/ 7  
 discreetly /dɪ'skriːtli/ 7  
 discriminate /dɪ'skrɪmɪneɪt/ 32  
 discrimination /dɪskrɪ'mɪneɪʃn/ 32  
 discursive /dɪs'kɜːsɪv/ 69  
 discussion as in under discussion 77  
 disgrace /dɪs'ɡreɪs/ 19  
 disgraceful /dɪs'ɡreɪsfl/ 19  
 disgusting /dɪs'ɡastɪŋ/ 12, 58  
 dislike as in take an instant dislike  
 to 16  
 dislocate /'dɪsləkeɪt/ 13  
 dismantle /dɪs'mæntl/ 63  
 disorder /dɪs'ɔːdə(r)/ 13  
 disoriented /dɪs'ɔːrɪənteɪtɪd/ 40  
 display N, v /dɪ'spleɪ/ 8  
 disposable /dɪ'spəʊzəbl/ 26, 28  
 dispose of sth /dɪ'spəʊz əv .../ 28  
 dispute N /dɪ'spiːt/ 50  
 dispute as in settle a dispute 4, 50  
 disregard N /dɪsri'ɡɑːd/ 76  
 disrepair as in fall into disrepair 55  
 disrespectful /dɪsri'spektfl/ 19  
 disrupt /dɪs'rʌpt/ 45  
 disruptive /dɪs'rʌptɪv/ 45  
 dissolve /dɪ'zɒlv/ 13  
 dissuade sb from doing sth /dɪ'sweɪd  
 ... frəm, duːɪŋ .../ 63  
 distant /'dɪstənt/ 14  
 distinction as in make a  
 distinction 37  
 distinguish between /dɪ'stɪŋɡwɪʃ  
 bɪ'twiːn/ 37  
 distinguished /dɪ'stɪŋɡwɪʃt/ 78  
 distort /dɪ'stɔːt/ 53  
 distract sb from sth /dɪ'strækt ... frəm  
 .../ 25  
 distracted as in be distracted by  
 sth 25  
 distribute /dɪ'strɪbjʊt/ 42  
 distribution /dɪstrɪ'bjuːʃn/ 42  
 diverse /daɪ'vɜːs/ 21, 37  
 diversity /daɪ'vɜːsəti/ 37  
 divert /daɪ'vɜːt/ 29  
 dividend /'dɪvɪdənd/ 46  
 DIY (= do-it-yourself) /,diː ˌaɪ 'waɪ/ 73  
 do N /duː/ 26, 58  
 do V /duː/ 2  
 do as in inclined to do sth 50  
 do a search /,duː ə 'sɜːtʃ/ 31  
 do away with /,duː ə'weɪ wɪð/ 63  
 do for /'duː, fɔː(r), fə(r)/ 2  
 do no such thing /,duː nəʊ, sʌʃ  
 'θɪŋ/ 4  
 do sb a favour /,duː ... ə 'feɪvə(r)/ 5  
 do sth at the last minute /,duː ... ət  
 ðə, lɑːst 'mɪnɪt/ 57  
 do sth up /,duː ... 'ʌp/ 55  
 do the weeding /,duː ðə 'wiːdɪŋ/ 24  
 do your fair share /,duː jɔː 'feə  
 'ʃeə(r)/ 18  
 dodderly /'dɒdəri/ 7  
 dodgy /'dɒdʒi/ 58  
 domestic /də'mestɪk/ 37  
 dominant /'dɒmɪnənt/ 23  
 dominate /'dɒmɪneɪt/ 23  
 don't ask me /,dɒnt ə'sk 'miː/ 59  
 don't count your chickens /,dɒnt  
 'kaʊnt jə 'tʃɪkɪnz/ 20  
 don't count your chickens before  
 they're hatched /,dɒnt 'kaʊnt jə  
 'tʃɪkɪnz bɪ'fɔː, ðeə 'hætʃt/ 20  
 don't hold your breath /,dɒnt 'həʊld  
 jə 'breθ/ 59  
 don't judge a book by its cover  
 /,dɒnt ˌdʒʌdʒ ə 'bʊk baɪ ɪts  
 'kʌvə(r)/ 14  
 don't you dare /,dɒnt juː 'deə(r)/ 40  
 donor /'dɒnə(r)/ 30  
 doors as in behind closed doors 39  
 dosage /'dɒsɪdʒ/ 13  
 dose /dɒs/ 13  
 down-to-earth /,daʊn tuː 'ɜːθ/ 14  
 downfall /'daʊnfɔːl/ 70  
 downhill as in go downhill 56  
 download v /daʊn'ləʊd/ 31  
 downright /'daʊnrat/ 19  
 downs as in ups and downs 16  
 downsize /daʊn'saɪz/ 80  
 downsizing /daʊn'saɪzɪŋ/ 80  
 downwards /'daʊnwədz/ 19  
 draft as in the draft 37  
 drag /dræg/ 58  
 drag sth out /,dræg ... 'aʊt/ 63  
 drain v /dreɪn/ 20  
 drastic /'dræstɪk/ 40  
 draw /drɔː/ 23  
 draw attention to /,drɔː ə'tenʃn, tuː,  
 tə/ 7  
 drawback /'drɔːbæk/ 45  
 drawing pin /'drɔːɪŋ, pɪn/ 3  
 drawn as in be drawn against 23  
 drawn as in be drawn to 14  
 dream /driːm/ 62  
 dream up /,driːm 'ʌp/ 31  
 dress as in fancy dress 3  
 dried fruit /,draɪd 'fruːt/ 20  
 drive sb crazy /,draɪv ... 'kreɪzi/ 52  
 drive sb insane /,draɪv ... ɪn'seɪn/ 52  
 drive sb mad /,draɪv ... 'mæd/ 52  
 driving licence /'draɪvɪŋ, lɑɪsəns/ 3  
 driving seat /'draɪvɪŋ, siːt/ 42  
 drop in the ocean /,drɒp ɪn ðɪ  
 'əʊʃn/ 39  
 drop out /,drɒp 'aʊt/ 3  
 dropout /'drɒpaʊt/ 3  
 drown sth out /,draʊn ... 'aʊt/ 26  
 drowsiness /'draʊzɪnəs/ 13  
 drowsy /'draʊzi/ 13



drug addict /'dræg, ædɪkt/ 25  
 drug-trafficking /'dræg, træfɪkɪŋ/ 35  
 drunk /drʌŋk/ 26  
 dry up /draɪ 'ʌp/ 47  
 dump sb /'dʌmp, .../ 41  
 duplicate v /'dju:plikeɪt/ 71  
 during /'dʒuəriŋ/ 57  
 dust as in the dust settles 46  
 duty /'dju:ti/ 75  
 duty-free /'dju:ti 'fri:/ 75  
 dying for sth to eat /daɪŋ fə, ... tu  
 'i:t/ 58

e- /i:/ 31  
 e-business /'i: bɪznəs/ 31  
 e-learning /'i: lɜ:nɪŋ/ 31  
 earth as in What/Where on earth ...  
 ? 60  
 earn sb's respect /ɜ:n ... rɪ'spekt/ 16  
 ease v /i:z/ 11  
 easier said than done /i:ziə, sed ðən  
 'dʌn/ 66  
 easy as in take it easy 21  
 easy-going /i:zi 'gəʊɪŋ/ 58  
 eat as in dying for sth to eat 58  
 eat your words /i:t jɔ: 'wɜ:dz/ 20  
 eco- /i:kəʊ/ 28  
 eco-disaster /i:kəʊ dɪz'ɑ:stə(r)/ 28  
 eco-friendly /i:kəʊ 'frendli/ 28  
 eco-home /i:kəʊ 'həʊm/ 28  
 ecology /i'kɒlədʒi/ 28  
 economic boom /i:kə,nɒmɪk  
 'bu:m/ 47  
 economic migrant /i:kə,nɒmɪk  
 'maɪgrənt/ 32  
 economic slump /i:kə,nɒmɪk  
 'slʌmp/ 47  
 economical with the  
 truth /i:kə,nɒmɪkl, wɪð ðə 'tru:θ/ 53  
 economize /i'kɒnəmaɪz/ 48, 75  
 ecstatic /i'kætætɪk/ 15  
 effect /i'fekt/ 13, 18, 22, 52  
 effort /'efət/ 4  
 egg sb on /'eg, ... 'ɒn/ 52  
 elapse /i'læps/ 57  
 elated /i'leɪtɪd/ 15  
 electrify /i'lektɪraɪz/ 75  
 eligible /'elɪdʒəbl/ 34  
 eliminate /i'lmɪneɪt/ 11, 23  
 elimination /i'lmɪneɪʃn/ 11  
 embark on /ɪm'bɑ:k, 'ɒn/ 76  
 embellish /ɪm'belɪʃ/ 53  
 embodiment /ɪm'bɒdɪmənt/ 70  
 embody /ɪm'bɒdi/ 70  
 emerge /i'mɜ:ʒ/ 39  
 emergence /i'mɜ:ʒəns/ 39  
 emigrant /'emɪgrənt/ 32  
 emigrate /'emɪgreɪt/ 32  
 emigration /emɪ'greɪʃn/ 32  
 eminent /'emɪnənt/ 78  
 emission /i'mɪʃn/ 28  
 emit /i'mɪt/ 28  
 emotion /i'məʊʃn/ 6  
 emotive /i'məʊtɪv/ 6  
 empirical /ɪm'pɪrɪkl/ 71  
 empiricism /ɪm'pɪrɪsɪzəm/ 71

employment agency /ɪm'plɔɪmənt  
 'edʒənsi/ 34  
 encl. (= enclosed) 73  
 enclosed /ɪn'kləʊzd/ 13  
 encompass /ɪn'kʌmpəs/ 37  
 encounter /ɪn'kaʊntə(r)/ 45  
 encourage /ɪn'kʌrɪdʒ/ 45  
 encroach /ɪn'krəʊtʃ/ 29, 45  
 end as in the end justifies the  
 means 66  
 end result /,end rɪ'zʌlt/ 52  
 endangered /ɪn'deɪndʒəd/ 29  
 endangered species /ɪn'deɪndʒəd  
 'spi:ʃi:z/ 29  
 endow sb/sth with /ɪn'dəʊ, ... wɪð  
 .../ 70  
 energetically /'enə'dʒetɪkli/ 12  
 energy-saving /'enədʒi, 'sɜ:vɪŋ/ 28  
 enforce /ɪn'fɔ:s/ 27  
 enforcement /ɪn'fɔ:smənt/ 27  
 enhance /ɪn'hɑ:ns/ 7  
 enlist /ɪn'list/ 37  
 enlisted /ɪn'listɪd/ 37  
 enough as in strangely/oddly/curiously  
 enough 79  
 enquire as in I am writing to enquire  
 whether 67  
 enrich /ɪn'ri:tʃ/ 24  
 enrol /ɪn'rəʊl/ 33  
 ensuing /ɪn'sju:ɪŋ/ 40  
 ensure /ɪn'ʃʊə(r)/ 34  
 enter /'entə(r)/ 31  
 enterprise (= ability to think of new  
 ideas) /'entəpraɪz/ 45  
 enterprise (= project) /'entəpraɪz/ 28  
 entice /ɪn'taɪs/ 35, 46  
 entirely /ɪn'taɪəli/ 4  
 entirely different /ɪn'taɪəli 'dɪfrənt/ 4  
 entirely responsible /ɪn'taɪəli  
 rɪ'spɒnsəbl/ 4  
 entitled as in be entitled to 44  
 entitlement /ɪn'taɪtlmənt/ 44  
 environmentally-friendly  
 /ɪnvaɪrən,məntəli 'frendli/ 28  
 equal /'i:kwəl/ 42  
 equal as in all things being equal 60  
 equality /'i:kwələti/ 42  
 equalize /'i:kwəlaɪz/ 75  
 equally /'i:kwəli/ 42, 79  
 equities /'ekwəti:z/ 47  
 era /'iərə/ 30, 57  
 eradicate /i'rædɪkeɪt/ 30  
 error as in trial and error 61  
 escape as in (have a) narrow  
 escape 4  
 essentially /ɪ'senʃəli/ 79  
 establish /ɪ'stæblɪʃ/ 72  
 ETA (= estimated time of arrival) /,i:  
 'ti: 'eɪ/ 73  
 ethnic group /,eθnɪk 'gru:p/ 32  
 ethnic minority /,eθnɪk maɪ'nɒrəti/ 32  
 etiquette /'etɪket/ 19  
 euphemism /'ju:fəməzəm/ 80  
 euphoric /ju:'fɔ:ɪk/ 15  
 evaluate /i'veljueɪt/ 69  
 evaluation /i'veljueɪʃn/ 69  
 even so /i:vən 'səʊ/ 64

event /i'vent/ 6  
 eventful /i'ventfl/ 6  
 events as in sequence of events 52  
 every bit as /'evri, bɪt əz/ 60  
 evidently /'evidəntli/ 79  
 evil /'i:vl/ 78  
 evolution /i:və'lju:ʃn/ 27  
 evolve /i'vɒlv/ 27  
 exacerbate /ɪg'zæsəbeɪt/ 54  
 exact /ɪg'zækt/ 1  
 exaggerate /ɪg'zædʒəreɪt/ 7  
 exaggeration /ɪgzædʒə'reɪʃn/ 7  
 example as in perfect example 4  
 example as in set an example 18, 50  
 exceed /ɪk'si:d/ 8, 13  
 exceed sb's expectations /ɪk'si:d, ...  
 'ekspek'teɪʃəns/ 13  
 excel /ɪk'sel/ 6  
 excellent /'eksələnt/ 6  
 exception as in take exception 19  
 exceptional /ɪk'sepʃənl/ 78  
 excerpt /'eksɜ:pt/ 76  
 excess /ɪk'ses/ 8  
 excess as in in excess of 13  
 excessive /ɪk'sesɪv/ 8  
 exchange as in in exchange for 77  
 exclusive N, ADJ /ɪk'sklusɪv/ 41  
 exclusively /ɪk'sklusɪvli/ 36  
 excruciating /ɪk'skru:ʃɪeɪɪŋ/ 40  
 exemplary /ɪg'zempləri/ 19  
 exemplify /ɪg'zemplɪfaɪ/ 69, 75  
 exhausted /ɪg'zɔ:stɪd/ 78  
 exhaustive /ɪg'zɔ:stɪv/ 78  
 expect /ɪk'spekt/ 18  
 expectations as in exceed sb's  
 expectations 13  
 expenses /ɪk'spensɪz/ 44  
 expire /ɪk'spaɪə(r)/ 13  
 expiry date /ɪk'spaɪəri, deɪt/ 13  
 explain /ɪk'spleɪn/ 6  
 exploit v /ɪk'splɔɪt/ 35  
 exploitation /ɪksplɔɪ'teɪʃn/ 35  
 explore /ɪk'splɔ:(r)/ 69  
 expose /ɪk'spəʊz/ 70  
 extend /ɪk'stend/ 57  
 extensive damage /ɪk'stensɪv  
 'dæmɪdʒ/ 4  
 extent /ɪk'stent/ 45, 64  
 exterior N, ADJ /ɪk'stɪəriə(r)/ 37  
 external /ɪk'stɜ:nl/ 37  
 extinct /ɪk'stɪŋkt/ 29  
 extinction /ɪk'stɪŋkʃn/ 29  
 extinguish the fire /ɪk'stɪŋgwɪʃ ðə  
 'faɪə(r)/ 4  
 extra /'ekstrə/ 45  
 extract N /'ekstrækt/ 76  
 extraordinarily /ɪk'strɔ:dnəli/ 22  
 extravagant /ɪk'strævəgənt/ 48  
 extreme /ɪk'stri:m/ 42  
 extremist /ɪk'stri:mɪst/ 42  
 eye v /aɪ/ 11  
 eye as in have an eye for sth 25  
 eye as in have your eye on sth 25  
 eye contact /'aɪ, kɒntækt/ 8  
 eye strain /'aɪ, streɪn/ 11  
 eyesight /'aɪsaɪt/ 11  
 eyesore /'aɪsɔ:(r)/ 4



fabulous /'fæbjələs/ 22  
 face v /feɪs/ 54  
 face as in familiar face 4  
 face as in lose face 60  
 face as in to sb's face 16  
 face the prospect of /'feɪs ðə  
 'prɒspekt əv/ 4  
 face the prospect that /'feɪs ðə  
 'prɒspekt ðæt/ 4  
 face up to /'feɪs ,ʌp tə/ 54  
 facet /'fæɪt/ 71  
 facilitate /fə'sɪlɪteɪt/ 27  
 fact as in as a matter of fact 64  
 fail as in without fail 77  
 fail to do sth /'feɪl tə ,duː .../ 51  
 faint ADJ /feɪnt/ 12  
 fair share as in do your fair share 18  
 faith /feɪθ/ 32  
 fall into decay /,fɔːl ,ɪntə dɪ'keɪ/ 55  
 fall into disrepair /,fɔːl ,ɪntə  
 dɪs'reɪə(r)/ 55  
 falsehood /'fɔːlʃud/ 53  
 fame /feɪm/ 41  
 familiar face /fə'mɪliə 'feɪs/ 4  
 familiarize /fə'mɪliəraɪz/ 75  
 famous last words /fə'məs ,lɑːst  
 'wɜːdz/ 66  
 fancy (= be attracted to) /'fænsi/ 8  
 fancy (= want to do) /'fænsi/ 26  
 fancy dress /fænsi 'dres/ 3  
 fao (= for the attention of) /,ef ,eɪ  
 əʊ/ 73  
 far as in as far as sth is concerned 79  
 far as in so far, so good 66  
 far-reaching /,fɑː 'riːtʃɪŋ/ 42  
 fastidious /fə'stɪdiəs/ 33  
 fate /feɪt/ 70  
 faulty /'fɔːlti/ 71  
 favour N /'feɪvə(r)/ 5  
 favour v /'feɪvə(r)/ 42  
 favour as in be in favour of 42  
 feather /'fedə(r)/ 62  
 feature /'fiːtʃə(r)/ 7  
 fed up with /,fed 'ʌp ,wɪð/ 61  
 feeble /'fiːbl/ 22  
 feelings as in suppress your  
 feelings 15  
 fellow ADJ /'feləʊ/ 41  
 fennel /'fenl/ 20  
 fertile /'fɜːtaɪl/ 24  
 fertility /fə'tɪləti/ 24  
 fib /fɪb/ 53  
 fiddle with /'fɪdl ,wɪð/ 8  
 fierce criticism /fɪəs 'krɪtɪsɪzəm/ 4  
 fight a losing battle /,faɪt ə ,luːzɪŋ  
 'bætl/ 60  
 figurative /'fɪɡərətɪv/ 1  
 figuratively /'fɪɡərətɪvli/ 1  
 final /faɪnəl/ 6  
 final outcome /,faɪnəl 'aʊtkʌm/ 52  
 final resort /,faɪnəl rɪ'zɔːt/ 60  
 finalize /'faɪnalaɪz/ 6, 75  
 financially /fə'nænʃəli, fə-/ 79  
 findings /'faɪndɪŋz/ 41  
 fingernails /'fɪŋɡənɪlz/ 8  
 fingertips /'fɪŋɡətɪps/ 12  
 fire /'faɪə(r)/ 4

fire as in come under fire 39  
 firearm /'faɪəɑːm/ 35  
 firing as in in the firing line 39  
 firmly /'fɜːmli/ 12  
 first and foremost /,fɜːst ən  
 'fɔːməʊst/ 61  
 first come, first served /,fɜːst ,kʌm  
 'fɜːst 'sɜːvd/ 66  
 fish out of water /,fɪʃ ,aʊt əv  
 'wɔːtə(r)/ 20  
 fishy /'fɪʃi/ 12, 20  
 fist /fɪst/ 8  
 fit in /,fɪt 'ɪn/ 45  
 flak /flæk/ 58  
 flames /fleɪmz/ 4  
 flattering /'flætərɪŋ/ 7  
 flee /fliː/ 32  
 flirt v /flɜːt/ 8  
 flood v /flʌd/ 39  
 flop N, v /flɒp/ 56  
 flourishing /'flaʊrɪʃɪŋ/ 21  
 flower /'flaʊə(r)/ 24  
 focused /'fəʊkəst/ 25  
 folded arms /,fəʊldɪd 'ɑːmz/ 8  
 follow /'fɒləʊ/ 6  
 follow in sb's footsteps /,fɒləʊ ɪn ,...  
 'fʊtstɛps/ 17  
 following (= further to) /'fɒləʊɪŋ/ 67  
 following (= group of  
 supporters) /'fɒləʊɪŋ/ 6  
 food miles /'fuːd ,maɪlz/ 28  
 food processor /'fuːd ,prəʊsesə(r)/ 20  
 foolproof /'fuːlpruːf/ 75  
 foot as in not put a foot wrong 56  
 footings /'fʊtɪŋz/ 72  
 footprint as in carbon footprint 28  
 footsteps as in follow in sb's  
 footsteps 17  
 4 (= for) 73  
 for some reason /fɔː 'sʌm ,riːzn/ 60  
 for the time being /fɔː ðə ,taɪm  
 'biːɪŋ/ 57  
 force as in air force 37  
 forced labour /,fɔːst 'leɪbə(r)/ 35  
 4 (= fore) 73  
 foregone conclusion /,fɔːɡɒn  
 kən'kluːʒn/ 59  
 forest fire /,fɒrɪst 'faɪə(r)/ 4  
 forever /fə'revə(r)/ 79  
 forge v /fɔːdʒ/ 35  
 forgery /'fɔːdʒəri/ 35  
 forgive /fə'gɪv/ 6  
 form /fɔːm/ 23  
 formal /'fɔːml/ 69  
 format N /'fɔːmət/ 31  
 former ADJ /'fɔːmə(r)/ 46  
 former N /'fɔːmə(r)/ 37  
 formerly /'fɔːməli/ 55  
 foremost as in first and foremost 61  
 foster /'fɒstə(r)/ 45  
 foul play /,faʊl 'pleɪ/ 39  
 foundations /fəʊn'deɪʃnz/ 42  
 fragrance /'freɪgrəns/ 12  
 fragrant /'freɪgrənt/ 12  
 frail /freɪl/ 7  
 frailty /'freɪlti/ 7  
 frankly /'fræŋkli/ 79

fraud /frɔːd/ 35  
 freckles /'frecklz/ 7  
 -free /friː/ 75  
 free of charge /,friː əv 'tʃɑːdʒ/ 33  
 -friendly /'frendli/ 28  
 friendly fire /,frendli 'faɪə(r)/ 80  
 friendly takeover /,frendli  
 'teɪkəʊə(r)/ 46  
 from time to time /frəm ,taɪm tə  
 'taɪm/ 57  
 frown on/upon /'fraʊn ,ɒn, ə ,pɒn/ 19  
 fruit machine /'fruːt məʃɪn/ 3  
 fruity /'fruːti/ 12  
 fryer as in deep fat fryer 20  
 fuel v /'fjuːəl/ 46  
 fulfil your potential /fʊl'fɪl jɔː  
 pə'tenʃəl/ 56  
 fulfilling /fʊl'fɪlɪŋ/ 45  
 fully inclusive /,fʊli ɪn'kluːsɪv/ 6  
 fund /fʌnd/ 48  
 fundamental /fʌndə'mentl/ 37  
 funding /'fʌndɪŋ/ 37  
 funds /fʌndz/ 29  
 furnish /'fɜːnɪʃ/ 6  
 furnished /'fɜːnɪʃt/ 6  
 furniture /'fɜːnɪtʃə(r)/ 6  
 further /'fɜːðə(r)/ 45  
 further to /'fɜːðə tə/ 67  
 fuss /fʌs/ 18  
 fy (for your information) 73  
 gadget /'gædʒɪt/ 25  
 gain N /geɪn/ 47  
 gain access to /,geɪn 'ækses ,tuː,  
 tə/ 33  
 gain control of /,geɪn kən'trɒl əv/ 76  
 gain sb's respect /,geɪn ,... rɪ'spekt/ 16  
 gale-force winds /,geɪl ,fɔːs 'wɪndz/ 4  
 gallop N, v /'gæləp/ 9  
 gang /gæŋ/ 35  
 gap /gæp/ 57  
 garlic crusher /'gɑːlɪk ,kraʃə(r)/ 20  
 gatecrasher /'geɪtkræʃə(r)/ 26  
 gaze N, v /geɪz/ 11  
 gem /dʒem/ 38  
 gene /dʒiːn/ 29  
 gene pool /'dʒiːn ,puːl/ 29  
 generalization as in make  
 generalizations about 8  
 generalize /'dʒenəlaɪz/ 8, 75  
 generate /'dʒenəreɪt/ 52  
 genetic /dʒə'netɪk/ 71  
 genetics /dʒə'netɪks/ 71  
 gently /'dʒentli/ 12  
 genuine (= real) /'dʒenjuɪn/ 55  
 genuine (= sincere) /'dʒenjuɪn/ 67  
 gesture /'dʒestʃə(r)/ 8  
 get a scoop /,get ə 'skuːp/ 41  
 get acclimatized /,get  
 ə'klaɪmətaɪzd/ 32  
 get accustomed /,get ə'kʌstəmd/ 32  
 get away from it all /,get ə'weɪ frəm  
 ɪt ,ɔːl/ 21  
 get by /,get 'baɪ/ 63  
 get carried away /,get ,kærɪd  
 ə'weɪ/ 26  
 get hold of /,get 'həʊld əv/ 33



- get nowhere /get 'naʊweə(r)/ 59  
get out of hand /get 'aʊt əv  
'hænd/ 49  
get out of sth /get 'aʊt əv .../ 2  
get sb down /get ,... 'daʊn/ 54  
get sb to do sth /get ,... tə 'duː .../ 2  
get somewhere /'get ,sʌmweə(r)/ 59  
get sth across /get ,... ə'krɒs/ 63  
get the hang of /get ðə 'hæŋ əv/ 32  
get there /'get ,ðeə(r)/ 59  
get through /get 'θruː/ 23  
get to grips with /get tə 'grips  
'wið/ 54  
get-together /'get tə'geðə(r)/ 26, 58  
get up sb's nose /get ,ʌp ,...  
'naʊz/ 14  
get used to /get 'juːst ,tuː, tə/ 32  
getting on (a bit) /getɪŋ 'ɒn  
(ə ,bit)/ 80  
getting on for *as in* be getting on  
for 7  
ghost story /'gəʊst ,stɔːri/ 22  
giant /'dʒaɪənt/ 77  
giggle /'gɪɡl/ 51  
ginger (= colour of hair)  
'dʒɪŋdʒə(r)/ 7  
ginger (= spice) /'dʒɪŋdʒə(r)/ 20  
girder /'gɜːdə(r)/ 72  
give birth /gɪv 'bɜːθ/ 41  
give in /gɪv 'ɪn/ 18  
give or take /gɪv ɔː 'teɪk/ 65  
give sb a say /gɪv ,... ə 'seɪ/ 34  
give sth a go /gɪv ,... ə 'gəʊ/ 14  
give sth a try /gɪv ,... ə 'traɪ/ 14  
give sth away (= disclose sth) /gɪv ,...  
ə 'wei/ 15  
give sth away (= lose a game,  
etc.) /gɪv ,... ə 'wei/ 23  
glare N, V /gleɪə(r)/ 11  
glimpse N, V /glɪmps/ 11  
gloss over sth /glɒs 'əʊvə .../ 53  
go *as in* give sth a go / have a go 14  
go *as in* have a go at sb 17  
go *as in* make a go of sth 56  
go-ahead /'gəʊ ə'hed/ 38  
go back /gəʊ 'bæk/ 27  
go bankrupt /gəʊ 'bæŋkrʌpt/ 46  
go by /gəʊ 'baɪ/ 57  
go down that road /gəʊ ,daʊn ,ðæt  
'rəʊd/ 46  
go down with /gəʊ 'daʊn ,wið/ 63  
go downhill /gəʊ daʊn'hɪl/ 56  
go for a hike /gəʊ fər ə 'haɪk/ 9  
go for a stroll /gəʊ fər ə 'straʊl/ 9  
go for a wander /gəʊ fər ə  
'wɒndə(r)/ 21  
go from strength to strength /gəʊ  
frəm ,streŋθ tə 'streŋθ/ 56  
go in one ear and out of the  
other /gəʊ ,ɪn 'wʌn ,ɪər ən ,aʊt əv  
ði 'ʌðə(r)/ 59  
go mad /gəʊ 'mæd/ 15  
go off /gəʊ 'ɒf/ 12  
go on and on /gəʊ ,ɒn ən 'ɒn/ 18  
go on at /gəʊ 'ɒn ə/ 63  
go out /gəʊ 'aʊt/ 4  
go pear-shaped /gəʊ 'piə ,ʃeɪpt/ 20  
go red /gəʊ 'red/ 8  
go to pieces /gəʊ tə 'piːsɪz/ 23  
go under /gəʊ 'ʌndə(r)/ 46  
go up in flames /gəʊ ,ʌp ɪn  
'fleɪmz/ 4  
goad V /gəʊd/ 52  
goal *as in* common goal 45  
goalposts *as in* move the  
goalposts 39  
gobsmacked /'gɒbsmækt/ 15  
gold /gəʊld/ 62  
gonna /'gɒnə, 'gəʊnə/ 2  
good *as in* it's no good + ing 59  
good *as in* so far, so good 66  
good *as in* too good to be true 60  
good as new /gʊd əz 'njuː/ 55  
good company /gʊd 'kʌmpəni/ 26  
good laugh /gʊd 'lɑːf/ 58  
good run /gʊd 'rʌn/ 23  
google sb/sth /'guːgl .../ 31  
gorgeous /'gɔːdʒəs/ 7  
gossip N, V /'gɒsɪp/ 17  
government funding /gəvnmənt  
'fʌndɪŋ/ 37  
gradual decline /grædʒʊəl  
dɪ'klaɪn/ 29  
grant /grɑːnt/ 34  
grate V /greɪt/ 20  
grater /'greɪtə(r)/ 20  
gr8 (= great) 73  
great chance /greɪt 'tʃɑːns/ 23  
great difficulty /greɪt 'dɪfɪkəlti/ 4  
great honour /greɪt 'ɒnə(r)/ 4  
green /grɪn/ 28  
grim /grɪm/ 43  
gripping /'grɪpɪŋ/ 22  
groundbreaking /'graʊndbreɪkɪŋ/ 28  
grounds /graʊndz/ 35  
group therapy /gruːp 'θerəpi/ 36  
growing /'grəʊɪŋ/ 54  
growing concern /'grəʊɪŋ kən'sɜːn/ 4  
growl /graʊl/ 10  
grudge N /grʌdʒ/ 76  
gruelling /'gruːəlɪŋ/ 40  
gtg (= got to go / I've got to go) 73  
guarantee N, V /gə'ren'tiː/ 45  
guard N, V /gɑːd/ 37  
guarded /'gɑːdɪd/ 15  
guerrilla warfare /gə'rɪlə  
'wɔːfeə(r)/ 37  
guess what! /ges 'wɒt/ 60  
guidelines /'gaɪdlənz/ 7  
gutted /'gʌtɪd/ 15  
guy /gaɪ/ 58  
habitat /'hæbɪtæt/ 29  
hack into /'hæk ,ɪntuː, ,ɪntə/ 31  
half-truth /'hɑːf ,truːθ/ 53  
halt V /hɔːlt/ 50  
hammer sb /'hæmə(r)/ 58  
hand (= have a nice day) 73  
hand *as in* be out of hand 49  
hand sth over /hænd ,... 'əʊvə(r)/ 51  
handle /'hændl/ 6  
handling /'hændlɪŋ/ 6  
handover /'hændəʊvə(r)/ 51  
hands *as in* safe pair of hands 42  
hang *as in* get the hang of 32  
happen to /'hæpən tə/ 60  
happen to *as in* if anything happens  
to sb 80  
happy *as in* not entirely happy 4  
happy-go-lucky /'hæpi ,gəʊ 'lʌki/ 14  
hard-hit /hɑːd 'hɪt/ 49  
hard of hearing /hɑːd əv 'hɪərɪŋ/ 80  
hard-wearing /hɑːd 'weərɪŋ/ 3  
hate *as in* pet hate 51  
have a go /hæv ə 'gəʊ/ 14  
have a go at sb /hæv ə ,gəʊ ət .../ 17  
have a narrow escape /hæv ə ,nærəʊ  
'ɪskeɪp/ 4  
have a say in sth /hæv ə 'seɪ ɪn  
,.../ 34  
have access to /hæv 'ækses ,tuː,  
tə/ 33  
have an eye for sth /hæv ən 'aɪ fə  
,.../ 25  
have control over /hæv kən'trəʊl  
,əʊvə(r)/ 76  
have no desire to do sth /hæv 'nəʊ  
dɪ'zəɪə tə ,duː .../ 32  
have sb/sth in mind /hæv ,... ɪn  
'maɪnd/ 59  
have second thoughts /hæv ,sekənd  
'θɔːts/ 2  
have your cake and eat it /hæv ,jɔː  
,keɪk ən 'ɪt ,ɪt/ 20  
have your eye on sth /hæv ,jɔːr 'aɪ  
ɒn .../ 25  
hay fever /'heɪ ,fiːvə(r)/ 13  
hazard *as in* occupational hazard 36  
haze /heɪz/ 11  
hazy /'heɪzi/ 11  
head V /hed/ 42  
head *as in* bury your head in the  
sand 50  
head *as in* off the top of my head 59  
head *as in* two heads are better than  
one 66  
head for /'hed ,fɔː(r), fə(r)/ 25  
head in the right/wrong  
direction /hed ɪn ðə ,raɪt, ,rɒŋ  
dɪ'rekʃn, dɪ-, daɪ-/ 42  
head towards /'hed tə wɔːdz/ 25  
headache *as in* splitting headache 13  
headquarters /'hed'kwɔːtəz/ 73  
healthcare /'helθkeə(r)/ 44  
healthy /'helθi/ 47  
hearing *as in* hard of hearing 80  
hearing from you *as in* I look forward  
to hearing from you 67  
heart /hɑːt/ 6  
heart *as in* not have the heart to do  
sth 15  
heart *as in* wear your heart on your  
sleeve 15  
heart *as in* sb's heart is not in sth 15  
heartbroken /'hɑːtbrəʊkən/ 15  
heartless /'hɑːtləs/ 6  
heat V /hiːt/ 42  
heated debate /hiːtɪd dɪ'beɪt/ 42  
heated discussion /hiːtɪd dɪ'skʌʃn/ 42  
hectic /'hektɪk/ 51  
hedge /hedʒ/ 24



- heel /hi:l/ 13  
 heighten /'haɪtn/ 75  
 helicopter /'helɪkɒptə(r)/ 37  
 help yourself to sth /,help jə'self tə .../ 80  
 hence /hens/ 68  
 henceforth /hens'fɔ:θ/ 68  
 herb /hɜ:b/ 20  
 hereditary /hə'redɪtri/ 71  
 heredity /hə'redɪti/ 71  
 hero /'hɪərəʊ/ 17  
 heroine /'herəʊn/ 17  
 hide /haɪd/ 7  
 high blood pressure /,haɪ 'blʌd ,preʃə(r)/ 13  
 high-pitched /,haɪ 'pɪʃt/ 10  
 high priority /,haɪ praɪ'ɒrəti/ 49  
 high profile /,haɪ 'prəʊfaɪl/ 34  
 highlight /'haɪlaɪt/ 69  
 hike (= walk in the country) N, v /haɪk/ 9  
 hike (= sudden increase) /haɪk/ 47  
 hindsight *as in* with hindsight 57  
 hint of irony /,hɪnt əv 'aɪrəni/ 1  
 hips /hɪps/ 7  
 hit back at /,hɪt 'bæk ət/ 63  
 hit the roof /,hɪt ðə 'ru:f/ 15  
 hit *as in* severely hit 49  
 hitherto /hɪðə'tu:/ 68  
 hobby /'hɒbi/ 25  
 hold *as in* get hold of 33  
 hold sb responsible for /,həʊld ,rɪ'spɒnsəbl fɔ/ 4  
 hold sb/sth up /,həʊld ,... 'ʌp/ 3  
 hold-up /'həʊld ,ʌp/ 3  
 home /həʊm/ 23  
 home *as in* broken home 18  
 honest *as in* to be honest 64, 79  
 honest *as in* to be perfectly honest 79  
 honour *as in* great honour 4  
 honour *as in* in honour of 77  
 hoot N, v /hu:t/ 10  
 hoots of derision /,hu:ts əv ðə'rɪzn/ 10  
 horn /hɔ:n/ 29  
 horrified /'hɒrɪfaɪd/ 15  
 host /həʊst/ 26  
 hostess /'həʊstes/ 26  
 hostile /'hɒstəl/ 16  
 hostile takeover /,hɒstəl 'teɪkəʊvə(r)/ 46  
 hostility /hɒ'stɪləti/ 16, 32  
 house N /haʊs/ 6  
 housing /'haʊzɪŋ/ 6  
 how dare you /,haʊ 'deə ju:/ 40  
 howl v /haʊl/ 10  
 howl in pain /,haʊl ɪn 'peɪn/ 10  
 howl with laughter /,haʊl wɪð 'lɑ:fə(r)/ 10  
 HQ (= headquarters) /,eɪtʃ 'kju:/ 73  
 huge /hju:ʤ/ 37  
 hum /hʌm/ 51  
 human remains /,hju:mən rɪ'meɪnz/ 55  
 human-trafficking /'hju:mən ,træfɪkɪŋ/ 35  
 humble /'hʌmbəl/ 17  
 humiliate /hju:'mɪliet/ 53  
 humiliated /hju:'mɪlietɪd/ 53  
 humiliated *as in* be humiliated 60  
 humiliation /hju:'mɪli'eɪʃn/ 53  
 humility /hju:'mɪləti/ 17  
 hustle and bustle /,hʌsl ən 'bʌsl/ 61  
 hypocrisy /hɪ'pɒkrəsi/ 17  
 hypocrite /'hɪpəkraɪt/ 17  
 hypocritical /hɪpə'krɪtɪkl/ 17  
 hypotheses /haɪ'pɒθəsi:z/ 71  
 hypothesis /haɪ'pɒθəsɪs/ 69, 71  
 hypothesize /haɪ'pɒθəsaɪz/ 69, 71  
 hypothetical /haɪpə'θetɪkl/ 71  
 hysterical /hɪ'sterɪkl/ 15  
 I agree /,aɪ ə'gri:/ 64  
 I am delighted to inform you that /,aɪ æm dɪ'laɪtɪd tu ɪn,fɔ:m ju: ðæt/ 67  
 I am writing in response to /,aɪ æm 'raɪtɪŋ ɪn rɪ'spɒns tə/ 67  
 I am writing to enquire whether /,aɪ æm 'raɪtɪŋ tu ɪn,kwaɪə ,wedə(r)/ 67  
 I am writing to inform you of my intention to /,aɪ æm 'raɪtɪŋ tu ɪn,fɔ:m ju: əv maɪ ɪn'tenʃn tə/ 67  
 I am writing to inform you that /,aɪ æm 'raɪtɪŋ tu ɪn,fɔ:m ju: ðæt/ 67  
 I could do with /,aɪ ,kʊd 'du: wɪð/ 59  
 I have to admit /,aɪ 'hæftu əd,mɪt/ 60  
 I haven't a clue /,aɪ ,hævnt ə 'klu:/ 59  
 I haven't the faintest idea /,aɪ ,hævnt ðə ,femtɪst aɪ'dɪə/ 59  
 I look forward to hearing from you /,aɪ 'lʊk ,fɔ:wəd tə ,hɪərɪŋ frəm ju:/ 67  
 I regret to inform you that /,aɪ rɪ'gret tu ɪn,fɔ:m ju: ðæt/ 67  
 I would be grateful if you could /,aɪ wʊd bi 'ɡreɪtfl ɪf ju: kʊd/ 67  
 I would like to draw your attention to /,aɪ wʊd 'laɪk tə ,drəʊ jɔ:r ə'tenʃn tə/ 67  
 idea *as in* I haven't / not have the faintest idea 59  
 idealist /aɪ'di:əlist/ 17  
 idealistic /aɪ'di:əlistɪk/ 17  
 identify /aɪ'dentɪfaɪ/ 75  
 idiom /'ɪdiəm/ 59  
 idol /'aɪdl/ 17  
 idolize /'aɪdəlaɪz/ 17  
 if all else fails /,ɪf ,ɔ:l ,els 'feɪlz/ 60  
 if anything happens to sb /,ɪf ,enɪθɪŋ 'hæpənz tə ,.../ 80  
 if you don't mind my/me asking /,ɪf ju: ,dʌʊnt ,maɪnd ,maɪ ,mi 'ɑ:skɪŋ/ 60  
 -ify /ɪ,fai/ 75  
 iirc (= if I remember/recall correctly) 73  
 ill /ɪl/ 74  
 ill-advised /,ɪl əd'vaɪzɪd/ 74  
 ill-informed /,ɪl ɪn'fɔ:md/ 74  
 ill-prepared /,ɪl prɪ'peəd/ 74  
 ill-treated /,ɪl 'tri:tɪd/ 74  
 illusion *as in* create an illusion 7  
 illustrate /'ɪləstreɪt/ 69  
 illustrious /ɪ'lʌstriəs/ 78  
 imagine /ɪ'mædʒɪn/ 75  
 imho (= in my humble opinion) 73  
 imitate /'ɪmɪteɪt/ 24  
 imitation /ɪ'mɪteɪʃn/ 24  
 immaculate /ɪ'mækjələt/ 33  
 immigrant /'ɪmɪgrənt/ 32  
 immigration /ɪ'mɪ'ɡreɪʃn/ 32  
 imminent /'ɪmɪnənt/ 46  
 immune system /ɪ'mju:n ,sɪstəm/ 71  
 immunity /ɪ'mju:nəti/ 71  
 impact N /'ɪmpækt/ 18  
 impeccable /ɪm'pekəbl/ 19  
 impetuous /ɪm'petʃuəs/ 14  
 implausible /ɪm'plə:zəbl/ 78  
 implement v /'ɪmplɪment/ 27  
 implementation /ɪmplɪ'men'teɪʃn/ 27  
 implication /ɪmplɪ'keɪʃn/ 8  
 imply /ɪm'plaɪ/ 8  
 impose /ɪm'pəʊz/ 27  
 imprison /ɪm'prɪzn/ 36  
 imprisonment /ɪm'prɪznmənt/ 36  
 impulse /'ɪmpʌls/ 25  
 impulse to do sth /,ɪmpʌls tə 'du: ,.../ 25  
 impulsive /ɪm'pʌlsɪv/ 14  
 in any case /,ɪn 'eni ,keɪs/ 64  
 in captivity /,ɪn kæp'tɪvəti/ 29  
 in command /,ɪn kə'mɑ:nd/ 37  
 in company /,ɪn ,kʌmpəni/ 26  
 in conclusion /,ɪn kən'klu:ʒn/ 68  
 in credit /,ɪn 'kredit/ 48  
 in crisis /,ɪn 'kraɪsɪs/ 36  
 in current use /,ɪn ,kʌrənt 'ju:s/ 1  
 in custody /,ɪn 'kʌstədi/ 35  
 in danger /,ɪn 'deɪndʒə(r)/ 29, 77  
 in decline /,ɪn dɪ'klaɪn/ 29  
 in due course /,ɪn ,dju: 'kɔ:s/ 57  
 in excess of /,ɪn ɪk'ses əv/ 13  
 in exchange for /,ɪn ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ fɔ(r)/ 77  
 in good form /,ɪn ,ɡʊd 'fɔ:m/ 23  
 in great form /,ɪn ,ɡreɪt 'fɔ:m/ 23  
 in honour of /,ɪn 'ɒnər əv/ 77  
 in memory of /,ɪn 'meməri əv/ 77  
 in mint condition /,ɪn ,mɪnt kən'dɪʃn/ 55  
 in motion /,ɪn 'məʊʃn/ 72  
 in office /,ɪn 'ɒfɪs/ 77  
 in passing /,ɪn 'pɑ:sɪŋ/ 77  
 in perfect condition /,ɪn ,pɜ:fɪkt kən'dɪʃn/ 55  
 in possession of /,ɪn pə'zɛʃn əv/ 77  
 in power /,ɪn 'paʊə(r)/ 77  
 in regard to /,ɪn rɪ'ɡɑ:d tə/ 68  
 in reply to /,ɪn rɪ'plai tə/ 67  
 in reserve /,ɪn rɪ'zɜ:v/ 37  
 in retrospect /,ɪn 'retrospekt/ 57  
 in search of /,ɪn 'sɜ:tʃ əv/ 25  
 in season /,ɪn 'si:zn/ 28  
 in sb's way /,ɪn ,... 'wei/ 56  
 in tears /,ɪn 'tiəz/ 15  
 in the centre /,ɪn ðə 'sentə(r)/ 42  
 in the firing line /,ɪn ðə 'faɪərɪŋ ,laɪn/ 39  
 in the nude /,ɪn ðə 'nju:d/ 78



in the process of doing sth /,ɪn ðə  
'prəʊses əv ,du:ɪŋ .../ 24  
in the public eye /,ɪn ðə ,pʌblɪk 'aɪ/ 41  
in the region of /,ɪn ðə 'ri:ʒən əv/ 65  
in the way /,ɪn ðə 'weɪ/ 56  
in the wild /,ɪn ðə 'waɪld/ 29  
in touch /,ɪn 'tʌʃ/ 77  
in transition /,ɪn træn'zɪʃn/ 27  
in trouble /,ɪn 'trʌbl/ 77  
in turmoil /,ɪn 'tʃu:mɔɪl/ 47  
in view of /,ɪn 'vju: əv/ 68  
inc. (= included/including) 73  
incentive /ɪn'sentɪv/ 18  
incident /'ɪnsɪdnt/ 52  
incidentally /ɪn'sɪdntli/ 64  
incl. (= inclusive) 73  
inclination /ɪn'kleɪʃn/ 50  
inclined to do sth /ɪn'klaɪnd tə 'du:  
.../ 50  
include /ɪn'klu:d/ 6  
inclusive as in fully inclusive 6  
incoherent /ɪn'kəʊ'hɪərənt/ 69  
income /'ɪnkʌm/ 48  
incomprehensible  
/ɪn'kɒmpri'hensəbl/ 78  
inconceivable /ɪn'kən'si:vəbl/ 78  
inconsiderate /ɪn'kən'sɪdərət/ 14  
incurable /ɪn'kjʊərəbl/ 30  
indescribable /ɪn'dɪ'skraɪəbl/ 6  
indicate /'ɪndɪkeɪt/ 6  
indication /ɪn'dɪ'keɪʃn/ 6  
indirectly /ɪn'dɪ'rektli, mdaɪ-/ 79  
indiscreet /ɪn'dɪ'skri:t/ 7  
indulge in /ɪn'dʌldʒ, ɪn/ 25  
industrial dispute /ɪn,dʌ'striəl  
dɪ'spju:t/ 50  
industrialize /ɪn'dʌ'striəlaɪz/ 75  
ineligible /ɪn'elɪdʒəbl/ 34  
inevitable /ɪn'evɪtəbl/ 16  
inevitably /ɪn'evɪtəbli/ 16  
inexcusable /ɪn'ɪksjʊ:zəbl/ 6  
inexplicable /ɪn'ɪksplɪkəbl/ 6  
infamous /ɪn'fəməs/ 78  
infested /ɪn'festɪd/ 40  
inflation-proof savings /ɪn'fleɪʃn  
'pru:f 'seɪvɪŋz/ 75  
information as in should you require  
any further information 67  
informed as in keep sb informed 33  
inherent /ɪn'herənt/ 70  
initial /ɪ'nɪʃl/ 16  
initially /ɪ'nɪʃli/ 16  
initiative /ɪ'nɪʃə'tɪv/ 45  
inmate /ɪn'meɪt/ 36  
innermost thoughts /ɪn'məməʊst  
'θɔ:ts/ 15  
innovative /ɪ'nəvətɪv/ 55  
inoffensive /ɪn'ɒfensɪv/ 19  
insane /ɪn'seɪm/ 70  
insanity /ɪn'sæni/ 70  
insert v /ɪn'sɜ:t/ 71  
insertion /ɪn'sɜ:ʃn/ 71  
insight into /ɪn'saɪt, ɪntu/ 45  
insipid /ɪn'sɪpɪd/ 12  
insolence /ɪn'sələns/ 19  
insolent /ɪn'sələnt/ 19  
insoluble /ɪn'sɒljəbl/ 54

inspection /ɪn'spekʃn/ 71  
inspector /ɪn'spektə(r)/ 35  
inspiration /ɪn'spə'reɪʃn/ 17  
inspirational /ɪn'spə'reɪʃnəl/ 17  
inspire /ɪn'spaɪə(r)/ 17  
install /ɪn'stɔ:l/ 31  
instant as in take an instant dislike  
to 16  
instinct /ɪn'stɪŋkt/ 15  
instinctive /ɪn'stɪŋktɪv/ 15  
insult v /ɪn'sʌlt/ 1  
insulting /ɪn'sʌltɪŋ/ 1  
insurmountable /ɪnsə'maʊntəbl/ 54  
integrate /ɪn'tɪgreɪt/ 32  
integration /ɪn'tɪ'greɪʃn/ 32  
integrity /ɪn'tegreɪti/ 14  
intelligible /ɪn'telɪdʒəbl/ 78  
intense /ɪn'tens/ 75  
intensify /ɪn'tensɪfaɪ/ 75  
intent on/upon /ɪn'tent, ɒn, ə, pɒn/ 76  
intention /ɪn'tenʃn/ 67  
inter- /ɪntə/ 74  
interact /ɪntər'ækt/ 74  
interaction /ɪntər'ækʃn/ 74  
interchangeable /ɪntə'tʃeɪndʒəbl/ 1  
interdependent /ɪntədɪ'pendənt/ 74  
interest-free /ɪn'trə'st 'fri:/ 75  
interfere /ɪntə'fɪə(r)/ 50  
interference /ɪntə'fɪərəns/ 50  
interior N, ADJ /ɪn'tɪəriə(r)/ 37  
interminable /ɪn'tə'mɪnəbl/ 49  
internal /ɪn'tɜ:nəl/ 37  
internet café /ɪntənət, 'kæfeɪ/ 31  
interpret /ɪn'tɜ:prɪt/ 1  
interpretation /ɪntɜ:prɪ'teɪʃn/ 1  
interrelated /ɪntər'reɪlɪd/ 74  
interrogate /ɪn'terə'geɪt/ 53  
interrogation /ɪntərə'geɪʃn/ 53  
interrupt /ɪntə'rʌpt/ 63  
interval /ɪn'təvl/ 57  
intervene in sth /ɪntə'vi:n ɪn .../ 50  
intervention /ɪntə'venʃn/ 50  
into /ɪntu:, ɪntə/ 58  
intrinsic /ɪn'trɪnzɪk/ 70  
intrude into sth /ɪn'tru:d, ɪntə, .../ 41  
intrusion /ɪn'tru:ʒn/ 41  
inundated /ɪn'ʌndeɪtɪd/ 49  
invade /ɪn'veɪd/ 30  
invaluable /ɪn'væljuəbl/ 78  
invariably /ɪn'veəriəbl/ 79  
invasion /ɪn'veɪʒn/ 30  
invasive /ɪn'veɪsɪv/ 30  
invest /ɪn'vest/ 47  
investigation as in under  
investigation 77  
investor /ɪn'vestə(r)/ 47  
invisible /ɪn'vɪzəbl/ 11  
involvement /ɪn'vɒlvmənt/ 76  
IQ /ɪ, ɪ 'kju:/ 73  
ironic /aɪ'rɒnɪk/ 1  
irony /aɪ'rəni/ 1  
irreversible /ɪr'revɜ:səbl/ 27  
irritated /ɪ'rɪteɪd/ 11  
irritation /ɪ'rɪ'teɪʃn/ 11  
isolated /aɪ'səleɪtɪd/ 21  
issue a warrant /ɪʃu: ə 'wɒrənt/ 35  
it's about time /ɪts ə baʊt 'taɪm/ 57

it's been one of those days /ɪts bɪn  
'wʌn əv ,ðəʊz 'deɪz/ 59  
it's high time /ɪts 'haɪ, 'taɪm/ 57  
it's more trouble than it's worth /ɪts  
'mɔ: ,trʌbl ðən ɪts 'wɜ:θ/ 60  
it's no good + ing /ɪts, nəʊ 'ɡʊd/ 59  
it's no use + ing /ɪts, nəʊ 'ju:s/ 59  
it's none of your business /ɪts, nʌn əv  
'jɔ: 'bɪznɪs/ 73  
it's not sb's day /ɪts nɒt, ... 'deɪ/ 59  
it's true /ɪts 'tru:/ 64  
itch /ɪtʃ/ 13  
itchy /'ɪtʃi/ 13  
itemize /aɪ'təmaɪz/ 75  
-ize 75

jam N, v /dʒæm/ 51  
jargon /'dʒɑ:gən/ 31  
jaw /dʒɔ:/ 12  
join in /dʒɔɪn ɪn/ 26  
joint /dʒɔɪnt/ 46  
jointly /'dʒɔɪntli/ 46  
jot sth down /dʒɒt, ... 'daʊn/ 49  
jubilant /'dʒu:bɪlənt/ 15  
judge as in don't judge a book by its  
cover 14  
juggle /'dʒʌɡl/ 45  
jump to conclusions /dʒʌmp tə  
kən'klu:ʒnz/ 8  
junior /'dʒu:nɪə(r)/ 33  
justifiable /'dʒʌstɪfəbəl/ 36  
justification /dʒʌstɪfɪ'keɪʃn/ 36, 69  
justify /'dʒʌstɪfaɪ/ 36, 69

keep /ki:p/ 2  
keep control of /ki:p kən'trɒl əv/ 76  
keep sb going /ki:p, ... 'ɡəʊɪŋ/ 2  
keep sb informed /ki:p, ...  
ɪn'fɔ:md/ 33  
keep sth in perspective /ki:p, ... ɪn  
pə'spektɪv/ 54  
keep still /ki:p 'stɪl/ 11  
keep track of /ki:p 'træk əv/ 48  
keep your feet on the ground /ki:p  
jɔ: 'fi:t, ɒn ðə 'ɡraʊnd/ 60  
keep yourself occupied /ki:p jɔ:,self  
'ɒkju:paɪd/ 6  
key as in the key to 7  
keyhole surgery /ki:həʊl 'sɜ:sʒəri/ 33  
kick up a fuss /kɪk, ʌp ə 'fas/ 18  
kidnap /'kɪdnæp/ 38  
kidnapper /'kɪdnæpə(r)/ 38  
kidnapping /'kɪdnæpɪŋ/ 38  
kind of /kaɪnd əv/ 65  
kip /kɪp/ 58  
kitchen scales /kɪtʃɪn 'skeɪlz/ 20  
knock-on effect /nɒ'kɒn ɪ'fekt/ 52  
knock sb out of sth /nɒk, ... 'aʊt əv  
.../ 23  
knockout /'nɒkaʊt/ 23

labour-saving /'leɪbə, 'seɪvɪŋ/ 28  
ladle v /leɪdl/ 20  
laid-back /leɪd 'bæk/ 58  
landfill /'lændfɪl/ 28  
landfill site /'lændfɪl, saɪt/ 28  
lapse /læps/ 39



last chance /lə'st 'tʃɑːns/ 23  
 last minute *as in* leave sth to/till the last minute 57  
 last-minute /lə'st 'mɪnɪt/ 3  
 last resort /lə'st rɪ'zɔːt/ 60  
 last thing *as in* be the last thing on sb's mind 2  
 late *as in* better late than never 66  
 later (= later) 73  
 latter *N* /'lætə(r)/ 37  
 laugh *N* /lɑːf/ 58  
 law and order /lə'r ɔn 'ɔːdə(r)/ 61  
 lawnmower /'lɔːnməʊə(r)/ 24  
 lay down rules /leɪ daʊn 'ruːlz/ 18  
 lay out /leɪ 'aʊt/ 3  
 lay siege to /leɪ 'siːdʒ tə/ 43  
 lay sth on /leɪ ... 'ɒn/ 26  
 lay the foundations /leɪ ðə faʊn'deɪʃnz/ 42  
 laze around /leɪz ə'raʊnd/ 21  
 lead the charge /liːd ðe 'tʃɑːdʒ/ 9  
 leaf /liːf/ 24  
 leaf *as in* turn over a new leaf 36  
 leaflet /'liːflət/ 13  
 league /liːg/ 23  
 leak *N* /liːk/ 39  
 leak sth to sb /'liːk ... tə .../ 39  
 lean towards /'liːn tə'wɔːdz/ 8  
 leap to conclusions /liːp tə kən'kluːʒnz/ 8  
 lease *N* /liːs/ 67  
 least *as in* at the very least 77  
 leave *as in* maternity/paternity leave 44  
 leave sth to sb /liːv ... tə .../ 2  
 leave sth to/till the last minute /liːv ... tə, tɪl ðə 'lɑːst 'mɪnɪt/ 57  
 leave sth with sb /liːv ... wɪð .../ 2  
 left-wing /left 'wɪŋ/ 42  
 legal battle /'liːgl bætl/ 39  
 legalize /'liːgəlaɪz/ 75  
 leisure pursuits /'leɪzə pə'sjuːts/ 25  
 lemon squeezer /'lemən 'skwiːzə(r)/ 20  
 lemony /'leməni/ 12  
 lengthen /'leŋθən/ 7  
 lentils /'lentɪlz/ 20  
 let-down /let daʊn/ 3  
 let sb down /let ... 'daʊn/ 3, 23, 56  
 let sb go /let ... 'gəʊ/ 80  
 let sleeping dogs lie /let 'sliːpɪŋ dɒgz 'laɪ/ 66  
 let your hair down /let jɔː 'heə daʊn/ 60  
 lethal weapon /liːθəl 'wepən/ 37  
 lethargic /lə'θɑːdʒɪk/ 13  
 lethargy /'leθədʒi/ 13  
 level playing field /levl 'pleɪŋ 'fiːld/ 39  
 level with /'levl wɪð/ 53  
 Liberal /'lɪbərəl/ 42  
 liberalism /'lɪbərəlɪzəm/ 42  
 life expectancy /laɪf ɪk'spektənsi/ 3  
 life-threatening /laɪf θ'retnɪŋ/ 18  
 light a fire /laɪt ə 'faɪə(r)/ 4  
 lightly /'laɪtli/ 12

lightning never strikes twice /laɪtnɪŋ nevə 'straɪks 'twɑːs/ 66  
 lightning never strikes twice in the same place /laɪtnɪŋ nevə 'straɪks 'twɑːs ɪn ðə 'seɪm 'pleɪs/ 66  
 like chalk and cheese /laɪk tʃɔːk ən 'tʃiːz/ 20  
 like new /laɪk 'njuː/ 55  
 likelihood /'laɪklɪhʊd/ 29  
 likely story /'laɪkli stɔːri/ 59  
 limit *as in* set a limit 50  
 limp *N, V* /lɪmp/ 9  
 link /lɪŋk/ 31  
 literal /'lɪtərəl/ 1  
 literary /'lɪtərəri/ 1  
 live and let live /lɪv ən 'let 'lɪv/ 66  
 live at peace with /lɪv ət 'piːs wɪð/ 32  
 live in a world of your own /lɪv ɪn ə 'wɜːld ɔv jɔːr 'əʊn/ 60  
 live with /lɪv wɪð/ 76  
 liven sth up /laɪvn ... 'ʌp/ 26  
 liven up /laɪvn 'ʌp/ 26  
 load *N* /ləʊd/ 72  
 loads of /'ləʊdz ɔv/ 65  
 lock sb up /lɒk ... 'ʌp/ 36  
 locked in battle /lɒkt ɪn 'bætl/ 39  
 lodged in sth /'lɒdʒd ɪn .../ 40  
 log /lɒg/ 62  
 log in/out /lɒg 'ɪn, 'aʊt/ 31  
 log on/off /lɒg 'ɒn, 'ɒf/ 31  
 logic /'lɒdʒɪk/ 79  
 logical /'lɒdʒɪkl/ 79  
 logically /'lɒdʒɪkli/ 79  
 lol (= laughing out loud) 73  
 lol (= lots of love) 73  
 loner /'ləʊnə(r)/ 26  
 long and hard /lɒŋ ən 'hɑːd/ 61  
 long-lived /lɒŋ 'lɪvd/ 71  
 long-sighted /lɒŋ 'saɪtɪd/ 11  
 long-term /lɒŋ 'tɜːm/ 13  
 long weekend /lɒŋ wɪk'end/ 3  
 loo /luː/ 58  
 look down on sb /lʊk 'daʊn ɒn .../ 17  
 look forward *as in* I look forward to hearing from you 67  
 look out for /lʊk 'aʊt fɔː(r), fɔː(r)/ 8  
 look up /lʊk 'ʌp/ 16  
 look up to sb /lʊk 'ʌp tə .../ 17  
 looking back /lʊkɪŋ 'bæk/ 57  
 loosen /'luːsn/ 7  
 loosen up /luːsn 'ʌp/ 9  
 lose control of /luːz kən'trəʊl ɔv/ 76  
 lose face /luːz 'feɪs/ 60  
 lose track of /luːz 'træk ɔv/ 48  
 lose your appetite /luːz jɔː 'æpətaɪt/ 12  
 lose your temper /luːz jɔː 'tempə(r)/ 15  
 loss /lɒs/ 47  
 lousy /'ləʊzi/ 58  
 love (= darling) /lʌv/ 58  
 love is blind /lʌv ɪz 'blaɪnd/ 66  
 low blood pressure /ləʊ 'blʌd 'preʃə(r)/ 13  
 low-pitched /ləʊ 'pɪtʃt/ 10  
 low priority /ləʊ praɪ'ɒrəti/ 49

lower class /ləʊə 'klɑːs/ 19  
 luck *as in* no such luck 59  
 luck *as in* stroke of luck 56  
 lucrative /'luːkrətɪv/ 45  
 lunch break /'lʌntʃ breɪk/ 57  
 lure *V* /luə(r), ljuə(r)/ 46  
 lying down *as in* not take sth lying down 46  
 mad *as in* go mad 15  
 magistrate /'mædʒɪstreɪt/ 35  
 magnet /'mæɡnət/ 75  
 magnetic /mæɡ'netɪk/ 75  
 main concern /mem kən'sɜːn/ 4  
 maintain the status quo /meɪn'teɪn ðə 'steɪtəs 'kwəʊ/ 42  
 major /'meɪdʒə(r)/ 54  
 major change /meɪdʒə 'tʃeɪndʒ/ 27  
 make *as in* What do you make of ...? 14  
 make a bid for /meɪk ə 'bɪd fɔː(r), fɔː(r)/ 46  
 make a comeback /meɪk ə 'kʌmbæk/ 56  
 make a commitment /meɪk ə kə'mɪtmənt/ 6  
 make a confession /meɪk ə kən'feɪʃn/ 6  
 make a dash /meɪk ə 'dæʃ/ 9  
 make a difference /meɪk ə 'dɪfrəns/ 52  
 make a distinction /meɪk ə dɪ'stɪŋkʃn/ 37  
 make a fuss about /meɪk ə 'fʌs əbaʊt/ 18  
 make a go of sth /meɪk ə 'gəʊ ɔv .../ 56  
 make a meal of sth /meɪk ə 'miːl ɔv .../ 20  
 make a mess /meɪk ə 'mes/ 18  
 make a rapid recovery /meɪk ə 'ræpɪd rɪ'kʌvəri/ 40  
 make a sacrifice /meɪk ə 'sækrɪfaɪs/ 16  
 make a speedy recovery /meɪk ə spiːdi rɪ'kʌvəri/ 40  
 make cutbacks /meɪk 'kʌtbæks/ 48  
 make fun of /meɪk 'fʌn ɔv/ 1  
 make generalizations about /meɪk dʒenərəlaɪ'zeɪʃnz əbaʊt/ 8  
 make it /meɪk ɪt/ 56  
 make it clear /meɪk ɪt 'kliə(r)/ 4  
 make it sth /meɪk ɪt .../ 2  
 make it up with /meɪk ɪt 'ʌp wɪð/ 63  
 make light of /meɪk 'laɪt ɔv/ 54  
 make out (= claim) /meɪk 'aʊt/ 63  
 make sb feel welcome /meɪk ... 'fiːl 'welkəm/ 26  
 make sb/sth out (= see/hear with difficulty) /meɪk ... 'aʊt/ 11  
 make that sth /meɪk ðæt .../ 2  
 make things difficult /meɪk θɪŋz 'dɪfɪkəlt/ 16  
 make up (= comprise) /meɪk 'ʌp/ 37  
 make up for /meɪk 'ʌp fɔː(r)/ 63  
 make your mouth water /meɪk jɔː 'maʊθ wɔːtə(r)/ 12



- malice /'mæls/ 17  
 malicious /mə'liʃəs/ 17  
 malnourished /mə'l'naʊrɪʃt/ 74  
 manifesto /mə'nɪ'festəʊ/ 34  
 manners /'mænəz/ 19  
 march *N, v* /mɑ:ʃ/ 9  
 massage *N, v* /'mæsə:dʒ/ 12  
 maternity leave /mə'tɜ:nə'ti ,li:v/ 44  
 maternity unit /mə'tɜ:nə'ti ju:nɪt/ 71  
 matter *as in* as a matter of fact 64  
 maximize /'mæksɪmaɪz/ 28  
 mayor /'meɪə(r)/ 34  
 mayoress /'meɪə'res/ 34  
 meadow /'medəʊ/ 24  
 meal *as in* make a meal of sth 20  
 means /mi:nz/ 42  
 means *as in* by means of 77  
 means *as in* the end justifies the means 66  
 measure /'meʒə(r)/ 39  
 medicine *as in* complementary medicine 33  
 medieval /medi'i:v/ 55  
 mediocre /mi'di'əʊkə(r)/ 22  
 meet the needs of /,mi:t ðə 'ni:dz əv/ 72  
 memory *as in* in memory of 79  
 mentally /'mentəli/ 79  
 merciful /'mɜ:sɪfl/ 70  
 merciless /'mɜ:sɪləs/ 70  
 mercy /'mɜ:si/ 70  
 merely /'mɪəli/ 37  
 merger /'mɜ:ʒə(r)/ 46  
 merit *as in* on merit 77  
 mess /mes/ 18  
 messy /'mesi/ 18  
 metaphor /'metəfə(r)/ 39  
 meticulous /mə'tɪkjələs/ 33  
 microscope /'maɪkrəskəʊp/ 42  
 Middle Ages /,mɪdl 'eɪdʒz/ 55  
 middle class /,mɪdl 'klɑ:s/ 19  
 migrant *as in* economic migrant 32  
 migration /maɪ'greɪʃn/ 32  
 military *ADJ* /'mɪlətri/ 37  
 military operation /,mɪlətri ɒpə'reɪʃn/ 37  
 military service /,mɪlətri 'sɜ:vɪs/ 37  
 mind *as in* be the last thing on sb's mind 2  
 mind *as in* bear sth in mind 8  
 mind *as in* bored out of your mind 22  
 mind *as in* have sb/sth in mind 59  
 mind *as in* my mind goes a complete blank 59  
 mind *as in* set sb's mind at rest 54  
 mind like a sieve /,maɪnd ,laɪk ə 'sɪv/ 62  
 mind you /,maɪnd 'ju:/ 64  
 mind your own business /,maɪnd jə:ɔ 'bɪznəs/ 73  
 minds *as in* be in two minds about 2  
 minimize /'mɪnɪmaɪz/ 28  
 minister /'mɪnɪstə(r)/ 38  
 minor /'maɪnə(r)/ 54  
 minority *as in* ethnic minority 32  
 minute *as in* at the last minute 57  
 mint *as in* in mint condition 55  
 minute *as in* the minute 25  
 mis- /mɪs/ 74  
 miscalculate /,mɪs'kælkjəleɪt/ 74  
 miscast /mɪs'kɑ:st/ 22  
 misconceived /mɪskən'si:v/ 74  
 misconception /mɪskən'sepʃn/ 74  
 misdiagnose /mɪs'daɪəgnəʊz/ 74  
 misfire /mɪs'faɪə(r)/ 74  
 mishandle /mɪs'hændl/ 74  
 misinform /mɪsɪn'fɔ:m/ 74  
 misinterpret /mɪsɪn'tɜ:pɪt/ 8  
 misinterpretation /mɪsɪn'tɜ:pɪ'teɪʃn/ 8  
 misjudge /mɪs'ʒʌdʒ/ 74  
 mislay /mɪs'leɪ/ 74  
 mislead /mɪs'li:d/ 14  
 misleading /mɪs'li:dɪŋ/ 14  
 mismanage /mɪs'mænɪdʒ/ 74  
 misplace /mɪs'pleɪs/ 74  
 misprint *N* /mɪsprɪnt/ 74  
 miss out on /,mɪs 'aʊt ɒn/ 63  
 missile /'mɪsaɪl/ 37  
 mistake *N, v* /mɪ'steɪk/ 6  
 mistreat /mɪs'tri:t/ 74  
 mix *v* /mɪks/ 20  
 mix-up /'mɪks ,ʌp/ 33  
 moan *v* /məʊn/ 58  
 moaning /'məʊnɪŋ/ 58  
 mobilize /'məʊbəlaɪz/ 37  
 mock /mɒk/ 1  
 model *as in* role model 18  
 moderate *ADJ* /'mɒdərət/ 42  
 modernize /'mɒdənaɪz/ 75  
 moist /moɪst/ 11  
 molecular /mə'lekjələ(r)/ 71  
 molecule /'mɒlekju:l/ 71  
 moment *as in* at a moment's notice 77  
 moment *as in* the moment 25  
 money talks /,mʌni 'tɔ:ks/ 66  
 morale /mə'ra:l/ 45  
 more *as in* the more the merrier 66  
 mortality rate /mə'tælə'ti ,reɪt/ 30  
 motion /'məʊʃn/ 72  
 motive /'məʊtɪv/ 52  
 motive *as in* ulterior motive 2  
 motto /'mɒtəʊ/ 66  
 mount *v* /maʊnt/ 46  
 mount up /,maʊnt 'ʌp/ 48  
 mouse /maʊs/ 62  
 mouth ulcer /'maʊθ ,ʌlsə(r)/ 13  
 mouth-watering /'maʊθ ,wɔ:tərɪŋ/ 12  
 move the goalposts /,mu:v ðə 'gəʊlpəʊsts/ 39  
 mow the lawn /,məʊ ðə 'lɔ:n/ 24  
 msg (= message) 73  
 mud /mʌd/ 24  
 muddle /'mʌdl/ 33  
 muddy /'mʌdi/ 24  
 muscle /'mʌsl/ 13  
 musty /'mʌsti/ 12  
 mutate /'mju:'teɪt/ 71  
 mutation /'mju:'teɪʃn/ 71  
 mutual /'mju:tʃʊəl/ 45  
 mutual *as in* by mutual consent 36  
 my mind goes a complete blank /,maɪ ,maɪnd ,gəʊz ə kəm,pli:t 'blæŋk/ 59  
 my mind goes blank /,maɪ ,maɪnd ,gəʊz 'blæŋk/ 59  
 myob (= mind your own business) 73  
 n (= and) 73  
 n (= in) 73  
 nag /næg/ 18  
 nail-biting /'neɪl ,baɪtɪŋ/ 22  
 nail polish /'neɪl ,pɒlɪʃ/ 3  
 naive /naɪ'v/ 14  
 naivety /naɪ'vɪtɪ/ 14  
 naked /'neɪkɪd/ 78  
 namely /'neɪmli/ 53  
 narrative /'nærətɪv/ 69  
 narrator /nə'reɪtə(r)/ 69  
 narrow escape /,nærəʊ 'ɪskeɪp/ 4  
 narrow-minded /,nærəʊ 'maɪndɪd/ 3  
 nasty /'nɑ:sti/ 13  
 nationalization /næ'ʃnəlaɪ'zeɪʃn/ 50  
 nationalize /'næ'ʃnəlaɪz/ 75  
 nationwide /neɪ'ʃnwaɪd/ 34  
 native /'neɪtɪv/ 32  
 natural habitat /,nætʃrəl 'hæbɪtæt/ 29  
 naturally /'nætʃrəli/ 79  
 nature /'neɪtʃə(r)/ 18, 24  
 nature reserve /'neɪtʃə rɪ,zɜ:v/ 29  
 nauseating /'nɔ:ziətɪŋ/ 12  
 navy /'neɪvɪ/ 37  
 NB /,en 'bi:/ 73  
 needless to say /'ni:dləs tə ,seɪ/ 53  
 needs *as in* meet the needs of 72  
 neglect *N, v* /nɪ'glekt/ 51  
 neglect to do sth /nɪ'glekt tə ,du: .../ 51  
 negligence /'neglɪdʒəns/ 33  
 negligent /'neglɪdʒənt/ 33, 78  
 negligible /'neglɪdʒəbl/ 78  
 nerve /nɜ:v/ 58  
 nest *N, v* /nest/ 24  
 network *N* /'netwɜ:k/ 34  
 neutral /'nju:trəl/ 23  
 never-ending /,nevə 'endɪŋ/ 3, 49  
 nevertheless /nevəðə'les/ 64  
 new *as in* like new 55  
 new era /,nju: 'ɪərə/ 57  
 newlyweds /'nju:lrwedz/ 41  
 news *as in* no news is good news 66  
 next of kin /,nekst əv 'kɪn/ 3  
 nick sth /'nɪk .../ 58  
 no chance /'nəʊ ,tʃɑ:ns/ 59  
 no doubt /'nəʊ ,daʊt/ 26  
 no matter what /,nəʊ ,mætə 'wɒt/ 49  
 no matter when /,nəʊ ,mætə 'wen/ 49  
 no news is good news /,nəʊ ,nju:z ɪz 'gʊd ,nju:z/ 66  
 no reason /'nəʊ ,ri:zn/ 52  
 no regard for /'nəʊ rɪ,gɑ:d fɔ(r)/ 76  
 no such luck /,nəʊ ,sʌtʃ 'lʌk/ 59  
 no way /,nəʊ 'weɪ/ 59  
 no wonder /,nəʊ 'wʌndə(r)/ 60  
 noise /nɔɪz/ 4  
 none *as in* second to none 33  
 nose *as in* get up sb's nose 14  
 nose *as in* poke/stick your nose in sth 51



- nosey /'naʊzi/ 58  
 nostalgia /nə'stælɔdʒə/ 32  
 nostalgic /nə'stælɔdʒɪk/ 32  
 nosy /'naʊzi/ 58  
 not entirely happy /,nɒt ɪn,tə'riəlɪ  
 'hæpi/ 4  
 not entirely satisfied /,nɒt ɪn,tə'riəlɪ  
 'sætɪsfaid/ 4  
 not entirely sure /,nɒt ɪn,tə'riəlɪ  
 'ʃʊə(r)/ 4  
 not exactly bright /,nɒt ɪg,zæktli  
 'braɪt/ 80  
 not have the faintest idea /,nɒt ,hæv  
 ðə ,feɪntɪst aɪ'diə/ 59  
 not have the heart to do sth /,nɒt  
 ,hæv ðə 'hɑ:t tə ,du: ,.../ 15  
 not necessarily /,nɒt nesə'serəlɪ/ 8  
 not put a foot wrong /,nɒt ,pʊt ə ,fʊt  
 'rɒŋ/ 56  
 not take sth lying down /,nɒt ,teɪk ,...  
 ,laɪŋ ,daʊn/ 46  
 nothing is too much trouble /,nʌθɪŋ  
 ɪz ,tu: ,mʌʃ 'trʌbl/ 33  
 notice v /'nəʊtɪs/ 6  
 notice as in at short notice 77  
 notice as in take notice of 33  
 noticeable /'nəʊtɪsəbl/ 6  
 notorious /nəʊ'tɔ:riəs/ 78  
 notwithstanding /,nɒtwɪð'stændɪŋ/ 68  
 now and again /,naʊ ən ə'gen/ 57  
 nowhere as in get nowhere 59  
 nuclear capability /,nju:kliə  
 ,keɪpə'bɪləti/ 37  
 nuclear reactor /,nju:kliə  
 ,ri'æktə(r)/ 37  
 nuclear weapon /,nju:kliə 'wepən/ 37  
 nude /nju:d/ 78  
 nursery rhyme /'nɜ:səri ,raɪm/ 3  
 nurture N, v /'nɜ:ʃə(r)/ 18  
 nut /nʌt/ 20  
 nutcase /'nʌtkeɪs/ 20  
 nutty /'nʌti/ 12  
 objective /əb'dʒektɪv/ 71  
 objectivity /əb'dʒek'tɪvəti/ 71  
 observant /əb'zə:vənt/ 8  
 observation /əb'zə'veɪʃn/ 8  
 observe /əb'zɜ:v/ 8  
 obstacle /'ɒbstəkl/ 56  
 obstinacy /'ɒbstɪnəsi/ 8  
 obstinate /'ɒbstɪnət/ 8  
 obvious /'ɒbvɪəs/ 27  
 obviously /'ɒbvɪəsli/ 79  
 occupant /'ɒkjʊpənt/ 72  
 occupational hazard /'ɒkjʊ,petʃənl  
 'hæzəd/ 36  
 occupied /'ɒkjʊpaɪd/ 6  
 occupy /'ɒkjʊpaɪ/ 6  
 occur /ə'kɜ:(r)/ 54  
 ocean as in drop in the ocean 39  
 -odd /ɒd/ 65  
 oddly enough /,ɒdli t'naʃ/ 79  
 odds as in against all (the) odds 40  
 odour /'əʊdə(r)/ 12  
 off course /əv 'kɔ:s/ 79  
 off as in be off 25  
 off as in go off 12  
 off form /,ɒf 'fɔ:m/ 23  
 off-putting /,ɒf 'pʊtɪŋ/ 3  
 off the beaten track /,ɒf ðə ,bi:tn  
 'træk/ 21  
 off the top of my head /,ɒf ðə ,tɒp əv  
 ,maɪ 'hed/ 59  
 offence as in take offence 4, 19  
 offensive /ə'fensɪv/ 19  
 office as in in office 77  
 officially /ə'fɪʃəli/ 79  
 old-fashioned /,əʊld 'fæʃnd/ 1  
 on and on as in go on and on 18  
 on at as in go on at 63  
 on balance /,ɒn 'bæləns/ 77  
 on behalf of sb /,ɒn br'ha:f əv ,.../ 34  
 on fire /,ɒn 'faɪə(r)/ 4  
 on hold /,ɒn 'həʊld/ 77  
 on merit /,ɒn 'merɪt/ 77  
 on principle /,ɒn 'prɪnsəpl/ 17  
 on reflection /,ɒn rɪ'fleksjən/ 77  
 on sb's behalf /,ɒn ,... br'ha:f/ 34  
 on standby /,ɒn 'stændbaɪ/ 28  
 on the brink of /,ɒn ðə 'brɪŋk əv/ 38  
 on the cards /,ɒn ðə 'kɑ:dz/ 46  
 on the contrary /,ɒn ðə 'kɒntrəri/ 77  
 on the edge of your seat /,ɒn ðɪ ,edʒ  
 əv ,jɔ: 'si:t/ 22  
 on the left /,ɒn ðə 'left/ 42  
 on the right /,ɒn ðə 'raɪt/ 42  
 on the rocks /,ɒn ðə 'rɒks/ 41  
 on the surface /,ɒn ðə 'sɜ:fɪs/ 14  
 on the verge of sth /,ɒn ðə 'vɜ:dʒ əv  
 ,.../ 23, 24  
 on the whole /,ɒn ðə 'həʊl/ 64  
 once as in at once 77  
 once bitten, twice shy /,wʌns ,bɪtn  
 ,twais 'ʃaɪ/ 66  
 one thing leads to another /,wʌn ,θɪŋ  
 ,li:dz tu ə'nʌðə(r)/ 52  
 one time as in at one time 57  
 ongoing /,ɒn'gəʊɪŋ/ 27  
 only just /'əʊnli ,dʒʌst/ 11  
 opaque /ə'peɪk/ 1  
 open-minded /,əʊpən 'maɪndɪd/ 3  
 operation /ɒpə'reɪʃn/ 37  
 opinion as in in second opinion 33  
 opinion poll /ə'pɪnjən ,pəʊl/ 39  
 opposed to /ə'pəʊzd tə/ 42  
 opposition /ɒpə'zɪʃn/ 42  
 or so /,ɔ: 'səʊ/ 65  
 or something /,ɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ/ 65  
 or something along those lines /,ɔ:  
 'sʌmθɪŋ ə,lɒŋ ,ðəʊz ,laɪnz/ 65  
 or something like that /,ɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ  
 ,laɪk ,ðæt/ 65  
 or something of that sort /,ɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ  
 əv ,ðæt ,sɔ:t/ 65  
 or something on those lines /,ɔ:  
 'sʌmθɪŋ ,ɒn ,ðəʊz ,laɪnz/ 65  
 or thereabouts /,ɔ: 'ðeərəbaʊts/ 65  
 ordeal /ɔ:'di:l/ 38  
 organ /'ɔ:gən/ 30  
 organized crime /,ɔ:gənaɪzd  
 'kraɪm/ 35  
 origin /'ɒrɪdʒɪn/ 6  
 originate /ə'rɪdʒɪneɪt/ 6  
 oust /aʊst/ 38  
 out- /aʊt/ 25  
 out of date /,aʊt əv 'deɪt/ 55  
 out of hand /,aʊt əv 'hænd/ 49  
 out of hours /,aʊt əv 'aʊəz/ 33  
 out of luck /,aʊt əv 'lʌk/ 77  
 out of respect /,aʊt əv rɪ'spekt/ 77  
 out of season /,aʊt əv 'si:zn/ 28  
 out of sight /,aʊt əv 'saɪt/ 77  
 out of sight, out of mind /,aʊt əv  
 ,saɪt ,aʊt əv 'maɪnd/ 66  
 out of touch /,aʊt əv 'tʌʃ/ 77  
 out of your depth /,aʊt əv ,jɔ:  
 'depθ/ 56  
 outbreak /'aʊtbreɪk/ 3  
 outcome /'aʊtkʌm/ 52  
 outcome as in final outcome 52  
 outdoor pursuits /,aʊtdə: pə'sju:ts/ 25  
 outgoings /'aʊtgəʊɪŋz/ 48  
 outlay /'aʊtlaɪ/ 3  
 outline N, v /'aʊtlaɪn/ 69  
 outlive /'aʊt'lɪv/ 25  
 outlook /'aʊtlʊk/ 47  
 outnumber /'aʊtnʌmbə(r)/ 25  
 outside chance /,aʊtsaɪd 'tʃɑ:ns/ 23  
 outspend /'aʊt'spend/ 25  
 outstanding /'aʊt'stændɪŋ/ 78  
 outweigh /'aʊt'weɪ/ 25  
 ovenproof /'ʌvnpɹu:f/ 75  
 over- 74  
 over the moon /,əʊvə ðə 'mu:n/ 15  
 over time /,əʊvə 'taɪm/ 57  
 overbook /əʊvə'bʊk/ 74  
 overcome /əʊvə'kʌm/ 54, 56  
 overdose /'əʊvədəʊs/ 74  
 overdraft /'əʊvədɹɑ:ft/ 48  
 overdrawn as in be overdrawn 48  
 overemphasize /əʊvə'cmfəsaɪz/ 74  
 overload v /əʊvə'ləʊd/ 74  
 overrated /əʊvə'reɪtɪd/ 74  
 overreact /əʊvə'reɪkt/ 52  
 overwhelm /əʊvə'welɪm/ 43  
 overwhelmed /əʊvə'welmd/ 49  
 owe sb a favour /,əʊ ,... ə 'fɜ:və(r)/ 5  
 owl /aʊl/ 10  
 own company /,əʊn 'kʌmpəni/ 26  
 own up /,əʊn 'ʌp/ 63  
 ox /ɒks/ 62  
 pacify /'pæsɪfaɪ/ 75  
 package /'pækɪdʒ/ 44  
 packaging /'pækɪdʒɪŋ/ 55  
 pain /peɪn/ 58  
 pain in the neck /,peɪn ɪn ðə 'nek/ 58  
 panel /'pænl/ 72  
 panic-stricken /'pænɪk ,strɪkən/ 3  
 papaya /pə'paɪə/ 20  
 paper as in wrapping paper 1  
 paper clip /'peɪpə ,klɪp/ 3  
 paper jam /'peɪpə ,dʒæm/ 51  
 parachute /'pærəʃu:t/ 37  
 partially sighted /,pɑ:ʃəli 'saɪtɪd/ 11  
 party as in centre party 42  
 pass /pɑ:s/ 57  
 pass away /,pɑ:s ə'weɪ/ 80  
 pass on /,pɑ:s 'ɒn/ 80  
 pass the buck /,pɑ:s ðə 'bʌk/ 50  
 passer-by /,pɑ:sə 'baɪ/ 3



- passing *as in* in passing 77  
 passion /'pæʃn/ 14  
 passion fruit /'pæʃn fru:t/ 20  
 passionate /'pæʃənət/ 14  
 password /'pɑ:swɜ:d/ 31  
 past *as in* be past it 56  
 pastime /'pɑ:staim/ 25  
 pat v /pæt/ 12  
 paternity leave /pɑ:'tɜ:nəti ,li:v/ 44  
 paunch /pɔ:ntʃ/ 7  
 pay attention /,pei ə'tenʃn/ 7  
 pay dispute /'pei dɪ,spju:t/ 50  
 pay sb a compliment /,pei ,... ə  
 'kɒmplɪmənt/ 16  
 PC (= police constable) /,pi: 'si:/ 35  
 PC (= politically correct) /,pi: 'si:/ 73  
 peacekeeping /'pi:ski:pɪŋ/ 37  
 peacekeeping force /'pi:ski:pɪŋ  
 ,fɔ:s/ 37  
 pear-shaped *as in* go pear-shaped 20  
 peel v /pi:l/ 20  
 peeler /'pi:lə(r)/ 20  
 peer pressure /,piə 'preʃə(r)/ 18  
 pejorative /pə'dʒɒrətɪv/ 1  
 pencil sth in /pensl ,... 'in 40  
 pension /'penʃn/ 44  
 pent-up /,pent 'ʌp/ 15  
 peppery /'pepəri/ 12  
 per /pɜ:(r)/ 48  
 perceive /pə'si:v/ 19  
 perennial /pə'reniəl/ 54  
 perfect example /'pɜ:fɪkt ɪg,zɑ:mpl/ 4  
 performance-related /pə'fɔ:məns  
 rɪ,lertɪd/ 44  
 perks /pɜ:ks/ 44  
 perplexed /pə'plekst/ 78  
 persist /pə'sɪst/ 13  
 persistent /pə'sɪstənt/ 13  
 personality /pɜ:sə'næləti/ 41  
 personalize /'pɜ:sənəlaɪz/ 75  
 personally /'pɜ:sənəli/ 79  
 perspective *as in* keep sth in  
 perspective 54  
 perspiration /pɜ:spə'reɪʃn/ 8  
 perspire /pə'spaɪə(r)/ 8  
 persuade sb to do sth /pə'sweɪd ,... tə  
 'du: ,.../ 63  
 pertinent /'pɜ:tɪnənt/ 67  
 pet hate /,pet 'heit/ 51  
 phase /feɪz/ 1, 57  
 phenomena /fə'nɒmɪnə/ 71  
 phenomenal /fə'nɒmɪnəl/ 31  
 phenomenally /fə'nɒmɪnəli/ 22, 31  
 phenomenon /fə'nɒmɪnən/ 71  
 phoney N, ADJ /'fəʊni/ 53  
 photocopier /'fəʊtəʊkəpiə(r)/ 51  
 physically /'fɪzɪkli/ 79  
 pick and choose /,pɪk ən 'tʃu:z/ 61  
 pick sb/sth up /,pɪk ,... 'ʌp/ 63  
 pick up /,pɪk 'ʌp/ 63  
 pieces *as in* go to pieces 23  
 pieces *as in* take sth to pieces 63  
 pile up /,pail 'ʌp/ 51  
 pin *as in* drawing pin 3  
 pinch (with fingers) /pɪnʃ/ 12  
 pinch (= steal) /'pɪnʃ/ 58  
 pitiful /'pɪtɪfl/ 70  
 placate /plə'keɪt/ 75  
 plague /pleɪg/ 49  
 plain /pleɪn/ 67  
 plant N, v /plɑ:nt/ 24  
 plastic surgery /,plæstɪk 'sɜ:dʒəri/ 33  
 plausible /'plɜ:zəbl/ 78  
 play a part /,pleɪ ə 'pɑ:t/ 18  
 plea /pli:/ 38  
 please accept my sincere  
 condolences /,pli:z ək'sept maɪ  
 sɪn,sɪə kən'dəʊlənsɪz/ 67  
 please do not hesitate to contact  
 me /,pli:z ,du: nɒt 'hezɪtət tə  
 ,kɒntækt mi:/ 67  
 please find enclosed /pli:z ,faɪnd  
 ɪn,kləʊzd/ 67  
 pls (= please) 73  
 plummet /'plʌmɪt/ 30, 47  
 plunge /plʌndʒ/ 47  
 poacher /'pəʊtʃə(r)/ 29  
 poaching /'pəʊtʃɪŋ/ 29  
 point /pɔɪnt/ 6  
 point *as in* breaking point 43  
 point *as in* there's no point in +  
 ing 59  
 point *as in* to the point 67  
 pointless /'pɔɪntləs/ 6  
 poke fun at /,pəʊk 'fʌn ət/ 1  
 poke your nose in sth /,pəʊk ,jɔ:  
 'nəʊz ,ɪntə ,.../ 51  
 police v /pə'li:s/ 34  
 police chief /pə'li:s ,tʃi:f/ 38  
 police constable /pə'li:s ,kənstəbl/ 35  
 police force /pə'li:s ,fɔ:s/ 35  
 police officer /pə'li:s ,ɒfɪsə(r)/ 35  
 policing /pə'li:sɪŋ/ 34  
 political asylum /pə'lɪtɪkl ə'saɪləm/ 32  
 politically correct /pə'lɪtɪkli  
 kə'rekt/ 73  
 poll /pɔ:l/ 39  
 pomegranate /'pɒmɪgræni/ 20  
 pool v /pu:l/ 45  
 poor taste *as in* be in poor taste 19  
 pop in /,pɒp 'ɪn/ 26  
 pop over /,pɒp əʊvə(r)/ 26  
 pop round /,pɒp 'raʊnd/ 26  
 popularize /'pɒpjələraɪz/ 75  
 populated /'pɒpjələtɪd/ 74  
 portray /pə'treɪ/ 70  
 portray /pə'treɪ/ 70  
 pose a threat to /,pəʊz ə 'θret tə/ 29  
 posh /pɒʃ/ 58  
 position /pə'zɪʃn/ 69  
 possession *as in* in possession of 77  
 post /pəʊst/ 62  
 posthumously /'pɒstjʊməsli/ 53  
 pot *as in* the pot calling the kettle  
 black 66  
 potential /pə'tenʃl/ 56  
 pour sth out /,pɔ: ,... 'aʊt/ 15  
 poverty /'pɒvəti/ 29  
 practically /'præktɪkli/ 79  
 practice *as in* put sth into practice 27  
 practice makes perfect /,præktɪs  
 ,meɪks 'pɜ:fɪkt/ 66  
 prbly (= probably) 73  
 precedent /'presɪdənt/ 50  
 precise /pri'saɪs/ 1  
 precisely /pri'saɪsli/ 79  
 precision /pri'sɪʒn/ 1  
 predominantly /pri'dɒmɪnəntli/ 79  
 prejudice against /'preʒʊdɪs  
 ə,ɡenst/ 32  
 prejudiced /'preʒʊdɪst/ 32  
 present v /pri'zent/ 69  
 presentation /prezn'teɪʃn/ 69  
 preservation /prezə'veɪʃn/ 55  
 preserve /pri'zɜ:v/ 55  
 press-up /'pres ,ʌp/ 9  
 pressure *as in* under pressure 23, 47  
 presumably /pri'zju:məbli/ 79  
 pretentious /pri'tenʃəs/ 14  
 prevention is better than cure /  
 ,pri,venʃn ɪz ,betə ðən 'kjʊə(r)/ 66  
 previously /pri'viəsli/ 55  
 price tag /'praɪs ,tæg/ 25  
 primarily /praɪ'merəli/ 79  
 principal concern /'prɪnsəpl  
 kən,sɜ:n/ 4  
 principles /'prɪnsəplz/ 17  
 prior to /'praɪə tə/ 68  
 prioritize /praɪ'ɒraɪz/ 49  
 priority /praɪ'ɒrəti/ 49  
 privacy /'prɪvəsi/ 41  
 privatization /praɪvətaɪz'eɪʃn/ 50  
 privatize /'praɪvətaɪz/ 50, 75  
 proactive /prəʊ'æktɪv/ 50  
 probability /prəbə'bɪləti/ 29  
 probe N, v /prəʊb/ 38  
 problem *as in* tackle a problem 50  
 procedure /prə'sɪdʒə(r)/ 30, 71  
 proceeds /'prəʊsi:dz/ 35  
 process *as in* in the process of doing  
 sth 24  
 procrastinate /prəʊ'kræstɪneɪt/ 50  
 procrastination /prəʊ'kræstɪneɪʃn/ 50  
 productive /prə'dʌktɪv/ 49  
 profile *as in* high profile 34  
 proly (= probably) 73  
 prolong /prə'lɒŋ/ 57, 63  
 promote /prə'məʊt/ 34, 45  
 promoted *as in* be promoted 23  
 promotion (= movement up to a  
 higher league) /prə'məʊʃn/ 23  
 promotion (= support)  
 /prə'məʊʃn/ 34  
 prompt ADJ /prɒmpt/ 49  
 prompt v /prɒmpt/ 52  
 promptly /'prɒmptli/ 49  
 prone to /'praʊn tə/ 30  
 pronounced limp /prə'naʊnst 'lɪmp/ 9  
 -proof /'pru:f/ 75  
 proportion /prə'pɔ:ʃn/ 36  
 propose /prə'pəʊz/ 5  
 pros and cons /,prəʊz ən 'kɒnz/ 45  
 prospect *as in* face the prospect of 4  
 prosperity /prə'sperəti/ 70  
 prosperous /'prɒspərəs/ 70  
 protagonist /prə'tæɡənɪst/ 70  
 protest *as in* storm of protest 39  
 provision /prə'vɪʒn/ 44  
 provocation /prəvə'keɪʃn/ 52  
 provoke /prə'vəʊk/ 52  
 prudence /'pru:dns/ 50

VOWELS: æ cat | ɔ: father | e ten | ɜ: bird | ə about | ɪ sit | i: see | i many | ɒ got | ɔ: saw | ʌ up | ʊ put | u: too | u actual |  
 ai my | əʊ now | eɪ say | əʊ go | ɔɪ boy | ɪə near | eə hair | ʊə pure



prudent /'pru:dnt/ 50  
 prune v /pru:n/ 24  
 pry into /'praɪ ɪntə/ 41  
 PS /pi: 'es/ 73  
 PTO (= please turn over) /pi: 'ti: 'əʊ/ 73  
 public eye *as in* in the public eye 41  
 pull a muscle /,pʊl ə 'mʌsl/ 13  
 pull the strings /,pʊl ðə 'striŋz/ 42  
 pull your weight /,pʊl jɔ: 'weɪt/ 18  
 pulse /pʌls/ 20  
 pun /pʌn/ 40  
 puncture n, v /'pʌŋktʃə(r)/ 40  
 pungent /'pʌŋdʒənt/ 12  
 punishing /'pʌnɪŋ/ 40  
 punishment *as in* capital punishment 36  
 pure /pjʊə(r)/ 75  
 purely /'pjʊəli/ 79  
 purely by chance /,pjʊəli 'baɪ 'tʃɑ:ns/ 79  
 purify /'pjʊəraɪf/ 75  
 pursue /pə'sju: / 27  
 pursuit /pə'sju:t/ 25  
 push v /pʊʃ/ 2  
 push and shove /,pʊʃ ən 'ʃʌv/ 61  
 pushy /'pʊʃi/ 14  
 put /pʊt/ 2  
 put a strain on /,pʊt ə 'streɪn, ɒn/ 16  
 put out *as in* be put out 19  
 put out a fire /,pʊt ɔ:t ə 'faɪə(r)/ 4  
 put sb at ease /,pʊt ,... ət 'i:z/ 33  
 put sb at their ease /,pʊt ,... ət ðeə 'i:z/ 33  
 put sth down /,pʊt ,... 'daʊn/ 80  
 put sth into (a bank account) /,pʊt ,... 'ɪntə/ 48  
 put sth into practice /,pʊt ,... 'ɪntə 'præktɪs/ 27  
 put sth into words /,pʊt ,... 'ɪntə 'wɜ:dz/ 2  
 put sth right /,pʊt ,... 'raɪt/ 51  
 put sth to sleep /,pʊt ,... tə 'sli:p/ 80  
 put your feet up /,pʊt jɔ: 'fi:t ,ʌp/ 24  
 put your foot in it /,pʊt jɔ: 'fʊt ɪn ,ɪt/ 19  
 puzzle v /'pʌzl/ 53  
 puzzled /'pʌzld/ 53, 78

qualification /kwɒlɪfɪ'keɪʃn/ 23  
 qualify /'kwɒlɪfaɪ/ 23  
 quantify /'kwɒntɪfaɪ/ 75  
 quick-witted /'kwɪk 'wɪtɪd/ 14  
 quid /kwɪd/ 58  
 quote v /kwəʊt/ 39

r (= are) 73  
 racket /'rækt/ 58  
 radical /'rædɪkl/ 42  
 radical change /'rædɪkl 'tʃeɪndʒ/ 27  
 radish /'rædɪʃ/ 20  
 rage *as in* road rage 52  
 rain *as in* torrential rain 4  
 raise /reɪz/ 54, 63  
 raise funds /,reɪz 'fʌndz/ 29  
 raisins /'reɪznz/ 20  
 rake n /reɪk/ 62

rally (= support sb) /'ræli/ 41  
 rally (= increase in value) /'ræli/ 47  
 ramshackle /'ræmʃækəl/ 55  
 random /'rændəm/ 43  
 rank /ræŋk/ 35  
 ransom /'rænsəm/ 38  
 rash adj /ræʃ/ 14  
 rash n /ræʃ/ 13  
 rat-infested /'ræt ɪn,festɪd/ 40  
 rate n /reɪt/ 30  
 rate v /reɪt/ 31  
 rate *as in* at any rate 64  
 rattle n, v /'rætl/ 10  
 re- 74  
 reach /ri:tʃ/ 4  
 reactionary /ri'ækʃənəri/ 42  
 realistic /ri:'lɪstɪk/ 79  
 realistically /ri:'lɪstɪkli/ 79  
 realize your potential /,ri:əlaɪz jɔ: pə'tenʃəl/ 56  
 reappraise /ri:'preɪz/ 74  
 reason *as in* for some reason 60  
 reason *as in* no reason 52  
 reason *as in* within reason 14  
 reassess /ri:'ses/ 74  
 reassure /ri:'ʃʊə(r)/ 54  
 rebel n /'rebl/ 17  
 rebel v /ri:'bel/ 17  
 rebellious /ri:'beljəs/ 17  
 recall v /ri'kɔ:l/ 73  
 recharge your batteries /ri:ʃɑ:ʒ jɔ: 'bæt(ə)rɪz/ 21  
 rechargeable battery /ri:ʃɑ:ʒəbl 'bæt(ə)rɪ/ 28  
 recognition /rekəg'nɪʃn/ 6  
 recognize /'rekəgaɪz/ 6  
 recollect /re'kɔ:lekt/ 73  
 recollection /rekə'lekʃn/ 73  
 reconciled *as in* be reconciled with 63  
 reconciled to /'rekənsaɪld tə/ 76  
 reconditioned /ri:kən'dɪʃnd/ 55  
 reconstruct /ri:kən'strʌkt/ 74  
 record *as in* set a record /'rekɔ:d/ 50  
 recover /ri'kʌvə(r)/ 47  
 recovery *as in* make a rapid/speedy recovery 40  
 recuperate /ri'ku:pəreɪt/ 33  
 recuperation /riku:pə'reɪʃn/ 33  
 recur /ri'kɜ:(r)/ 9  
 recurrent /ri'kərənt/ 9  
 recycle /ri:'saɪkl/ 28  
 recycling /ri:'saɪklɪŋ/ 28  
 red *as in* be in the red 48  
 referral /ri'fɜ:rəl/ 33  
 referred *as in* be referred to sb 33  
 reflect /ri'flekt/ 5  
 reflection *as in* on reflection 77  
 reform n, v /ri'fɔ:m/ 27  
 refreshing change /ri'freʃɪŋ 'tʃeɪndʒ/ 27  
 refuel /ri:'fju:əl/ 74  
 refuge *as in* seek/take refuge 32  
 refugee /refju'dʒi:/ 32  
 regain your senses /ri'geɪn jɔ: 'sensɪz/ 40  
 regard sb/sth *as* /ri'gɑ:d ,... əz/ 19, 36

regarding /ri'gɑ:dɪŋ/ 67, 68  
 regardless of /ri'gɑ:dləs əv/ 54  
 region *as in* in the region of 65  
 register n /'redʒɪstə(r)/ 69  
 register v /'redʒɪstə(r)/ 33  
 registered user /,redʒɪstəd 'ju:zə(r)/ 31  
 regulations *as in* rules and regulations 61  
 rehab /'ri:hæb/ 41  
 rehabilitate /ri:'bɪlɪteɪt/ 36  
 rehabilitation /ri:'bɪlɪteɪʃn/ 36  
 reinforced /ri:'mʌfəst/ 72  
 reinvent /ri:'ɪn'vent/ 74  
 reject v /ri'dʒekt/ 46  
 rejection /ri'dʒekʃn/ 46  
 relatively /'relatɪvli/ 79  
 relax /ri'læks/ 21  
 release v /ri:'li:s/ 12  
 relegated *as in* be relegated 23  
 relegation /reli'geɪʃn/ 23  
 relentless /ri'lentləs/ 9  
 religious faith /ri'lɪdʒəs 'feɪθ/ 32  
 relocation /ri:'ləʊ'keɪʃn/ 44  
 reluctance /ri'læktəns/ 16  
 reluctant /ri'læktənt/ 16  
 remaining /ri'memɪŋ/ 40  
 remains /ri'meɪnz/ 55  
 remand v /ri'mɑ:nd/ 35  
 remanded in custody /ri'mɑ:ndɪd ɪn 'kʌstədi/ 35  
 remark /ri'mɑ:k/ 19  
 remarkable /ri'mɑ:kəbl/ 21  
 remarkably /ri'mɑ:kəbli/ 21  
 remedy n /'remədi/ 76  
 reminiscent of /remɪ'nɪsnt əv/ 76  
 remote /ri'məʊt/ 21  
 renovate /'renəveɪt/ 55  
 reoffend /ri:'fend/ 36  
 reoffender /ri:'fendə(r)/ 36  
 repel /ri'pel/ 71  
 repercussions /ri:pə'kʌʃnz/ 52  
 replicate /'replɪkeɪt/ 71  
 reply *as in* in reply to 67  
 represent /reprɪ'zent/ 70  
 representative of /reprɪ'zentatɪv əv/ 76  
 reproduce /ri:prə'dju:s/ 55  
 reproduction /ri:prə'dʌkʃn/ 55  
 reputable /'repjətəbl/ 6  
 reputation /repju'teɪʃn/ 6  
 resent /ri'zent/ 16  
 resentment /ri'zentmənt/ 16  
 reserve /ri'zɜ:v/ 29  
 reserve *as in* in reserve / the reserve 37  
 resident n /'rezɪdənt/ 34, 72  
 resigned to /ri'zaɪnd tə/ 76  
 resilience /ri'zɪliəns/ 70  
 resilient /ri'zɪliənt/ 70  
 resist /ri'zɪst/ 27, 72  
 resistance /ri'zɪstəns/ 27  
 resistant to /ri'zɪstənt tə/ 76  
 resolution /'rezə'lu:ʃn/ 50  
 resolve /ri'zɒlv/ 50  
 resort *as in* last/final resort 60  
 resorting /ri'zɔ:ndɪŋ/ 56  
 respect n, v /ri'spekt/ 16



- respectful /rɪ'spektɪl/ 19  
 response *as in* I am writing in response to 67  
 responsible /rɪ'spɒnsəbl/ 4  
 rest *as in* the rest 23  
 restoration /restə'reɪʃn/ 21, 27  
 restore /rɪ'stɔː(r)/ 21, 27  
 restrict /rɪ'strɪkt/ 30  
 restriction /rɪ'strɪkʃn/ 30, 72, 76  
 resume /rɪ'zjuːm/ 30  
 resumption /rɪ'zʌmpʃn/ 30  
 retain /rɪ'teɪn/ 21  
 retaliate /rɪ'tæliet/ 52, 63  
 retaliation /rɪ'tæli'eɪʃn/ 52  
 retell /rɪ'tel/ 74  
 retention /rɪ'tenʃn/ 21  
 retribution /retri'bjuːʃn/ 36  
 retrospect *as in* in retrospect 57  
 reveal /rɪ'viːl/ 15  
 revelation /revə'leɪʃn/ 15  
 revenge /rɪ'vendʒ/ 36  
 reversal /rɪ'vɜːsl/ 27  
 reverse *v* /rɪ'vɜːs/ 27  
 reversible /rɪ'vɜːsəbl/ 27  
 revert back to /rɪ'vɜːt bæk tə/ 27  
 revert to /rɪ'vɜːt tə/ 27  
 revolting /rɪ'vɒltɪŋ/ 12  
 rewarding /rɪ'wɔːdɪŋ/ 45  
 rewrite *v* /rɪ'raɪt/ 74  
 rhino /'rɪnəʊ/ 29  
 riddle /'rɪdl/ 38  
 ride *as in* bumpy ride 47  
 right away /raɪt ə'weɪ/ 77  
 right-wing /raɪt 'wɪŋ/ 42  
 rigorous /'rɪɡərəs/ 49, 72  
 rip-off /rɪp ɒf/ 58  
 rip sb off /rɪp ... ɒf/ 58  
 road *as in* go down that road 46  
 road rage /'rəʊd reɪdʒ/ 52  
 roar *N, v* /rɔː(r)/ 10  
 roar with laughter /'rɔː(r) wɪð 'ləʊtə(r)/ 10  
 rock *v* /rɒk/ 41, 42  
 rock the boat /rɒk ðə 'bəʊt/ 42  
 rocks *as in* on the rocks 41  
 rocket *v* /'rɒkɪt/ 30, 47  
 role model /'rəʊl mɒdl/ 18  
 roof *as in* hit the roof 15  
 roots /ruːts/ 24  
 round /raʊnd/ 23  
 round about /'raʊnd ə baʊt/ 65  
 RSVP /,ɑːr ɛs viː 'piː/ 73  
 rubbish /'rʌbɪʃ/ 22  
 rubble /'rʌbl/ 43  
 ruins /'ruːnz/ 55  
 rule sth out /ruːl ... ɔʊt/ 38  
 rules and regulations /,ruːlz ən regjʊ'leɪʃnz/ 61  
 rumble *N, v* /'rʌmbl/ 10  
 rumour /'ruːmə(r)/ 41  
 run /rʌn/ 31  
 run *as in* bad/good run 23  
 run-down /,rʌn 'daʊn/ 55  
 runner-up /,rʌnər ʌp/ 23  
 runners-up /,rʌnəz ʌp/ 23  
 rushed off your feet /,rʌʃt ɒf jɔː 'fiːt/ 33
- rustle *N, v* /'rʌsl/ 10  
 ruthless /'ruːθləs/ 14  
 ruthlessly /'ruːθləsli/ 49
- s/t (= something) 73  
 sacrifice *v, N* /'sækrɪfaɪs/ 16  
 sae (= stamped addressed envelope) /,es ɛɪ 'iː/ 73  
 safe /seɪf/ 42  
 safe *as in* better safe than sorry 66  
 safe and sound /seɪf ən 'saʊnd/ 61  
 safe pair of hands /seɪf ,peər əv 'hændz/ 42  
 sage /seɪdʒ/ 20  
 saliva /sə'laɪvə/ 12  
 salty /'sɔːlti/ 12  
 same *as in* all the same 64  
 sample /'sɑːmpl/ 67  
 sand *as in* bury your head in the sand  
 sane /seɪn/ 70  
 sarcasm /'sɑːkæzəm/ 1  
 sarcastic /'sɑːkæstɪk/ 1  
 satisfied *as in* not entirely satisfied 4  
 savings account /'sɜːvɪŋz ə kaʊnt/ 48  
 say *N* /seɪ/ 34  
 saying *as in* as I was saying 64  
 sb's bark is worse than their bite /,... 'bɑːk ɪz wɜːs ðən ðeə 'baɪt/ 10  
 sb's heart is not in sth /,... 'hɑːt ɪz ,nɒt 'ɪn .../ 15  
 scales *as in* kitchen scales 20  
 scalp /skælp/ 13  
 scandal /'skændl/ 41  
 scanner /'skænə(r)/ 30  
 scarce /skeəs/ 43  
 scarcity /'skeəsəti/ 43  
 scare sb out of their wits /skeə ... ,aʊt əv ðeə 'wɪts/ 22  
 scathing /'skeɪdɪŋ/ 39  
 scatter /'skætə(r)/ 24  
 scenery /'siːnəri/ 24  
 scenes *as in* behind the scenes 39  
 sceptical about sth /'skeptɪkl ə baʊt .../ 14  
 scepticism /'skeptɪsɪzəm/ 14  
 schedule *N, v* /'ʃedjuːl/ 49  
 scheme *N* /skiːm/ 38, 44  
 scoop /skuːp/ 41  
 scrape through /skreɪp 'θruː/ 56  
 scratch *v* /skreɪʃ/ 13  
 screech *N, v* /skriːtʃ/ 10  
 scroll *v* /skrəʊl/ 31  
 scroll bar /'skrəʊl ,bɑː(r)/ 31  
 scrutinize /'skruːtənaɪz/ 71  
 scrutiny /'skruːtəni/ 71  
 seal *v* /siːl/ 73  
 search *as in* do a search 31  
 search *as in* in search of 25  
 season *as in* in / out of season 28  
 seat *as in* on the edge of your seat 22  
 second-hand /,sekənd 'hænd/ 55  
 second opinion /,sekənd ə'pɪnjən/ 33  
 second to none /,sekənd tə 'nʌn/ 33  
 secret *as in* the secret of your success 56  
 seed /siːd/ 24
- seek refuge /,siːk 'refjuːdʒ/ 32  
 segregate /'segrɪgeɪt/ 36  
 segregation /segrɪ'geɪʃn/ 36  
 self- /self/ 36  
 self-assessment /,self ə'sesmənt/ 36  
 self-catering /,self 'keɪtərɪŋ/ 36  
 self-contained /,self kən'teɪnd/ 36  
 self-esteem /,self 'iːstiːm/ 54  
 self-explanatory /,self ɪk'splənətri/ 1  
 sell like hot cakes /,sel ,laɪk 'hɒt ,keɪks/ 62  
 senate /'senət/ 38  
 senator /'senətə/ 38  
 send sb/sth flying /,send ... 'flaɪŋ/ 2  
 senior /'siːniə(r)/ 33  
 sensational /sen'seɪʃənl/ 22  
 sense /sens/ 1  
 senses *as in* regain your senses 40  
 sentimental /senti'mentl/ 22  
 sequence of events /,siːkwəns əv 'iːvents/ 52  
 sergeant /'sɜːdʒənt/ 35  
 serve /sɜːv/ 37  
 set *N* /set/ 22  
 set *v* /set/ 50  
 set a budget /,set ə 'bʌdʒɪt/ 34  
 set a date /,set ə 'deɪt/ 50  
 set a limit /,set ə 'lɪmɪt/ 50  
 set a precedent /,set ə 'presɪdənt/ 50  
 set a record /,set ə 'rekɔːd/ 50  
 set a standard /,set ə 'stændəd/ 50  
 set an example /,set ən ɪg'zɑːmpl/ 18, 50  
 set fire to /,set 'faɪə tə/ 4  
 set phrase /,set 'freɪz/ 59  
 set sb/sth back /,set ... 'bæk/ 3  
 set sb's mind at rest /,set ... 'maɪnd ət ,rest/ 54  
 set sth aside /,set ... ə'saɪd/ 49  
 set sth off /,set ... ɒf/ 46  
 setback /'setbæk/ 3, 54  
 settle a dispute /,setl ə dɪ'spuːt/ 4, 50  
 settle an argument /,setl ən 'ɑːɡjʊmənt/ 4  
 settle down /,setl 'daʊn/ 16  
 severe /sɪ'vɪə(r)/ 6  
 severely hit /sɪ'vɪəli 'hɪt/ 49  
 severity /sɪ'verəti/ 6  
 shake sth off /,ʃeɪk ... ɒf/ 63  
 shake sth up /,ʃeɪk ... ʌp/ 3  
 shake-up /'ʃeɪk ʌp/ 3  
 shallow /'ʃæləʊ/ 22  
 share *as in* do your fair share 18  
 shareholder /'ʃeəhəʊldə(r)/ 46  
 shark-infested /'ʃɑːk ɪnfestɪd/ 40  
 shed /ʃed/ 24  
 sheer desperation /,ʃɪə despə'reɪʃn/ 15  
 sheet /ʃiːt/ 62  
 shell *N, v* /ʃel/ 43  
 shelter *v* /'ʃeltə(r)/ 40  
 shock *as in* culture shock 32  
 shop around /,ʃɒp ə'raʊnd/ 25  
 shop till you drop /,ʃɒp tɪl juː 'drɒp/ 25  
 shopaholic /'ʃɒpə'hɒlɪk/ 25  
 short cut /,ʃɔːt 'kʌt/ 3



- short-lived /ˈʃɔ:t 'lɪvd/ 71  
 short-sighted /ˈʃɔ:t 'saɪdɪd/ 11  
 short-term /ˈʃɔ:t 'tɜ:m/ 13  
 shortage /'ʃɔ:tɪdʒ/ 48  
 shortfall /'ʃɔ:tfɔ:l/ 48  
 shortly /'ʃɔ:li/ 57  
 should you require any further information /ˌʃʊd ju: rɪ'kwaɪə ,eni ˌfɜ:də rɪn'fɔ:meɪʃn/ 67  
 shove /ʃʌv/ 61  
 show sth off /ˌʃəʊ ... 'ɒf/ 7  
 show up /ˌʃəʊ 'ʌp/ 63  
 shrewd /ʃru:d/ 14  
 shy /ʃaɪ/ 14  
 sick and tired of /'sɪk ən ˌtaɪəd əv/ 61  
 side effect /'saɪd ɪ'fekt/ 13  
 sideways /'saɪdweɪz/ 73  
 siege /si:ʒ/ 43  
 sieve N, V /sɪv/ 20, 62  
 sight /saɪt/ 11  
 simplification /ˌsɪmplɪfɪ'keɪʃn/ 6  
 simplify /'sɪmplɪfaɪ/ 6, 75  
 simply (= just) /'sɪmplɪ/ 79  
 simply (= purely) /'sɪmplɪ/ 79  
 sincere /sɪn'sɪə(r)/ 67  
 single-minded /ˌsɪŋgl 'maɪndɪd/ 3  
 single sb/sth out /ˌsɪŋgl ... 'aʊt/ 41  
 sink in /ˌsɪŋk 'ɪn/ 63  
 sink or swim /ˌsɪŋk ə: 'swɪm/ 42  
 sit on the fence /ˌsɪt ˌɒn ðə 'fens/ 69  
 sit still /ˌsɪt 'stɪl/ 11  
 site N /saɪt/ 24  
 slam V /slæm/ 10  
 slang /slæŋ/ 1  
 slash V /slæʃ/ 47  
 sleep as in put sth to sleep 80  
 sleep like a log /ˌsli:p ˌlaɪk ə 'lɒg/ 62  
 slice V /slaɪs/ 20  
 slide /slaɪd/ 12  
 slight accent /ˌslaɪt 'æksənt/ 4  
 slope N, V /sleɪp/ 24  
 slot machine /ˌslɒt mə'ʃi:n/ 3  
 sluggish /ˌslʌɡɪʃ/ 9  
 sluggishness /ˌslʌɡɪʃnəs/ 9  
 slump N, V /slʌmp/ 47  
 small world /ˌsmɔ:l 'wɜ:ld/ 66  
 smiley /'smaɪli/ 73  
 smuggle /'smʌɡl/ 35  
 smuggling /'smʌɡlɪŋ/ 35  
 snap sth up /ˌsnæp ... 'ʌp/ 47  
 snarl V /sna:l/ 10  
 sniff /snɪf/ 51  
 sniper /'snaɪpə(r)/ 43  
 snob /snɒb/ 17  
 so far, so good /ˌsəʊ ˌfɑ: ˌsəʊ 'ɡʊd/ 66  
 soak sth up /ˌsəʊk ... 'ʌp/ 21  
 soar /sɔ:(r)/ 47  
 sociable /'səʊjəbl/ 26  
 social /'səʊʃl/ 79  
 socialism /'səʊʃəlɪzəm/ 42  
 socialist /'səʊʃəlɪst/ 42  
 socialize /'səʊʃalaɪz/ 26, 75  
 socially /'səʊʃəli/ 79  
 software /'sɒftweə(r)/ 31  
 soil /sɔɪl/ 24  
 solely /'səʊli/ 45  
 solicitor /sə'lɪsɪtə(r)/ 35  
 solidify /sə'lɪdɪfaɪ/ 75  
 soluble /'sɒljəbl/ 13  
 solution /sə'lu:ʃn/ 76  
 somehow /'samhaʊ/ 65  
 somehow or other /'samhaʊ ə: ɔ: ˌʌðə(r)/ 65  
 something /'sʌmθɪŋ/ 65  
 something along those lines /'sʌmθɪŋ ə ˌlɒŋ ˌðəʊz ˌlaɪnz/ 65  
 something to do with /'sʌmθɪŋ tə ˌdu: wɪð/ 65  
 somewhat /'sʌmwaɪt/ 79  
 somewhere as in get somewhere 59  
 somewhere in the region of /'sʌmweə ˌɪn ðə ˌrɪ:ʒən əv/ 65  
 soon /su:n/ 57  
 sooner or later /'su:nə ɔ: ˌleɪtə(r)/ 61  
 sorry to keep you waiting /'sɒri tə ˌki:p ju: ˌweɪtɪŋ/ 59  
 sort as in or something of that sort 65  
 sort of /'sɔ:t əv/ 65  
 sort sth out /ˌsɔ:t ... 'aʊt/ 50  
 sought after /'sɔ:t ˌɑ:ftə(r)/ 29  
 soul /səʊl/ 1  
 sound as in safe and sound 61  
 sound effects /'saʊnd ɪ'fektz/ 22  
 soundproof /'saʊndpru:f/ 75  
 sour /saʊə(r)/ 12  
 sour grapes /ˌsaʊə ˌgreɪps/ 20  
 source N /sɔ:s/ 39  
 spade /speɪd/ 24  
 spam /spæm/ 31  
 spamming /'spæmɪŋ/ 31  
 spare part /ˌspeə ˈpɑ:t/ 3  
 spark V /spɑ:k/ 39, 52  
 speaking /'spi:kɪŋ/ 79  
 special effort /ˌspeʃl ˌefət/ 4  
 specialize /ˌspeʃəlaɪz/ 75  
 species /'spi:ʃi:z/ 29  
 spectacular /ˌspek ˌtækjələ(r)/ 11  
 speed limit /ˌspi:d ˌlɪmɪt/ 13  
 spell /spel/ 57  
 spell sth out /ˌspel ... 'aʊt/ 67  
 spice /spaɪs/ 20  
 spin N, V /spɪn/ 42  
 spin doctor /ˌspɪn ˌdɒktə(r)/ 42  
 spin-off /ˌspɪn ˌɒf/ 52  
 spine-tingling /ˌspaɪn ˌtɪŋɡlɪŋ/ 22  
 spirit /ˈspɪrɪt/ 1  
 spite /spaɪt/ 17  
 spiteful /ˌspaɪtfl/ 17  
 spk (= speak) 73  
 splash N, V /splæʃ/ 10  
 splitting headache /ˌsplɪtɪŋ ˌhedək/ 13  
 spokesman /ˌspəʊksmən/ 34  
 spokesperson /ˌspəʊkspə:sn/ 34  
 spokeswoman /ˌspəʊkswʊmən/ 34  
 spontaneity /ˌspɒntəˈneɪti/ 14  
 spontaneous /ˌspɒntəˈneɪs/ 14  
 spot V /spɒt/ 11  
 spotless /ˌspɒtləs/ 33  
 spotlessly clean /ˌspɒtləsli ˌkli:n/ 33  
 sprain V /spreɪn/ 13  
 spread /spred/ 4  
 spread gossip /ˌspred ˌɡɒsɪp/ 17  
 spree /spri:/ 25  
 sprint V /sprɪnt/ 9  
 sprouts as in bean sprouts 20  
 squander /ˌskwɒndə(r)/ 8  
 squash /skwɒʃ/ 20  
 squeak V /skwi:k/ 10  
 squeaky /ˌskwi:ki/ 10  
 squeeze V /skwi:z/ 12, 20  
 squelch V /skwelʃ/ 10  
 sry (= sorry) 73  
 stables /ˈsterblz/ 55  
 stacks of /ˈstæks əv/ 65  
 stage /steɪdʒ/ 1, 57  
 stagger V /ˈstæɡə(r)/ 9  
 stake as in at stake 50  
 stance /sta:ns/ 69  
 stand-offish /ˌstænd ˌɒfɪʃ/ 14  
 stand still /ˌstænd ˈstɪl/ 11  
 stand up for /ˌstænd ˈʌp ˌfɔ:(r), ˌfə(r)/ 34  
 stand up to /ˌstænd ˈʌp ˌtu:, tə/ 72  
 standard as in set a standard 50  
 standardize /ˌstændədaɪz/ 75  
 standby as in on standby 28  
 starving /ˈstɑ:vɪŋ/ 58  
 state V /steɪt/ 67  
 stated dose /ˌsteɪtɪd ˈdəʊs/ 13  
 status quo /ˌsteɪtəs ˈkwəʊ/ 42  
 stay put /ˌsteɪ ˈpʊt/ 40  
 stay still /ˌsteɪ ˈstɪl/ 11  
 steadily /ˈstedɪli/ 12  
 steady decline /ˌstedɪ dɪˈklaɪn/ 29  
 steam V /sti:m/ 20  
 steamer /ˈsti:mə(r)/ 20  
 stem N /stem/ 24  
 stem from /ˌstem frəm/ 76  
 stench /stentʃ/ 12  
 step aside /ˌstep əˈsaɪd/ 46  
 step down /ˌstep ˈdaʊn/ 46  
 step sth up /ˌstep ... 'ʌp/ 50  
 stereotype /ˈsterɪətaɪp/ 32  
 stereotypical /ˌsterɪəˈtɪpɪkl/ 32  
 stethoscope /ˈsteθəskəʊp/ 30  
 stew V /stju:/ 20  
 stick N /stɪk/ 58  
 stick at /ˈstɪk ət/ 63  
 stick out /ˈstɪk ˈaʊt/ 7  
 stick to sth /ˈstɪk tə .../ 49  
 stick up for /ˌstɪk ˈʌp ˌfɔ:(r), ˌfə(r)/ 16, 34  
 stick your nose in sth /ˌstɪk ʒɔ: ˈnəʊz ɪn .../ 51  
 stiff /stɪf/ 9  
 stiff as in bored stiff 22  
 stiffness /ˈstɪfnəs/ 9  
 stifle /ˈstaɪfl/ 45  
 still (= mind you) /stɪl/ 64  
 still (= without moving) /stɪl/ 11  
 still as in better still 28  
 stimulate /ˌstɪmjuleɪt/ 12  
 stingy /ˈstɪndʒi/ 58  
 stir-fry /ˈstɜ: ˌfraɪ/ 20  
 stomach upset /ˌstʌmək ˌʌpset/ 13  
 storm of protest /ˌstɔ:m əv ˈprəʊtest/ 39  
 story /ˈstɔ:ri/ 69  
 straightaway /ˌstreɪtəˈweɪ/ 77  
 straighten /ˈstreɪtn/ 7  
 straightforward /ˌstreɪtˈfɔ:wəd/ 67

CONSONANTS: b bad | d did | f fall | g get | h hat | j yes | k cat | l leg | m man | n now | p pen | r red | s see | t tea | v van | w wet | z zoo | ʃ shoe | ʒ vision | tʃ chain | ʒ jam | θ thin | ð this | ŋ sing



- strain *as in* eye strain 11  
 strain *as in* put a strain on 16  
 strangely enough /'streɪndʒli ɪ, nʌf/ 79  
 strategic /strə'ti:dʒɪk/ 34  
 strategy /'strætədʒi/ 34  
 stray /streɪ/ 40  
 stream /stri:m/ 49  
 strength *as in* go from strength to strength 56  
 strengthen /'streŋθn/ 7, 47  
 strenuous /'strenjuəs/ 9  
 stressed out /,strest əʊt/ 49  
 stretching /'stretʃɪŋ/ 9  
 strictly /'striktli/ 79  
 stride *as in* take sth in your stride 54  
 strike sb *as* /'straɪk ,... əz/ 14  
 stringent /'strɪndʒənt/ 72  
 strings *as in* pull the strings 42  
 stripe /straɪp/ 7  
 stroke *v* /straʊk/ 8, 12  
 stroke of luck /straʊk əv 'lʌk/ 56  
 stroke of sth /'straʊk əv ,.../ 56  
 stroll *n, v* /strɔ:l/ 9  
 strong accent /,strɒŋ 'æksənt/ 4  
 strong criticism /,strɒŋ 'krɪtɪsɪzəm/ 4  
 stubborn /'slʌbən/ 8  
 stubbornness /'slʌbənnəs/ 8  
 stuff /stʌf/ 65  
 stunned /stʌnd/ 15  
 stunning /'stʌnɪŋ/ 21  
 style /stʌɪl/ 69  
 stylistic /'stʌɪlɪstɪk/ 69  
 subject matter /'sʌbdʒekt ,mætə(r)/ 67  
 subject to /'sʌbdʒekt tə/ 76  
 subjective /səb'dʒektɪv/ 71  
 subservient to /səb'sɜ:vɪənt tə/ 76  
 subsidize /'sʌbsaɪz/ 48  
 subsidized /'sʌbsaɪzɪd/ 44  
 subsidy /'sʌbsaɪdi/ 48  
 substitute *n* /'sʌbstɪtju:t/ 76  
 subtle /'sʌtl/ 12, 27  
 subtract sth from /səb'trækt ,... frəm/ 48  
 success *as in* the secret of your success 56  
 suffer abuse /,sʌfə ə'bju:s/ 6  
 sultan /sʌl'tɑ:n/ 20  
 sum *n* /sʌm/ 48  
 sum sth up /sʌm ,... 'ʌp/ 69  
 summarize /'sʌməraɪz/ 69  
 summary /'sʌməri/ 4, 69  
 superficial /su:pə'fɪʃl/ 22  
 superfluous /su:'pɜ:fluəs/ 67  
 supple /'sʌpl/ 9  
 support /sə'pɔ:t/ 46  
 suppress your feelings /sə,pres ,jɔ: 'fi:ɪŋz/ 15  
 sure *as in* not entirely sure 4  
 surface *as in* on the surface 14  
 surge *n, v* /sɜ:dʒ/ 47  
 surgery *as in* cosmetic/keyhole/plastic surgery 33  
 surplus /'sɜ:pləs/ 48  
 survey *n* /'sɜ:veɪ/ 41  
 survival rate /sə'vaɪvl ,reɪt/ 30s  
 sustain /sə'steɪn/ 53  
 sustainability /sə'steɪnə'bɪləti/ 28  
 sustainable /sə'steɪnəbl/ 28  
 swamp /swɒmp/ 40  
 swamped /swɒmpt/ 49  
 swampland /'swɒmplænd/ 40  
 sway /sweɪ/ 72  
 sweat *n, v* /swet/ 8  
 sweeping change /,swi:pɪŋ 'tʃeɪndʒ/ 27  
 sweet /swi:t/ 2  
 switch to /'swɪtʃ tə/ 28  
 symbolize /'sɪmbəlaɪz/ 75  
 synonym /'sɪnɒnɪm/ 1  
 synonymous /sɪ'nɒnɪməs/ 1  
 synopsis /sɪ'nɒpsɪs/ 70  
 ta /tɑ:/ 58  
 tabloid /'tæbloɪd/ 41  
 tackle /'tækl/ 54  
 tackle a problem /,tækl ə 'prɒbləm/ 50  
 tag *as in* price tag 25  
 tail back /,teɪl 'bæk/ 3  
 tailback /'teɪlbæk/ 3  
 take a chance on sth /,teɪk ə 'tʃɑ:ns ɒn ,.../ 40  
 take a heavy toll on /,teɪk ə ,hevi 'tɒl ɒn ,.../ 29  
 take action /,teɪk 'ækʃn/ 40  
 take an instant dislike to /,teɪk ən ,ɪnstənt dɪs'laɪk tə/ 16  
 take exception to /,teɪk ɪk'sepʃn tə/ 19  
 take in /,teɪk 'ɪn/ 5  
 take it easy /,teɪk ,ɪt 'i:zi/ 21  
 take no notice of /,teɪk ,nəʊ 'nəʊtɪs əv/ 33  
 take notice of /,teɪk 'nəʊtɪs əv/ 33  
 take offence /,teɪk ə'fens/ 4, 19  
 take refuge /,teɪk 'refju:dʒ/ 32  
 take revenge /,teɪk rɪ'vendʒ/ 36  
 take sb in /,teɪk ,... 'ɪn/ 63  
 take sb/sth seriously /,teɪk ,... 'sɪəriəsli/ 34, 54  
 take sth apart /,teɪk ,... ə'pɑ:t/ 63  
 take sth away from /,teɪk ,... ə'weɪ frəm/ 48  
 take sth in your stride /,teɪk ,... ,ɪn ,jɔ: 'straɪd/ 54  
 take sth out (of a bank account) /,teɪk ,... 'aʊt/ 48  
 take sth to pieces /,teɪk ,... tə 'pi:sɪz/ 63  
 take the blame /,teɪk ðə 'bleɪm/ 4  
 take to /,teɪk tə/ 14  
 takeover /'teɪkəʊvə(r)/ 46  
 talk sb into / out of doing sth /,tɔ:k ,... ,ɪntə ,əʊt əv 'du:ɪŋ ,.../ 63  
 talk sth up /,tɔ:k ,... 'ʌp/ 53  
 tank /tæŋk/ 37  
 taste *as in* be in bad/poor taste 19  
 tasteful /'teɪstfl/ 78  
 tasteless /'teɪstləs/ 78  
 tasty /'teɪsti/ 78  
 tax-free /,tæks 'fri:/ 75  
 team spirit /,ti:m 'spɪrɪt/ 45  
 tear (from the eye) /tiə(r)/ 11  
 tears *as in* bored to tears 22  
 tears *as in* burst into tears 4  
 tears *as in* in tears / close to tears 15  
 technical /'teknɪkəl/ 79  
 technically /'teknɪkli/ 79  
 technique /tek'ni:k/ 79  
 tedious /'ti:diəs/ 22  
 tell *as in* to tell you the truth 64  
 temper *as in* lose your temper 15  
 tension /'tenʃn/ 12  
 terminate /'tɜ:mɪneɪt/ 67  
 territorial /tə'reɪtɔ:riəl/ 29  
 territory /'terətəri/ 29  
 thank you for /'θæŋk ,ju: fə/ 67  
 the best of both worlds /ðə ,best əv 'bəʊθ ,wɜ:ldz/ 60  
 the best thing /ðə ,best ,θɪŋ/ 59  
 the bubble will burst /ðə ,bʌbl ,wɪl 'bɜ:st/ 47  
 the draft /ðə 'dra:ft/ 37  
 the dust settles /ðə ,dʌst 'setlz/ 46  
 the end justifies the means /ði ,end ,dʒʌstɪfaɪz ðə 'mi:nz/ 66  
 the faintest idea /ðə ,feɪntɪst aɪ'dɪə/ 59  
 the go-ahead /ðə ,gəʊ ə'hed/ 38  
 the key to /ðə 'ki: tə/ 7  
 the military /ðə 'mɪlətri/ 37  
 the minute /ðə 'mɪnɪt/ 25  
 the moment /ðə 'məʊmənt/ 25  
 the more the merrier /ðə ,mɔ: ðə 'merɪə(r)/ 66  
 the pot calling the kettle black /ðə ,pɒt ,kɔ:lɪŋ ðə ,ketl 'blæk/ 66  
 the reserve /ðə rɪ'zɜ:v/ 37  
 the rest /ðə 'rest/ 23  
 the secret of /ðə 'si:kret əv/ 7  
 the secret of your success /ðə ,si:kret əv ,jɔ: sək'ses/ 56  
 the thing is /ðə 'θɪŋ ,ɪz/ 60  
 the tide is turning /ðə ,taɪd ɪz 'tɜ:nɪŋ/ 39  
 the way things are /ðə ,wei ,θɪŋz 'ɑ:(r)/ 16  
 theoretically /θə'retɪkli/ 79  
 theory /'θɪəri/ 71  
 therapeutic /θə'repi:jə'tɪk/ 36  
 therapy /'θerəpi/ 36  
 there's no point in + ing /ðeəz 'nəʊ ,pɔɪnt ɪn/ 59  
 thereabouts /ðeəə'baʊts/ 65  
 thick /θɪk/ 2  
 thick-skinned /θɪk 'skɪnd/ 3  
 thing *as in* be the last thing on sb's mind 2  
 thing *as in* the thing is 60  
 things /θɪŋz/ 16  
 think sth up /,θɪŋk ,... 'ʌp/ 9  
 think up /,θɪŋk 'ʌp/ 31  
 thorough /'θɒrə/ 72  
 thoughtful /'θɔ:tfl/ 14  
 thrash *v* /θræʃ/ 58  
 threat *as in* pose a threat to 29  
 threat *as in* under threat 29  
 threatened with /'θreɪnd ,wɪð/ 29  
 thrifty /'θrɪfti/ 48  
 thriving /'θraɪvɪŋ/ 21  
 throughout /θru:'aʊt/ 57  
 thus /ðʌs/ 68  
 thx (= thanks) 73  
 tide *as in* the tide is turning 39  
 tied up *as in* be tied up 2



tight /taɪt/ 58  
 tight corner /,taɪt 'kɔ:nə(r)/ 39  
 tight-fisted /,taɪt 'fɪstɪd/ 58  
 tighten /'taɪtn/ 7  
 tighten your belt /,taɪtn jɔ: 'belt/ 46  
 till /tɪl/ 25  
 time /taɪm/ 57  
 time as in as time went by 16  
 time-consuming /'taɪm kən'sju:mɪŋ/ 26  
 time flies /,taɪm 'flaɪz/ 57  
 times as in behind the times 57  
 tip N /tɪp/ 40  
 tip the balance /,tɪp ðə 'bæləns/ 46  
 tiptoe v /'tɪptəʊ/ 9  
 tired as in sick and tired of 61  
 TLC (= tender loving care) /,ti: ,el 'si:/ 73  
 tnx (= thanks) 73  
 2 (= to) 73  
 to a degree /,tu ə dɪ'ɡri:/ 45  
 to a large extent /,tu ə 'lɑ:dʒɪk'stənt/ 64  
 to an extent /,tu ən ɪk'stənt/ 45  
 to be honest /,tə bi: 'ɒnɪst/ 64, 79  
 to be perfectly honest /,tə bi: 'pɜ:fɪktli 'ɒnɪst/ 79  
 to sb's face /,tə ,... 'feɪs/ 16  
 to tell you the truth /,tə ,tel ju: ðə 'tru:θ/ 64  
 to the point /,tə ðə 'pɔɪnt/ 67  
 2day (= today) 73  
 toll as in take a heavy toll on 29  
 2moro (= tomorrow) 73  
 2nite (= tonight) 73  
 tone /təʊn/ 67  
 tongue-tied /'tʌŋ ,taɪd/ 3  
 tons of /'tʌnz əv/ 65  
 2 (= too) 73  
 too good to be true /,tu: ,ɡʊd tə bi 'tru:/ 60  
 top as in be on top 23  
 top priority /,tɒp prə'ɪərɪti/ 49  
 torrential rain /tə'renʃl 'reɪn/ 4  
 total chaos /təʊtl 'keɪs/ 4  
 touch as in in / out of touch 77  
 tough /tʌf/ 16  
 tower /'taʊə(r)/ 55  
 toxic /'tɒksɪk/ 28  
 trace v /treɪs/ 55  
 trace of irony /,treɪs əv 'aɪrəni/ 1  
 track as in off the beaten track 21  
 traditional /trə'dɪʃənəl/ 79  
 traditionally /trə'dɪʃənəli/ 79  
 trafficking /'træfɪkɪŋ/ 35  
 train of thought /,treɪn əv 'θɔ:t/ 49  
 trait /treɪt/ 14  
 transaction /træn'zækʃn/ 48  
 transform /træns'fɔ:m/ 27  
 transformation /trænsfə'meɪʃn/ 27  
 transition /træn'zɪʃn/ 27  
 transparent /træns'pærənt/ 1  
 transplant N /'trænsplɑ:nt/ 30  
 transplant v /træns'plɑ:nt/ 30  
 travel agency /'trævl ,eɪdʒənsi/ 34  
 travel expenses /'trævl ɪk'spensɪz/ 44

travelling expenses /'trævlɪŋ ɪk'spensɪz/ 44  
 trek N, v /trek/ 21  
 trial as in clinical trial 33  
 trial and error /,traɪəl ən 'erə(r)/ 61  
 tricky /'trɪki/ 56  
 trigger v /'trɪɡə(r)/ 47  
 trivial /'trɪvɪəl/ 54  
 tropical /'trɒpɪkl/ 20  
 trouble as in in trouble 77  
 trouble as in it's more trouble than it's worth 60  
 trouble as in nothing is too much trouble 33  
 trouble-free /,trʌbl 'fri:/ 75  
 true as in it's true 64  
 true as in too good to be true 60  
 truly /'tru:li/ 79  
 trustworthy /'trʌstwɜ:ði/ 14  
 truth as in economical with the truth 53  
 truth as in to tell you the truth 64  
 ttl (= talk to you later) 73  
 tumble dryer /,tʌmbl 'draɪə(r)/ 28  
 turbulence /'tɜ:bjələns/ 47  
 turbulent /'tɜ:bjələnt/ 47  
 turmoil /'tɜ:mɔɪl/ 47  
 turn as in the tide is turning 39  
 turn out (= attend an event) /,tɜ:n 'aʊt/ 3  
 turn out badly /,tɜ:n ,aʊt 'bædli/ 56  
 turn out well /,tɜ:n ,aʊt 'wel/ 56  
 turn over a new leaf /,tɜ:n ,əʊvə ə 'nju: 'li:f/ 36  
 turn sth down /,tɜ:n ,... 'daʊn/ 46  
 turn up /,tɜ:n 'ʌp/ 63  
 turnout /'tɜ:naʊt/ 3  
 twist N (in a plot) /twɪst/ 22  
 twist v (twist your ankle) /twɪst/ 13  
 two heads are better than one /,tu: ,hedz ə ,betə ðən 'wʌn/ 66  
 two wrongs don't make a right /,tu: ,rɒŋz ,dəʊnt ,meɪk ə 'raɪt/ 66  
 u (= you) 73  
 ulterior motive /,ʌl,tɪəriə 'məʊtɪv/ 2  
 ultimately /'ʌltɪmətli/ 79  
 ultra- /'ʌltrə/ 55  
 ultra-cautious /,ʌltrə 'kɔ:ʃəs/ 55  
 ultra-modern /,ʌltrə 'mɒdn/ 55  
 un- /ʌn/ 74  
 unanimous /ju:'nænɪməs/ 22  
 unanimously /ju:'nænɪməsli/ 22  
 unappealing /ʌnə'pi:liŋ/ 18  
 unappetizing /ʌn'æpɪtaɪzɪŋ/ 12  
 unarmed combat /,ʌnɑ:mɪd 'kɒmbæt/ 37  
 unbeaten /ʌn'bi:tɪn/ 23  
 unbiased /ʌn'baɪəst/ 71  
 uncomfortable /ʌn'kʌmfətbəl/ 15  
 unconvincing /ʌnkən'vɪnsɪŋ/ 22, 78  
 uncooked /ʌn'kʊkt/ 74  
 under /'ʌndə(r)/ 77  
 under- /'ʌndə(r)/ 74  
 under attack /,ʌndə ə'tæk/ 77  
 under construction /,ʌndə kən'strʌkʃn/ 77

under control /,ʌndə kən'trəʊl/ 49  
 under discussion /,ʌndə dɪ'skʌʃn/ 77  
 under investigation /,ʌndə ɪn'vestɪ'geɪʃn/ 77  
 under pressure /,ʌndə 'preʃə(r)/ 23, 47  
 under the microscope /,ʌndə ðə 'maɪkrəskəʊp/ 42  
 under the weather /,ʌndə ðə 'weðə(r)/ 59  
 under threat /,ʌndə 'θret/ 29  
 undercooked /,ʌndə'kʊkt/ 74  
 underdeveloped /,ʌndə'dɛləvəpt/ 74  
 underemployed /,ʌndə'ɪm'plɔɪd/ 74  
 underfed /,ʌndə'fed/ 74  
 undergo /,ʌndə'ɡəʊ/ 21  
 underlying /,ʌndə'laɪɪŋ/ 47  
 undermine /,ʌndə'maɪn/ 45  
 undernourished /,ʌndə'nʌrɪʃt/ 74  
 underpaid /,ʌndə'peɪd/ 74  
 underpin /,ʌndə'pɪn/ 47  
 underprivileged /,ʌndə'prɪvɪlɪdʒd/ 74  
 underrated /,ʌndə'reɪtɪd/ 74  
 undersold /,ʌndə'səʊld/ 74  
 undeveloped /,ʌndə'veləvəpt/ 74  
 uneasy /ʌn'i:zi/ 15  
 unemployed /,ʌnɪm'plɔɪd/ 74  
 uneventful /ʌnɪ'ventʃl/ 6  
 unflattering /ʌn'flætərɪŋ/ 7  
 unforgivable /ʌnfə'ɡɪvəbl/ 6  
 unfurnished /ʌn'fɜ:nɪʃt/ 6  
 unintelligible /,ʌnɪntelɪdʒəbl/ 78  
 unique /ju:'ni:k/ 21  
 unit /'ju:nɪt/ 71  
 unlike /ʌn'lʌk/ 70  
 unmitigated /ʌn'mɪtɪɡetɪd/ 56  
 unofficially /ʌnə'fɪʃəli/ 79  
 unpaid /ʌn'peɪd/ 74  
 unpalatable /ʌn'pələtəbəl/ 53  
 unproductive /ʌnpɜ:'dʌktɪv/ 49  
 unsold /ʌn'səʊld/ 74  
 unspoilt /ʌn'spɔɪlt/ 21  
 unstuck as in come unstuck 56  
 unwilling /ʌn'wɪlɪŋ/ 16  
 unwind /ʌn'waɪnd/ 21  
 up against it /,ʌp ə'ɡenst ɪt/ 56  
 up to date /,ʌp tə 'deɪt/ 55  
 upload /ʌp'ləʊd/ 31  
 upper class /,ʌpə 'kla:s/ 19  
 uprooted as in be uprooted 32  
 ups and downs /,ʌps ən 'daʊnz/ 16  
 upset stomach /ʌp'set 'stʌmək/ 13  
 upwards /ʌpwədz/ 19  
 urge (sb to do) sth /'ɜ:dʒ (,... tə ,du:), .../ 38  
 urgent /'ɜ:dʒənt/ 54  
 use as in it's no use + ing 59  
 user as in registered user 31  
 user-friendly /ju:zə 'frendli/ 28  
 username /'ju:zənem/ 31  
 usual /'ju:ʒuəl/ 19  
 utter /'ʌtə(r)/ 22  
 utter chaos /,ʌtə 'keɪs/ 4

vaccinate /'væksɪneɪt/ 30  
 vaccination /væksɪ'neɪʃn/ 30



vaccine /'væksɪn/ 30  
 value v /'vælju:/ 45  
 valueless /'vælju:ləs/ 78  
 values /'vælju:z/ 17  
 vandalism /'vændəlɪzəm/ 75  
 vandalize /'vændəlaɪz/ 75  
 vanish into thin air /'vænɪʃ ,ɪntə ,θɪn  
 'eə(r)/ 11  
 vast /vɑːst/ 37  
 venture /'ventʃə(r)/ 28  
 venue /'venju:/ 23  
 verge *as in* on the verge of sth 23, 24  
 verification /'verɪfɪ'keɪʃn/ 71  
 verify /'verɪfaɪ/ 71  
 vertical /'vɜːtɪkl/ 72  
 vertical load /'vɜːtɪkl 'ləʊd/ 72  
 vibrant /'vaɪbrənt/ 21  
 vice /vaɪs/ 14  
 victorious /'vɪk'tɔːrɪəs/ 23  
 victory /'vɪktəri/ 23  
 video clip /'vɪdɪəʊ ,klɪp/ 31  
 videoblog /'vɪdɪəʊblɒg/ 31  
 view v /'vju:/ 19  
 view *as in* in view of 68  
 vigorously /'vɪɡərəsli/ 12  
 vile /vaɪl/ 58  
 virtual /'vɜːtʃuəl/ 31  
 virtually /'vɜːtʃuəli/ 1, 79  
 virtue /'vɜːtʃuː/ 14  
 virtuous /'vɜːtʃuəs/ 14  
 virus /'vaɪrəs/ 31  
 visible /'vɪzəbl/ 11  
 vision /'vɪʒn/ 11  
 visualize /'vɪʒuəlaɪz/ 75  
 visually impaired /'vɪʒuəli ɪm'peəd/ 80  
 volatile /'vɒlətaɪl/ 47  
 volatility /'vɒlə'tɪləti/ 47  
 voluntary /'vɒləntəri/ 34  
 voluntary sector /'vɒləntəri  
 ,sektə(r)/ 34  
 volunteer /'vɒləntɪə(r)/ 34  
 vow n /vaʊ/ 38  
 vow to do sth /'vaʊ tə ,duː ,.../ 38  
 vulgar /'vʌlgə(r)/ 17  
 vulnerable /'vʌlnərəbl/ 15

w/ (= with) 73  
 w/o (= without) 73  
 waiting *as in* sorry to keep you  
 waiting 59  
 wander /'wɒndə(r)/ 21  
 wander *as in* go for a wander 21  
 war zone /'wɔː ,zəʊn/ 43  
 warfare /'wɔːfeə(r)/ 37  
 warily /'weərɪli/ 11  
 warm up (= become  
 interesting) /'wɔːm 'ʌp/ 26  
 warm up (= do physical  
 exercises) /'wɔːm 'ʌp/ 9  
 warm welcome /'wɔːm 'welkəm/ 26  
 warrant /'wɒrənt/ 35  
 water v /'wɔːtə(r)/ 12  
 water *as in* fish out of water 20  
 water-saving /'wɔːtə ,seɪvɪŋ/ 28  
 waterproof /'wɔːtəpruːf/ 75  
 way ADV /weɪ/ 56  
 way *as in* by the way 64

way *as in* in sb's/the way 56  
 way *as in* no way 59  
 way *as in* the way things are 16  
 weaken /'wiːkən/ 7, 47  
 weapon /'wepən/ 37  
 wear off /'weər 'ɒf/ 63  
 wear your heart on your sleeve /,weə  
 ,jɔː ,hɑːt ,ɒn ,jɔː 'sliːv/ 15  
 weather *as in* under the weather 59  
 web browser /'web ,braʊzə(r)/ 31  
 weeding *as in* do the weeding 24  
 weeds /wiːdz/ 24  
 weekend *as in* long weekend 3  
 weight *as in* pull your weight 18  
 weird /'wiəd/ 78  
 welcome N, ADV /'welkəm/ 26  
 welcome change /,welkəm  
 'tʃeɪndʒ/ 27  
 What a cheek! /,wɒt ə 'tʃiːk/ 19, 58  
 What a disgrace! /,wɒt ə dɪs'ɡreɪs/ 19  
 What a nerve! /,wɒt ə 'nɜːv/ 58  
 What can you expect? /,wɒt kən ,juː  
 ɪk'spekt/ 18  
 What do you expect? /,wɒt də ,juː  
 ɪk'spekt/ 18  
 What do you make of ...? /,wɒt də ,juː  
 'meɪk əv/ 14  
 What on earth ...? /'wɒt ɒn ,ɜːθ/ 60  
 whatever /wɒt'evə(r)/ 49  
 wheelchair *as in* be confined to a  
 wheelchair 30  
 whenever /wen'evə(r)/ 49  
 Where on earth ...? /'weər ɒn  
 ,ɜːθ/ 60  
 wherever /weər'evə(r)/ 49  
 whisk n /wɪsk/ 20  
 white lie /waɪt 'laɪ/ 53  
 wholesale change /,həʊlsel  
 'tʃeɪndʒ/ 27  
 wicked /'wɪkɪd/ 78  
 widespread criticism /,waɪdspred  
 'krɪtɪsɪzəm/ 4  
 widespread damage /,waɪdspred  
 'dæmɪdʒ/ 4  
 wild *as in* in the wild 29  
 wildlife /'waɪldlaɪf/ 24  
 wildlife reserve /'waɪldlaɪf rɪ'zɜːv/ 29  
 win sb's respect /,wɪn ,... rɪ'spekt/ 16  
 wind sth up /,waɪnd ,... 'ʌp/ 46  
 winds *as in* gale-force winds 4  
 wink v /wɪŋk/ 73  
 wipe sb/sth out /,waɪp ,... 'aʊt/ 29, 30  
 wipe sth off sth /,waɪp ,... 'ɒf ,.../ 47  
 wire *as in* barbed wire 3  
 wisdom /'wɪzdəm/ 50  
 wise /waɪz/ 50  
 with hindsight /,wɪð 'haɪndsait/ 57  
 with reference to /,wɪð 'refrəns tə/ 67  
 with regard to /,wɪð rɪ'ɡɑːd tə/ 68  
 withdraw /wɪð'drɔː/ 48  
 within reason /wɪ'ðɪn 'rɪzn/ 14  
 without fail /wɪ'daʊt 'feɪl/ 77  
 withstand /wɪð'stænd/ 72  
 wknd (= weekend) 73  
 wok /wɒk/ 20  
 wolf /wɒlf/ 10  
 wooden /'wʊdn/ 22

woody /'wʊdi/ 12  
 words *as in* eat your words 20  
 words *as in* famous last words 66  
 words *as in* put sth into words 2  
 work like a dream /,wɜːk ,laɪk ə  
 'driːm/ 62  
 work out /,wɜːk 'aʊt/ 9  
 work sth out /,wɜːk ,... 'aʊt/ 48  
 workaholic /wɜːkə'hɒlɪk/ 25  
 working class /,wɜːkɪŋ 'klaːs/ 19  
 workout /'wɜːkaʊt/ 9  
 world *as in* be in a world of your  
 own 60  
 worlds *as in* the best of both  
 worlds 60  
 worldwide /'wɜːldwaɪd/ 34  
 worn out /,wɔːn 'aʊt/ 3, 78  
 worship v /'wɜːʃɪp/ 17  
 worthless /'wɜːθləs/ 6, 78  
 worthwhile /wɜːθ'waɪl/ 6  
 worthy /'wɜːði/ 6  
 wrapping paper /'ræpɪŋ ,peɪpə(r)/ 1  
 wreck v /rek/ 38  
 wrinkles /'rɪŋkəls/ 7  
 wriggle out of /,rɪɡl 'aʊt əv/ 46  
 write-off /'raɪt ,ɒf/ 3  
 write sth off /,raɪt ,... 'ɒf/ 3  
 wrongs *as in* two wrongs don't make  
 a right 66

x (= kiss) 73  
 xltnt (= excellent) 73

yield n /jiːld/ 47  
 you bet /ju 'bet/ 59  
 you can never tell /ju kən ,nevə  
 'tel/ 66  
 you can say that again /ju kən  
 ,seɪ 'ðæt əˌɡen/ 59  
 you can't be serious /ju 'kɑːnt bi  
 ,sɪəriəs/ 59  
 you never know /ju ,nevə 'nəʊ/ 60  
 your best bet /jɔː ,best 'bet/ 59  
 your guess is as good as mine /jɔː  
 ,ges ɪz əz ,ɡʊd əz 'maɪn/ 59  
 your own boss /jɔːr ,əʊn 'bɒs/ 45  
 your own company /jɔːr ,əʊn  
 'kʌmpəni/ 26  
 you're joking /jɔː 'dʒɔːkɪŋ/ 59  
 you're kidding /jɔː 'kɪdɪŋ/ 59  
 you're not gonna believe this /jɔːr  
 ,nɒt ,ɡɒnə bə'liːv ,ðɪs ,ɡənə/ 2  
 you're only young once /jɔːr ,əʊnli  
 ,jʌŋ 'wʌnz/ 66  
 you've got nothing to lose /juːv ,ɡɒt  
 ,nʌθɪŋ tə 'luːz/ 59  
 yr (= your) 73  
 yr (= you're) 73

zone /zəʊn/ 43

# Oxford Word Skills

Learn and practise English vocabulary

**Advanced** for advanced learners

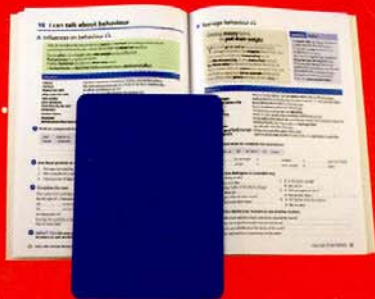
- Learn the words you need to know at each level (Basic, Intermediate, and Advanced)
- See how the words and phrases are used in spoken and written English
- Practise using the vocabulary
- Revise what you've learned
- Improve your vocabulary-learning skills
- Learn the words as preparation for the major exams



Oxford Word Skills



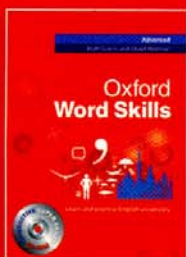
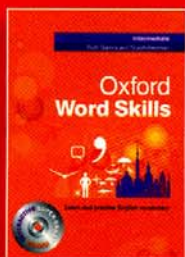
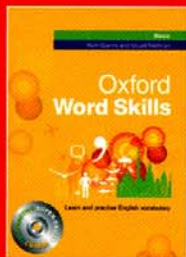
Use the CD-ROM to listen to the words, learn how to say them, and practise using them.



It's easy to test yourself. Just use the card inside to 'cover and check'.

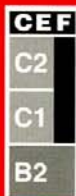
Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman are language teaching experts who specialize in writing materials for learning and teaching vocabulary.

[www.oup.com/elt/wordskills](http://www.oup.com/elt/wordskills)



**OXFORD**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

[www.oup.com/elt](http://www.oup.com/elt)



OXFORD ENGLISH  
ISBN 978-0-19-462011-6

